### **Data Warehouse Service**

# **User Guide**

 Issue
 01

 Date
 2025-04-09





#### Copyright © Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd. 2025. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd.

#### **Trademarks and Permissions**

NUAWEI and other Huawei trademarks are the property of Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd. All other trademarks and trade names mentioned in this document are the property of their respective holders.

#### Notice

The purchased products, services and features are stipulated by the contract made between Huawei Cloud and the customer. All or part of the products, services and features described in this document may not be within the purchase scope or the usage scope. Unless otherwise specified in the contract, all statements, information, and recommendations in this document are provided "AS IS" without warranties, guarantees or representations of any kind, either express or implied.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Every effort has been made in the preparation of this document to ensure accuracy of the contents, but all statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute a warranty of any kind, express or implied.

# **Contents**

1 Using GaussDB(DWS)	1
2 Preparations	5
2.1 Creating a User and Granting GaussDB(DWS) Permissions	5
2.2 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Custom Policy	7
2.3 Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources	9
2.4 Syntax of Fine-Grained Permissions Policies	11
2.5 RBAC Syntax of RBAC Policies	43
3 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	. 46
3.1 Creating a Dedicated GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	46
3.1.1 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster	46
3.1.2 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Decoupled Cluster	61
3.2 Before You Start: Performance Management Requirements	72
3.3 Before You Start: High Availability and Reliability Requirements	80
4 Connecting to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	. 82
4.1 Overview	82
4.2 Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	83
4.3 Using a Visualization Tool to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	86
4.3.1 Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	86
4.3.1.1 Overview	86
4.3.1.2 Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a Cluster	87
4.3.1.3 Data Development Operations	89
4.3.1.4 Data Development Settings	106
4.3.2 Using Data Studio to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	.107
4.4 Using the CLI to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	.111
4.4.1 Downloading the Client	.111
4.4.2 Using the Linux gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster	.113
4.4.3 Using the Windows gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster	119
4.4.4 Establishing Secure TCP/IP Connections in SSL Mode	122
4.5 Using a Third-Party Database Adapter for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection	129
4.5.1 Using the JDBC and ODBC Drivers to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	129
4.5.1.1 Development Specifications	.129
4.5.1.2 JDBC Version Description	130

4.5.1.3 Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver	132
4.5.1.4 Using JDBC to Connect to a Cluster	135
4.5.1.5 Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (Load Balancing Mode)	147
4.5.1.6 Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (IAM Authentication Mode)	150
4.5.1.7 Third-party Connection Pool of the JDBC Configuration Database	154
4.5.1.8 Using ODBC to Connect to a Cluster	169
4.5.2 Using the Third-Party Database Adapter Psycopg2 (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	176
4.5.3 Using the Third-Party Database Adapter PyGreSOL (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	
Connection	187
5 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Database and User	204
6 Migrating Service Data to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	212
6.1 Migrating Data to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Using GDS-Kafka	212
6.1.1 Overview	212
6.1.2 Managing Instances	213
6.1.3 Managing Connections	225
6.1.4 Managing Table Mappings	231
6.1.5 Managing Jobs	233
6.2 Data Source Management	235
6.2.1 MRS Data Sources	235
6.2.1.1 MRS Data Source Usage Overview	235
6.2.1.2 Creating an MRS Data Source Connection	236
6.2.1.3 Updating the MRS Data Source Configuration	239
6.2.2 Managing OBS Data Sources	241
7 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Data Security and Encryption	245
7.1 Enabling Separation of Duties for GaussDB(DWS) Database Users	245
7.2 Using KMS to Encrypt GaussDB(DWS) Clusters	248
7.2.1 Overview	248
7.2.2 Rotating Encryption Keys	250
7.2.3 Converting an Ordinary Cluster to an Encrypted Cluster	251
7.3 Enabling Critical Operation Protection for the GaussDB(DWS) Console	252
8 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Management	255
8.1 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Details	255
8.2 Checking the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Status	261
8.3 Viewing the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Topology	268
8.4 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connections	274
8.4.1 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names	274
8.4.2 Binding and Unbinding ELBs for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	277
8.4.3 Adding or Deleting a CN in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	282
8.4.4 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Database Connections	285
8.5 GaussDB(DWS) Resource Load Management	288

8.5.1 Overview	288
8.5.2 Resource Pool	290
8.5.2.1 Feature Description	290
8.5.2.2 Creating a Resource Pool	293
8.5.2.3 Modifying a Resource Pool	295
8.5.2.4 Deleting a Resource Pool	299
8.5.3 Resource Management Plan	299
8.5.3.1 Managing Resource Management Plans	299
8.5.3.2 Managing Resource Management Plan Stages	301
8.5.4 Workspace Management	304
8.5.5 Exception Rules	305
8.5.6 Using the Query Filter	309
8.6 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Logical Clusters	312
8.6.1 Logical Cluster Overview	312
8.6.2 Adding/Deleting a Logical Cluster	319
8.6.3 Managing Logical Clusters	321
8.6.4 Elastically Adding or Deleting a Logical Cluster	323
8.6.5 Tutorial: Converting a Physical Cluster That Contains Data into a Logical Cluster	326
8.6.6 Tutorial: Dividing a New Physical Cluster into Logical Clusters	330
8.6.7 Tutorial: Setting a Read-Only Logical Cluster and Binding It to a User	332
8.7 Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	333
8.8 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Tags	354
8.8.1 Overview	354
8.8.2 Managing Tags	355
8.9 Resetting the Password the GaussDB(DWS) Database Administrator	357
8.10 Starting, Stopping, and Deleting a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	358
8.11 Managing Enterprise Projects	361
9 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster O&M	364
9.1 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on the Monitoring Panel (DMS)	364
9.1.1 Database Monitoring Overview	364
9.1.2 Monitoring Metrics	365
9.1.3 Cluster Overview	402
9.1.4 Monitoring	405
9.1.4.1 Node Monitoring	405
9.1.4.2 Performance Monitoring	408
9.1.4.3 Database Monitoring	410
9.1.4.4 Real-Time Queries	410
9.1.4.5 Historical Queries	414
9.1.4.6 Instance Monitoring	415
9.1.4.7 Resource Pool Monitoring	416
9.1.5 Utilities	418
9.1.5.1 SQL Diagnosis	418

9.1.5.2 SQL Probes	420
9.1.5.3 Table Diagnosis	422
9.1.6 Workload Analysis	427
9.1.6.1 Workload Analysis Overview	428
9.1.6.2 Workload Snapshots	428
9.1.6.3 Workload Reports	430
9.1.7 Settings	433
9.1.8 Checking Task Details	434
9.1.9 Typical Scenarios	435
9.1.9.1 SQL Diagnosis	435
9.2 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on Cloud Eye	436
9.3 Monitoring and Diagnosing a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	445
9.4 Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Alarms	452
9.4.1 Alarm Management	452
9.4.2 Alarm Rules	456
9.4.3 Alarm Subscriptions	459
9.4.4 Alarm Handling	461
9.4.4.1 DWS 200000001 Node CPU Usage Exceeds the Threshold	461
9.4.4.2 DWS_200000006 Node Data Disk Usage Exceeds the Threshold	464
9.4.4.3 DWS_200000009 Node Data Disk I/O Usage Exceeds the Threshold	468
9.4.4.4 DWS_200000012 Node Data Disk Latency Exceeds the Threshold	469
9.4.4.5 DWS_2000000016 Data Spilled to Disks of the Query Statement Exceeds the Threshold	471
9.4.4.6 DWS_2000000017 Number of Queuing Query Statements Exceeds the Threshold	473
9.4.4.7 DWS_200000018 Queue Congestion in the Default Cluster Resource Pool	475
9.4.4.8 DWS_200000020 Long SQL Probe Execution Duration in a Cluster	478
9.4.4.9 DWS_200000023 A Vacuum Full Operation That Holds a Lock for A Long Time Exists in the	
Cluster	479
9.4.4.10 DWS_200000027 Memory Usage of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold	481
9.4.4.11 DWS_200000028 Dynamic Memory Usage of GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Nodes Exceeds the	100
Threshold	483
9.4.4.12 DWS_2000000029 Usage of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Resource Pool Exceeds the Threshold	486
9.4.4.13 DWS_2000000030 Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	488
9.4.4.14 DWS_2000000031 Active Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	490
9.4.4.15 DWS_2000000032 Number of Database Deadlocks in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	493
9.4.4.16 DWS_2000000033 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Database Session Usage Exceeds the Threshold	495
9.5 Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Events	496
9.5.1 Event Notifications Overview	496
9.5.2 Subscribing to Event Notifications	506
9.5.3 Viewing Events	507
9.6 Common O&M Commands of GaussDB(DWS)	508
9.7 Backing Up and Restoring a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	510
9.7.1 Overview	510

972 Manual Snapshots	512
9.7.2.1 Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Cluster	
9.7.2.2 Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Schema	
9.7.2.3 Deleting a Manual Snapshot	
9.7.3 Automated Snapshots	516
9.7.3.1 Automated Snapshot Overview	516
9.7.3.2 Configuring an Automated Snapshot Policy	
9.7.3.3 Copying Automated Snapshots	523
9.7.3.4 Deleting an Automated Snapshot	524
9.7.4 Viewing Snapshot Information	
9.7.5 Restoration Using a Snapshot	527
9.7.5.1 Constraints on Restoring a Snapshot	527
9.7.5.2 Restoring a Snapshot to a New Cluster	
9.7.5.3 Restoring a Snapshot to the Current Cluster	530
9.7.5.4 Restoring a Table to the Original Cluster	530
9.7.5.5 Restoring a Table or Multiple Tables to a New Cluster	533
9.7.6 Configuring a Snapshot	537
9.7.7 Stopping Snapshot Creation	540
9.8 Scaling GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Nodes	541
9.8.1 Viewing Inspection Results	541
9.8.2 Managing Nodes	552
9.8.3 Scaling Nodes	554
9.8.3.1 Scaling Out a Cluster	554
9.8.3.2 Cluster Redistribution	559
9.8.3.2.1 Redistributing Data	559
9.8.3.2.2 Viewing Redistribution Details	561
9.8.3.3 Scaling In a Cluster	563
9.9 Changing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Specifications	566
9.9.1 Using the Elastic Specification Change	566
9.9.2 Changing All Specifications	572
9.9.3 Disk Capacity Expansion of an EVS Cluster	575
9.10 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster DR Management	576
9.10.1 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster DR Scenarios	576
9.10.2 Creating and Starting DR for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	577
9.10.3 Performing a DR Switchover for the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	580
9.10.4 Stopping and Deleting DR for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	582
9.11 Upgrading a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	582
9.12 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Log Management	585
9.12.1 Log Types Supported by GaussDB(DWS) Clusters	585
9.12.2 Dumping GaussDB(DWS) Database Audit Logs	585
9.12.3 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Database Audit Logs	594
9.12.4 Viewing Operation Logs on the GaussDB(DWS) Console	598

9.12.5 Viewing Other Logs of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster	. 603
9.13 Handling Abnormal GaussDB(DWS) Clusters	.604
9.14 Reclaiming GaussDB(DWS) Space Using Vacuum	. 606
9.14.1 Overview	. 606
9.14.2 Managing O&M Plans	607
9.14.3 Viewing O&M Tasks	.612
9.15 Authorizing a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster O&M Account	.613

# Using GaussDB(DWS)

GaussDB(DWS) is an online data processing database that uses the Huawei Cloud infrastructure to provide scalable, fully-managed, and out-of-the-box analytic database service, freeing you from complex database management and monitoring. It is a native cloud service based on the Huawei converged data warehouse GaussDB, and is fully compatible with the standard ANSI SQL 99 and SQL 2003, as well as the PostgreSQL and Oracle ecosystems. GaussDB(DWS) provides competitive solutions for PB-level big data analysis in various industries.

GaussDB(DWS) provides an easy-to-use management console, allowing you to quickly create clusters and easily manage data warehouses.

#### **Procedure Description**



Figure 1-1 Procedure for using GaussDB(DWS)

Table 1-1 Procedure description

Process	Task	Description	Operation Instruction
Make preparatio ns.	-	Before using GaussDB(DWS), you need to apply for a Cloud account.	Preparations
Create a cluster.	-	Create a cluster before using GaussDB(DWS) to execute data analysis tasks. A GaussDB(DWS) cluster contains nodes in the same subnet. These nodes jointly provide services. During cluster creation, the system creates a default database.	<ul> <li>Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster</li> <li>Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Decoupled Cluster</li> </ul>

Process	Task	Description	<b>Operation Instruction</b>
Connect to the cluster.	-	After the GaussDB(DWS) cluster is created, use the SQL client tool or a third- party driver such as JDBC or ODBC to connect to the database in the cluster. You can download the SQL client tool and JDBC/ODBC driver on the <b>Client</b> <b>Connections</b> page of the GaussDB(DWS) console.	Connecting to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster
Access the database.	-	After connecting to the cluster, you can create and manage databases, manage users and permissions, import and export data, and query and analyze data.	<i>GaussDB(DWS) Developer Guide</i>
Manage and monitor the cluster.	Cluster manageme nt	View the cluster status, modify cluster configurations, add cluster tags, and scale out, restart, and delete the cluster.	GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Management
	Snapshot manageme nt	Create snapshots to back up and restore the cluster.	Backing Up and Restoring a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster
	O&M and monitoring	View the running status and performance of the cluster through cluster monitoring, log auditing, event notification, and alarm management.	<ul> <li>Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on Cloud Eye</li> <li>Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Events</li> <li>Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on the Monitoring Panel (DMS)</li> <li>Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Alarms</li> </ul>

Process	Task	Description	Operation Instruction
	Scaling and specificatio n change	• Expand the capacity of an existing cluster on the console if your service requires additional compute or storage resources.	Scaling Nodes
		<ul> <li>Change the specifications of created clusters on the console.</li> </ul>	
	Cluster upgrade	Cluster 8.1.1 and later versions allow users to deliver cluster upgrade operations on the console.	Upgrading a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster
	Resource load manageme nt	GaussDB(DWS) provides the resource management function. You can put resources (CPU, memory, I/O, and storage space) into different resource pools, which are isolated from each other.	GaussDB(DWS) Resource Load Management

# **2** Preparations

## 2.1 Creating a User and Granting GaussDB(DWS) Permissions

Before using GaussDB(DWS), register a Huawei Cloud account. If you need to manage account permissions more precisely, use Identity and Access Management (IAM).

#### **Registering a Public Cloud Account**

If you do not have a Huawei Cloud account, register one.

- 1. Open the official public cloud website (https://www.huaweicloud.com/eu/) and click **Register** in the upper right corner. The registration page is displayed.
- 2. Enter registration information as prompted..
- 3. After the registration is successful, you can be automatically logged in to Huawei Cloud.

#### Using GaussDB(DWS) with IAM

This section describes how to use **Identity and Access Management (IAM)** to implement fine-grained permissions control for your GaussDB(DWS) resources. With IAM, you can: With IAM, you can:

- Create IAM users for employees based on the organizational structure of your enterprise. Each IAM user has their own security credentials, providing access to GaussDB(DWS) resources.
- Grant only the permissions required for users to perform specific tasks.
- Entrust a Huawei Cloud account or service to perform professional and efficient O&M on your GaussDB(DWS) resources.

If your Huawei Cloud account does not need individual IAM users, skip this section.

This section describes the procedure for granting permissions (see **IAM usage process**).

#### **Prerequisites for Using IAM**

Before assigning permission policies to a user group, you need to understand the GaussDB(DWS) permission policies. For details about the system policies supported by GaussDB(DWS), see **Supported System Policies**. For the system policies of other services, see **System Permissions**.

#### IAM usage process

#### Figure 2-1 Procedure



#### 1. Create a user group and assign permissions.

Use the Huawei Cloud account to log in to the IAM console, create a user group, and attach the DWS ReadOnlyAccess policy to the group.

2. Create a user and add it to a user group.

Create a user on the IAM console and add the user to the group created in Step 1.

3. **log in** and verify the permissions.

Log in to the management console by using the user created and verify the user permissions.

- Choose Service List > Data Warehouse Service to enter the GaussDB(DWS) management console, and click Create DWS Cluster to create a data warehouse cluster. If you cannot create one, the DWS ReadOnlyAccess policy has taken effect.
- Choose any other service in Service List. If only the DWS
   ReadOnlyAccess policy is added and a message is displayed indicating

that you have insufficient permission to access the service, **DWS ReadOnlyAccess** has taken effect.

# 2.2 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Custom Policy

Custom policies can be created as a supplement to the system policies of GaussDB(DWS). For details about the custom policy actions, see **Permissions Policies and Supported Actions**.

You can create custom policies in either of the following ways:

- Visual editor: Select cloud services, actions, resources, and request conditions without the need to know policy syntax.
- JSON: Edit JSON policies from scratch or based on an existing policy.

For details, **Creating a Custom Policy**. This section provides examples of GaussDB(DWS) custom policies.

#### **Custom Policy Examples**

• Example 1: allowing users to create/restore, restart, and delete a cluster, configure security parameters, and reset passwords

```
"Version": "1.1".
    "Statement": [
       {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "dws:cluster:create",
                "dws:cluster:restart",
                "dws:cluster:delete",
                "dws:cluster:setSecuritySettings",
                "dws:cluster:resetPassword",
                "dws:*:list*",
                "dws:*:get*"
                "tms:predefineTags:list"
                "ecs:*:get*",
                "ecs:*:list*",
                "elb:*:list*"
                "ecs:*:create*"
                "ecs:*:delete*"
                "vpc:*:get*",
                "vpc:*:list*",
                "vpc:*:create*"
                "vpc:*:delete*",
                "evs:*:get*",
                "evs:*:list*"
                "evs:*:create*"
                "evs:*:delete*"
           ]
       }
   ]
}
Example 2: using wildcard character (*)
For example, the following policy has all operation permissions on
GaussDB(DWS) snapshots.
{
    "Version": "1.1",
    "Statement": [
        {
```

```
"Effect": "Allow",
```

```
"Action": [
    "dws:snapshot:*",
    "dws:cluster:list",
    "dws:openAPISnapshot:detail",
    "dws:cluster:getDetail",
    "ecs:*:get*",
    "vpc:*:get*",
    "vpc:*:list*"
]
}
```

• Example 3: denying cluster deletion

}

{

}

{

A deny policy must be used in conjunction with other policies to take effect. If the permissions assigned to a user contain both "Allow" and "Deny", the "Deny" permissions take precedence over the "Allow" permissions.

The following method can be used if you need to assign permissions of the **GaussDB(DWS) FullAccess** policy to a user but also forbid the user from deleting clusters. Create a custom policy for denying cluster deletion, and assign both policies to the group the user belongs to. Then the user can perform all operations on GaussDB(DWS) except deleting clusters. The following is an example of a deny policy:

```
"Version": "1.1",
"Statement": [
{
"Effect": "Allow",
"Action": [
"dws:*:list*",
"dws:*:get*"
]
},
{
"Effect": "Deny",
"Action": [
"dws:cluster:delete"
]
}
]
```

• Example 4: defining multiple actions in a policy

A custom policy can contain actions of multiple services that are all of the global or project-level type. The following is an example policy containing actions of multiple services:

```
"Version": "1.1",
"Statement": [
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
           "dws:cluster:create",
           "dws:cluster:restart",
           "dws:cluster:setSecuritySettings",
           "dws:*:get*",
           "dws:*:list*"
           "tms:predefineTags:list",
           "elb:*:list*",
           "ecs:*:get*"
           "ecs:*:list*"
           "ecs:*:create*",
           "vpc:*:get*",
           "vpc:*:list*",
```



# 2.3 Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources

Huawei Cloud services interwork with each other, and certain operations require cooperation with other cloud services. To do so, you need to create a cloud service delegation and give GaussDB(DWS) permission to perform certain resource management tasks on your behalf by authorizing it to operate other cloud services.

#### **NOTE**

- We are currently rectifying agency permissions. Previously, agencies relied on IAM permissions. Now, they are being migrated to a new system. To switch to the new, lower-permission agency for better resource protection, contact O&M personnel.
- By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. By default, the IAM user does not have permission to query or create agencies. If you lack these permissions, contact an authorized user to grant access.
- The agency permission is obtained from the cache. The cache is updated once an hour. If you update an agency, the update will take effect one hour later.

#### GaussDB(DWS) Agency Permissions (New)

GaussDB(DWS) provides the following agency permissions based on the APIs on which the agency operation depends:

Agency	Agency Permission	Scenario
DWSAgencyAc cess	DWS Agency Access	Minimum permissions on which GaussDB(DWS) depends when using the agency function.
		For example, LTS depends only on <b>lts:groups:put</b> , and the system policy has only the operation permission on LTS.

Table 2-1	GaussDB(	(DWS)	agency	permissions
	Guussee		agency	permissions

You can log in to the IAM management console, choose Permission Management > Permissions, and click the "**DWS Agency Access**" permission to view the complete dependency information.

Identity and Access Management	emisions / DWS Agency Access		
Users	Basic Information		
User Groups	Policy/Role Name DVIS Agency Access Scope Project-level services		
Permissions ^	Type System-defined policy Description Minimum permissions required for Data Waterbyuse Service to use the apency function.		
Authorization	Also strong and an also strong and an also strong and an also strong and also strong and also strong and also strong at the strong strong at the strong strong at the strong st		
Policies/Roles	Content		
Projects	1 * 1 nuevier. M m		
Agencies	3 - "Statement": [		
identity Providers	5 "Effect": "Allow", 6 "Interior": F		
Security Settings	<pre>comparison of the second of the second second</pre>		

Figure 2-2 DWS Agency Access permission information

#### GaussDB(DWS) Agency Permissions (Old)

The following table describes the dependency scenarios of the old agency permissions.

 Table 2-2 Agency and permission usage

Agency	Agency Permission	Scenario
DWSAccessLTS	LTS FullAccess	LTS collects and reports logs to LTS.
DWSAccessOB S	OBS Administrator	Audit log dump: reports audit logs to OBS buckets.
DWSAccessKM S	KMS Administrator	Used to query and rotate keys in a KMS encrypted cluster.
DWSAccessVP C	Server Administrator	If a node is faulty, the EIP is automatically migrated from the faulty node to a normal node.

Agency	Agency Permission	Scenario
DWSAccessDW S	Tenant Administrator	<ul> <li>In the storage-compute decoupled scenario, the read-only logical cluster is scaled out or in periodically based on the automatic addition or deletion plan.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>In the scale-in scenario, clear user NICs and configure security group rules.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>When a node is faulty, ELB adds or deletes a listener instance.</li> </ul>

# 2.4 Syntax of Fine-Grained Permissions Policies

In actual services, you may need to grant different operation permissions on resources to users of different roles. The IAM service provides fine-grained access control. An IAM administrator (a user in the **admin** group) can create a custom policy containing required permissions. After a policy is granted to a user group, users in the group can obtain all permissions defined by the policy. In this way, IAM implements fine-grained permission management.

To control the GaussDB(DWS) operations on resources more precisely, you can use the user management function of IAM to grant different operation permissions to users of different roles for fine-grained permission control.

#### **Policy Structure**

A fine-grained policy consists of a Version and a Statement. Each policy can have multiple statements.



#### Figure 2-3 Policy structure

#### **Policy Syntax**

In the navigation pane on the IAM console, click Policies and then click the name of a policy to view its details. The DWS ReadOnlyAccess policy is used as an example to describe the syntax of fine-grained policies.

#### Figure 2-4 Setting the policy

Policy Name	DWS Viewer	Scope	Project-level services
Туре	System-defined policy	Description	The read-only permissions to all DWS resources.
Policy Cor	itent		
			Visual Editor JSON
1 - {{ 2 - { 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 17 18 19 20 21 }	<pre>"Version": "1.1", "Statement": [</pre>		

"Version": "1.1",

```
"Depends": [],
"Statement": [
      {
             "Effect": "Allow",
             "Action": [
                   "dws:*:get*",
                   "dws:*:list*",
                   "ecs:*:get*",
                   "ecs:*:list*"
                   "vpc:*:get*",
                   "vpc:*:list*"
                   "evs:*:get*"
                   "evs:*:list*"
                   "mrs:*:get*",
                   "bss:*:list*"
                   "bss:*:get*"
            ]
      }
]
```

- **Version**: Distinguishes between role-based access control (RBAC) and finegrained policies.
  - 1.0: RBAC policies. An RBAC policy consists of permissions for an entire service. Users in a group with such a policy assigned are granted all of the permissions required for that service.
  - 1.1: Fine-grained policies. A fine-grained policy consists of API-based permissions for operations on specific resource types. Fine-grained policies, as the name suggests, allow for more fine-grained control than RBAC policies. Users granted permissions of such a policy can only perform specific operations on the corresponding service. Fine-grained policies include system and custom policies.
- **Depends**: dependency item.
- **Statement**: Permissions defined by a policy, including Effect and Action.
  - Effect

The value of **Effect** can be **Allow** or **Deny**. System policies contain only **Allow** statements. For custom policies containing both **Allow** and **Deny** statements, **Deny** statements take precedence over **Allow** statements.

– Action

Actions allowed on resources. An action is in the format of *Service name*.*Resource type*.*Action*. A policy can contain one or more actions. You can use a wildcard (\*) to indicate all services, resource types, or actions.

Example: **dws:cluster:create** (permission for create data warehouse clusters)

#### **List of Supported Actions**

When creating a custom policy on IAM, you can add the operations on GaussDB(DWS) resources or the permissions corresponding to RESTful APIs to the action list of the policy authorization statement so that the policy contains the operation permissions. The following table lists the GaussDB(DWS) permissions.

• REST API

For details about REST API actions supported by GaussDB(DWS), see **Permissions Policies and Supported Actions**.

#### • Management console operations

**Table 2-3** describes the GaussDB(DWS) operations on resources and corresponding permissions.

**NOTE** 

- Some GaussDB(DWS) permissions depend on the actions of ECS, VPC, EVS, ELB, MRS, and OBS. Grant GaussDB(DWS) the required service admin permissions.
- The table shows frequently used GaussDB(DWS) APIs, but some only allow projectbased authentication (IAM authentication) and not enterprise project authentication. To use these APIs, they must be configured on the IAM authentication page.

Table 2-3 GaussDB(DWS)	permissions
------------------------	-------------

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Creating a cluster	"dws:cluster:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "vpc:*:create*", "vpc:securityGroup Rules:delete", "vpc:ports:update", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:create*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining the cluster list	"dws:cluster:list"		<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining the details of a cluster	"dws:cluster:getDetail"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "vpc:vpcs:list", "vpc:securityGroup s:get"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Setting automated snapshot policy	"dws:cluster:setAutoma tedSnapshot"	"dws:backupPolicy: list"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Setting security parameters/ parameter groups	"dws:cluster:setSecurity Settings"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Restarting a Cluster	"dws:cluster:restart"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Scaling out clusters	"dws:cluster:scaleOut"	<pre>"dws:*:get*", "dws:cluster:scaleO utOrOpenAPIResiz e", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:update*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:get*",</pre>	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Scaling out or resizing a cluster via API	"dws:cluster:scaleOutOr OpenAPIResize"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list", "vpc:vpcs:list", "vpc:ports:create", "vpc:ports:update", "vpc:subnets:get", "vpc:subnets:updat e", "vpc:subnets:create ", "vpc:routers:get", "vpc:nouters:update ", "vpc:networks:creat e", "vpc:networks:get", "vpc:networks:upd ate", "ecs:serverInterface s:use", "ecs:cloudServerFla vors:get"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Resetting Your Password	"dws:cluster:resetPassw ord"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Deleting a cluster	"dws:cluster:delete"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:delete*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:delete*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Configuring maintenance windows	"dws:cluster:setMaintai nceWindow"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Binding EIPs	"dws:eip:operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "eip:*:get*", "eip:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Unbinding EIPs	"dws:eip:operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "eip:*:get*", "eip:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Creating DNS domain names	"dws:dns:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Releasing DNS domain names	"dws:dns:release"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Modifying DNS domain names	"dws:dns:edit"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Creating MRS connections	"dws:MRSConnection:cr eate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "mrs:*:get*", "mrs:*:list*", "mrs:cluster:create", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Updating MRS connections	"dws:MRSConnection:u pdate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "mrs:*:get*", "mrs::list*", "mrs:cluster:create" , "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Deleting MRS connections	"dws:MRSConnection:de lete"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "mrs:*:get*", "mrs:*:list*", "mrs:cluster:create" "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc::*:delete*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
MRS data source list	"dws:MRSSource:list"	"mrs:cluster:list", "mrs:tag:listResour ce", "mrs:tag:list", "dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Adding/Deleting tags	"dws:tag:addAndDelete "	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:openAPITag:u pdate", "dws:openAPITag:g etResourceTag",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Editing tags	"dws:tag:edit"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:openAPITag:u pdate", "dws:openAPITag:g etResourceTag",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Creating a snapshot	"dws:snapshot:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Obtaining the snapshot list	"dws:snapshot:list"		<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Viewing the snapshot list of a cluster	"dws:clusterSnapshot:lis t"	"dws:cluster:list", "dws:openAPIClust er:getDetail"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting snapshots	"dws:snapshot:delete"	"dws:snapshot:list"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Copying snapshots	"dws:snapshot:copy"	"dws:snapshot:list", "dws:snapshot:crea te"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Restoring data to a new cluster	"dws:cluster:restore"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:create*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Resizing a cluster	"dws:cluster:resize"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "vpc:*:delete*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Switchback	"dws:cluster:switchover"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying the ELB list	"dws:elb:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "elb:*:get*", "elb:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise roject</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Associating ELB	"dws:elb:bind"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "elb:*:get*", "elb:*:list*", "elb:*:create*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Disassociating ELB	"dws:elb:unbind"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*", "elb:*:list*", "elb:*:list*", "elb:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Querying snapshot configurations	"dws:snapshotConfig:lis t"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Updating a snapshot policy	"dws:backupPolicyDetai l:update"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting a snapshot policy	"dws:backupPolicy:delet e"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying a snapshot policy	"dws:backupPolicy:list"	"dws:cluster:list"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying cluster encryption information	"dws:clusterEncryptIn- fo:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "KMS Administrator"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Creating an agent	"dws:createAgency:crea te"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "security administrator"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Querying OBS bucket information	"dws:queryBuckets:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Adding a node	"dws:expandWithExiste dNodes:update"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "vpc:*:update*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Deleting a DR backup	"dws:disasterRecovery:d elete"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:delete*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Creating a DR backup	"dws:disasterRecovery:c reate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Other DR and backup operations	"dws:disasterRecovery:o therOperate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Querying DR and backup operations	"dws:disasterRecovery:g et"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Adding a CN	"dws:module:install"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Deleting a CN	"dws:module:uninstall"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Removing	"dws:clusterNodes:oper	"dws:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
nodes	ate"	"dws:*:list*"	
Updating the node alias	dws:instanceAliasName: update	dws:cluster:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Redistributing	"dws:redistribution:oper	"dws:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
data	ate"	"dws:*:list*",	
Querying	"dws:redistributionIn-	"dws:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
redistribution	fo:list"	"dws:*:list*",	
Stopping	"dws:redistribution:susp	"dws:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
redistribution	end"	"dws:*:list*",	
Resuming	"dws:redistribution:reco	"dws:*:get*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
redistribution	ver"	"dws:*:list*",	

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Adding disk capacity	"dws:disk:expand"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Scaling in a cluster	"dws:cluster:shrink"	"dws:*:get*", "dws::list*", "dws:createAgency: create", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs::list*", "vpc:*:delete*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:delete*", "evs::sget*, "evs::delete*", "evs::sget*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Querying product specifications	"dws:specProduct:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Performing a check before cluster creation	"dws:checkCluster:creat e"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*", "vpc:*:get*", "vpc:*:list*", "vpc:*:create*", "evs:*:get*", "evs:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Binding the management plane IP address	"dws:bindManagelp:ope rate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining user authorization	"dws:checkAuthorize:op erate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:checkSupport: operate"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Authorizing a user	"dws:authorize:operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:checkSupport: operate"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying user databases	"dws:userDatabase:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:checkSupport: operate"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying user schemas	"dws:schemas:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "dws:checkSupport: operate"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Querying user tables	"dws:tables:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Restoring tables	"dws:tableRestore:opera te"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Checking the name of the table to be restored	"dws:tableRestoreCheck :operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Checking whether a cluster supports fine-grained backup	"dws:checkSupport:oper ate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying the list of flavors that can be changed	"dws:supportFlavors:list "	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Changing the node flavor	"dws:specResize:operate "	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:create*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Stopping snapshot creation	"dws:snapshot:stop"	"dws:snapshot:list"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
----------------------------	---------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Terminating a session	"dws:dmsSession:termin ate"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Workload report operations	"dws:dmsWorkloadDiag nosisReport:create"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Modifying an	"dws:dmsAlarmRule:up	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
alarm rule	date"	"	
Enabling an	"dws:dmsAlarmRule:en	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
alarm rule	able"	"	
Enabling a	"dws:dmsClusterAlarm:	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
cluster alarm	enable"	"	
Disabling a	"dws:dmsClusterAlarm:	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
cluster alarm	disable"	"	
gRPC external service	"dws:dmsGrpcOuter:op eration"	"dws:dmsQuery:list ", "dws:cluster:setSec uritySettings", "obs:bucket:ListAll MyBuckets"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Adding a SQL probe	"dws:dmsProbe:add"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Modifying a SQL probe	"dws:dmsProbe:update"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting a SQL probe	"dws:dmsProbe:delete"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Enabling or disabling a SQL probe	"dws:dmsProbe:enable"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Creating a User panel	"dws:dmsUserBoard:cre ate"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Modifying a user panel	"dws:dmsUserBoard:up date"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting a user panel	"dws:dmsUserBoard:del ete"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Terminating a	"dws:dmsQuery:termina	"dws:dmsGrpcOute	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
query	te"	r:operation"	
Enabling or	"dws:dmsService:enable	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
disabling DMS	OrDisable"	"	
Modifying DMS storage configurations	"dws:dmsStorageConfig :modify"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining, or creating a DDL review	"dws:dmsDdlExamine:g etOrCreate"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Workload snapshot operations	"dws:dmsWorkloadDiag nosisSnapshot:create"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Creating an	"dws:dmsAlarmRule:ad	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
alarm rule	d"	"	
Deleting an	"dws:dmsAlarmRule:del	"dws:dmsQuery:list	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
alarm rule	ete"	"	

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Executing a SQL probe	"dws:dmsProbe:execute "	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Deleting a monitoring item	"dws:dmsPerformance Monitor:delete"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Enabling or disabling DMS monitoring metrics	"dws:dmsCollectItem:en ableOrDisable"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Modifying DMS monitoring configurations	"dws:dmsCollectConfig: modify"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Conditional query	"dws:dmsQuery:list"	"dws:cluster:list"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
OpenAPI Conditional Query	"dws:dmsOpenapiQuery :list"	"dws:cluster:list"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>projects</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Disabling an alarm rule	"dws:dmsAlarmRule:dis able"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Deleting an alarm record	"dws:dmsAlarmRecord: delete"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Checking SQL probes	"dws:dmsProbe:check"	"dws:dmsGrpcOute r:operation"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Adding a monitoring item	"dws:dmsPerformance Monitor:add"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Modifying monitoring metrics	"dws:dmsPerformance Monitor:update"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Downloading historical monitoring trend	"dws:dmsTrendHistory:d own"	"dws:dmsQuery:list "	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining cluster ring information	"dws:ring:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining the cluster process topology	"dws:processTopo:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Querying intelligent O&M information	"dws:operationalTask:ge t"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Intelligent O&M Operations	"dws:operationalTask:o perate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Adding, deleting, and modifying a logical cluster	"dws:logicalCluster:oper ate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying a logical cluster	"dws:logicalCluster:get"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Elastic logical cluster planning	"dws:logicalClusterPlan: operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:!list*", "dws:logicalCluster: *", "dws:cluster:scaleO ut", "iam:agencies:*", "iam:permissions:* Agency*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Creating an endpoint service	"dws:vpcEndpointServic e:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying the resource management list	"dws:workLoadManage r:get"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Resource management operations	"dws:workLoadManage r:operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
LTS operations	"dws:ltsAccess:operate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying LTS Information	"dws:ltsAccess:get"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying events	"dws:event:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying event specifications	"dws:event:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying event subscriptions	"dws:eventSub:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Creating an event subscription	"dws:eventSub:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Updating an event subscription	"dws:eventSub:update"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting an event subscription	"dws:eventSub:delete"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise roject</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying alarm statistics	"dws:alarmStatistic:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying alarm details	"dws:alarmDetail:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Querying alarm configurations	"dws:alarmConfig:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying alarm subscriptions	"dws:alarmSub:list"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Creating an alarm subscription	"dws:alarmSub:create"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise roject</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Updating an alarm subscription	"dws:alarmSub:update"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Deleting an alarm subscription	"dws:alarmSub:delete"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Delivering cluster upgrade operations (upgrade, rollback, submission, and retry)	"dws:cluster:doUpdate"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying the available upgrade paths of a cluster	"dws:cluster:getUpgrad ePaths"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Querying cluster upgrade records	"dws:cluster:getUpgrad eRecords"	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise roject</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Starting a cluster	"dws:cluster:startCluster "	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:start", "ecs:*:stop"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Stopping a cluster	"dws:cluster:stopCluster "	"dws:*:get*", "dws:*:list*", "ecs:*:get*", "ecs:*:list*", "ecs:*:start", "ecs:*:stop"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Obtaining discount nodes of a cluster	"dws:cluster:listDiscount Node"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining tags	"dws:openAPItag:list"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:         <ul> <li>Project</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Service EPS list	"dws:service:listEps"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Supported:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining the DR information	"dws:disasterRecovery:g et"	"dws:*:*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Cluster restoration check	"dws:cluster:checkResto re"	"dws:*:*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Static alarm list	"dws:alarmStatistic:list"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterpri se Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Obtaining static resource information	"dws:service:getResourc eStatistics"	"dws:*:*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Alarm details list	"dws:alarmDetail:list"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Obtaining the cluster details	"dws:openAPICluster:ge tDetail"	"dws:*:*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Cluster event specifications	"dws:eventSpec:list"	"dws:*:list*"	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Project</li> </ul>
Cluster DR list	"dws:cluster:listDisaster Recovery"	"dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Not supported</li> <li>Enterprise</li> <li>Project</li> <li>Scope:</li> <li>Projects</li> </ul>

Operation	Permission	Dependent Permission	Scope
Checking the alarm data overview	"dws:alarm:listStatistics "	"dws:*:list*",	<ul> <li>Not supported:         <ul> <li>Enterprise projects</li> </ul> </li> <li>Supported:         <ul> <li>Projects</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

#### Authorization Using the Fine-Grained Permission Policy

**Step 1** Log in to the IAM console as and create a user-defined policy.

Refer to the following to create the policy:

- Use the IAM administrator account, that is, the user in the admin user group, because only the IAM administrator has the permissions to create users and user groups and modify user group permissions.
- GaussDB(DWS) is a project-level service, so its **Scope** must be set to **Project-level service**. If this policy is required to take effect for multiple projects, authorization is required to each project.
- Two GaussDB(DWS) policy templates are preconfigured on IAM. When creating a custom policy, you can select either of the following templates and modify the policy authorization statement based on the template:
  - **DWS Admin**: has all execution permissions on GaussDB(DWS).
  - **DWS Viewer**: has the read-only permission on GaussDB(DWS).
- You can add permissions corresponding to GaussDB(DWS) operations or RESTful APIs listed in List of Supported Actions to the action list in the policy authorization statement, so that the policy can obtain the permissions.
   For example, if dws:cluster:create is added to the action list of a policy statement, the policy has the permission to create clusters.
- If you want to use other services, grant related operation permissions on these services. For details, see the help documents of related services.
   For example, when creating a data warehouse cluster, you need to configure the VPC to which the cluster belongs. To obtain the VPC list, add permission vpc:\*:get\* to the policy statement.
- **Step 2** Create a user group.
- **Step 3** Add users to the user group and grant the new custom policy to the user group so that users in it can obtain the permissions defined by the policy.
  - ----End

#### **Authentication Logic**

If a user is granted permissions of multiple policies or of only one policy containing both Allow and Deny statements, then authentication starts from the

Deny statements. The following figure shows the authentication logic for resource access.



Figure 2-5 Authentication logic

#### **NOTE**

The actions in each policy bear the OR relationship.

- 1. A user accesses the system and makes an operation request.
- 2. The system evaluates all the permissions policies assigned to the user.
- 3. In these policies, the system looks for explicit deny permissions. If the system finds an explicit deny that applies, it returns a decision of Deny, and the authentication ends.
- 4. If no explicit deny is found, the system looks for allow permissions that would apply to the request. If the system finds an explicit allow permission that applies, it returns a decision of Allow, and the authentication ends.
- 5. If no explicit allow permission is found, IAM returns a decision of Deny, and the authentication ends.

## 2.5 RBAC Syntax of RBAC Policies

#### **Policy Structure**

An RBAC policy consists of a Version, a Statement, and Depends.

#### Figure 2-6 RBAC policy structure



#### **Policy Syntax**

When selecting a policy for a user group, click  $\checkmark$  below the policy to view the details of the policy. The **DWS Administrator** policy is used as an example to describe the syntax of RBAC policies.

#### Figure 2-7 Syntax of RBAC Policies



Table 2-4 Syntax of RBAC Policies

Parameter	Meaning	Value
Version	Policy version	The value is fixed to <b>1.0</b> .

Parameter		Meaning	Value
Statement	Action	Operations to be performed on GaussDB(DWS)	Format: <i>Service</i> name:Resource type:Operation.
			<b>dws:dws:*</b> : Permissions for performing all operations on all resource types in GaussDB(DWS).
	Effect	Whether the operation defined in an action is allowed	<ul><li>Allow</li><li>Deny</li></ul>
Depends	catalog	Name of the service to which dependencies of a policy belong	Service name Example: <b>BASE</b>
	display_na me	Name of a dependent policy	Policy name Example: <b>Server</b> <b>Administrator</b>

#### D NOTE

When using RBAC for authentication, pay attention to the **Depends** parameter and grant other dependent permissions at the same time.

For example, the **DWS Administrator** permission depends on the **Server Administrator** and **Tenant Guest** permissions. When granting the **DWS Administrator** permission to users, you also need to grant the two dependent permissions to the users.

# **3** Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

### 3.1 Creating a Dedicated GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

## 3.1.1 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster

To use Huawei Cloud GaussDB(DWS), create a data warehouse cluster first.

This section describes how to create a data warehouse cluster on the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### 

- You are advised not to use clusters with low specifications, such as clusters with 16 GB memory and 4-core vCPUs, in the production environment. Otherwise, resource overload may occur.
- To ensure load balancing and high availability for the cluster and prevent service interruptions, you are not advised to connect services directly to a single CN. Instead, configure **load balancing** to balance the connection to each CN.
- The GaussDB(DWS) clusters under the same account are physically isolated and cannot share data.
- To ensure stable service running, read **Before You Start: Performance Management Requirements** and **Before You Start: High Availability and Reliability Requirements** after creating a cluster.

#### **Preparations Before Creating a Cluster**

• You have evaluated the flavor of cluster nodes.

You can select the number of nodes by data volume, service load, and performance. More nodes bring you stronger storage and compute capabilities.

When first using GaussDB(DWS), you can create a cluster with a smaller flavor. Then, you can adjust the cluster scale and node flavor based on the

data volume and service load changes without interrupting services. For details, see **Scaling Out a Cluster**.

• Determine the number of nodes that can be used by users.

The number of nodes that can be used by users must meet the following requirements. Otherwise, the system displays a message indicating that the cluster cannot be created.

The number of available nodes depends on the product type you choose. A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) has only one node. For other types of clusters, the number of nodes can be greater than or equal to 3.

#### **Creating a Cluster**

Step 1 Go to the page for creating a GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

- **Step 2** Choose **Region** and select the actual working region of the cluster node.
- **Step 3** Select an AZ. You can select **Single AZ** or **Multi-AZ** as required.

For more information, see **Regions and AZs**.

#### **NOTE**

- Multi-AZ clusters are supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0.100 or later.
- The **Multi-AZ** option is displayed only if the number of AZs in the selected region is greater than or equal to 3. If this condition is not met, only a single-AZ cluster can be created.
- For a multi-AZ cluster, only three AZs can be selected at a time so far. Server nodes are evenly distributed among the three AZs.
- The numbers of nodes in a multi-AZ cluster must be a multiple of 3.
- A multi-AZ cluster only allows for up to 2 DNs on a single node.

#### **Step 4** Set data warehouse parameters. For details, see Table 3-1.

#### **NOTE**

- The number of nodes in a new cluster cannot exceed the quota that can be used by a user or 256. If the node quota is insufficient, click **Increase quota** to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota.
- After a cluster is created, its type cannot be changed. For details about the differences between product types, see **Data Warehouse Types**.

#### Figure 3-1 Configuring node parameters

Data Warehouse Configuration		
Version		
Computing In-Memory(CIM) Decoupled Storage And Compute (5)		
Storage Type		
Cloud SSD Local SSD (3)		
Deployment Mode		
Cluster Single-node		
CPU Architecture		
Kanpeng x86		
Node Flavor		
Flavor Name	vCPUs   Memory	Hot Storage
dwsk2.hustarge.4.kc1     Trial only. Not for production	4 vCPUs   16 GB	20-2000 GB SSD
dwsk2.x3arpe Trial only. Not for production	4 vCPUs   32 GB	20-2000 GB SSD
dvisk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1	8 vCPUs   32 GB	100-4000 GB SSD
O dvisk2.2xlarge	8 vCPUs   64 GB	100-4000 GB SSD
dvsk2.h.4darge.4.kc1	16 vCPUs   64 G8	100~8000 GB 55D
ovsk2.4odarge	16 vCPUs   125 GB	100~8000 GB 55D
Analytik Balance Alex	21-072 M 1 22 CB	100-1000 08 550
Sold-out node flavor in the current AZ ~		
Hot Storage		
Notes		
- 3 +		
You can still create 1,024.00 nodes. You can apply for a higher quota as needed.		

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Resource	<ul> <li>Product type. It can be:</li> <li>Coupled storage and compute: The storage-compute coupled data warehouse provides enterprise-level data warehouse services with high performance, high scalability, high reliability, high security, low latency, and easy O&amp;M. It is capable of data analysis at a scale of 2,048 nodes and 20 petabytes of data and is suitable for converged analysis services that integrate databases, warehouses, marts, and lakes.</li> <li>Decoupled storage and compute: The storage-compute decoupled data warehouse is designed with a cloud native architecture that separates storage and compute. It also features hierarchical auto scaling for computing and storage, as well as multi-logical cluster shared storage technology (Virtual Warehouse or VW). These capabilities allow for computing isolation and concurrent expansion to handle varying loads, making it an</li> </ul>	-
Storage Type	scenarios.	_
Storage Type	<ul> <li>Cloud SSD</li> <li>Extreme SSD: suitable for workloads that demand super-high bandwidth and super-low latency.</li> <li>Extreme SSD V2: ultra-high-performance SSD EVS disks dedicated for latency-sensitive mission-critical applications.</li> <li>Local SSD</li> <li>NOTE         <ul> <li>Local SSD disks do not support disk scaleout. For more information, see Disk Types and Performance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Deployment Mode (storage- compute coupling)	<ul> <li>The options are:</li> <li>Cluster: The storage-compute coupled data warehouse is capable of data analysis at a scale of 2,048 nodes and 20 petabytes of data. It is suitable for converged analysis services that integrate databases, warehouses, marts, and lakes.</li> <li>Single-node: A standalone data warehouse does not provide HA capabilities. It can be restored by the automatic reconstruction of ECS, and its data reliability is ensured by the EVS multi-copy mechanism. It is less expensive than other specifications. It is a good choice for lightweight services.</li> </ul>	Cluster
CPU Architecture	<ul> <li>The CPU architecture includes:</li> <li>x86</li> <li>Kunpeng</li> <li>NOTE The x86 and Kunpeng architectures differ only in their underlying structure, which is not sensible to the application layer. Both architectures use the same SQL syntax. If you need to create a cluster and find that x86 servers are not enough, you can opt for the Kunpeng architecture.</li></ul>	-
Node Flavor	Select the desired node flavor based on service requirements. Each node flavor displays the vCPU, memory, and recommended application scenario. For more information about the node flavors supported by GaussDB(DWS) and their prices, see the GaussDB(DWS) pricing details. For details about the node flavors supported by GaussDB(DWS), see Data Warehouse Specifications.	dws.dc.4xlarge

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Hot storage	Available storage capacity of each node. NOTE	-
	• The storage capacity you apply for has the necessary file system overhead, which includes index nodes and the space required for database running. The storage space must be an integer multiple of 100.	
	• 200 GB per node is the actual storage capacity for service data. For example, if the number of nodes is set to 3, the total resource capacity is 600 GB.	
	• By default, tablespaces are automatically created when you configure cold and hot data storage. You do not need to manually create tablespaces. This feature is supported only in clusters of 8.1.3 and later versions.	
Nodes	Specify the number of nodes in the cluster.	3
	The number of nodes ranges from 3 to 256.	
Total	Displays the total capacity of a cluster.	-
	The storage capacity of each flavor is the actual database space used for storing data. The displayed storage capacity has deducted the disk space consumed by backups and RAIDs.	

#### Step 5 Click Next: Configure Network.

**Step 6** Configure the network.

Table 3-2	Network	parameters
-----------	---------	------------

Parameter	Description	Example Value
VPC	Specify a virtual private network for nodes in a cluster to isolate networks of different services.	vpc-dws
	If you create a data warehouse cluster for the first time and have not configured the VPC, click <b>View VPC</b> . On the VPC management console that is displayed, create a VPC that satisfies your needs.	
	For how to create a VPC, see <b>Creating a VPC</b> in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i> .	
	After selecting a VPC from the drop-down list, click <b>View VPC</b> to enter the VPC management console and view the detailed information about the VPC.	
	You can click <sup>C</sup> to refresh the options in the <b>VPC</b> drop-down list. <b>NOTE</b>	
Subnet	Specify a VPC subnet.	subnet-dws
	A subnet provides dedicated network resources that are isolated from other networks, improving network security.	
	<b>NOTE</b> After a cluster is created, the subnet cannot be modified. If you need to modify the subnet, you can restore the snapshot of the cluster to a new cluster. The data of the new cluster is the same as that of the old cluster, and the subnet can be modified when the new cluster is created.	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Security Group	Specify a VPC security group.	Automatic
	A security group restricts access rules to enhance security when GaussDB(DWS) and other services access each other.	creation
	<ul> <li>Automatic creation         If Automatic creation is selected, the             system automatically creates a default             security group. This option is selected by             default.     </li> </ul>	
	The rule of the default security group is as follows: The outbound allows all access requests, while the inbound is open only to the database port that you set to connect to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.	
	The format of the default security group name is dws-< <i>Cluster_name</i> >- < <i>Cluster_database_port</i> >, for example, <b>dws- dws-demo-8000</b> .	
	<b>NOTE</b> If the quotas of the security group and the security group rule are insufficient, an error message will be displayed after you submit the cluster creation application. Select an existing group and retry.	
	<ul> <li>Manual creation         You can also log in to the VPC management             console to manually create a security group.             Then, go back to the page for creating data             warehouse clusters, click</li></ul>	
	connect to the cluster, you need to add an inbound rule to the new security group to grant the access permission to the database port of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. The following is an example of an inbound rule	
	- Protocol: TCP	
	<ul> <li>Port: 8000. Use the database port set when creating the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. This port is used for receiving client connections to GaussDB(DWS).</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Source: Select IP address and use the host IP address of the client host, for example, 192.168.0.10/32.</li> </ul>	
	After a GaussDB(DWS) cluster is created, you can change the security group. You can	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
	also add, delete, or modify security group rules in the current security group. For details, see <b>Modifying a Security Group</b> . Changing the security group of a cluster may cause brief service disruption. Exercise caution when performing this operation. For better network performance, do not select more than five security groups.	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
EIP	<ul> <li>Specify whether users can use a client to connect to a cluster's database over the Internet. The following methods are supported:</li> <li>Do not use: The EIP is not required. If GaussDB(DWS) is used in the production environment, first bind it to ELB, and then bind it to an EIP on the ELB page.</li> </ul>	Buy now
	• <b>Buy now</b> : specify the EIP bandwidth, and an EIP with dedicated bandwidth will be bound to the cluster. The EIP can be used to access the cluster over the Internet. The bandwidth name of an automatically assigned EIP starts with the cluster name.	
	• <b>Specify</b> : A specified EIP is bound to the cluster. If no available EIPs are displayed in the drop-down list, click <b>View EIP</b> to go to the EIP page and create one that meets your needs. You can set the IP address type and bandwidth as required.	
	NOTE	
	<ul> <li>If you use the EIP binding function for the first time in each project of each region, the system prompts you to create the <b>DWSAccessVPC</b> agency to authorize GaussDB(DWS) to access VPC. After the authorization is successful, GaussDB(DWS) can switch to a healthy VM when the VM bound with the EIP becomes faulty.</li> </ul>	
	• By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with Security Administrator permissions can query and create agencies. By default, the IAM users in those accounts cannot query or create agencies. When the users use the EIP, the system makes the binding function unavailable. Contact a user with the <b>DWS Administrator</b> permissions to authorize the agency on the current page. For details, see <b>Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources</b> .	
	• <b>Do not use</b> indicates disabling access to the cluster over the public network. After a cluster is created, if you want to access it over the public network, bind an EIP to the cluster and create a public network domain name. For details, see <b>Creating a Public Network Domain Name</b> .	
	<ul> <li>If GaussDB(DWS) is used for the production environment, the new GaussDB(DWS) cluster needs to be bound to ELB and then to EIP. Select <b>Do not use</b> here.</li> </ul>	
Bandwidth	When <b>EIP</b> is set to <b>Buy now</b> , you need to specify the bandwidth of the EIP. The value ranges from 1 Mbit/s to 100 Mbit/s.	50 Mbit/s

Parameter	Description	Example Value
ELB	Specifies whether ELB is bound. With ELB health checks, CN requests of a cluster can be quickly forwarded to normal CNs. If a CN is faulty, the workload can be immediately shifted to a healthy node, minimizing cluster access faults. Currently, ELBs can be bound in the same VPC or across VPCs.	Specify
	• <b>Do not use</b> : The load balancer is not used. If GaussDB(DWS) is used in the production environment, first bind it to ELB, and then bind it to an EIP on the ELB page.	
	• <b>Specify</b> : Specify an ELB to be bound to the cluster. If no available ELBs are displayed in the drop-down list, click <b>Create ELB</b> to go to the ELB page and create one as needed.	
	<b>WARNING</b> Configure load balancing to ensure load balancing and high availability of the cluster and prevent service interruptions. You are not advised to directly connect services to a single CN.	

#### Step 7 Click Next: Configure Advanced Settings.

**Step 8** Configure cluster parameters.

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Cluster Name	Set the name of the data warehouse cluster.	DWS-demo
	Enter 4 to 64 characters. Only letters (case-insensitive), digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_) are allowed. The name must start with a letter.	
Cluster Version	Displays the version of the database instance installed in the cluster. The example version number is for reference only.	-
Default Database	The default database name of the cluster is <b>gaussdb</b> . <b>NOTE</b> This name cannot be changed.	gaussdb

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Administrator	Set the database administrator name.	dbadmin
Account	The administrator username must:	
	<ul> <li>Consist of lowercase letters, digits, or underscores.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Start with a lowercase letter or an underscore.</li> </ul>	
	Contain 6 to 64 characters.	
	<ul> <li>The username cannot be a keyword of the GaussDB(DWS) database. For details about the keywords of the GaussDB(DWS) database, see "Keyword" in the Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide.</li> </ul>	
Administrator Password	Set the password of the database administrator account.	-
	The password complexity requirements are as follows:	
	• Consists of 12 to 32 characters.	
	<ul> <li>Cannot be the username or the username spelled backwards.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Must contain at least three of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters (~!?,.:;_(){}[]/&lt;&gt;@# %^&amp;*+ \=-)</li> </ul>	
	Passes the weak password check.	
	<b>NOTE</b> Change the password regularly and keep it secure.	
Confirm Password	Enter the database administrator password again.	-
Database Port	Specify the port used when the client or application connects to the database in the cluster.	8000
	The port number ranges from 8000 to 30000.	
	<b>NOTE</b> The database port of a created cluster cannot be changed. You can specify the database port only when creating a cluster.	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
IPv6	Specify whether to enable the IPv6 dual stack for the cluster. If this function is enabled, a client or application can connect to the database using an IPv6 address.	-
	<b>NOTE</b> To enable IPv6, the following conditions must be met:	
	<ul> <li>The subnet configured in Step 6 is an IPv6 dual-stack subnet.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>The cluster supports IPv6 addresses and a maximum of three NICs.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>The cluster version must be 8.2.1.210 or later.</li> </ul>	
Time Zone	You can set the time zone for the tenant cluster, including the system OS time zone and cluster data warehouse time zone.	-

**Step 9** Configure the enterprise project to which the cluster belongs. You can configure this parameter only when the Enterprise Project Management service is enabled. The default value is **default**.

An enterprise project facilitates project-level management and grouping of cloud resources and users.

You can select the default enterprise project **default** or other existing enterprise projects. To create an enterprise project, log in to the Enterprise Management console. For details, see the *Enterprise Management User Guide*.

- **Step 10** Configure advanced settings. Select **Default** to keep the default values of the advanced parameters. You can also select **Custom** to modify the values.
  - Backup Device

Set the backup device used by the current cluster. For details about the parameter configuration principles, see **Table 3-4**.

Table 3-4 Automated	l snapshot	parameters
---------------------	------------	------------

Parameter	Description
Backup Device	Select <b>OBS</b> or <b>NFS</b> from the drop-down list.
NFS backup file system address (NFS parameter)	NFS shared IP address. Enter the IP address of the SFS shared path. After the mounting is successful, a mount directory is created in the <b>/var/chroot/nfsbackup</b> directory of the cluster instance by default.

#### CNs

CNs, or Coordinators, receive access requests from the clients and return the execution results. They also split and distribute tasks to the Datanodes (DNs) for parallel execution.

The value ranges from 3 to the number of cluster nodes. The maximum value is **20** and the default value is **3**. In a large-scale cluster, you are advised to deploy multiple CNs.

#### • Tag

A tag is a key-value pair used to identify a cluster. For details about the keys and values, see **Table 3-5**. By default, no tag is added to the cluster.

For more information about tags, see **Overview**.

Table 3-5	Tag parameters
-----------	----------------

Par ame ter	Description	Exampl e Value
Key	<ul> <li>The options are as follows:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag key or an existing resource tag key from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>To add a predefined tag, you need to create one on TMS and select it from the drop-down list of Tag key. You can click</li> <li>View predefined tags to enter the Predefined Tags page of TMS. Then, click Create Tag to create a predefined tag. For more information, see section Creating Predefined Tags in the <i>Tag Management Service User Guide</i>.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Enter a tag key in the text box. A tag key can contain a maximum of 128 characters. It cannot be an empty string or start or end with a space. The value cannot contain the following characters: *&lt;&gt;  /</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>A key must be unique in a given cluster.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	key01
Valu e	<ul> <li>You can select:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag value or resource tag value from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> </ul>	value01
	<ul> <li>Enter a tag value in the text box. A tag value can contain a maximum of 255 characters, which can be an empty string. It cannot start or end with a space. The value cannot contain the following characters: *&lt;&gt;  /</li> </ul>	

#### • Encrypt DataStore

If this function is enabled, Key Management Service (KMS) encrypts the cluster and the cluster's snapshot data.

When you enable database encryption for each project in each region for the first time, the system displays a **Create Agency** dialog box. Click **Yes** to create

**DWSAccessKMS** to authorize GaussDB(DWS) to access KMS. If you click **No**, the encryption function is not enabled. Select the created KMS key from the **KMS Key Name** drop-down list.

#### NOTICE

- Only users with the Tenant Admin permission can view and toggle the **Encrypt DataStore** switch.
- By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with Security
   Administrator permissions can query and create agencies. IAM users
   under an account do not have the permission to query or create agencies
   by default. Contact a user with that permission and complete the
   authorization on the current page. For details, see Allowing
   GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources.
- The database encryption function cannot be disabled once it is enabled.
- After Encrypt DataStore is enabled, the key cannot be disabled, deleted, or frozen when being used. Otherwise, the cluster becomes abnormal and the database becomes unavailable.
- After database encryption is enabled, you cannot use open APIs to restore created snapshots.
- Method 1: Select a key name. You can to share KMS resources with other members. After , members can select the shared KMS resource from the key source.

Encrypt DataStore	0		
Key Source	Choose from keys	•	
KMS Key	KMS-4974-test	•	C View KMS Key 🕐
	The encryption keys in use cannot be disabled	delete	ed or frozen. Otherwise, DB instances will become unavailable

- Method 2: Enter the key ID. Enter the key ID used for authorizing the current tenant..

When you grant permissions on the **Creating a Grant** page, the authorized object must be an account instead of a user. The authorized operations must at least contain **Querying key details**, **Encrypting data**, and **Decrypting data**.

Encrypt DataStore	0	
Key Source	Enter key 💌	]
Key ID		

Step 11 Click Next: Confirm.

#### **NOTE**

If the number of requested nodes, vCPU (cores), or memory (GB) exceed the user's remaining quota, a warning dialog box is displayed, indicating that the quota is insufficient and displaying the detailed remaining quota and the current quota application. You can click **Increase quota** in the warning dialog box to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota. Once approved, we will update your resource quota accordingly and send you a notification. For details, see **Quotas**.

**Step 12** Click **Buy Now**. If the billing mode is yearly/monthly billing, click **Buy Now**. The payment page is displayed.

After the submission is successful, the creation starts. Click **Back to Cluster List**. The cluster management page is displayed. The initial status of the cluster is **Creating**. Cluster creation takes some time. Wait for a while. Clusters in the **Available** state are ready for use.

#### D NOTE

• For load balancing and high availability purposes, and to prevent single CN failures, a cluster must be bound to ELB. For details, see **Binding and Unbinding ELBs for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.

----End

#### Handling the Cluster Creation Failure

If a cluster fails to be created, go to the GaussDB(DWS) console and choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** to view the cluster status and the cause of failure.

#### Viewing the cause of creation failure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, locate the cluster whose **Cluster Status** is **Creation failed**.
- **Step 3** Click <sup>(2)</sup> in the **Cluster Status** column to view the cause of the cluster creation failure.

If the fault persists, contact technical support.

----End

#### Deleting a cluster that fails to be created

You can delete a cluster that fails to be created if you do not need it. Before deletion, check the cause of creation failure.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, locate the row containing the failed cluster to be deleted, and choose **More** > **Delete**.
- **Step 3** In the displayed dialog box, confirm the deletion. You can determine whether to perform the following operations:
  - Create a snapshot for the cluster.

If the cluster status is normal, click **Create Snapshot**. On the snapshot list page, click **Create Snapshot** to create a snapshot for the cluster to be deleted. For details, see **Manual Snapshots**. In the row of a cluster, choose **More** > **Delete**.

- Delete associated resources.
  - Release the EIP bound to the cluster.

If an EIP is bound to the cluster, you are advised to select **EIP** to release the EIP. If you do not release the EIP, you can bind it to another cluster or cloud resource and it will be billed based on the EIP pricing rule of VPC.

- Delete automated snapshots.
- Delete manual snapshots.

If you have created a manual snapshot, you can select **Manual Snapshot** to delete it.

**Step 4** After confirming that the information is correct, enter **DELETE** or click **Auto Enter** and click **OK** to delete the cluster. The cluster status in the cluster list will change to **Deleting** and the cluster deletion progress will be displayed.

If the cluster to be deleted uses an automatically created security group that is not used by other clusters, the security group is automatically deleted when the cluster is deleted.

----End

# 3.1.2 Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Decoupled Cluster

storage-compute decoupled uses the cloud-native, cost-effective architecture with decoupled storage and computing. It supports hot and cold data analysis, elastic scaling of storage and computing, unlimited computing power and capacity, and pay-per-use pricing. It is applicable to OLAP analysis scenarios.

This section describes how to create a storage-compute decoupled cluster on the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### 

- You are advised not to use clusters with low specifications, such as clusters with 16 GB memory and 4-core vCPUs, in the production environment. Otherwise, resource overload may occur.
- To ensure load balancing and high availability for the cluster and prevent service interruptions, you are not advised to connect services directly to a single CN. Instead, configure load balancing to balance the connection to each CN.

#### **Preparations Before Creating a Cluster**

• You have evaluated the flavor of cluster nodes.

You can select the number of nodes by data volume, service load, and performance. More nodes bring you stronger storage and compute capabilities.

When first using GaussDB(DWS), you can create a cluster with a smaller flavor. Then, you can adjust the cluster scale and node flavor based on the data volume and service load changes without interrupting services. For details, see **Scaling Out a Cluster**.

• Determine the number of nodes that can be used by users.

Ensure that the number of available nodes is greater than or equal to 3. Otherwise, the system displays a message indicating that the cluster cannot be created.

#### **Creating a Cluster**

- Step 1 Go to the page for creating a GaussDB(DWS) cluster.
- **Step 2** Select a region and an AZ.
- Step 3 Configure Resource, CPU Architecture, and Node Flavor.

**NOTE** 

- The number of nodes in a new cluster cannot exceed the quota that can be used by a user or 256. If the node quota is insufficient, click **Increase quota** to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota.
- If you have yearly/monthly nodes that meet service requirements, you are advised to use these nodes first to save costs. You can select **Yearly/Monthly** for **Billing Mode**.

#### Figure 3-2 Configuring node parameters

Data Warehouse Configuration			
Version			
Computing In-Memory(CIM) Decoupled Storage And Compute			
CPU Aschilecture			
Kunpeng X28			
Node Plavor			
Playor Name	vCPUs   Memory	Hot Storage	
4U16G.4DPU Trial only. Not for production	4 vCPUs   16 GB	40-2000 GB SSD	
O 80326-80PU	8 vCPUs   32 GB	100-4000 GB SSD	
O 16064G.160PU	16 vCPUs   64 GB	100-0000 G8 SSD	
O 3201280.320PU	32 vCPUs   128 GB	100-16000 GB SSD	
Sold out node flavor in the current AZ $^{\prime\prime}$			
Hot Storage (with Cache)			
- 900 + CB per node			
Cold Data			
You are advised to store hot and cold data in separate OBS backets, which are billed on a pay-per-ase basis.			
Nodess			
3 + You can still create 1,624.00 nodes. You can apply for a higher quots as needed.			
Total			
40960.409/0   12 vCP/0s   43 GB Memory   366.00 GB Hot Storage (with Cache)			

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Resource	The options are as follows: <b>Decoupled Storage and Compute</b> : The storage-compute decoupled data warehouse is designed with a cloud native architecture that separates storage and compute. It also features hierarchical auto scaling for computing and storage, as well as multi-logical cluster shared storage technology (Virtual Warehouse or VW). These capabilities allow for computing isolation and concurrent expansion to handle varying loads, making it an ideal choice for OLAP analysis scenarios.	-
CPU Architecture	<ul> <li>The following CPU architectures can be selected:</li> <li>x86</li> <li>Kunpeng</li> <li>NOTE The x86 and Kunpeng architectures differ only in their underlying structure, which is not sensible to the application layer. Both architectures use the same SQL syntax. If you need to create a cluster and find that x86 servers are not enough, you can opt for the Kunpeng architecture. </li> </ul>	-
Node Flavor	Select a node flavor. Each node flavor shows the vCPU, memory, and recommended application scenario. For more information about the node flavors supported by GaussDB(DWS) and their prices, see the GaussDB(DWS) pricing details. For details about the node flavors supported by GaussDB(DWS), see Data Warehouse Specifications.	-
Hot Storage (with Cache)	<ul> <li>Available storage capacity of each node.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>The storage capacity you apply for has the necessary file system overhead, which includes index nodes and the space required for database running. If the idle space is less than 100 GB, scale-out may fail due to insufficient running space.</li> <li>The displayed 200GB/node includes the storage for cache. For example, if you create 3 nodes, each having 200 GB capacity, the total resource capacity is 600 GB, and the actual storage space available to you is 300 GB.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-

#### Table 3-6 Node configuration parameters

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Cold Data	Store data in separate OBS buckets, which are billed on a pay-per-use basis.	-
Nodes	Specify the number of nodes in the cluster. The number of nodes ranges from 3 to 256.	3
Total	Display the cluster's total capacity. The storage capacity of each flavor includes the storage for cache. The displayed storage capacity includes the disk space consumed by backups and RAIDs.	-

#### Step 4 Click Next: Configure Network.

**Step 5** Configure the network.

Table	3-7	Network	parameters
-------	-----	---------	------------

Parameter	Description	Example Value		
VPC	Specify a VPC to isolate the cluster's network.	vpc-dws		
	If you create a data warehouse cluster for the first time and have not configured the VPC, click <b>View VPC</b> . On the VPC management console that is displayed, create a VPC as needed.			
	For how to create a VPC, see <b>Creating a VPC</b> in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i> .			
	After selecting a VPC from the drop-down list, click <b>View VPC</b> to enter the VPC management console and view the detailed information about the VPC.			
	You can click $^{f C}$ to refresh the options in the VPC drop-down list.			
Subnet	Specify a VPC subnet.	subnet-dws		
	A subnet provides dedicated network resources that are isolated from other networks, improving network security.			
Parameter	meter Description			
-----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------	--	--
Security	Specify a VPC security group.	Automatic		
Group	A security group restricts access rules to enhance security when GaussDB(DWS) and other services access each other.	creation		
	• Automatic creation If <b>Automatic creation</b> is selected, the system automatically creates a default security group. This option is selected by default.			
	The rule of the default security group is as follows: The outbound allows all access requests, while the inbound is open only to the database port that you set to connect to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.			
	The format of the default security group's name is dws-< <i>cluster name</i> >-< <i>database port</i> <i>of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster</i> >, for example, <b>dws-dws-demo-8000</b> .			
	<b>NOTE</b> If the quotas of the security group and the security group rule are insufficient, an error message will be displayed after you submit the cluster creation application. You can select an existing group and retry.			
	• Manual creation You can also log in to the to manually create a security group. Then, go back to the page for creating data warehouse clusters, click			
	<sup>C</sup> next to the <b>Security Group</b> drop-down list to refresh the page, and select the new security group.			
	To enable the GaussDB(DWS) client to connect to the cluster, you need to add an inbound rule to the new security group to grant the access permission to the database port of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. The following is an example of an inbound rule			
	- Protocol: TCP.			
	<ul> <li>Port: 8000. Use the database port set when creating the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. This port is used for receiving client connections to GaussDB(DWS).</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>Source: Select IP address and use the host IP address of the client host, for example, 192.168.0.10/32.</li> <li>After a GaussDB(DWS) cluster is created, you can change the security group. You</li> </ul>			

Parameter	Description	Example Value
	can also add, delete, or modify security group rules in the current security group. For details, see <b>Modifying a Security</b> Group.	

Parameter	Description	Example Value
EIP	Specify whether users can use a client to connect to a cluster's database over the Internet. The following methods are supported:	Buy now
	• <b>Do not use</b> : Do not specify any EIPs here. If GaussDB(DWS) is used in the production environment, first bind it to ELB, and then bind it to an EIP on the ELB page.	
	• <b>Buy now</b> : Specify the EIP bandwidth, and an EIP with dedicated bandwidth will be bound to the cluster. The EIP can be used to access the cluster over the Internet. The bandwidth name of an automatically assigned EIP starts with the cluster name.	
	• <b>Specify</b> : Specify an EIP to be bound to the cluster. If no available EIPs are displayed in the drop-down list, click <b>View EIP</b> to go to the EIP page and create one that meets your needs. You can set the IP address type and bandwidth as required.	
	NOTE	
	<ul> <li>If you use the EIP binding function for the first time in each project of each region, the system prompts you to create the <b>DWSAccessVPC</b> agency to authorize GaussDB(DWS) to access VPC. After the authorization is successful, GaussDB(DWS) can switch to a healthy VM when the VM bound with the EIP becomes faulty.</li> </ul>	
	• By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with <b>Security Administrator</b> permissions can query and create agencies. By default, the IAM users in those accounts cannot query or create agencies. When the users use the EIP, the system makes the binding function unavailable. Contact a user with the <b>DWS Administrator</b> permissions to authorize the agency on the current page. For details, see <b>Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage</b> <b>Resources</b> .	
	<ul> <li>Do not use indicates disabling access to the cluster over the public network. After a cluster is created, if you want to access it over the public network, bind an EIP to the cluster and create a public network domain name. For details, see Creating a Public Network Domain Name.</li> <li>If GaussDB(DWS) is used for the production environment, the new GaussDB(DWS) cluster</li> </ul>	
	needs to be bound to ELB and then to EIP. Select <b>Do not use</b> here.	
Bandwidth	When <b>EIP</b> is set to <b>Buy now</b> , you need to specify the bandwidth of the EIP. The value ranges from 1 Mbit/s to 100 Mbit/s.	50 Mbit/s

Parameter	Description	Example Value	
ELB	Specifies whether ELB is bound. With ELB health checks, CN requests of a cluster can be quickly forwarded to normal CNs. If a CN is faulty, the workload can be immediately shifted to a healthy node, minimizing cluster access faults. Currently, ELBs can be bound in the same VPC or across VPCs.	Specify	
	• <b>Do not use</b> : The load balancer is not used. If GaussDB(DWS) is used in the production environment, first bind it to ELB, and then bind it to an EIP on the ELB page.		
	• <b>Specify</b> : Specify an ELB to be bound to the cluster. If no available ELBs are displayed in the drop-down list, click <b>Create ELB</b> to go to the ELB page and create one as needed.		
	<b>WARNING</b> Configure load balancing to ensure load balancing and high availability of the cluster and prevent service interruptions. You are not advised to directly connect services to a single CN.		

# Step 6 Click Next: Configure Advanced Settings.

**Step 7** Configure cluster parameters.

Table 3-8 Cluster paramete	ers
----------------------------	-----

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Cluster Name	Set the name of the data warehouse cluster. Enter 4 to 64 characters. Only letters (case- insensitive), digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_) are allowed. The name must start with a letter.	DWS-demo
Cluster Version	Version of the database instance installed in the cluster. The example version number is for reference only.	9.1.1
Default Database	The default database name of the cluster is gaussdb. NOTE This name cannot be changed.	gaussdb

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Administrat or Account	<ul> <li>Set the database administrator name.</li> <li>The username must meet the following requirements:</li> <li>Consists of lowercase letters, digits, or underscores.</li> <li>Starts with a lowercase letter or an underscore.</li> <li>Contains 6 to 64 characters.</li> <li>The username cannot be a keyword of the GaussDB(DWS) database. For details about the keywords of the GaussDB(DWS) database, see "Keyword" in the Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide.</li> </ul>	dbadmin
Administrat or Password	<ul> <li>Set the password of the database administrator account.</li> <li>The password complexity requirements are as follows: <ul> <li>Contains 12 to 32 characters.</li> <li>Cannot be the username or the username spelled backwards.</li> <li>Must contain at least three of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters (~!?,.:;_() {}[]/&lt;&gt;@#%^&amp;*+ \=-)</li> <li>Passes the weak password check.</li> </ul> </li> <li>NOTE Change the password regularly and keep it secure.</li> </ul>	-
Confirm Password	Enter the database administrator password again.	-
Database Port	Set the port used when the client or application connects to the database in the cluster. The port number ranges from 8000 to 30000.	8000
IPv6	<ul> <li>Specify whether to enable the IPv6 dual stack for the cluster. If this function is enabled, a client or application can connect to the database using an IPv6 address.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>To enable IPv6, the following conditions must be met:</li> <li>The subnet configured in Step 6 is an IPv6 dual-stack subnet.</li> <li>The cluster supports IPv6 addresses and a maximum of three NICs.</li> <li>The cluster version must be 8.2.1.210 or later.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Time Zone	You can set the time zone for the tenant cluster, including the system OS time zone and cluster data warehouse time zone.	-

**Step 8** Select the enterprise project of the cluster. You can configure this parameter only when the Enterprise Project Management service is enabled. The default value is **default**.

An enterprise project facilitates project-level management and grouping of cloud resources and users.

You can select the default enterprise project **default** or other existing enterprise projects. To create an enterprise project, log in to the Enterprise Management console. For details, see **Enterprise Management User Guide**.

**Step 9** Configure advanced parameters. Select **Default** to keep the default values of the advanced parameters. You can also select **Custom** to modify the values.

#### • Backup Device

Set the backup device used by the current cluster. For details about the parameter configuration principles, see **Table 3-9**.

Parameter	Description
Backup Device	Select <b>OBS</b> or <b>NFS</b> from the drop-down list.
NFS Backup File System Address (NFS)	NFS shared IP address. To mount the SFS shared path, enter its IP address. If successful, a mount directory will be created in the <b>/var/chroot/</b> <b>nfsbackup</b> directory of the cluster instance.

#### Table 3-9 Automated snapshot parameters

#### • CNs

CNs receive access requests from the clients and return the execution results. In addition, a CN splits and distributes tasks to the DNs for parallel execution. The value ranges from 3 to the number of cluster nodes. The maximum value is **20** and the default value is **3**. In a large-scale cluster, you are advised to deploy multiple CNs.

• Tags

A tag is a key-value pair used to identify a cluster. For details about the keys and values, see **Table 3-10**. By default, no tag is added to the cluster. For details about tags, see **Overview**.

Table 3-10	Tag	parameters
------------	-----	------------

Par ame ter	Description		
Tag key	<ul> <li>You can:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag key or an existing resource tag key from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> <li><b>NOTE</b> <ul> <li>To add a predefined tag, you need to create one on TMS and select it from the drop-down list of <b>Tag key</b>. You can click</li> <li><b>View predefined tags</b> to enter the <b>Predefined Tags</b> page of TMS. Then, click <b>Create Tag</b> to create a predefined tag. For more information, see section <b>Creating Predefined Tags</b> in <i>Tag Management Service User Guide</i>.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Enter a tag key in the text box. A tag key can contain a maximum of 128 characters. It cannot be an empty string or start or end with a space. The value cannot contain the following characters: *&lt;&gt;  /</li> <li><b>NOTE</b> <ul> <li>A key must be unique in a given cluster.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	key01	
Valu e	<ul> <li>You can:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag value or resource tag value from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> </ul>	value01	
	<ul> <li>Enter a tag value in the text box. A tag value can contain a maximum of 255 characters, which can be an empty string. It cannot start or end with a space. The value cannot contain the following characters: *&lt;&gt;  /</li> </ul>		

#### Step 10 Click Next: Confirm.

#### **NOTE**

If the number of requested nodes, vCPU (cores), or memory (GB) exceed the user's remaining quota, a warning dialog box is displayed, indicating that the quota is insufficient and displaying the detailed remaining quota and the current quota application. You can click **Increase quota** in the warning dialog box to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota. Once approved, we will update your resource quota accordingly and send you a notification. For details, see **Quotas**.

**Step 11** Click **Buy Now**. If the billing mode is yearly/monthly billing, click **Buy Now**. The payment page is displayed.

After the submission is successful, the creation starts. Click **Back to Cluster List**. The cluster management page is displayed. The initial status of the cluster is **Creating**. Cluster creation takes some time. Wait for a while. Clusters in the **Available** state are ready for use.

----End

# **3.2 Before You Start: Performance Management Requirements**

Effective performance management of the GaussDB(DWS) database system is vital for the entire system. To prevent frequent resource overload (such as CPU, I/O, memory, and disk space) in the cluster, it is important to control and limit the services and overall resources in the cluster. Regular proactive O&M and advance scale-out planning are also necessary.

Before introducing a new service, it is crucial to evaluate and conduct pressure tests on existing resources to avoid excessive resource consumption and negative impact on the overall cluster performance. As the data volume of existing services increases, the cluster's disk space and I/O usage also grow. Therefore, periodic clearance of aged and unnecessary data is required.

This section provides an overview of the cluster's performance baseline and outlines the performance management requirements in typical service scenarios. Its purpose is to assist users and O&M personnel in evaluating the cluster's capacity in advance and preventing resource overload.

# GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Performance Baseline

In this section, you will find information about the recommended values and risk values of GaussDB(DWS) resources.

When the resource watermark exceeds the recommended value, it is crucial for O&M personnel to promptly address the issue to prevent performance degradation in scenarios such as node faults and active/standby switchover.

Exceeding the risk value for the cluster resource watermark indicates potential overload. In such cases, it is advisable to refrain from introducing new services.

Instead, it is necessary to swiftly reduce the overall cluster load through service optimization or scheduling tasks during off-peak hours. If needed, the cluster can be divided or its capacity expanded to ensure no impact on overall performance.

Metri c	Recom mend ed Value	Impact of Exceeding the Recommended Value	Recommende d Measure	Ris k Val ue	Impact of Exceedin g the Risk Value	Recomm ended Measure
CPU usage	Less than 60%	When the active/standby nodes are unbalanced or a node is faulty, the CPU usage of some nodes may be overloaded, causing performance degradation.	Configure a resource pool for resource isolation. For details, see GaussDB(DW S) Resource Load Management. Use Real-Time Queries and Performance Monitoring to capture statements with high CPU usage for service optimization. For details, see Monitoring and Diagnosing a GaussDB(DW S) Cluster and .	80 %	Severe CPU contentio n occurs. As a result, the execution time of operators such as Stream deteriora tes, and the overall cluster performa nce is severely affected.	Reduce the CPU load during peak hours by means of service staggerin g, service splitting, service optimizat ion, and cluster scale- out. You can also set the CPU limit and quota of the resource pool. For details, see advanced system tuning operatio ns in <b>Tuning</b> Systems with High CPU Usage.

**Table 3-11** Cluster Performance and Capacity Risks and Suggestions

Metri c	Recom mend ed Value	Impact of Exceeding the Recommended Value	Recommende d Measure	Ris k Val ue	Impact of Exceedin g the Risk Value	Recomm ended Measure
CPU skew	Less than 15%	Computing skew occurs. As a result, the optimal performance of some statements in the distributed system cannot be fully utilized.	Configure rules introducing in <b>Exception</b> <b>Rules</b> and circuit breakers to fallbreak skew statements in advance. Optimize such services on a daily basis.	30 %	During peak hours, a single node's CPU may become overload ed, causing overall cluster performa nce to deteriora te due to Liebig's Law of the Minimu m. This prevents other nodes from being fully utilized.	Configur e rules introduci ng in Exceptio n Rules and circuit breakers to preempti vely handle skewed statemen ts and optimize services regularly.

Metri c	Recom mend ed Value	Impact of Exceeding the Recommended Value	Recommende d Measure	Ris k Val ue	Impact of Exceedin g the Risk Value	Recomm ended Measure
I/O usage	Less than 60%	When the active/standby status is unbalanced or a node fails, some nodes may experience I/O overload, leading to performance degradation.	Find out the services with high I/O usage by checking the monitoring data. For details, see <b>Performance</b> <b>Monitoring</b> . You can reduce the disk I/O usage by indexing, partition pruning, and row-column storage rectification.	90 %	Severe I/O contentio n can occur, affecting operators such as table scanning and overall cluster performa nce.	Optimize high-I/O statemen ts and stagger peak hours to maintain I/O performa nce. Plan for cluster scale-out in advance to reduce the I/O burden on individua l nodes.
I/O read/ write laten cy	Less than 400 millise conds	Performance fluctuations during data read and write operations can lead to unstable query times and occasional performance degradation.	Find out the services with high I/O usage by checking the monitoring data. For details, see <b>Performance</b> <b>Monitoring</b> . You can reduce the disk I/O usage by indexing, partition pruning, and row-column storage rectification to reduce the read/write latency.	1,0 00 ms	Significa nt deteriora tion in data read/ write performa nce can cause real-time data storage services to back up, impactin g overall performa nce.	Optimize high-I/O, high- disk, and high- concurre ncy statemen ts to stagger service peaks and distribute the load more evenly.

Metri c	Recom mend ed Value	Impact of Exceeding the Recommended Value	Recommende d Measure	Ris k Val ue	Impact of Exceedin g the Risk Value	Recomm ended Measure
Dyna mic mem ory usage	Less than 80%	When the service traffic increases sharply or complex flexible queries are executed, an error may be reported due to insufficient memory.	Configure exception rules and memory circuit breaker. Optimize memory- intensive services by referring to <b>Real-Time</b> <b>Queries</b> and <b>Monitoring</b> <b>and</b> <b>Diagnosing a</b> <b>GaussDB(DW</b> <b>S) Cluster</b> . For how to reduce the memory usage, see <b>Reducing</b> <b>Memory</b> <b>Usage</b> .	90 %	CCN queuing occurs, an error indicatin g insufficie nt memory is reported, and process OOM risks exist.	Configur e exception rules and memory circuit breaker. Optimize memory- intensive services by referring to <b>Real-</b> <b>Time</b> <b>Queries</b> and <b>Monitori</b> <b>ng and</b> <b>Diagnosi</b> <b>ng a</b> <b>GaussD</b> <b>B(DWS)</b> <b>Cluster</b> .
Disk space usage	Less than 70%	The risk of read-only status increases when SQL statements are written to disks and the disk usage exceeds 90%.	Set thresholds for triggering disk flushing, clear data and dirty pages during off- peak hours, and plan for scale-out in advance. For details, see Solution to High Disk Usage and Cluster Read- Only.	80 %	The read- only risk increases after SQL statemen ts are written to disks.	Set threshold s for triggerin g disk flushing, clear data and dirty pages during off-peak hours, and plan for scale- out in advance.

Metri c	Recom mend ed Value	Impact of Exceeding the Recommended Value	Recommende d Measure	Ris k Val ue	Impact of Exceedin g the Risk Value	Recomm ended Measure
Disk space skew	Less than 15%	Severe skew occurs during operator computing or data spill to the disk. The workloads will be unevenly distributed on DNs, resulting in high disk usage on a single DN and affecting performance.	Check and handle table skews by referring to Table Diagnosis.	20 %	Disk skew causes CPU, I/O, and memory skew, which affects the overall cluster performa nce and may cause the disk of a single DN to be full.	Handle table skews by referring to <b>Table</b> <b>Diagnosi</b> <b>s</b> .

# GaussDB(DWS) Performance Management Scenarios and Suggestions

This section introduces common performance management scenarios and offers suggestions. During service rollout and routine O&M, you need to thoroughly assess the performance capacity to avoid overloading the cluster.

Scenari o	Performance Risk	Evaluation Method	Suggestion
New cluster rollout	The performance and capacity of the new cluster are uncertain before the service rollout, and there is a possibility that they may not meet the requirements.	Before launching the service, conduct a pressure test on the cluster. Both the new and old clusters should be operational for at least one service period. It is necessary to thoroughly test key services and links for performance metrics such as QPS, latency, maximum concurrency, and maximum response time. This will ensure a comprehensive evaluation of the performance and capacity of the new cluster.	Implement dynamic resource management and allocate service resource pools accordingly by referring to <b>GaussDB(DWS)</b> <b>Resource Load</b> <b>Management</b> . Configure exception rules in advance and configure circuit breaker parameters.
New service rollout	Resource preemption may arise, impacting existing services in the cluster. If new services are executed concurrently and consume resources improperly, it can result in resource overload and a decline in overall performance.	Conduct a thorough test on the new service in a test environment. Based on the test results, estimate the CPU usage, execution time, and number of concurrent services. Analyze the execution plan for the new services to ensure optimal performance.	Roll out a cluster only when the cluster's performance capacity is sufficient. Isolate new services with resource pools. Configure circuit breakers appropriately according to the test results and produce a rollback solution to swiftly revert services in the event of a fault.

 Table 3-12 Performance management scenarios

Scenari o	Performance Risk	Evaluation Method	Suggestion
Flexible query perform ance manag ement	There are different types of SQL statements that offer flexibility in querying, but their execution efficiency and resource consumption can vary significantly. In extreme cases, a slow SQL statement can negatively impact the performance of the entire cluster.	To address this, you can gather statistics on CPU usage, memory usage, execution time, and the number of concurrent queries. For details, see <b>Real-Time Queries</b> .	For users who frequently use flexible queries, allocate them to separate resource pools that are independent of other services. This allows for better CPU and memory resource management. To promptly handle slow SQL statements, configure exception rules and circuit breakers. Remember to follow the Liebig's Law of the Minimum when granting permissions to these users. The administrator account should not be used as the primary account for flexible queries.
Invento ry busines s increase	As services grow and more data is generated, the cluster's resource usage increases. If the cluster resources are not managed promptly, there may be a risk of overload.	Collect statistics on various metrics like dirty data, skew rate, <b>ANALYZE</b> time, number of partitions, and resource consumption of inventory services on a regular basis.	Inspect the cluster weekly, clearing dirty data from tables with a high dirty page rate, and performing <b>ANALYZE</b> on tables that have not had their statistics collected in a timely manner.

# 3.3 Before You Start: High Availability and Reliability Requirements

The GaussDB(DWS) service logic consists of the service layer, GaussDB(DWS) cluster layer, OS layer, and VM layer, as shown in Table 3-13.

The performance of your GaussDB(DWS) service system is impacted by these logical layers. In the event of service changes or hardware faults, you may need to make temporary adjustments or perform emergency recovery.

To ensure efficient use of GaussDB(DWS) clusters and achieve a quick recovery time objective (RTO), adhere to the rules provided in **Table 3-14** when setting up the system.

N o.	Logic Layer	Descriptio n	Service Characteristic
1	Servic e layer	Applicatio ns on the service side	Service applications: gsql, jdbc, odbc, python, datastudio, and navicat.
2	Gauss DB(D WS) layer	GaussDB( DWS) clusters	Service application logic is distributed to each CN in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster via SQL statements. Each CN then queries, optimizes, and forwards the data to DNs for processing. After processing, the DNs aggregate the data and return it to the CNs, which then send it back to the application.
3	OS layer	OS installed for GaussDB( DWS) clusters	This layer provides the running foundation, OS, file system, and network services for GaussDB(DWS).
4	VM layer	VM where GaussDB( DWS) clusters are located	This layer provides EVS disks, networks, and resources like CPU and memory.

Table 3-13 GaussDB(DWS) service logic layers

	5 5 5	
Cluster Configu ration	Recommended Measure	Risk If Not Configured
Configur ing load balancin g	Use ELB load balancing to access services. For details, see <b>Binding</b> and Unbinding ELBs for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.	Services are unavailable when the CN is faulty.
Backing up configur ation data	Use the <b>backup function</b> to create redundant copies of both upstream and downstream data.	Data cannot be restored after being deleted by mistake, which affects your service usage and causes data security faults.
Configur ing cluster DR	Configure cluster or service DR. For details, see GaussDB(DWS) Cluster DR Management.	In disaster scenarios at the cluster level, it is not possible to guarantee service continuity.

**Table 3-14** Cluster high availability and reliability risks and suggestions

# **4** Connecting to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 4.1 Overview

If you have created a GaussDB(DWS) cluster, you can use the SQL client tool or a third-party driver such as JDBC or ODBC to connect to the cluster and access the database in the cluster.

# **Constraints and Limitations**

### 

- Avoid having all business operations run under a single database user. Instead, plan different database users according to the business modules.
- For better access control of different business modules, it is better to use multiple users and permissions instead of depending on the system administrator user to run business operations.
- You are not advised to connect services to a single CN. Instead, configure **load balancing** to ensure that connections to each CN are balanced.
- After connecting to the database and completing required operations, close the database connection in a timely manner to prevent idle connections from continuously occupying resources and consuming connections and public resources.
- In the scenario where the database connection pool is used, after the database GUC parameters are set using the **SET** statement in the service, the parameters must be restored using the **RESET** statement before the connection pool is returned.
- For more information about development and design specifications, see **Development and Design Proposal**.

# **Connecting to a Cluster**

The procedure for connecting to a cluster is as follows:

- 1. Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster
- 2. If SSL encryption is used, perform the operations in **Establishing Secure** TCP/IP Connections in SSL Mode.
- 3. Connect to the cluster and access the database in the cluster. You can choose any of the following methods to connect to a cluster:

#### NOTICE

- You are advised to use the officially recommended method for connecting to the database.
- Compatibility with other clients cannot be guaranteed, so it may be necessary to verify it.
- If an error occurs due to incompatibility with another client and the client cannot be replaced, try replacing the libpq driver on the client. To replace the libpg.so file on the client, download and extract the gsql client package by referring to Downloading the Client, locate the gsql directory, and obtain the file. Then, replace the existing libpg.so file in the designated directory on the client.
- Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a Cluster
- Use the SQL client tool to connect to the cluster.
  - Using the Linux gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster
  - Using the Windows gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster
  - Using Data Studio to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster
- Use a JDBC, psycopg2, or PyGreSQL driver to connect to the cluster.
  - Using JDBC to Connect to a Cluster
  - Using ODBC to Connect to a Cluster
  - Using the Third-Party Database Adapter Psycopg2 (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection
  - Using the Third-Party Database Adapter PyGreSQL (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection
  - Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (IAM Authentication Mode)

# 4.2 Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

### Scenario

You can access GaussDB(DWS) clusters by different methods and the connection address of each connection method varies. This section describes how to view and

obtain the private network address on the Huawei Cloud platform, public network address on the Internet, and JDBC connection strings.

To obtain the cluster connection address, use either of the following methods:

- Obtaining the cluster connection address on the Client Connections Page
- Obtaining the Cluster Access Addresses on the Cluster Information Page

### Obtaining the cluster connection address on the Client Connections Page

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Management** > **Client Connections**.
- Step 3 In the Data Warehouse Connection Information area, select an available cluster.

You can only select clusters in the **Available** state.

- **Step 4** View and obtain the cluster connection information.
  - Private Network IP Address
  - Public Network IP Address
  - ELB Address
  - JDBC URL (Private Network)
  - JDBC URL (Public Network)
  - ODBC URL

**NOTE** 

- If no EIP is automatically assigned during cluster creation, **Public Network Address** is empty. If you want to use a public network address (consisting of an EIP and the database port) to access the cluster from the Internet, click **Bind EIP** to bind one.
- If an EIP is bound during cluster creation but you do not want to use the public network address to access the cluster, click **Unbind EIP** to unbind the EIP. After the EIP is unbound, **Public Network Address** is empty.
- If a cluster was not bound to ELB when it was created, the **ELB Address** parameter will be left blank. You can bind the cluster to ELB to avoid single CN failures.
- If a cluster has been bound to ELB, use the ELB address to connect to the cluster for high availability purposes.
- If the IPv6 dual stack is enabled for a GaussDB(DWS) cluster, private IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be used. You can connect to the cluster via IPv4 or IPv6.

----End

# **Obtaining the Cluster Access Addresses on the Cluster Information Page**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the **Connection** area, view and obtain the cluster's access address information, including the private network address and public network address.

Table 4-1 Connection	l <b>e 4-1</b> Connect	tion
----------------------	------------------------	------

Parameter	Description
Private Network Domain Name	Domain name for accessing the cluster database through the internal network. The domain name corresponds to all CN IP addresses. The private network domain address is automatically generated when a cluster is created.
	<ul> <li>If the cluster name does not comply with the domain name standards, the prefix of the default access domain name will be adjusted accordingly.</li> </ul>
	Load balancing is not supported.
	You can click <b>Modify</b> to change the private network domain name. The access domain name contains 4 to 63 characters, which consists of letters, digits, and hyphens (-), and must start with a letter.
	For details, see Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names.
Private Network IP Address	IP address for accessing the database in the cluster over the private network. <b>NOTE</b>
	• A private IP address is automatically generated when you create a cluster. The IP address is fixed.
	• The number of private IP addresses equals the number of CNs. You can log in to any node to connect to the cluster.
	<ul> <li>If you access a fixed IP address over the internal network, all the resource pools will run on a single CN.</li> </ul>
	• If IPv6 is enabled for a cluster, both IPv4 and IPv6 private addresses will be displayed. You can use either of them as needed.
Public Network Domain Name	Name of the domain for accessing the database in the cluster over the public network. For details, see Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names. NOTE
	Load balancing is not supported.
Public Network IP Address	IP address for accessing the database in the cluster over the public network. <b>NOTE</b>
	• If no EIP is assigned during cluster creation and <b>Public Network IP</b> Address is empty, click <b>Edit</b> to bind an EIP to the cluster.
	• If an EIP is bound during cluster creation, click <b>Edit</b> to unbind the EIP.
Initial Administrato r	Database administrator specified during cluster creation. When you connect to the cluster for the first time, you need to use the initial database administrator and password to connect to the default database.
Port	Port number for accessing the cluster database through the public network or private network. The port number is specified when the cluster is created.

Parameter	Description
Default Database	Database name specified when the cluster is created. When you connect to the cluster for the first time, connect to the default database.
ELB Address	To achieve high availability and avoid single-CN failures, a new cluster needs to be bound to ELB. You are advised to use the ELB address to connect to the cluster.

----End

# 4.3 Using a Visualization Tool to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 4.3.1 Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 4.3.1.1 Overview

GaussDB(DWS) provides you with a one-stop data development tool, that is, the online SQL editor, for data development, access, and processing.

The online SQL editor lets you connect to cluster databases on the GaussDB(DWS) console. It shows the database metadata details, runs and edits SQL statements, and displays the results in various charts.

#### **NOTE**

- This tool is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.
- This tool is not included in the upgrade of the management plane to version 8.3.1 or later. The SQL editor is available only when the management plane of version 8.3.1 or later is installed and deployed for the first time.
- The editor depends on GaussDB(DWS). You need to enable the GaussDB(DWS) cluster query operations, and interconnect the editor with the Cloud Trace Service (CTS) service to record traces of operation APIs.

# **Editor Functions**

- In the upper part of the editor, you can switch the data source, database, and schema.
- SQL statements can be written in the middle, where highlighting, basic syntax tips, and information about databases, schemas, tables, and fields are provided.
- You can format SQL statements and query execution plans with this tool. But be careful, the PERFORMANCE execution plan executes SQL statements. So, avoid using it for SQL statements that perform operations.
- You can click **Save** after writing many SQL statements. Then a dialog box will ask you to save them to the right OBS bucket.

- The query results show at the bottom in multiple pages. You can make pie, line, or bar charts from different fields. You can also export the results to an Excel file. The **SQL execution records** area displays non-query SQL statement records from the past six months.
- You can switch to the script panel and show the directory folder. The script file is saved in the created directory. For details, see Creating a Directory. The editor allows for two directory levels, each with a capacity of 10 folders. Each folder can hold up to 100 script files, which are stored in the corresponding OBS bucket file directory. To make things easier, the OBS bucket file address can be set globally. For details, see Global Settings..

Data December Sope Affector Large Control Con

#### Figure 4-1 SQL editor page

# 4.3.1.2 Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a Cluster

Data sources are used for cluster login. Currently, the GaussDB(DWS) cluster supports two login modes: custom (username + password) and IAM account. Custom login is the default login mode. With IAM account login, you create an IAM user in the database and use a token to log in.

#### **NOTE**

- IAM account login is only supported by clusters of 8.1.3.331 (included) to 8.2.0 (excluded), 8.2.1.100, and later versions. For storage-compute decoupled clusters, only clusters of 9.1.0 and later versions support this login method.
- If you log in to a cluster as a custom user or a IAM user, you can create a user or grant permissions to an existing user on the cluster user management page. For details, see **Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Database and User**.

# **Constraints and Limitations**

- Custom login constraints:
  - Select a cluster for the new data source, enter the username and password, and test the connection. After the connection is tested, you can open the cluster data connection.
  - You are advised to select **Remember password** during login. If the database is not specified, the **GaussDB** database is used by default.
  - Depending on tenants and users, connection permissions are separated.
     Connections are visible to different sub-users. Only the creator of a connection can view it.

- IAM account login constraints:
  - Only IAM users who have been assigned the DWS Database Access role can log in to GaussDB(DWS) clusters. In this case, you need to contact a user with the DWS Administrator permissions to grant you the role on the current page.
  - The IAM user does not have any permissions after logging in to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster database. You need to assign permissions to the IAM user on the user management page.
- Connection timeout limit:
  - The connection timeout period is set in the background. If no operation is performed within 30 minutes, you need to log in again.
  - The connection uniquely caches the user login ID and database name to guarantee that each user connects to each database with one connection and performs each operation on one connection.
  - It is not recommended to run SQL commands on the same database from multiple windows. This can cause delays because the database establishes the same connection, and each command can only be executed after the previous one has finished.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** There are two panels on the left: **Data Warehouse** and **Custom**. Data Warehouse can only be logged in by IAM users with the **DWS Database Access** role. If the conditions are met, you can connect to a cluster database to perform operations.
- **Step 4** Switch to the **Custom** panel and click **Add Data Source**. (Alternatively, access the **Dedicate Cluster** page, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Login** in the **Operation** column.)
  - Cluster: Select the cluster to be connected.
  - **SSL certification**: Select this option if SSL authentication is enabled for the cluster.
  - **Database**: Enter the database name. For a newly created cluster, enter the default database **gaussdb** or switch to another database as required.
  - **Data Source**: Set the data source name.
  - **Username**: Set the username.
  - **Password**: Set the password of the user. This password is used only to create data sources and data source connections for the WEB-SQL editor. If **Remember password** is selected, the default password is used for login when the data source is opened. If **Remember password** is not selected, the password needs to be entered again when the data source is opened after the page is refreshed or the login expires.

Add Data Sou	rce	×
★ Cluster	•	
★ Database	gaussdb X	
Data Source		
★ Username		
* Password	Remember password This password is only used to create the data source, obtain the data source connection, and use the WEB-SQL editor function.	
	Test Connection Cancel	

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **Test Connection**.

----End

# 4.3.1.3 Data Development Operations

Metadata management includes the hierarchical display of metadata. The hierarchy begins with the data source at the root, branching into databases and user roles. Databases include system schemas, user schemas, and foreign servers. System schemas and user schemas are distinguished by OIDs and system schemas cannot be changed or deleted. User schemas include common/partitioned tables, foreign tables, views, functions, sequences, and synonyms. A table contains columns, constraints, indexes, partitions, and triggers. The LIST and INFO APIs are provided to query the metadata lists and details.

The following figure shows the metadata list. Currently, databases, schemas, common tables, fields, indexes, constraints, and partitions can be added.



Figure 4-2 Metadata information hierarchy

# **Adding a Database**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source**. After a **data source is connected**, right-click the database name and click **Create Database**.

Figure 4-3 Creating a database

Data		
Data Source	se Scripts	
	+ Add Data	Source
Please en	iter the data source name	
Data v	Custom	
	(dbadmin)	~
	Create Database Refresh	
	(+) public	
	🕒 🛅 System Schemas	
e	(+) External Servers	
C	) Do postgres	
(*	gaussdb	
(+) 🚨	Users/Roles	

**Step 4** On the page for adding a database, set the parameters as required.

- Database Name: Set the database name.
- **Owner**: Select the new database owner from the drop-down list box.
- **Compatibility mode**: Choose a database compatibility mode rom the dropdown list. The available options include **Oracle**, **MySQL**, and **Teradata**. The default setting is **Oracle**.
- **Encoding**: Select the encoding mode of the new database from the dropdown list box. SQL\_ASCII is recommended.
- **Connection Limit**: The value cannot be less than **-1**. The value **-1** indicates no limit.
- **Description**: Description of the new database.
- **SQL Preview**: You can click **Preview** to view the SQL syntax for creating the database.

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

# Adding a Schema

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source** to add a database. For details, see **Adding a Database**. The database contains the user schema, system schema, and external server.

**NOTE** 

The system schema can only be viewed.

- Step 4 Right-click the user mode name and click Add Schema.
- **Step 5** Set the parameters as required on the displayed page.
  - Schema Name: Set the schema name.
  - **Owner**: Select the owner of the new schema from the drop-down list box.
  - **Description**: Description of the new schema.
  - **SQL Preview**: Click **Preview** to display the SQL syntax for creating the schema.

# Figure 4-4 Adding a Schema

#### Add Schema

private		
Only digits, letters, and underscores (_) star lowercase letters are supported	ting with upperc	ase and
Owner		
dbadmin 👻		
4		
SQL Preview C	Preview	Сору
1 CREATE SCHEMA "private" AU	THORIZATION	

Step 6 Click OK.

----End

### Adding a Common Table

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- Step 3 Switch to the Data Source panel and add a schema (for details, see Adding a Schema). A schema contains structures such as common tables, foreign tables, views, functions, sequences, and synonyms.
- Step 4 Right-click the name of the common table and click Create Common Table to add a table. The dialog box for adding a common table contains options such as Attribute, Column, Data Distribution, Partition, Index, and Constraint. The Attribute and Column fields are mandatory. You can click SQL Preview to query the SQL statement for creating a table.

Tab	Description
Attribute	• Data Table Name: Set the data table name.
	• Table Orientation: You can select ROW or COLUMN.
	<ul> <li>Available or not Partition: Select whether to create a partitioned table.</li> </ul>
	• <b>Description</b> : Description of the new data table.

 Table 4-2 Parameters for adding a data table

Tab	Description
Column	Click Add Column and set the following parameters:
	Column Name: Set the column name.
	• <b>Data Type</b> : Select the data type of the new column from the drop-down list box.
	• <b>Length</b> : Total number of digits. If this parameter is dimmed, the length is fixed.
	• <b>Precision</b> : Number of decimal places. If this parameter is dimmed, the precision cannot be set.
	• <b>Non-null</b> : Select whether the new column is not null.
	Unique: Select whether the new column is unique.
Data	The options are as follows:
Distribution	• <b>ROUNDROBIN</b> : Each row of data in the table is sent to each DN in sequence.
	• <b>REPLICATION</b> : Each row of data in the table exists on all DNs. Each DN has complete table data.
	• <b>HASH</b> : Specified columns are hashed and data is distributed to specified DNs through mapping.
Partition	On the <b>Partition</b> panel, you can select a partition type (range partition or list partition) and optional columns (corresponding to table fields). Click <b>Add Partition</b> and set the following parameters:
	Partition Name: Set the partition name.
	• <b>Partition Value</b> : Select a value from the range based on the optional columns.
Indexes	Click Add Index and set the following parameters:
	Index Name: Set the index name. You can select Unique Index.
	• Access Mode: Select an index access mode from the drop- down list box. B-tree indexes are recommended.
	Index Type: The options are Column and Expression.
	Condition Index: The WHERE condition constraint can be added.
Table	Click Add Constraint and set the following parameters:
Constraints	• <b>Constraint Type</b> : The value can be <b>check</b> , <b>unique</b> , or <b>primary</b> .
	• Expression (check): Enter field constraints.
	Constraint Name: Set the constraint name.
	<ul> <li>Optional Column (unique\primary): Select an optional column from the drop-down list box.</li> </ul>
SQL Preview	Click <b>Preview</b> to display the SQL syntax for creating a common table.

Attributes	Column	Data Distribution	Index	Table Constraint	SQL Preview	
Attributes						
* Data Table N	łame					
Table Orient	ation	ROW COI	LUMN			
Available or	not Partition	No Yes				
Description						
			0/500	s		
Column						
New Columns						+ Add Column
Column	Data T	ype Ler	ngth	Precision	Not Null Unique	Operation
			1	1.2		
			5			
			No dat	a available		

Figure 4-5 Creating a common table

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

### **Editing a Common Table**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source**. You can edit the created common table. For details about how to create a common table, see **Adding a Common Table**.

Figure 4-6 Editing a common table



**Step 4** Right-click the name of the common table name to modify it. The following table describes the modification operations.

Operation	Description
Modifying a common table	You can click <b>Modify</b> to modify the name and schema of a table, and specify whether it is a partitioned table.
Deleting a common table	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete a common table.
Operating columns	Click the corresponding operation button to add, edit, and delete columns. You can edit the column name, data type, length, and specify whether it is a non-NULL column. Batch adding of columns is also available.
Operating indexes	Click <b>Operate Index</b> to add indexes, edit indexes (index names), and delete indexes in batches.
Operating constraints	Click <b>Operate Constraint</b> to add constraints, edit constraints (constraint names and optional columns), and delete constraints in batches.
Operating partitions	Click <b>Operate Constraint</b> (unavailable for non-partitioned tables) to add, edit, and delete partitions. You can edit the partition name. Batch adding of partitions is also available.

 Table 4-3 Table modification operations

#### D NOTE

You can also right-click a constraint, index, or partition name and choose **Operate Constraint/Index/Partition** from the shortcut menu to modify the corresponding attributes.

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

# Viewing Data in a Common Table

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- Step 3 Click Data Source and right-click the data table name.
- **Step 4** Click **View Details** to add, filter, edit, and delete data in a common table.

Data		Unna	ar
Data Source	Scripts	<b>ت</b>	m
).	+ Add D	ata Source	rs
Please enter the d	ata source nan	a) (a)	1
Data war	Cust	om	
e I	(dbadmin)	~	
<ul> <li>Database</li> </ul>			
🕞 🖂 🛛	aodi		
E I	User Schema	5-1	
6	-) public		
	🕘 📄 Comi	mon Ta	
	+ 🖂	t Inn 2	
	+ 74	Create Common Table	
	+ 74	Modify	
	+ 74	Operate Column	
	+ 74	Operate Index	
	+ 74	Operate Constraint	
	+ 74	Operate Partition	
	+ 🖪	View Details	
	(+) 📧	View DDL	
	+ 74	View Data	
	+ 74	Refresh	

Figure 4-7 Viewing data in a common table

#### 

Right-click a partition name and choose **View Details** to add, filter, edit, or delete partition data.

----End

# **Checking Views**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source**, right-click a view name, and choose **View Details** from the shortcut menu to check the views of the database.

Figure 4-8 Checking views
(+) M postgres
-) 🖾 gaussdb
🕘 🛅 User Schemas
public
(+) 📄 Common Ta
(+) 📄 Foreign Tables
- 📄 View
v customer_d
+ E View Data
(+) View Details
View DDL
Delete
(+) ot
[i] teads

----End

# Importing Data

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source** and right-click the common table name. Click **Import Data** to import data from the local Excel file or OBS bucket file to the common table.
  - **Local import**: When uploading an Excel file, ensure it is under 30 MB. For CSV files, select separators to divide data in each row and indicate if there is a table header. If there is no header, input data in each row according to the chosen table fields.
  - **obs import**: Choose a file from the OBS bucket or directory. Supported file types include CSV and TEXT. Set the parameters of the foreign table to be created for importing data to the OBS bucket. Use the OBS foreign table to write the OBS bucket file to the selected common table.

#### **NOTE**

Starting from version 8.2.0.100, storage-compute coupled data warehouses (single-node deployment) can import OBS files.

Parameter	Description	Example Value
storage location	Choose a file from the OBS bucket.	-
file format	Select a file format from the drop- down list. Supported formats include CSV and TEXT.	CSV

Table 4-4 OBS import parameters

Parameter	Description	Example Value
file encoding	Select a file encoding mode from the drop-down list. UTF8 is recommended.	UTF8
Delimiter	Commas (,) are the default separators for CSV files, while tab characters are the default separators for TXT files.	,
quote (CSV format)	Quotation marks are used for CSV files. The value should be a single- byte character and cannot be the same as the delimiter or null parameter.	#
newline character (TEXT format)	When importing text data, you can specify the newline character style. The maximum length of the newline character is 10 bytes, and you can use multi-character newline characters. The supported newline characters include common ones like \ <b>r</b> , \ <b>n</b> , and \ <b>r</b> \ <b>n</b> , as well as other characters or character strings like <b>\$</b> and <b>#</b> .	\r
Whether not to escape (TEXT format)	You can specify whether to escape the backslash (\) and its following characters in the TEXT format.	Yes
Null value	You can specify how null values are represented in a data file.	\$
Number of data format errors	Maximum number of data format errors allowed during data import. The value <b>-1</b> indicates that the number of errors is not limited.	-1
Does it contain a header (CSV format)	You can specify if the exported CSV file should contain a header row that describes each column in the table. This parameter only applies to CSV files.	Yes
Whether to ignore missing fields	Enabling this function sets the last column of a row in a data source file to <b>NULL</b> if it is missing, without reporting an error message.	Yes

Parameter	Description	Example Value
ignore extra data	You can specify whether to ignore excessive columns when the number of columns in a source data file exceeds that defined in the foreign table.	Yes
compatible illegal chars	Enabling this function allows for invalid characters during data import.	Yes

#### Figure 4-9 Importing OBS bucket file data to a common table



#### Step 4 Click OK.

**Step 5** In the upper right corner of the page, choose **Common Functions** > **Import data list** and check whether the import is successful.

----End

# **Exporting Data**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Sources**, log in to the data source whose data needs to be exported, and select the corresponding database and schema.
- Step 4 Enter the query SQL statement in the editor box and click Running.
- **Step 5** Click **Export** under the query result.
  - Local export: Export all SQL query results to an XLSX or CSV file. You can open the file on your local PC. A maximum of 5,000 records can be exported.
  - Full export: Export all query SQL results to a specified path in an OBS bucket. By default, the results are exported to a CSV file.

Figure 4-10 Full data export

			ull export
tet	C Create OBS Bucke	~ ·	bucket OBS
÷	haracters, letters, digits,	ontain only Chinese cl	Path The value underscore
			Remark
		0/2,048	
	Cancel	0/2,048	

- **Step 6** Choose **Common Functions** > **Export data list** in the upper right corner of the page and view the exported task in the data export list.
- **Step 7** Click the path in the **File address** column to go to the OBS console to download the exported CSV file.

Figure 4-11 Exporting the task list

k ID ()	Status ()	Datab 🖯	Sche 0	Ostab 0	Exper 0	Execu 0	The to ()	backe 0 error 0	File address ()	Created ()	Remark ()
63232	S Expo	gausside	public	eq(_test	LOCATION	select * tr	20000	i e	erport_result_2024	Dec 30, 2	
44192	O Eige	paulade	public	sql_test	LOCATION	select * R	1000		export_result_2024	Dec 30, 2	
19684	O Expo	gaussidb	public	sq_test	LOCATION	seed * N.,	1000	8	export_result_2024	Dec 30.2	
M3d1	🕑 Expa	<del>ش</del> يم	sch_sh	yn	LOCATION	SELECT	9	¥.	export_result_2024	Nov 20. 2	
16010	O Elpo	postgres	public	thadmin	LOCATION	select*#	5000	8	export_result_2024	Oct 30, 2	
12010	😋 Erpo	gausside	public	deadmin	LOCATION	select a,b	10		erport_result_2024	Oct 27, 2	
51364	O Expe	an juh	public	sst_best.	ces	select * tr	263	dia - 1	exportrapResult_e5.	Oct 21, 2	-
1081	🕤 Expe	gausado	public	dbadmin	LOCATION	SELECT	01	*	export_result_2024 .	Aug 22, 2	
10144	0 Ext.	oaussdo	public	dtadmin	LOCATION	SELECT	4	4	export result 2024	Aug 22. 2	

----End

#### Submitting a SQL Task

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Sources**, log in to the data source for which you want to submit the SQL task, and select the corresponding database and schema.
- **Step 4** Enter a non-query SQL statement in the text box and click **Submit SQL task** to submit the selected SQL statement to the background task for execution.

**NOTE** 

A maximum of 100 non-query SQL statements can be submitted at a time. A maximum of five SQL tasks can be executed by a user.
#### Figure 4-12 Submitting a SQL task



- Step 5 Choose Common Functions > SQL task list in the upper right corner of the page to view the executed SQL tasks.
- **Step 6** Click **Details** in the **Operation** column to view the execution status of each SQL statement.

Figure 4-13 Viewing SQL task details

nnamed •	Х	Export data list	X SQL	lask list	X +					
Q. Select a prop	ierty or enter a ke	ayword.							Q	۲
Task ID \varTheta	Status 🖯	) Database (	Database 🖯	Schema N 🖯	Number of (	) Number of ()	Executed SQL 🖗	Created $\theta$	Operation	
				,	io data available.					

----End

# **Diagnosing a Plan**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation tree, choose Data > SQL Editor.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Sources**, log in to the data source for which you need to enter SQL statements, and select the corresponding database and schema.
- **Step 4** Enter a query SQL statement in the text box and click **Planned diagnostics**. You can select **EXPLAIN** or **PERFORMANCE**.

**NOTE** 

Only one query SQL statement can be diagnosed at a time. If you enter multiple query SQL statements, the first SQL statement is diagnosed by default. If you select **PERFORMANCE**, the entered SQL statement is executed and the result is returned.

🗋 Import 🔒 Save	Running	1 Information	' Submit SQL task □ Planned diagnostics ∨	Executor Plan ∨	
e sqtest v	gaussot:	When there are multiple SQL statements, only the first one will be diagnosed. Selecting PERFORMANCE will actually execute the statement.	v	-	'⊞Common Fundio
		Cancel			
		_			

Figure 4-14 Selecting PERFORMANCE

- **Step 5** Click **OK**. The **Planned diagnostics** page is displayed. You can view the SQL statement diagnosis result and plan diagnosis visualization result.
  - Click **SQL diagnostics** to view the SQL statement formatting and diagnosis items.

Figure 4-15 Viewing SQL statement diagnosis results

analastanas (1907) (mail anal (1)) nar mark 1924 alas ant anal apas analys (1) mail anal (1)) ha lan ant analys (2007) (1) channes anal (1)) mail an ant analys (1) channes anal (1)) hada a par performent (1)) de a agai analysis (1) channes analysis (1) channes (1))	indi iiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiiii		
had alas da Paska OSCIA EF Jandala mundi () anda a pa antalak katala Jandala mundi () anda a pa antalaka mundi () anda a pa antalaka mundi () antalaka ya antalaka mundi ()			
unters an analder konten Scheder souhl; () mich im par par extername: () fort la az ann mander annot (), () fort la az ann mander annot (), () (), (), (), (), (), (), (), (), (), (),			
studio na poro performance: $\bigodot$ lefel to cas par nuclear of examin. $\bigodot$ samble to cas SULC(" - Phases specify the column cosmity.	×		
ded to use gain indexed of activitie. (1)	-		
tended to use "SELECT". Please specify the column clearly			
It is not recommended to use 'SELECT * . Please specify the column clearly			
Order by a prohibited in subquartee			
use the statement not to be pushed down			
cause the statement not to be pushed down	-		
randed that the number of lattice associations accored Té. $\oslash$	×		
ter ") causes the platement not to the pushed down			
at recomment exceeding 20	ы. С		
sele regirer adding schema	×		
weebace bd_caneol bd_appen, bd_careol bd_gescubiou bd_careol bd_appens			
	meaned on the second s		

• Click **Planned diagnostics** to display the plan tree node and plan diagnosis result of the SQL statement.



#### Figure 4-16 Viewing SQL plan diagnosis results

----End

### Viewing Statistics About Databases, Schemas, and Tables

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation tree, choose Data > SQL Editor.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source** and double-click a database name. On the database list page that is displayed, you can search and check the detailed information about a database.

Figure 4-17 Vie	ewing data	base details
-----------------	------------	--------------

SQL Editor	Unnamed •	×	ssi test		×	+		
Data Source Scripts ( Configure	Database							
+ Add Data Sourc	e + Create Data	ibase					) Enter a keyword.	
Please enter the data source name Q	Databa \ominus	Owner	Encoding	Sort		Connectio	Compatibi	Operation
Data wareho Custom	db_xh	dbadmin	SQL_ASCII	с		-1	MYSQL	Delete
€ ( >	gaussdb	Ruby	SQL_ASCII	с		-1	ORA	Delete
testsql	postgres	Ruby	SQL_ASCII	с		-1	ORA	Delete
⊜ ssl_test ∨ (+)	Total Records: 3						10	<
+ Users/Roles								

**Step 4** Click a database name in the database list to go to the schema list and view the total number of tables, total table size, and index size.

Figure 4-18 Viewing schema information

Unnamed •	× ssl test	×	+	
Database / schema				
+ Create Schema	Database	gaussdb	V Q Enter a ke	eyword. Q
Schema Name	Total number	table size $\Leftrightarrow$	Index size \ominus	Operation
import	5	1.96GB	2.24MB	Delete
public	13	448.00KB	Obytes	Delete
test_sch	4	21.13MB	2.24MB	Delete
test_schema	0	Obytes	Obytes	Delete
Total Records: 4				10 ~ < 1 >

**Step 5** Click a schema name in the schema list to go to the common table list. You can view the number of rows in the table, table size, and index size.

Fig	gure 4-19	Vie	wing co	ommon ta	ble inforn	nation	
Unn	amed •	×	ssi test	×	+		
	Database / schema / Com	mon Tat	oles				
	Database: gaussdb		Schema	import	<ul> <li>✓ Q Enter a k</li> </ul>	eyword.	Q
	Data Table Name	Numb	er of rows ⊜	table size $ \Leftrightarrow $	Index size \ominus	Operation	
	people	10005	0	13.84MB	Obytes	View Details	View DDL
	product_info	82186	0	1.41MB	Obytes	View Details	View DDL
	t_user	10000	0	7.38MB	2.20MB	View Details	View DDL
	table1	3		24.00KB	48.00KB	View Details	View DDL
	test_key_by	23998	961	1.94GB	Obytes	View Details	View DDL
	Total Records: 5					10 🗸 <	1 >

----End

# Sharing a Custom Data Source with Other IAM Users of the Same Tenant

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation tree, choose Data > SQL Editor.
- **Step 3** Click **Data Source** and click **Custom** to create a custom data source. Remember the password you set during the creation.
- **Step 4** Right-click the name of the custom data source to be shared and choose **Shared datasource** to view the list of IAM users with whom this data source has been shared.
  - Click **Add share** to share the data source with other IAM users of the same tenant and set the sharing expiration time.
  - To cancel the sharing, click **Unshare** in the **Operation** column of the row that contains the target IAM user.
  - Click **Modify** in the **Operation** column of the row that contains the target IAM user to modify the sharing expiration time and change the username.

#### Figure 4-20 Sharing a data source

SQL Editor ÜUsage Guidelines	Unnamed	× demoShare list	x +		
Data Source         Scripts         © Configure           + Add Data Source         Please enter the data source name         Q           Data sources         Context         Context	Sharing a user's database instance connection Data Source demo Add share Unitare	Database	gaundo	Usename doadmin	
e demo 🗸	<ol> <li>Select a property or enter a keyword.</li> </ol>				00
🕞 📰 Date Modify Data Source	User ID 8	Username 0	Authorization time $\Theta$	Sharing deadline (9	Operation
Delete Data Source	5487cbe0360744d2b5bf282babe6aec1		Dec 17, 2024 16:29:35 GMT+08:00	-	Unshare Modify
Shared datasource View Details	Total Records: 1				10 v (1)

**Step 5** IAM users can easily access the data sources shared with them by viewing the custom data source list and clicking the respective data source name to log in to the system.

----End

# Creating a Directory

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor** to switch to the script panel.
- Step 3 Click Create Directory.
  - **Save to Directory**: Select a parent directory from the drop-down list box. If this parameter is left blank, a level-1 directory is created by default.
  - **Directory Name**: Set the directory name. The value can contain only letters, digits, and underscores (\_).

Figure 4-21 Creating a directory

Data	Unnamed •	Ŧ	
Data Source Scripts	🗂 Import 🖹 Save 🕑	i i etti a vi av	2
+ Create Directory + Create Script	1	Create Directory	
undefined Q C		Save to Directory 👻	
- Contest		If this parameter is left blank, a level-1 directory is created by default.	
+ 🖿 p_test		* Directory Name	
(+) 🖿 test		The value can contain only Chinese characters, letters, digits, and underscores ( ).	
+ 🖿 test2			
🛨 🛅 test001		Cancel	
. See init			
se test11			

**Step 4** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

# Adding a Script

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor** to switch to the script panel.
- Step 3 Click Create Script.
  - **Save to Directory**: Select the new directory from the drop-down list box. This option is optional.
  - **Script Name**: Set the script name. Only letters, digits, and underscores (\_) are supported.
  - OBS Bucket: Name of the OBS bucket for storing script files. If no OBS bucket is available, click View OBS Bucket to access the OBS console and create one. For details, "Managing Buckets" > "Creating a Bucket" in Object Storage Service Console Operation Guide.
  - **Path**: User-defined directory for storing script files on OBS. Multi-level directories can be separated by slashes (/). The value is a string containing 1 to 50 characters, which cannot start with a forward slash (/). If you do not set this parameter, the system automatically adds a path by default.

#### Figure 4-22 Adding a script

	×
•	
sql The value can contain only Chinese characters, letters, digits, and underscores (_).	
ym639176	
/data/sql The value can contain only Chinese characters, letters, digits, underscores (_), and slashes (/).	
	.sql     .sql     The value can contain only Chinese characters, letters, digits, and underscores (_).      ym639176

----End

# 4.3.1.4 Data Development Settings

# Procedure

The **Editor** provides basic settings, including the operation bar, shortcut keys, and storage settings. If no OBS bucket is available, you can create one. For details, see **Managing Buckets > Creating a Bucket** in the *Object Storage Service Console Operation Guide*..

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree, choose **Data** > **SQL Editor**.
- **Step 3** Click **Configure** in the upper right corner and set parameters as required.

Figure 4-23 Data development settings

	•			+				
Scripts () Contigure	🗋 Import	D Export	Save	Running	🕑 Stop 📿 Refresh	👌 Format	Clear	Submit SQL
+ Add Data Source	sql_test	~	) 🛛 🧱 gau	ssdb 🗸 🗸 🔤	sc public 🗸 🗸	Q Etc/GM	T-8 🗸	& sqLtest
ata source name Q Custom	1 selo	ect * from s	ales;	Configure			>	<pre></pre>
				Editor Shortcuts	User Settings	Export Setting:	5	
0				Script storage OBS buck	et Bucket	~	C Create OBS	
/Roles				Script storage path	data/sql			
>					The value can co digits, underscor	intain only Chinese ch es (_), and slashes (/).	aracters, letters,	
				Database filtering				
					After it is turned database user ha Please turn it on has_database_p function to check	on, only the databases as create permission w with caution. You can rivilege(database nam the permissions.	: for which the rill be displayed. use the e, "create")	
				schema filtering				
					After turning it or database user hi Please turn it on has_schema_pri to view the perm	a, only the schema for as usage permissions with caution. You can vilege(schema name, issions.	which the will be displayed. use the 'usage') function	
				Table column name anno	tation			
					After turning it or column names w results are return	i, select * from [table n ill have added comme ied.	ame], and the nts when the	
						Cancel	ОК	

Settings	Description
Editor	Provides basic settings for compiling SQL statements in the editor. For example, if <b>Autocomplete</b> is selected by default, some keywords can be automatically filled. If you select <b>Autocomplete</b> <b>Table/Column Name</b> , table or column names can be automatically filled when a table is complied.
Shortcuts	You can use shortcut keys to quickly compile SQL statements in the editor.
User Settings	These settings are required for OBS. You can choose to set a global OBS bucket, and any file directories you create will be saved to this bucket's folder by default. You can also activate database and schema permission filtering, which limits the <b>create</b> permission of the database and the <b>usage</b> permission of the schema to the current database user. You can enable the function of displaying comments on table column names. After the function is enabled, run the <b>select * from</b> <i>[Table name]</i> command. The table header in the returned result contains the comments of the column.
Export Settings	These setting are required for OBS. You can specify the OBS bucket and path for the full export and set the timeout interval of a full export task. After the query times out, the export task is terminated.

#### Table 4-5 Setting parameters

**Step 4** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

# 4.3.2 Using Data Studio to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

Data Studio is a SQL client tool running on the Windows operating system. It provides various GUIs for you to manage databases and database objects, as well as edit, run, and debug SQL scripts, and view execution plans. Download the Data Studio software package from the GaussDB(DWS) console. The package can be used without installation after being decompressed.

Data Studio versions include **Windows x86** (32-bit Windows system) and **Windows x64** (64-bit Windows system).

# **Preparations Before Connecting to a Cluster**

- You have obtained the administrator username and password for logging in to the database in the data warehouse cluster.
- You have obtained the public network address, including the IP address and port number in the data warehouse cluster. For details, see Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- You have configured the security group of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster and added an inbound rule that allows users' IP addresses to access ports using the TCP.

For details, see **Adding a Security Group Rule** in the *Virtual Private Cloud User Guide*.

# Connecting to the Cluster Database Using Data Studio

**Step 1** GaussDB(DWS) provides a Windows-based Data Studio client and the tool depends on the JDK. You need to install the JDK on the client host first.

#### NOTICE

Only JDK 1.8 is supported.

In the Windows operating system, you can download the required JDK version from the **official website of SDK**, and install it by following the installation guidance.

- **Step 2** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 3 Choose Management > Client Connections.
- Step 4 On the Download Client and Driver page, download Data Studio GUI Client.
  - Select Windows x86 or Windows x64 based on the OS type and click
     Download to download a Data Studio version that matches the current cluster.

If clusters of different versions are available, you will download the Data Studio matching the earliest cluster version after clicking **Download**. If there is no cluster, you will download the Data Studio tool of the earliest version after clicking **Download**. GaussDB(DWS) clusters are compatible with earlier versions of Data Studio.

• Click **Historical Version** to download the corresponding Data Studio version. You are advised to download Data Studio based on the cluster version.

#### Figure 4-24 Downloading clients

Client ()	
CLI Client	Microsoft Windows  V Download Verification File Historical Version
	Windows Server 2008/Windows 7 or later
Data Studio GUI Client	Microsoft Windows x64 V Download Verification File Historical Version
	To install Data Studio, ensure that Java 8 is correctly installed, and the bit versions of the Data Studio Java 8 and your OS are the same.
DSC Grammar Conversion Tool	DSC_8.3.1.111.zip v Download Verification File
	Before DSC installation, idk8 needs to be installed correctly, and please confirm that the bit number of iava8 and the computer operating system

If you have clusters of different versions, the system displays a dialog box, prompting you to select the cluster version and download the corresponding client. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, click the name of the specified cluster to go to the **Cluster Information** page and view the cluster version.

**Step 5** Decompress the downloaded client software package (32-bit or 64-bit) to the installation directory.

**Step 6** Open the installation directory and double-click **Data Studio.exe** to start the Data Studio client. See **Figure 4-25**.

configuration
db_assistant
docs
h features
p2
h plugins
h tools
UserData
💼 artifacts.xml
📄 changelog.txt
🗯 Data Studio.exe
📓 Data Studio.ini
💿 DataStudio.bat
📧 eclipsec.exe
📄 readme.txt

#### Figure 4-25 Starting the client

#### 

If your computer blocks the running of the application, you can unlock the **Data Studio.exe** file to start the application.

#### **Step 7** Choose **File > New Connection** from the main menu. See **Figure 4-26**.

Figure 4-26 New connection

S. I	Data St	udio			
File	) Edit	Run	Debug	Settings	Help
2	New (	Connec	tion		Ctrl+N

**Step 8** In the displayed **New Database Connection** window, enter the connection parameters.

Table 4-6 Connection paramete
-------------------------------

Field	Description	Example Value
Database Type	Select HUAWEI CLOUD DWS.	HUAWEI CLOUD DWS
Connection Name	Name of the connection	dws-demo
Host	IP address (IPv4) or domain name of the cluster to be connected	-
Port Number	Database port	8000

Field	Description	Example Value
Database Name	Database name	gaussdb
Username	Username for connecting to the database	-
Password	Password for logging in to the database to be connected	-
Save Password	<ul> <li>Select an option from the drop-down list:</li> <li>Current Session Only: The password is saved only in the current session.</li> <li>Do Not Save: The password is not saved.</li> </ul>	-
Enable SSL	If <b>Enable SSL</b> is selected, the client can use SSL to encrypt connections. The SSL connection mode is more secure than common modes, so you are advised to enable SSL connection.	-

If **Enable SSL** is selected, **download the SSL certificate** and decompress it. Click the **SSL** tab and configure the following parameters:

Table 4-7	Configuring	SSL	parameters
-----------	-------------	-----	------------

Field	Description
Client SSL Certificate	Select the <b>sslcert\client.crt</b> file in the decompressed SSL certificate directory.
Client SSL Key	Only the PK8 format is supported. Select the <b>sslcert \client.key.pk8</b> file in the directory where the SSL certificate is decompressed.
Root Certificate	When <b>SSL Mode</b> is set to <b>verify-ca</b> , the root certificate must be configured. Select the <b>sslcert\cacert.pem</b> file in the decompressed SSL certificate directory.
SSL Cipher	Set the password for the client SSL key in PK8 format.
SSL Mode	<ul> <li>GaussDB(DWS) supports the following SSL modes:</li> <li>require</li> <li>verify-ca</li> <li>GaussDB(DWS) does not support the verify-full mode.</li> </ul>

onnection Name	Connection Details	Server Information	General SSL	Advanced		
			Client SSL Certifica	ite	D:\dws_ssl_cert\sslcert\clie	
			Client SSL Key		D:\dws_ssl_cert\sslcert\clie	
			Root Certificate		D:\dws_ssl_cert\sslcert\cac	
			SSL Password		•••••	
			SSL Mode		require 🔻	
			?		OK Clear	Close

Figure 4-27 Configuring SSL parameters

**Step 9** Click **OK** to establish the database connection.

If SSL is enabled, click **Continue** in the displayed **Connection Security Alert** dialog box.

After the login is successful, the **RECENT LOGIN ACTIVITY** dialog box is displayed, indicating that Data Studio is connected to the database. You can run the SQL statement in the **SQL Terminal** window on the Data Studio page.

For details about how to use other functions of Data Studio, press **F1** to view the Data Studio user manual.

#### **NOTE**

- Data cannot be rolled back after being added, deleted, modified, or queried in Data Studio.
- Data Studio can save connection information, excluding passwords.
- DDL/DDL and data cannot be exported in batches for the following objects:
  - Export DDL:

Connection, database, foreign table, sequence, column, index, constraint, partition, function/procedure group, regular tables group, views group, schemas group, and system catalog group.

- Export DDL and Data:

Connection, database, namespace, foreign table, sequence, column, index, constraint, partition, function/procedure, view, regular tables group, schemas group, and system catalog group.

----End

# 4.4 Using the CLI to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 4.4.1 Downloading the Client

GaussDB(DWS) provides client tool packages that match the cluster versions. You can download the desired client tool package on the GaussDB(DWS) management console.

The client tool package contains the following:

# • Linux database connection tool gsql and the script for testing sample data

Linux gsql is a Linux command line client running in Linux. It is used to connect to the database in a data warehouse cluster.

The script for testing sample data is used to execute the introductory example.

#### • Windows gsql

Windows gsql is a command line client running on the Windows OS. It is used to connect to the database in a data warehouse cluster.

#### **NOTE**

Only 8.1.3.101 and later cluster versions can be downloaded from the console.

#### • GDS tool package

Gauss Data Service (GDS) is a data service tool. You can use the GDS tool to import a data file in a common file system to the GaussDB(DWS) database. The GDS tool package must be installed on the server where the data source file is located. The server where the data source file is located is called a data server or GDS server.

# Downloading the Client

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Management** > **Client Connections**.
- **Step 3** Select the GaussDB(DWS) client of the corresponding version from the drop-down list of **CLI Client**.

Choose a corresponding client version according to the cluster version and operating system to which the client is to be installed.

#### **NOTE**

The CPU architecture of the client must be the same as that of the cluster. If the cluster uses x86 servers, select an x86 client.

- **Step 4** Click **Download** to download the gsql tool matching the 8.1.x cluster version. Click **Historical Version** to download the gsql tool corresponding to the cluster version.
  - You are advised to download the gsql tool that matches the cluster version. That is, use gsql 8.1.x for clusters of 8.1.0 or later, and use gsql 8.2.x for clusters of 8.2.0 or later.
  - The following table describes the files and folders in the Linux gsql tool package.

File or Folder	Description
bin	This folder holds the Linux executable files for gsql, which include tools gsql, GDS, gs_dump, gs_dumpall, and gs_restore. For details, see <b>Server Tool</b> .
gds	This folder contains the files of the GDS data service tool. The GDS tool is used for parallel data loading and can import the data files stored in a common file system to a GaussDB(DWS) database.
lib	This folder contains the <b>lib</b> library required for executing the gsql client.
sample	This folder contains the following directories and files:
	<ul> <li>setup.sh: script file for configuring the AK/SK before using gsql to import sample data</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>tpcds_load_data_from_obs.sql: script file for importing the TPC-DS sample data using the gsql client</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>query_sql directory: script file for querying the TPC-DS sample data</li> </ul>
gsql_env.s h	Script file for configuring environment variables before running the gsql client.

**Table 4-8** Files and folders in the Linux gsql tool package

• The following table describes the files and folders in the Windows gsql tool package.

File or Folder	Description
x64	This folder contains the 64-bit Windows gsql execution binary file and the dynamic library.
x86	This folder contains the 32-bit Windows gsql execution binary file and the dynamic library.

Table 4-9 Files and folders in the Windows gsql tool package

#### **NOTE**

In the cluster list on the **Clusters** > **Dedicated Clusters** page, click the name of the specified cluster to go to the **Cluster Information** page and view the cluster version.

----End

# 4.4.2 Using the Linux gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster

This section describes how to connect to a database through an SQL client after you create a data warehouse cluster and before you use the cluster's database.

GaussDB(DWS) provides the Linux gsql client that matches the cluster version for you to access the cluster through the cluster's public or private network address.

The gsql command line client provided by GaussDB(DWS) runs on Linux. Before using it to remotely connect to a GaussDB(DWS) cluster, you need to prepare a Linux server for installing and running the gsql client. If you use a public network address to access the cluster, you can install the Linux gsql client on your own Linux server. Ensure that the Linux server has a public network address. If no EIPs are configured for your GaussDB(DWS) cluster, you are advised to create a Linux ECS for convenience purposes. For more information, see **(Optional) Preparing an ECS as the gsql Client Server**.

# (Optional) Preparing an ECS as the gsql Client Server

For how to purchase an ECS, see **Purchasing an ECS** in the *Elastic Cloud Server Getting Started*.

The created ECS must meet the following requirements:

- ECS and GaussDB(DWS) clusters must belong to the same region and AZ.
- If you use the gsql client provided by GaussDB(DWS) to connect to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster, the ECS image must meet the following requirements: The image's OS must be one of the following Linux OSs supported by the gsql client:
  - The **Redhat x86\_64** client can be used on the following OSs:
    - RHEL 6.4~7.6
    - CentOS 6.4~7.4
    - EulerOS 2.3
  - The **SUSE x86\_64** client can be used on the following OSs:
    - SLES 11.1~11.4
    - SLES 12.0~12.3
  - The **Euler Kunpeng\_64** client can be used on the following OS:
    - EulerOS 2.8
  - The Stream Euler x86\_64 client can be used on the following OS: EulerOS 2.2
  - The **Stream Euler Kunpeng\_64** client can be used on the following OS:
    - EulerOS 2.8
- If the client accesses the cluster using the private network address, ensure that the created ECS is in the same VPC as the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

For details about VPC operations, see "VPC and Subnet" in the *Virtual Private Cloud User Guide*.

• If the client accesses the cluster using the public network address, ensure that both the created ECS and GaussDB(DWS) cluster have an EIP.

When purchasing an ECS, set **EIP** to **Buy now** or **Specify**.

• The security group rules of the ECS must enable communication between the ECS and the port that the GaussDB(DWS) cluster uses to provide services.

For details about security group operations, see "**Security Group**" in the *Virtual Private Cloud User Guide*.

Ensure that the security group of the ECS contains rules meeting the following requirements. If the rules do not exist, add them to the security group:

- Transfer Direction: Outbound
- Protocol: The protocol must contain TCP. For example, **TCP** or **All**.
- Port: The value must contain the database port that provides services in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. For example, set this parameter to 1-65535 or a specific GaussDB(DWS) database port.
- Destination: The IP address set here must contain the IP address of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster to be connected. 0.0.0/0 indicates any IP address.

#### Figure 4-28 Outbound rule

	· · · · · ·		
urity Group dws-dws-demo-z0	0388167-8000		
can import multiple rules in a b	atch.		
rotocol & Port ⑦	Destination (?)	Description	Operation
	[ 20 B		
Custom TCP 🔹	IP address	•	Operation 🔻
Custom TOD	IB address	-	

• The security group rules of the data warehouse cluster must ensure that GaussDB(DWS) can receive network access requests from clients.

Ensure that the cluster's security group contains rules meeting the following requirements. If the rules do not exist, add them to the security group:

- Transfer Direction: Inbound
- **Protocol**: The protocol must contain TCP. For example, **TCP** or **All**.
- Port: Set this parameter to the servicing database port of the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. Example: 8000.
- Source IP Address: The IP address set here must contain the IP address of the GaussDB(DWS) client host. Example: 192.168.0.10/32.

#### Figure 4-29 Inbound rule

G Some secu	d Rule Learn	more about security group co	onfiguration.	e		
acurity Group <mark>ou can</mark> import mul Priority ⑦	Itiple rules in a batch. Action ⑦	Protocol & Port (?)	Туре	Source (?)	Description	Operation
1	Allow •	Protocols/TCP (Custo * 8000	IPv4 ¥	IP address 192.168.0.10/32	•	Replicate   Delete
			Add Rule	cal		

# Downloading the Linux gsql Client and Connecting to a Cluster

Step 1 Download the Linux gsql client by referring to Downloading the Client, and use an SSH file transfer tool (such as WinSCP) to upload the client to a target Linux server.

You are advised to download the gsql tool that matches the cluster version. That is, use gsql 8.1.x for clusters of 8.1.0 or later, and use gsql 8.2.x for clusters of 8.2.0 or later. To download gsql 8.2.x, replace dws\_client\_8.1.x\_redhat\_x64.zip with dws\_client\_8.2.x\_redhat\_x64.zip. The dws\_client\_8.1.x\_redhat\_x64.zip is used as an example.

The user who uploads the client must have the full control permission on the target directory on the host to which the client is uploaded.

Step 2 Use the SSH tool to remotely manage the host where the client is installed.

For how to log in to an ECS, see "Login Using an SSH Password" in the *Elastic Cloud Server User Guide*.

Step 3 (Optional) To connect to the cluster in SSL mode, configure SSL authentication parameters on the server where the client is installed. For details, see Establishing Secure TCP/IP Connections in SSL Mode.

#### D NOTE

The SSL connection mode is more secure than the non-SSL mode. You are advised to connect the client to the cluster in SSL mode.

**Step 4** Run the following commands to decompress the client:

cd <*Path for saving the client>* unzip *dws\_client\_8.1.x\_redhat\_x64.zip* 

In the preceding commands:

- <*Path\_for\_storing\_the\_client*>: Replace it with the actual path.
- *dws\_client\_8.1.x\_redhat\_x64.zip*. This is the client tool package name of **RedHat x86**. Replace it with the actual name.
- **Step 5** Run the following command to configure the GaussDB(DWS) client: source gsqL\_env.sh

If the following information is displayed, the gsql client is successfully configured: All things done.

#### Step 6 Connect to the database in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster using the gsql client. Replace the values of each parameter with actual values. gsql -d <Database\_name> -h <Cluster\_address> -U <Database\_user> -p <Database\_port> -W <Cluster\_password> -r

The parameters are described as follows:

- *Database\_name*. Enter the name of the database to be connected. If you use the client to connect to the cluster for the first time, enter the default database **gaussdb**.
- Cluster\_address: For details about how to obtain this address, see Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster. If a public network address is used for connection, set this parameter to Public Network Address or Public Network Domain Name. If a private network address is used for connection, set this parameter to Private Network Address or Private Network Domain Name. If ELB is used for connection, set this parameter to ELB Address.
- *Database\_user*: Enter the username of the cluster's database. If you use the client to connect to the cluster for the first time, set this parameter to the default administrator configured during cluster creation, for example, **dbadmin**.
- Database\_port. Enter the database port set during cluster creation.

For example, run the following command to connect to the default database **gaussdb** in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster:

gsql -d gaussdb -h 10.168.0.74 -U dbadmin -p 8000 -W password -r

If the following information is displayed, the connection succeeded:

gaussdb=>

----End

# gsql Command Reference

For more information about the gsql commands, see "Client Tools" > "Command Reference" in the *Data Warehouse Service Tool Guide*.

# (Optional) Importing TPC-DS Sample Data Using gsql

GaussDB(DWS) users can import data from external sources to data warehouse clusters. This section describes how to import sample data from OBS to a data warehouse cluster and perform querying and analysis operations on the sample data. The sample data is generated based on the standard TPC-DS benchmark test.

TPC-DS is the benchmark for testing the performance of decision support. With TPC-DS test data and cases, you can simulate complex scenarios, such as big data set statistics, report generation, online query, and data mining, to better understand functions and performance of database applications.

Step 1 Use the SSH remote connection tool to log in to the server where the gsql client is installed and go to the gsql directory. The /opt directory is used as an example for storing the gsql client.
cd /opt

**Step 2** Switch to the specified directory and set the AK and SK for importing sample data and the OBS access address.

cd sample /bin/bash setup.sh -ak <*Access\_Key\_Id>* -sk <*Secret\_Access\_Key>* -obs\_location obs.eudublin.myhuaweicloud.com

If the following information is displayed, the settings are successful:

setup successfully!

**NOTE** 

<<u>Access\_Key\_Id></u> and <u><<u>Secret\_Access\_Key></u>: indicate the AK and SK, respectively. For how to obtain the AK and SK, see <u>Creating Access Keys</u> (AK and SK). Replace the parameters in the statements with the obtained values.</u>

**Step 3** Go back to previous directory and run the gsql environment variables.

cd .. source gsql\_env.sh cd bin

#### **Step 4** Import the sample data to the data warehouse.

#### Command format:

gsql -d *<Database name>* -h *<Public network address of the cluster>* -U *<Administrator>* -p *<Data warehouse port number>* -f *<Path for storing the sample data script>* -r

#### Sample command:

gsql -d gaussdb -h 10.168.0.74 -U dbadmin -p 8000 -f /opt/sample/tpcds\_load\_data\_from\_obs.sql -r

**NOTE** 

In the preceding command, sample data script **tpcds\_load\_data\_from\_obs.sql** is stored in the sample directory (for example, **/opt/sample**/) of the GaussDB(DWS) client.

After you enter the administrator password and successfully connect to the database in the cluster, the system will automatically create a foreign table to associate the sample data outside the cluster. Then, the system creates a target table for saving the sample data and imports the data to the target table using the foreign table.

The time required for importing a large dataset depends on the current GaussDB(DWS) cluster specifications. Generally, the import takes about 10 to 20 minutes. If information similar to the following is displayed, the import is successful.

Time:1845600.524 ms

- Step 5 In the Linux command window, run the following commands to switch to a specific directory and query the sample data: cd /opt/sample/query\_sql/ /bin/bash tpcds100x.sh
- **Step 6** Enter the cluster's public network IP address, access port, database name, user who accesses the database, and password of the user as prompted.
  - The default database name is gaussdb.
  - Use the administrator username and password configured during cluster creation as the username and password for accessing the database.

After the query is complete, a directory for storing the query result, such as **query\_output\_20170914\_072341**, will be generated in the current query directory, for example, **sample/query\_sql**/.

----End

# 4.4.3 Using the Windows gsql Client to Connect to a Cluster

This section describes how to connect to a database through an SQL client after you create a data warehouse cluster and before you use the cluster's database. GaussDB(DWS) provides the Windows gsql client that matches the cluster version for you to access the cluster through the cluster's public or private network address.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Install and run the gsql client on the local Windows server (in Windows CLI). Windows Server 2008/Windows 7 and later are supported.
- **Step 2** Download the Windows gsql client by referring to **Downloading the Client** and decompress the package to a local folder.
- **Step 3** On the local server, click **Start**, search for **cmd**, and run the program as the administrator. Alternatively, press **Win+R** to open the Windows CLI.
- **Step 4** Set environment variables. For a 32-bit OS, select the **x86** folder. For a 64-bit OS, select the **x64** folder.

Method 1: Configure environment variables in the Windows CLI. Open the command prompt and run the **set path**=*<window\_gsql>*;%path% command, where *<window\_gsql>* indicates the folder path where the Windows gsql client was decompressed to in the previous step. For example:

set path=C:\Users\xx\Desktop\dws\_8.1.x\_gsql\_for\_windows\x64;%path%

Method 2: In the **Control Panel** window, search for **System** and click **View advanced system settings**. Click the **Advanced** tab, and click **Environment Variables**. Select the **Path** parameter and click **Edit**. Add the gsql path in the parameter value. For example:

 D:\dws\_8.1.x\_gsql\_for\_windows\x64
 (N)

 [E]
 [E]

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 []
 []

 [

Figure 4-30 Configuring Windows environment variables

Step 5 (Optional) To connect to the cluster in SSL mode, configure SSL authentication parameters on the server where the client is installed. For details, see Establishing Secure TCP/IP Connections in SSL Mode.

#### **NOTE**

The SSL connection mode is more secure than the non-SSL mode. You are advised to connect the client to the cluster in SSL mode.

**Step 6** In the Windows CLI, run the following command to connect to the database in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster using the gsql client:

gsql -d <Database\_name> -h <Cluster\_address> -U <Database\_user> -p <Database\_port> -W <Cluster\_password> -r

The parameters are as follows:

- **Database name**: Enter the name of the database to be connected. If you use the client to connect to the cluster for the first time, enter the default database **gaussdb**.
- Cluster address: For details about how to obtain this address, see Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster. If a public network address is used for connection, set this parameter to the public network domain name. If a private network address is used for connection, set this parameter to the private network domain name. If ELB is used for connection, set this parameter to ELB Address.
- **Database user**: Enter the username of the cluster's database. If you use the client to connect to the cluster for the first time, set this parameter to the default administrator configured during cluster creation, for example, **dbadmin**.
- Database port: Enter the database port set during cluster creation.

For example, run the following command to connect to the default database **gaussdb** in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster:

gsql -d gaussdb -h 10.168.0.74 -U dbadmin -p 8000 -W password -r

If the following information is displayed, the connection succeeded:

gaussdb=>

----End

#### Precautions

1. The default character encoding of the Windows command prompt is GBK, and the default value of **client\_encoding** of Windows gsql is **GBK**. Some characters encoded using UTF-8 cannot be displayed in Windows gsql.

Suggestion: Ensure the file specified using **-f** uses UTF-8 encoding, and set the default encoding format to **UTF-8** (**set client\_encoding='utf-8';**).

 Paths in Windows gsql must be separated by slashes (/), or an error will be reported. In a meta-command, the backslash (\) indicates the start of a metacommand. If the backslash is enclosed in single quotation marks ('\'), it is used for escape. gaussdb=> \i D:\test.sql

D:: Permission denied postgres=> \i D:/test.sql 1

(1 row)

3. To use the \! metacommand to run a system command in Windows gsql, be sure to use the path separator required by the system command. Generally, the path separator is a backslash (\). gaussdb=> \! type D:/test.sql Incorrect syntax. gaussdb=> \! type D:\test.sql

select 1 as id;

- Windows gsql does not support the \parallel meta-command. gaussdb=> \parallel ERROR: "\parallel" is not supported in Windows.
- 5. In Linux shell, single quotation marks (") and double quotation marks ("") can be used to enclose strings. In Windows, only double quotation marks can be used.

gsql -h 192.168.233.189 -p 8109 -d postgres -U odbcuser -W *password* -c "select 1 as id" id

-----1

(1 row)

If single quotation marks are used, an error will be reported and the input will be ignored.

gsql -h 192.168.233.189 -p 8109 -d postgres -U odbcuser -W *password* -c 'select 1 as id' gsql: warning: extra command-line argument "1" ignored gsql: warning: extra command-line argument "as" ignored gsql: warning: extra command-line argument "id'" ignored ERROR: unterminated quoted string at or near "'select" LINE 1: 'select

- 6. If Windows gsql is idle for a long time after a connection is established, the connection session times out, and an SSL error is reported. In this case, you need to log in again. The following error is reported: SSL SYSCALL error: Software caused connection abort (0x00002745/10053), remote datanode <NULL>, error: Result too large
- 7. In Windows, press **Ctrl+C** to exit gsql. If **Ctrl+C** are pressed during input, the input will be ignored and you will be forced to exit gsql.

Enter **as** and press **Ctrl+C**. After \**q** is displayed, exit gsql. gaussdb=> select 1 gaussdb=> as \q

- 8. Windows gsql cannot connect to a database using the LATIN1 character encoding. The error information is as follows: gsql: FATAL: conversion between GBK and LATIN1 is not supported
- 9. The location of the **gsqlrc.conf** file:

The default **gsqlrc** path is **%APPDATA%/postgresql/gsqlrc.conf**. You can also set the path using the **PSQLRC** variable.

- set PSQLRC=C:\Users\xx\Desktop\dws\_8.1.x\_gsql\_for\_windows\x64\gsqlrc.conf
- 10. **MSVCP100.dll** may be missing in the Windows Server system. When you use **gsql**, the following error message is displayed.

#### Figure 4-31 Error message



Solution: Add the **MSVCP100.dll** file. You can download the C++ redistributable program package and install the **vcredist\_x86.exe/ vcredist\_x64.exe** package to supplement the required dynamic link library file.

# gsql Command Reference

For more information about the gsql commands, see "Client Tools" > "Command Reference" in the *Data Warehouse Service Tool Guide*.

# 4.4.4 Establishing Secure TCP/IP Connections in SSL Mode

GaussDB(DWS) supports the standard SSL. As a highly secure protocol, SSL authenticates bidirectional identification between the server and client using digital signatures and digital certificates to ensure secure data transmission. To support SSL connection, GaussDB(DWS) has obtained the formal certificates and keys for the server and client from the CA certification center. It is assumed that the key and certificate for the server are **server.key** and **server.crt** respectively; the key and certificate for the client are **client.key** and **client.crt** respectively, and the name of the CA root certificate is **cacert.pem**.

The SSL connection mode is more secure. By default, the SSL feature in a cluster allows SSL and non-SSL connections from the client. For security purposes, you are advised to connect to the cluster via SSL from the client. Ensure the certificate, private key, and root certificate of the GaussDB(DWS) server have been configured by default. To forcibly use an SSL connection, configure the **require\_ssl** parameter in the **Require SSL Connection** area of the cluster's **Security Settings** page on the GaussDB(DWS) console. Require SSL Connection on the **Security Settings** page of the cluster. For more information, see **Configuring SSL Connection** and **Combinations of SSL Connection Parameters on the Client and Server**.

The client or JDBC/ODBC driver needs to use SSL connection. Configure related SSL connection parameters in the client or application code. The GaussDB(DWS) console provides the SSL certificate required by the client. The SSL certificate contains the default certificate, private key, root certificate, and private key password encryption file required by the client. Download the SSL certificate to the host where the client is installed, and specify the path of the certificate on the client. For more information, see Configuring Digital Certificate Parameters Related to SSL Authentication on the gsql Client and SSL Authentication Modes and Client Parameters.

#### **NOTE**

Using the default certificate may pose security risks. To improve system security, you are advised to periodically change the certificate to prevent password cracking. If you need to replace the certificate, contact the database customer service.

# **Configuring SSL Connection**

#### Prerequisites

- Changes made to security configuration parameters require a cluster restart to take effect. Otherwise, the cluster will be temporarily unavailable.
- To modify the cluster's security configuration, ensure that the following conditions are met:
  - The cluster status is **Available** or **Unbalanced**.
  - The Task Information cannot be set to Creating snapshot, Scaling out, Configuring, or Restarting.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, click **Security Settings**.

By default, **Configuration Status** is **Synchronized**, which indicates that the latest database result is displayed.

**Step 4** In the **SSL Connection** area, enable **Require SSL Connection** (recommended).

indicates the function is enabled. The **require\_ssl** is set to **1**, indicating that the server forcibly requires the SSL connection.

indicates the function is disabled (default value). The **require\_ssl** parameter is set to **0**, indicating that the server does not require SSL connections. For details about how to configure the **require\_ssl** parameter, see **require\_ssl** (Server).

#### 

- If the gsql client or ODBC driver provided by GaussDB(DWS) is used, GaussDB(DWS) supports the TLSv1.2 SSL protocol.
- If the JDBC driver provided by GaussDB(DWS) is used, GaussDB(DWS) supports SSL protocols, such as SSLv3, TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2. The SSL protocol used between the client and the database depends on the Java Development Kit (JDK) version used by the client. Generally, JDK supports multiple SSL protocols.

#### Step 5 Click Apply.

The system automatically saves the SSL connection settings. On the **Security Settings** page, **Configuration Status** is **Applying**. After **Configuration Status** changes to **Synchronized**, the settings have been saved and taken effect.

----End

# Configuring Digital Certificate Parameters Related to SSL Authentication on the gsql Client

After a data warehouse cluster is deployed, the SSL authentication mode is enabled by default. The server certificate, private key, and root certificate have been configured by default. You need to configure the client parameters.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose **Client Connections**.
- Step 2 In the Driver area, click download an SSL certificate.
- **Step 3** Use a file transfer tool (such as WinSCP) to upload the SSL certificate to the host where the client is installed.

For example, save the downloaded certificate **dws\_ssl\_cert.zip** to the **/home/ dbadmin/dws\_ssl/** directory.

- Step 4 Use an SSH remote connection tool (such as PuTTY) to log in to the host where the gsql client is installed and run the following commands to go to the directory where the SSL certificate is stored and decompress the SSL certificate: cd /home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/ unzip dws\_ssl\_cert.zip
- **Step 5** Run the export command and configure digital certificate parameters related to SSL authentication on the host where the gsql client is installed.

There are two SSL authentication modes: bidirectional authentication and unidirectional authentication. The client environment variables to be configured vary according to the authentication mode. For details, see **SSL Authentication Modes and Client Parameters**.

The following parameters must be configured for bidirectional authentication:

export PGSSLCERT="/home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/sslcert/client.crt" export PGSSLKEY="/home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/sslcert/client.key" export PGSSLMODE="verify-ca" export PGSSLROOTCERT="/home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/sslcert/cacert.pem"

The following parameters must be configured for unidirectional authentication:

export PGSSLMODE="verify-ca" export PGSSLROOTCERT="/home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/sslcert/cacert.pem"

#### NOTICE

- You are advised to use bidirectional authentication for security purposes.
- The environment variables configured for a client must contain the absolute file paths.
- **Step 6** Change the client private key permissions.

The permissions on the client's root certificate, private key, certificate, and encrypted private key file must be **600**. If the permissions do not meet the requirement, the client cannot connect to the cluster in SSL mode.

```
chmod 600 client.key
chmod 600 client.crt
```

chmod 600 *client.key.cipher* chmod 600 *client.key.rand* chmod 600 *cacert.pem* 

----End

# **SSL Authentication Modes and Client Parameters**

There are two SSL authentication modes: bidirectional authentication and unidirectional authentication. Table **Table 4-10** shows the differences between these two modes. You are advised to use bidirectional authentication for security purposes.

Authe nticati on Mode	Description	Environmen t Variables Configured on a Client	Maintenance
Bidirect ional authen tication (recom mende d)	The client verifies the server's certificate and the server verifies the client's certificate. The connection can be set up only after the verifications are successful.	Set the following environment variables: PGSSLCER T PGSSLKEY PGSSLRO OTCERT PGSSLMO DE	This authentication mode is applicable to scenarios that require high data security. When using this mode, you are advised to set the <b>PGSSLMODE</b> client variable to <b>verify-ca</b> for network data security purposes.
Unidire ctional authen tication	The client verifies the server's certificate, whereas the server does not verify the client's certificate. The server loads the certificate information and sends it to the client. The client verifies the server's certificate according to the root certificate.	Set the following environment variables: • PGSSLRO OTCERT • PGSSLMO DE	To prevent TCP-based security attacks, you are advised to use the SSL certificate authentication. In addition to configuring the client root certificate, you are advised to set the <b>PGSSLMODE</b> variable to <b>verify-ca</b> on the client.

Table 4-10 Authentication modes

Configure environment variables related to SSL authentication on the client. For details, see **Table 4-11**.

# D NOTE

The path of environment variables is set to */home/dbadmin/dws\_ssl/* as an example. Replace it with the actual path.

 Table 4-11 Client parameters

Environ ment Variabl e	Description	Value Description
PGSSLC ERT	Specifies the certificate files for a client, including the public key. Certificates prove	The absolute path of the files must be specified, for example: export PGSSLCERT='/home/dbadmin/dws_ssl/sslcert/ client.crt
	the legal identity of the client and the public key is sent to the peer end for data encryption.	(No default value)
PGSSLK EY	Specifies the private key file for the client to decrypt digital	The absolute path of the files must be specified, for example: export PGSSLKEY='/home/dbadmin/dws_ssl/sslcert/ client.key
	encrypted using the public key.	(No default value)

Environ ment Variabl e	Description	Value Description
PGSSLM ODE	Specifies whether to negotiate with the server about SSL connection and specifies the priority of the SSL connection.	<ul> <li>Values and meanings:</li> <li>disable: only tries to establish a non-SSL connection.</li> <li>allow: tries to establish a non-SSL connection first, and then an SSL connection if the first attempt fails.</li> <li>prefer: tries to establish an SSL connection first, and then a non-SSL connection first, and then a non-SSL connection if the first attempt fails.</li> <li>require: only tries to establish an SSL connection. If there is a CA file, perform the verification according to the scenario in which the parameter is set to verify-ca.</li> <li>verify-ca: tries to establish an SSL connection and check whether the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA.</li> <li>verify-full: GaussDB(DWS) does not support this mode.</li> <li>Default value: prefer</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>When an external client accesses a cluster, the error message "ssl SYSCALL error" is displayed on some nodes. In this case, run export PGSSLMODE="allow" or export PGSSLMODE="allow" or export</li> </ul>
PGSSLR OOTCER T	Specifies the root certificate file for issuing client certificates. The root certificate is used to verify the server certificate.	The absolute path of the files must be specified, for example: export PGSSLROOTCERT='/home/dbadmin/dws_ssl/sslcert/ certca.pem' Default value: null
PGSSLC RL	Specifies the certificate revocation list file, which is used to check whether a server certificate is in the list. If the certificate is in the list, it is invalid.	The absolute path of the files must be specified, for example: export PGSSLCRL='/home/dbadmin/dws_ssl/sslcert/sslcrl- file.crt Default value: null

# Combinations of SSL Connection Parameters on the Client and Server

Whether the client uses the SSL encryption connection mode and whether to verify the server certificate depend on client parameter **sslmode** and server (cluster) parameters **ssl** and **require\_ssl**. The parameters are as follows:

#### • ssl (Server)

The **ssl** parameter indicates whether to enable the SSL function. **on** indicates that the function is enabled, and **off** indicates that the function is disabled.

- The default value is **on** for clusters whose version is 1.3.1 or later, and you cannot set this parameter on the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- For clusters whose version is earlier than 1.3.1, the default value is on.
   You can set this parameter in the SSL Connection area on the cluster's
   Security Settings page of the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### • require\_ssl (Server)

The **require\_ssl** parameter specifies whether the server forcibly requires SSL connection. This parameter is valid only when **ssl** is set to **on**. **on** indicates that the server forcibly requires SSL connection. **off** indicates that the server does not require SSL connection.

- The default value is off for clusters whose version is 1.3.1 or later. You can set the require\_ssl parameter in the Require SSL Connection area of the cluster's Security Settings page on the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- For clusters whose version is earlier than 1.3.1, the default value is off, and you cannot set this parameter on the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### • sslmode (Client)

You can set this parameter in the SQL client tool.

- In the gsql command line client, this parameter is the PGSSLMODE parameter.
- On the Data Studio client, this parameter is the **SSL Mode** parameter.

The combinations of client parameter **sslmode** and server parameters **ssl** and **require\_ssl** are as follows.

ssl (Serv er)	sslmode (Client)	require_ssl (Server)	Result
on	disable	on	The server requires SSL, but the client disables SSL for the connection. As a result, the connection cannot be set up.
	disable	off	The connection is not encrypted.
	allow	on	The connection is encrypted.
	allow	off	The connection is not encrypted.
	prefer	on	The connection is encrypted.
	prefer	off	The connection is encrypted.

**Table 4-12** Combinations of SSL connection parameters on the client and server

ssl (Serv er)	sslmode (Client)	require_ssl (Server)	Result
	require	on	The connection is encrypted.
	require	off	The connection is encrypted.
	verify-ca	on	The connection is encrypted and the server certificate is verified.
	verify-ca	off	The connection is encrypted and the server certificate is verified.
off	disable	on	The connection is not encrypted.
	disable	off	The connection is not encrypted.
	allow	on	The connection is not encrypted.
	allow	off	The connection is not encrypted.
	prefer	on	The connection is not encrypted.
	prefer	off	The connection is not encrypted.
	require	on	The client requires SSL, but SSL is disabled on the server. Therefore, the connection cannot be set up.
	require	off	The client requires SSL, but SSL is disabled on the server. Therefore, the connection cannot be set up.
	verify-ca	on	The client requires SSL, but SSL is disabled on the server. Therefore, the connection cannot be set up.
	verify-ca	off	The client requires SSL, but SSL is disabled on the server. Therefore, the connection cannot be set up.

# 4.5 Using a Third-Party Database Adapter for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection

# 4.5.1 Using the JDBC and ODBC Drivers to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 4.5.1.1 Development Specifications

If the connection pool mechanism is used during application development, comply with the following specifications: If you do not do so, the status of connections in

the connection pool will remain, which affects subsequent operations using the connection pool.

- If the GUC parameter is set in a connection, you must execute SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT; RESET ALL; to clear the connection status before returning the connection to the connection pool.
- If a temporary table is used, it must be deleted before the connection is returned to the connection pool.

# 4.5.1.2 JDBC Version Description

#### Version 8.3.1.200

#### New features

- JDBC load balancing can automatically detect the live CN list.
  - The **cnListRefreshSwitch** parameter is added to enable automatic detection of the live CN list. The default value is **off**.
  - The cnListRefreshDelay parameter is added to specify the delay for enabling automatic detection of the live CN list. The default value is 1,800,000 milliseconds. This parameter only works when cnListRefreshSwitch is set to on.
  - The cnListRefreshPeriod parameter is added to specify the period for automatically detecting the live CN list. The default value is 1,800,000 milliseconds. This parameter only works when cnListRefreshSwitch is set to on.
- JDBC supports certificate revocation.

The **sslCrl** parameter is added to specify the path of the revoked certificate. By default, this parameter is left blank.

- JDBC supports database reconnection.
  - The **autoReconnect** parameter is added to specify whether to enable automatic database reconnection. The default value is **false**.
  - The reConnectCount parameter is added to specify the number of automatic reconnection times. The default value is 10. This parameter takes effect when autoReconnect is set to true. If the number of connection attempts exceeds this parameter's value, reconnection will fail.

# Version 8.3.0.202

• New features:

The **tcpKeepAlive** configuration is added. When **tcpKeepAlive** is set to **true**, the following parameters take effect:

Default value:

- a. **TCP\_KEEPIDLE=30**: The detection starts after the connection is idle for 30 seconds.
- b. **TCP\_KEEPCOUNT=9**: A total of nine detections are performed.
- c. **TCP\_KEEPINTERVAL=30**: The detection interval is 30s.

#### D NOTE

The JDK varies according to the operating system. Some platforms, such as Windows, Red Hat, and SUSE, may not support this parameter.

# Version 8.3.0.201

• Fixed bug:

Multiple functions cannot be automatically split when they are executed at a time.

### Version 8.3.0

• Fixed bug:

loadBalanceHosts=false does not take effect.

# Version 8.2.1.300

• Fixed bug:

The NVARCHAR array type is incompatible.

#### Version 8.2.1.1

The defaultQueryMetaData parameter is added to specify whether to query SQL metadata by default. The default value is **false**.

JDBC supports the raw type, which requires the querying of metadata. If you want to use JDBC to perform operations on the raw type, set **defaultQueryMetaData** to true.

If this parameter is enabled, **prepareStatement** is incompatible with the syntax **create table as**. You can replace it by **Statement**.

# Version 8.2.1

- Fixed bug:
  - a. An error is reported when **reWriteBatchedInserts** is used to insert data in batches.
  - b. "Invalid input syntax for type oid: 03032VLM" is reported when data is imported from Spark to GaussDB(DWS).

# Version 8.2.0

- New feature: Compatibility with the Oracle Raw data type. The usage is as follows:
  - Insertion or Modification byte[] bytes = oracleResultSet.getBytes(2) prepareStatement.setBytes(bytes) // Or prepareStatement.setObject(bytes)
     Query resultSet.getBytes()
    - resultSet.getObject()
- Fixed bug:

The field length obtained by the getColumnDisplaySize() method is incorrect.

# Version 8.1.3.100

- New features
  - The nvarchar2 object can be obtained through resultSet.getNString.
- Fixed vulnerabilities: The dependency package fastjson is upgraded to 1.2.83.

# Version 8.1.3

Upgrade to the open source version 42.2.23.

- New features
  - The nvarchar2 type is supported.
  - The nvarchar2 object can be obtained through resultSet.getObject.

#### **NOTE**

For JDBC 8.1.3 and later versions, JDK 1.8 is required.

# Version 8.1.1.300

- New features
  - The nvarchar2 type is supported.
  - The nvarchar2 object can be obtained through resultSet.getObject.
- Fixed vulnerabilities

# Version

New features

By default, the driver reports the OS user. To disable this function, you can set **connectionExtraInfo=false**.

jdbc:postgresql://host:port/database?connectionExtraInfo=false

Fixed vulnerabilities

Jackson was upgraded.

# 4.5.1.3 Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver

The JDBC or ODBC driver is used to connect to data warehouse clusters. You can download the JDBC or ODBC driver provided by GaussDB(DWS) from the management console or use the open-source JDBC or ODBC driver.

# **Open-Source JDBC or ODBC Driver**

GaussDB(DWS) also supports open-source JDBC and ODBC drivers: PostgreSQL JDBC 9.3-1103 or later; PostgreSQL ODBC 09.01.0200 or later

# Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Client Connections**.

- **Step 3** In the **Driver** area, choose a driver that you want to download.
  - JDBC Driver

Method 1:

Select **DWS JDBC Driver** and click **Download** to download the JDBC driver matching the current cluster version. The driver package name is **dws\_8.1.x\_jdbc\_driver.zip**. After the package is decompressed, there will be two JAR packages **gsjdbc4.jar** and **gsjdbc200.jar**.

- gsjdbc4.jar: The gsjdbc4.jar driver package is compatible with PostgreSQL. Its class names and class structures are the same as those of the PostgreSQL driver. Applications that run in PostgreSQL can be directly migrated to the current system.
- gsjdbc200.jar: If a JVM process needs to access PostgreSQL and GaussDB(DWS) at the same time, this driver package must be used. In this package, the main class name is com.huawei.gauss200.jdbc.Driver (that is, org.postgresql is replaced with com.huawei.gauss200.jdbc). The URL prefix of the database connection is jdbc:gaussdb. Other parameters are the same as those of gsjdbc4.jar.

If clusters of different versions are available, you will download the JDBC driver matching the earliest cluster version after clicking **Download**. If there is no cluster, you will download the JDBC driver of the earliest version after clicking **Download**. GaussDB(DWS) clusters are compatible with earlier versions of JDBC drivers.

Click **Historical Version** to download the corresponding JDBC driver version. You are advised to download the JDBC driver based on the cluster version.

The JDBC driver can be used on all platforms and depends on JDK 1.6 or later.

If you have clusters of different versions, the system displays a dialog box, prompting you to select the cluster version and download the driver corresponding to the cluster version. In the cluster list on the **Clusters** > **Dedicated Clusters** page, click the name of the specified cluster to go to the **Cluster Information** page and view the cluster version.

Method 2:

Download the SDK software package by configuring the Maven repository. Click **Add Maven Dependency**. The following page is displayed.

MVNREPOSITORY			Search for groups, artifacts, categories		Search			
Indexed Artifacts (23.5M)	Home >	com.huaweiclou	dws » huaweicloud-dws-jdbc					
	Huaweicloud DWS JDBC Data Warehouse Service JDBC driver							
Be the set the set the	Tags							
Popular Categories	Central	(10)						
Aspect Oriented			Version	Repository	Usages	Date		
Actor Frameworks	8.1.X	8.1.0		Central	0	May, 2021		
Application Metrics	1.7.×	1.7.1		Central	0	Mar. 2020		
Build Tools		1 5 201		Control	0	Aug. 2010		
Systecode Libraries		10.001		Central		A09, 2019		
Cache Implementations	1.5.x	1.5.2		Central	-	May, 2019		
Cloud Computing		1.5.1		Central	2	May, 2019		
Code Analyzers		1.5.0		Central	<u>_</u>	Apr, 2019		
Collections	1.3.x	1.3.1		Central	0	Nov, 2018		
Configuration Libraries	1.2 ×	120		Central	0	May 2018		
Core Utilities	-	(ATATO)			•			
Date and Time Utilities	1.0.×	1.0.1		Central	<u> </u>	May, 2018		
Dependency Injection		1.0.0		Central	0	Apr, 2018		
Embedded SQL Databases	*					Þ		
HTML Parsers								

#### Figure 4-32 Maven page

In the list shown in **Figure 4-32**, the first column indicates the cluster version, and the second column indicates the version number of the GaussDB(DWS) JDBC driver package. Select the driver package based on the cluster version and go to the following page:

#### Figure 4-33 Maven dependency

lomePage	https://www.huaweicloud.com/product/dws.html
Date	(May 06, 2021)
iles	jar (5.1 MB) View All

Copy the Maven repository information and add it to the **pom.xml** file. For example, add the following code configuration to the **pom.xml** file:

```
gsjdbc4.jar

<dependency>

<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>

<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>

<version>8.1.0</version>

</dependency>

gsjdbc200.jar

<dependency>

<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>
```

```
<groupid>commaweicloud.dws</groupid>
<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>
<version>8.1.1.1-200</version>
</dependency>
```

Method 3:

Configure dependencies by configuring gradle.

Obtain the Maven repository information by referring to method 2 and include it in the **gradle** configuration file.

- gsjdbc4.jar implementation("com.huaweicloud.dws:huaweicloud-dws-jdbc:8.1.3")
- gsjdbc200.jar implementation("com.huaweicloud.dws:huaweicloud-dws-jdbc:8.1.3-200")
- ODBC Driver

Select a corresponding version and click **Download** to download the ODBC driver matching the current cluster version. If clusters of different versions are available, you will download the ODBC driver matching the earliest cluster version after clicking **Download**. If there is no cluster, you will download the ODBC driver of the earliest version after clicking **Download**. GaussDB(DWS) clusters are compatible with earlier versions of ODBC drivers.

Click **Historical Version** to download the corresponding ODBC driver version. You are advised to download the ODBC driver based on the cluster version.

#### D NOTE

The ODBC driver is incompatible with Windows Server 2016.

----End

# 4.5.1.4 Using JDBC to Connect to a Cluster

In GaussDB(DWS), you can use a JDBC driver to connect to a database on Linux or Windows. The driver can connect to the database through an ECS on the Huawei Cloud platform or over the Internet.

When using the JDBC driver to connect to the data warehouse cluster, determine whether to enable SSL authentication. SSL authentication is used to encrypt communication data between the client and the server. It safeguards sensitive data transmitted over the Internet. You can download a self-signed certificate file on the GaussDB(DWS) console. To make the certificate take effect, you must configure the client program using the OpenSSL tool and the Java keytool.

#### **NOTE**

The SSL mode delivers higher security than the common mode. You are advised to enable SSL connection when using JDBC to connect to a GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

For details about how to use the JDBC API, see the official documentation.

# Prerequisites

- You have installed JDK 1.6 or later and configured environment variables.
- You have downloaded the JDBC driver. For details, see **Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver**.

GaussDB(DWS) also supports open-source JDBC driver: PostgreSQL JDBC 9.3-1103 or later.

• You have downloaded the SSL certificate file. For details, see **Downloading** an SSL Certificate.

# Using a JDBC Driver to Connect to a Database

The procedure for connecting to the database using a JDBC driver in a Linux environment is similar to that in a Windows environment. The following describes the connection procedure in a Windows environment.

- **Step 1** Determine whether you want to use the SSL mode to connect to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.
  - If yes, enable SSL connection (enabled by default) by referring to **Configuring SSL Connection** and go to **Step 2**.
  - If no, disable SSL connection by referring to **Configuring SSL Connection** and go to **Step 4**.
- **Step 2** (Optional) On Linux, use WinSCP to upload the downloaded SSL certificate file to the Linux environment.
- **Step 3** Configure the certificate to enable SSL connection.
  - 1. Download the OpenSSL tool for Windows at https://slproweb.com/products/ Win32OpenSSL.html. The latest stable version is 3.4. All earlier versions

(including 1.1.1, 1.1.0, 1.0.2, 1.0.0, and 0.9.8) are not supported and should not be used. Download **Win64 OpenSSL v3.4.0 Light**.

2. Double-click the installation package **Win64OpenSSL\_Light-3.4.0.exe** and install it to the default path on drive C. Copy the DLLs to the OpenSSL directory, as shown in the following figure. Retain the default settings in the remaining steps until the installation is complete.



 Install an environment variable. Click Start in the lower left corner of the local PC, right-click This PC, choose More > Properties > View advanced system settings. Switch to the Advanced tab and click Environment Variables.

System Propertie	25				$\times$
Computer Name	Hardware	Advanced	System Protection	Remote	
You must be lo	gged on as	an Administrato	or to make most of t	hese changes	
Performance					
Visual effects	, processor s	cheduling, me	mory usage, and vir	tual memory	
				Settings	
User Profiles					
Desktop settir	ngs related t	o your sign-in			
				Cottingo	
				Jetungs	
Startup and R	ecovery				
System startu	p, system fai	lure, and debu	gging information		
				Sottingo	
				Jettings	
			Environme	ent Variables	
		ОК	Cancel	Apply	r

4. In the **System variables** area, double-click **Path** and click **New** in the window displayed. Add the OpenSSL **bin** path to the last line, for example,
**C:\Program Files\OpenSSL-Win64\bin**, and click **OK**. Click **OK** again and the variable is configured successfully.

User variables for IWX937251	Value	Edit environment variable	
AppData OneDrive	C:\Usen C:\Usen	%SystemRoot% %SystemRoot%	New
Path TEMP	C:\User C:\User	%SystemRoot%\System32\Wbem %SystemRoot%\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0	Edit
TMP	C:\User	C:\Windows\system32 C:\Windows\system32	Browse
		C:\Windows\SystemS2\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0 C:\Program Files (x86)\Intel\Intel(R) Management Engine Component	Dette
System variables		C:\Program Files\Intel\Intel(R) Management Engine Components\iCLS\ %SYSTEMROOT%\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\	Move Up
Variable ComSpec	Value C:\WIN	%SYSTEMROOT%System32(OpenSSH) C\Program Files (x80)\Intel/Intel(R) Management Engine Component C\Program Files (hell) intel(R) Management Engine Component\DA)	Move Dow
DriverData NUMBER_OF_PROCESSORS OS Path	C:\Windov 12 Windov C:\WIN	CoProgram Pres Stationately Management Engine Components UNL CAProgram Files (x80)/Intel/Intel/R) Management Engine Components. CAProgram Files (x80)/Intel/Intel/R) Management Engine Components/IPT CAProgram Files (x80)/Open/IPI/Ibin ICAProgram Files (x80)/Open/IPI/Ibin	Edit text.
	Unitable (Window) AppData OncEnve Path TMP System variables System variables (Wanable Configer: OniceOpta OniceOpta OniceOpta Spathart	User Values for modulos) Variable Value AppData C.Vitee OndPrive C.Vitee Path C.Vitee TeMP C.Vitee TeMP C.Vitee TeMP C.Vitee System variables Value System Variables Value Composition System Variables Value Composition C.Vitee TeMP C.Vitee System Variables C.Vitee System Variables System Variables C.Vitee System Variables System Variables C.Vitee System Variables System Variables C.Vitee System Variables C.Vitee System Variables System	Edd emrioanneet vraible           Variable           AppData           OndPrive           Path           C/Weet           Path           C/Weet           TBAP           C/Weet           Table           StytemRoat% Stytem32/Whem           Could and the stytem of the sty

5. Decompress the package to obtain the certificate file. Decompression path C:\ is used as an example.

You are advised to store the certificate file in a path of the English version and can specify the actual path when configuring the certificate. If the path is incorrect, a message stating that the file does not exist will be prompted.

- 6. Open **Command Prompt** and switch to the **C:\dws\_ssl\_cert\sslcert** path. Run the following commands to import the root license to the truststore: openssl x509 -in cacert.pem -out cacert.crt.der -outform der keytool -keystore mytruststore -alias cacert -import -file cacert.crt.der
  - *cacert.pem* indicates the root certificate obtained after decompression.
  - *cacert.crt.der* indicates the generated intermediate file. You can store the file to another path and change the file name to your desired one.
  - *mytruststore* indicates the generated truststore name and *cacert* indicates the alias name. Both parameters can be modified.

Enter the truststore password as prompted and answer **y**.

 Convert the format of the client private key. openssl pkcs12 -export -out *client.pkcs12* -in *client.crt* -inkey *client.key* Enter the client private key provided Course OMmeDB. There extended courfing

Enter the client private key password **Gauss@MppDB**. Then enter and confirm the self-defined private key password.

8. Import the private key to the keystore. keytool -importkeystore -deststorepass Gauss@MppDB -destkeystore client.jks -srckeystore client.pkcs12 -srcstorepass Password -srcstoretype PKCS12 -alias 1

#### **NOTE**

- In the preceding command, *Password* is an example. Replace it with the actual password.
- If information similar to the following is displayed and no error is reported, the import is successful. The target key file client.jks will be generated in C:\dws\_ssl\_cert\sslcert.

🔄 cacert.crt.der
cacert.pem
🧊 client.crt
🗋 client.jks
client.key
📄 client.key.cipher
client.key.pk8
client.key.rand
client.pkcs12
mytruststore
openssl.cnf
🙀 server.crt
📄 server.key
📄 server.key.cipher
server.key.rand

s\_ssl\_cert∖sslcert≻keytool -importkeystore -de ting keystore client.pkcs12 to client.iks...

- Step 4 Download the driver package dws\_8.1.x\_jdbc\_driver.zip and decompress it. There will be two JDBC drive JAR packages, gsjdbc4.jar and gsjdbc200.jar. Use either of them as required.
- **Step 5** Add the JAR file to the application project so that applications can reference the JAR file.

Take the Eclipse project as an example. Store the JAR file to the project directory, for example, the **lib** directory in the project directory. In the Eclipse project, rightclick the JAR file in the **lib** directory and choose **Build Path** to reference the JAR file. 🛃 Java - java.lang.Class - Eclipse File Edit Source Refactor Navigate Search Project Run Window Help 📑 = 🖩 🕼 📮 🔌 🎬 🥝 = 🎋 = 🔿 = 🏰 🖕 🏈 = 🖗 🌶 🛊 🗎 🖷 - 0 🕆 Package Expl... 🛛 🍃 Type Hierarc... Ju JUnit ChannelRPCServiceImpl.jav  $\nabla$ 252 E 8 P @par Þ 🚰 D.D.\_ 253 \* Gret ▲ 😂 DWS-demo \* 254 🖱 src 255 \* Dexc JRE System Library [JavaSE-1.8] 256 @exc A Main Referenced Libraries 257 postgresql-9.1-902.jdbc4.jar 258 @exc 🔺 🗁 lib postgresql-9.1-9 New D Col Open F3 Open With Þ 🚰 Timo Show In Alt+Shift+W ▶ Ctrl+C Copy Copy Qualified Name Ctrl+V Paste 22 Delete Delete Remove from Context Ctrl+Alt+Shift+Down Mark as Landmark Ctrl+Alt+Shift+Up **Build Path** Refactor Alt+Shift+T ►

Figure 4-34 Referencing a JAR file

Alternatively, you can use another method. In the Maven project, you can directly add the GaussDB(DWS) JDBC driver as a dependency item to the POM file. The following shows an example:

gsjdbc4.jar

```
<dependency>
<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>
<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>
<version>8.1.0</version>
</dependency>
```

gsjdbc200.jar

```
<dependency>
```

```
<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>
<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>
<version>8.1.1.1-200</version>
</dependency>
```

#### **NOTE**

For details about the image repository address configured in **setting.xml**, see **https://mvnrepository.com/**.

Step 6 Load the driver.

The following methods are available:

• Using a code: Class.forName("org.postgresql.Driver");

# • Using a parameter during the JVM startup: java - Djdbc.drivers=org.postgresql.Driver jdbctest

#### D NOTE

The JDBC driver package downloaded on GaussDB(DWS) contains both **gsjdbc4.jar** and **gsjdbc200.jar**.

- gsjdbc4.jar: The gsjdbc4.jar driver package is compatible with PostgreSQL. Its class names and class structures are the same as those of the PostgreSQL driver. Applications that run in PostgreSQL can be directly migrated to the current system.
- gsjdbc200.jar: If a JVM process needs to access PostgreSQL and GaussDB(DWS) at the same time, this driver package must be used. In this package, the main class name is com.huawei.gauss200.jdbc.Driver (replace org.postgresql with com.huawei.gauss200.jdbc). The URL prefix of the database connection is jdbc:gaussdb. Other parameters are the same as those of gsjdbc4.jar.
- The GaussDB(DWS) driver package downloaded from the Maven repository is the same as the **gsjdbc4** driver package.

# **Step 7** Call the **DriverManager.getConnection()** method of JDBC to connect to GaussDB(DWS) databases.

The JDBC API does not provide the connection retry capability. You need to implement the retry processing in the service code.

#### DriverManager.getConnection() methods:

- DriverManager.getConnection(String url);
- DriverManager.getConnection(String url, Properties info);
- DriverManager.getConnection(String url, String user, String password);

Paramet er	Description			
url	Specifies the database connection descriptor, which can be viewed on the management console. For details, see <b>Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster</b> .			
	The URL format is as follows:			
	<ul> <li>jdbc:postgresql:database</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>jdbc:postgresql://host/database</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>jdbc:postgresql://host:port/database</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>jdbc:postgresql://host:port[,host:port][]/database</li> </ul>			
	NOTE			
	<ul> <li>If gsjdbc200.jar is used, change jdbc:postgresql to jdbc:gaussdb.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>database indicates the name of the database to be connected.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>host indicates the name or IP address of the database server. If an ELB is bound to the cluster, set host to the IP address of the ELB.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>port indicates the port number of the database server. By default, the database running on port 8000 of the local host is connected.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>Multiple IP addresses and ports can be configured. JDBC balances load by random access and failover, and will automatically ignore unreachable IP addresses.</li> <li>Separate multiple pairs of IP addresses and ports by commas (,).</li> <li>Example: jdbc:postgresql://10.10.0.13:8000,10.10.0.14:8000/database</li> </ul>			
	• If JDBC is used to connect to a cluster, only JDBC connection parameters can be configured in a cluster address. Variables cannot be added.			

### Table 4-13 Database connection parameters

Paramet er	Description			
info	Specifies database connection properties. Common properties include the following:			
	• <b>user</b> : indicates the database user who creates the connection task. The value is of the string data type.			
	• <b>password</b> : indicates the password of the database user. The value is of the string data type.			
	• <b>ssl</b> : indicates whether to use the SSL connection. The value is of the Boolean data type.			
	<ul> <li>loggerLevel: indicates the log amount recorded in DriverManager for LogStream or LogWriter. The value is of the string data type. Currently, OFF, DEBUG, and TRACE are supported. DEBUG indicates that only logs of DEBUG or a higher level are printed, generating little log information. TRACE indicates that logs of the DEBUG and TRACE levels are displayed, generating detailed log information. The default value is OFF, indicating that no logs will be displayed.</li> </ul>			
	• prepareThreshold: It is used to determine the execution times of PreparedStatement before the information is converted into prepared statements on the server. The value is of the integer data type. The default value is <b>5</b> .			
	• <b>batchMode</b> : indicates whether to connect the database in batch mode. The value is of the Boolean data type.			
	<ul> <li>fetchsize: integer type. It indicates the default fetch size for statements in the created connection.</li> </ul>			
	• ApplicationName: indicates the application name. The value is of the string data type. The parameter is set to <b>PostgreSQL JDBC Driver</b> by default.			
	• <b>allowReadOnly</b> : indicates whether the read-only mode can be set for a connection. The value is of the Boolean data type. The default value is <b>false</b> . If this parameter is not set to <b>true</b> , the <b>connection.setReadOnly</b> statement will not take effect.			
	• <b>blobMode</b> : indicates the data types to which a value is assigned using the setBinaryStream method. The value is of the string data type. If this parameter is set to <b>on</b> , a value is assigned to the BLOB data type. If this parameter is set to <b>off</b> , a value is assigned to the bytea data type. The default value is <b>on</b> .			
	<ul> <li>currentSchema: string type. It specifies the schema used for connecting to the database.</li> </ul>			
	• <b>defaultQueryMetaData</b> : Boolean. It specifies whether to query SQL metadata by default. The default value is <b>false</b> . After this function is enabled, raw data operations are supported. However, it is incompatible with the <b>create table as</b> and <b>select into</b> operations in <b>PrepareStatement</b> .			
	<ul> <li>connectionExtraInfo: indicates whether the driver reports the driver deployment path and process owner to the database. The value is of the Boolean data type.</li> </ul>			

Paramet er	Description			
	NOTE The value can be <b>true</b> or <b>false</b> . The default value is <b>true</b> . If <b>connectionExtraInfo</b> is set to <b>true</b> , the JDBC driver reports the driver deployment path and process owner to the database and displays the information in the <b>connection_info</b> parameter. In this case, you can query the information from <b>PG_STAT_ACTIVITY</b> or <b>PGXC_STAT_ACTIVITY</b> .			
	• <b>TCP_KEEPIDLE=30</b> : The detection starts after the connection is idle for 30s. This parameter is valid only when <b>tcpKeepAlive</b> is set to <b>true</b> .			
	• <b>TCP_KEEPCOUNT=9</b> : A total of nine detections are performed. This parameter is valid only when <b>tcpKeepAlive</b> is set to <b>true</b> .			
	• <b>TCP_KEEPINTERVAL=30</b> : The detection interval is 30s. This parameter is valid only when <b>tcpKeepAlive</b> is set to <b>true</b> .			
	• <b>cnListRefreshSwitch</b> : indicates whether JDBC automatically detects the live CN list. The value is of the string data type. If this parameter is set to <b>on</b> , the function of automatically detecting the live CN list is enabled. If this parameter is set to <b>off</b> , the function is disabled. The default value is <b>off</b> .			
	• <b>cnListRefreshDelay</b> : specifies the start time for scanning the live CN list. This parameter is valid only when <b>cnListRefreshSwitch</b> is set to <b>on</b> . The value is of the integer data type. The default value is <b>1800000</b> , in milliseconds.			
	• <b>cnListRefreshPeriod</b> : specifies the interval for scanning the live CN list. This parameter is valid only when <b>cnListRefreshSwitch</b> is set to <b>on</b> . The value is of the integer data type. The default value is <b>1800000</b> , in milliseconds.			
	• <b>autoReconnect</b> : indicates whether to enable automatic reconnection of database connections. The value is of the Boolean data type. If this parameter is set to <b>true</b> , the automatic reconnection is enabled. If this parameter is set to <b>false</b> , the automatic reconnection is disabled. The default value is <b>false</b> .			
	<ul> <li>reConnectCount: specifies the number of automatic database reconnections. The value is of the integer data type. This parameter is valid only when autoReconnect is set to true. The default value is 10. If the number of reconnection attempts exceeds the configured value, the reconnection fails.</li> </ul>			
	• <b>sslCrl</b> : a string type that sets the path for the revoked certificate used by JDBC. The default value is <b>null</b> .			
user	Specifies the database user.			
passwor d	Specifies the password of the database user.			

The following describes the sample code used to encrypt the connection using the SSL certificate:

// The following code obtains the database SSL connection operation and encapsulates the operation as an API.

```
public static Connection GetConnection(String username, String passwd) {
   // Define the driver class.
   String driver = "org.postgresql.Driver";
       //Set keyStore.
  System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStore", "mytruststore");
System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.keyStore", "client.jks");
  System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword", "password");
System.setProperty("javax.net.ssl.keyStorePassword", "password");
   Properties props = new Properties();
   props.setProperty("user", username);
   props.setProperty("password", passwd);
   props.setProperty("ssl", "true");
   String url = "jdbc:postgresql://" + "10.10.0.13" + ':' + "8000" + '/' + "gaussdb";
   Connection conn = null;
   try {
      // Load the driver.
      Class.forName(driver);
   } catch (Exception e) {
      e.printStackTrace();
      return null;
   }
   try {
      // Create a connection.
      conn = DriverManager.getConnection(url, props);
      System.out.println("Connection succeed!");
   } catch (SQLException throwables) {
      throwables.printStackTrace();
      return null;
   }
   return conn;
```

#### Step 8 Run SQL statements.

- Run the following command to create a statement object: Statement stmt = con.createStatement();
- Run the following command to execute the statement object: int rc = stmt.executeUpdate("CREATE TABLE tab1(id INTEGER, name VARCHAR(32));");
- 3. Run the following command to release the statement object: stmt.close();
- Step 9 Call close() to close the connection.

----End

#### Sample Code

This code sample illustrates how to develop applications based on the JDBC API provided by GaussDB(DWS).

#### D NOTE

```
Before completing the following example, you need to create a stored procedure. For details, see Tutorial: Development Using JDBC or ODBC.
```

create or replace procedure testproc

```
> psv_in1 in integer,
    psv_in2 in integer,
    psv_inout in out integer
)
as
begin
    psv_inout := psv_in1 + psv_in2 + psv_inout;
end;
```

//DBtest.java

//gsjdbc4.jar is used as an example. If gsjdbc200.jar is used, replace the driver class name org.postgresql with com.huawei.gauss200.jdbc and replace the URL prefix jdbc:postgresql with jdbc:gaussdb.
//Demonstrate the main steps for JDBC development, including creating databases, creating tables, and inserting data.

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import java.sql.CallableStatement;
import java.sql.Types;
public class DBTest {
```

```
//Create a database connection. Replace the following IP address and database with the actual database
connection address and database name.
public static Connection GetConnection(String username, String passwd) {
    String driver = "org.postgresql.Driver";
    String sourceURL = "jdbc:postgresql://10.10.0.13:8000/database";
    Connection conn = null;
    try {
```

```
// Load the database driver.
  Class.forName(driver).newInstance();
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
  return null;
 }
 try {
  //Create a database connection.
  conn = DriverManager.getConnection(sourceURL, username, passwd);
  System.out.println("Connection succeed!");
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
  return null;
 }
 return conn:
};
//Run the common SQL statements to create table customer_t1.
public static void CreateTable(Connection conn) {
 Statement stmt = null;
 try {
  stmt = conn.createStatement();
  //Run the common SQL statements.
  int rc = stmt
     .executeUpdate("CREATE TABLE customer_t1(c_customer_sk INTEGER, c_customer_name
```

```
VARCHAR(32));");
```

```
stmt.close();
```

```
} catch (SQLException e) {
    if (stmt != null) {
     try {
      stmt.close();
     } catch (SQLException e1) {
      e1.printStackTrace();
     }
   }
    e.printStackTrace();
  }
 }
 //Run the prepared statements and insert data in batches.
 public static void BatchInsertData(Connection conn) {
  PreparedStatement pst = null;
  try {
   //Generate the prepared statements.
    pst = conn.prepareStatement("INSERT INTO customer_t1 VALUES (?,?)");
    for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
     //Add parameters.
     pst.setInt(1, i);
     pst.setString(2, "data " + i);
     pst.addBatch();
    }
    //Execute batch processing.
    pst.executeBatch();
    pst.close();
  } catch (SQLException e) {
    if (pst != null) {
     try {
      pst.close();
     } catch (SQLException e1) {
     e1.printStackTrace();
     }
   }
    e.printStackTrace();
  }
 }
 //Run the precompiled statement to update the data.
 public static void ExecPreparedSQL(Connection conn) {
  PreparedStatement pstmt = null;
  try {
    pstmt = conn
      .prepareStatement("UPDATE customer t1 SET c customer name = ? WHERE c customer sk = 1");
    pstmt.setString(1, "new Data");
    int rowcount = pstmt.executeUpdate();
    pstmt.close();
  } catch (SQLException e) {
    if (pstmt != null) {
     try {
      pstmt.close();
     } catch (SQLException e1) {
      e1.printStackTrace();
     }
    }
    e.printStackTrace();
  }
 }
//Execute the storage procedure.
 public static void ExecCallableSQL(Connection conn) {
  CallableStatement cstmt = null;
  try {
   cstmt=conn.prepareCall("{? = CALL TESTPROC(?,?,?)}");
   cstmt.setInt(2, 50);
```

```
cstmt.setInt(1, 20);
    cstmt.setInt(3, 90);
    cstmt.registerOutParameter(4, Types.INTEGER); //Register a parameter of the out type. Its value is an
integer.
    cstmt.execute();
    int out = cstmt.getInt(4); //Obtain the out parameter.
    System.out.println("The CallableStatment TESTPROC returns:"+out);
    cstmt.close();
  } catch (SQLException e) {
    if (cstmt != null) {
     try {
      cstmt.close();
     } catch (SQLException e1) {
      e1.printStackTrace();
     }
   }
    e.printStackTrace();
  }
 }
 /**
  * Main program, which gradually invokes each static method.
 * @param args
 */
 public static void main(String[] args) {
  //Create a database connection. Replace User and Password with the actual database user name and
password.
  Connection conn = GetConnection("User", "Password");
  //Create a table.
  CreateTable(conn);
  //Insert data in batches.
  BatchInsertData(conn);
  //Run the precompiled statement to update the data.
  ExecPreparedSQL(conn);
  //Execute the storage procedure.
  ExecCallableSQL(conn);
  //Close the database connection.
  try {
   conn.close();
  } catch (SQLException e) {
    e.printStackTrace();
  }
 }
3
```

# 4.5.1.5 Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (Load Balancing Mode)

#### Context

If you use JDBC to connect to only one CN in the cluster, this CN may be overloaded and other CN resources wasted. It also incurs single-node failure risks.

To avoid these problems, you can use JDBC to connect to multiple CNs. The following three methods are available:

• Connection using ELB: An ELB distributes access traffic to multiple ECSs for traffic control based on forwarding policies. It improves the fault tolerance capability of application programs.

- To connect to a cluster using JDBC load balancing, include at least one internal IP address of the CN in the URL. The system will scan all CN IP addresses automatically. JDBC load balancing functions like ELB, randomly connecting to a CN.
- Connection in multi-host mode: Use JDBC to configure multiple nodes, which is similar to ELB.

#### Method 1: Using ELB to Connect to a Cluster

- **Step 1** Obtain the Elastic Load Balance address. On the console, go to the details page of a cluster and obtain the ELB IP address.
- Step 2 Configure the driver. For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.

```
<dependency>
<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>
<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>
<version>8.1.1.1</version>
</dependency>
```

#### Step 3 Obtain the database connection.

```
private static final String USER_NAME = "dbadmin";
private static final String PASSWORD = "password";
// jdbc:postgresql://ELB_IP:PORT/dbName"
private static final String URL = "jdbc:postgresql://100.95.153.169:8000/gaussdb";
private static Properties properties = new Properties();
static {
  properties.setProperty("user", USER_NAME);
  properties.setProperty("password", PASSWORD);
* Obtain the database connection.
*/
public static Connection getConnection() {
  Connection connection = null;
  try {
     connection = DriverManager.getConnection(URL, properties);
  } catch (SQLException e) {
     e.printStackTrace();
  3
  return connection;
```

----End

# Method 2: Using JDBC Load Balancing to Connect to a Cluster (Recommended)

- **Step 1** Obtain the private IP address. Open the specified cluster topology page on the console and obtain the private IP address of the CN. For details, see **Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.
- **Step 2** Configure the driver. For details, see **Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver**.

<dependency> <groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId> <artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId> <version>8.3.1.200</version>

```
</dependency>
```

#### 

Starting from version 8.3.1.200, the JDBC load balancing mode now allows for the driver to connect to the cluster. If you intend to utilize this mode, ensure that your JDBC driver version is 8.3.1.200 or later.

# Step 3 Obtain the database connection. For how to set URL parameters, see Using JDBC to Connect to a Cluster.

```
private static final String USER_NAME = "dbadmin";
private static final String PASSWORD = "password";
// jdbc:postgresql://host1:port1,host2:port2/dbName"
private static final String URL = "jdbc:postgresql://
100.95.146.194:8000,100.95.148.220:8000,100.93.0.221:8000/gaussdb?
loadBalanceHosts=true\&cnListRefreshSwitch=on\&cnListRefreshDelay=100000\&cnListRefreshPeriod=5000
private static Properties properties = new Properties();
static {
  properties.setProperty("user", USER_NAME);
  properties.setProperty("password", PASSWORD);
* Obtain the database connection.
public static Connection getConnection() {
  Connection connection = null;
  try {
     connection = DriverManager.getConnection(URL, properties);
  } catch (SQLException e) {
     e.printStackTrace();
  return connection;
```

```
----End
```

#### Method 3: Connecting to the Cluster in Multi-host Mode

- **Step 1** Obtain the EIP. Go to the details page of a cluster on the console and obtain the EIP.
- Step 2 Configure the driver. For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.

```
<dependency>
<groupId>com.huaweicloud.dws</groupId>
<artifactId>huaweicloud-dws-jdbc</artifactId>
<version>8.1.1.1</version>
</dependency>
```

#### Step 3 Obtain the database connection.

```
private static final String USER_NAME = "dbadmin";
private static final String PASSWORD = "password";
// jdbc:postgresql://host1:port1,host2:port2/dbName"
private static final String URL = "jdbc:postgresql://
100.95.146.194:8000,100.95.148.220:8000,100.93.0.221:8000/gaussdb?loadBalanceHosts=true";
private static Properties properties = new Properties();
static {
    properties.setProperty("user", USER_NAME);
    properties.setProperty("user", USER_NAME);
    properties.setProperty("password", PASSWORD);
}
/**
 * Obtain the database connection.
 */
public static Connection getConnection() {
    Connection connection = null;
    try {
        connection = DriverManager.getConnection(URL, properties);
```

```
} catch (SQLException e) {
    e.printStackTrace();
    return connection;
}
----End
```

# 4.5.1.6 Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (IAM Authentication Mode)

#### **Overview**

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to access databases using IAM authentication. When you use the JDBC application program to connect to a cluster, set the IAM username, credential, and other information as you configure the JDBC URL. After doing this, when you try to access a database, the system will automatically generate a temporary credential and a connection will be set up.

#### **NOTE**

• Currently, only clusters 1.3.1 and later versions and their corresponding JDBC drivers can access the databases in IAM authentication mode. Download the JDBC driver. For details, see **Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver**.

IAM supports two types of user credential: password and Access Key ID/Secret Access Key (AK/SK). JDBC connection requires the latter.

The IAM account you use to access a database must be granted with the **DWS Database Access** permission. Only users with both the **DWS Administrator** and **DWS Database Access** permissions can connect to GaussDB(DWS) databases using the temporary database user credentials generated based on IAM users.

The **DWS Database Access** permission can only be granted to user groups. Ensure that your IAM account is in a user group with this permission.

On IAM, only users in the **admin** group have the permissions to manage users. This requires that your IAM account be in the **admin** user group. Otherwise, contact the IAM account administrator to grant your IAM account this permission.

The process of accessing a database is as follows:

- 1. Granting an IAM Account the GaussDB(DWS) Database Access Permission
- 2. Creating an IAM User Credential
- 3. Configuring the JDBC Connection to Connect to a Cluster Using IAM Authentication

#### Granting an IAM Account the GaussDB(DWS) Database Access Permission

- Step 1 Log in to the Huawei Cloud management console. In the service list, choose Management & Governance > Identity and Access Management to enter the IAM management console.
- **Step 2** Modify the user group to which your IAM user belongs. Set a policy for, grant the **DWS Database Access** permission to, and add your IAM user to it.

Only users in the **admin** user group of IAM can perform this step. In IAM, only users in the **admin** user group can manage users, including creating user groups and users and setting user group rights.

For details, see "Viewing or Modifying User Group Information" in the *Identity* and Access Management User Guide.

You can also create an IAM user group, and set a policy for, grant the **DWS Administrator** and **DWS Database Access** permissions to, and add your IAM user to it. For details, see **Creating a User Group and Assigning Permissions** in the *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

----End

#### **Creating an IAM User Credential**

You can log in to the management console to create an AK/SK pair or use an existing one.

- **Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- **Step 2** Move the cursor to the username in the upper right corner and choose **My Credentials**.
- **Step 3** Choose **Access Keys** to view the existing access keys. You can also click **Create Access Key** to create a new one.

The AK/SK pair is so important that you can download the private key file containing the AK/SK information only when you create the pair. On the management console, you can only view the AKs. If you have not downloaded the file, obtain it from your administrator or create an AK/SK pair again.

Each user can create a maximum of two AK/SK pairs, which are valid permanently. To ensure account security, change your AK/SK pairs periodically and keep them safe.

----End

# Configuring the JDBC Connection to Connect to a Cluster Using IAM Authentication

**Configuring JDBC Connection Parameters** 

Parame ter	Description				
url	gsjdbc4.jar/gsjdbc200.jar database connection descriptor. The JDBC API does not provide the connection retry capability. You need to implement the retry processing in the service code. The URL example is as follows: jdbc:dws:iam://dws-IAM-demo:eu-dublin-1/gaussdb? AccessKeyID=XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX				
	JDBC URL parameters:				
	• <b>jdbc:dws:iam</b> is a prefix in the URL format.				
	• <b>dws-IAM-demo</b> indicates the name of the cluster containing the database.				
	• <b>eu-dublin-1</b> indicates the region where the cluster resides. JDBC accesses the GaussDB(DWS) cluster in the corresponding region and delivers the IAM certificate to the cluster for IAM user authentication. The GaussDB(DWS) service address has been recorded in the JDBC configuration file.				
	• <b>gaussdb</b> indicates the name of the database to which you want to connect.				
	• AccessKeyID and SecretAccessKey are the access key ID and secret access key corresponding to the IAM user specified by DbUser.				
	• Set <b>DbUser</b> to the IAM username. Note that the current version does not support hyphens (-) in the IAM username.				
	<ul> <li>If the user specified by <b>DbUser</b> exists in the database, the temporary user credential has the same permissions as the existing user.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>If the user specified by <b>DbUser</b> does not exist in the database and the value of <b>AutoCreate</b> is <b>true</b>, a new user named by the value of <b>DbUser</b> is automatically created. The created user is a common database user by default.</li> </ul>				
	• Parameter <b>AutoCreate</b> is optional. The default value is <b>false</b> . This parameter indicates whether to automatically create a database user named by the value of <b>DbUser</b> in the database.				
	<ul> <li>The value true indicates that a user is automatically created. If the user already exists, the user will not be created again.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>The value <b>false</b> indicates that a user is not created. If the username specified by <b>DbUser</b> does not exist in the database, an error is returned.</li> </ul>				
	• <b>addressType</b> indicates the type of the address used for the connection. The default value is <b>auto</b> .				
	<ul> <li>auto: The selection priority is EIP, ELB, and private IP address. If auto is selected, the system chooses an IP address for the connection.</li> </ul>				
	– <b>eip</b> : The system chooses an EIP for the connection.				

#### Table 4-14 Database connection parameters

Parame ter	Description				
	<ul> <li>elb: The system chooses an ELB for the connection. The selection priority is elb_public and elb_private.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>elb_public: Use the ELB public IP address for the connection.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>elb_private: Use ELB private IP address for the connection.</li> </ul>				
info	Database connection properties. Common properties include the following:				
	<ul> <li>ssl: a boolean type. It indicates whether the SSL connection is used.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>loglevel: an integer type. It sets the log amount recorded in DriverManager for LogStream or LogWriter. Currently, org.postgresql.Driver.DEBUG and org.postgresql.Driver.INFO logs are supported. If the value is 1, only org.postgresql.Driver.INFO (little information) is recorded. If the value is greater than or equal to 2, org.postgresql.Driver.DEBUG and org.postgresql.Driver.INFO logs are printed, and detailed log information is generated. Its default value is 0, which indicates that no logs are printed.</li> </ul>				
	<ul> <li>charSet: a string type. It indicates character sets used when data is sent from the database or the database receives data.</li> </ul>				
	• <b>prepareThreshold</b> : an integer type. It is used to determine the execution times of PreparedStatement before the information is converted into prepared statements on the server. The default value is <b>5</b> .				

#### Example

```
//The following uses gsjdbc4.jar as an example.
// The following code encapsulates the database connection obtaining operations into an API. You can
connect to the database by specifying the region where the cluster is located, cluster name, access key ID,
secret access key, and the corresponding IAM username.
public static Connection GetConnection(String clustername, String regionname, String AK, String SK,
  String username) {
  // Driver class.
  String driver = "org.postgresql.Driver";
  // Database connection descriptor.
  String sourceURL = "jdbc:dws:iam://" + clustername + ":" + regionname + "/postgresgaussdb?" +
"AccessKeyID="
     + AK + "&SecretAccessKey=" + SK + "&DbUser=" + username + "&autoCreate=true";
  Connection conn = null;
  try {
     // Load the driver.
     Class.forName(driver);
  } catch (ClassNotFoundException e) {
     return null;
  }
  try {
     // Create a connection.
     conn = DriverManager.getConnection(sourceURL);
     System.out.println("Connection succeed!");
  } catch (SQLException e) {
```

return null; } return conn;

# 4.5.1.7 Third-party Connection Pool of the JDBC Configuration Database

#### Context

GaussDB(DWS) does not have its own JDBC connection pool, and the inherited PostgreSQL connection pool is offline. Use third-party connection pools like Druid, HikariCP, or DBCP 2.

#### **NOTE**

- The connection pool inherited by JDBC from PostgreSQL has been brought offline and is not recommended.
- Determine the version of the JDBC and driver to be downloaded and how to set the connection pool parameters based on the site requirements.

### **Configuring the DBCP 2 Connection Pool**

- Step 1 Download the JDBC driver package. For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.
  - Download the commons-dbcp2 driver package from https:// commons.apache.org/dbcp/download\_dbcp.cgi.
  - Download the commons-logging driver package from https:// commons.apache.org/proper/commons-logging/download\_logging.cgi.
  - Download the commons-pool2 driver package from https:// commons.apache.org/proper/commons-pool/download\_pool.
- **Step 2** Add the JDBC driver package and the **commons-dbcp2**, **commons-logging**, and **commons-pool2** driver packages to the project and configure parameters related to the database connection pool.

#### **NOTE**

- Enabling removeAbandoned allows the connection pool to reclaim and reuse a discarded connection. This occurs when the conditions (getNumIdle() < 2) and (getNumActive() > getMaxTotal() 3) are met.
  - For example, if **maxTotal** is set to **20**, there are 18 active connections and one connection is restricted. In this case, **removeAbandoned** is triggered.
  - An active connection is deleted only when it is not used for a period of time specified by removeAbandonedTimeout. The default value is 300 seconds.
  - Traversing a result set does not count as usage. Creating a statement, prepared statement, callable statement, or executing a query resets the **lastUsed** property of its parent connection.
- In high-load systems, setting **maxIdle** to a small value may cause new connections to close immediately. This is because active threads close connections faster than those that open connections. As a result, the number of idle connections is greater than the value of **maxIdle**. In high-load systems, the most appropriate value of **maxIdle** in a high-load system depends on the application scenario, but the default value is a good initial value.

Parameter	Default Value	Description	
driverClassNa me	Enter the value of org.postgresql. Driver.	Name of the database driver.	
url	N/A	URL for connecting to the database.	
username	N/A	Username.	
password	N/A	Password.	
connectionPro perties	N/A	The connection parameters are sent to the JDBC driver when a new connection is set up. The string must be in the format of <b>[Parameter name=Parameter value;]</b> . <b>NOTE</b> The username and password attributes need to be specified. Therefore, the two parameters do not need to be included here.	
defaultAutoC ommit	N/A	Automatic submission. By default, the connection created through the current connection pool is in the automatic submission state. If this parameter is not set, the <b>setAutoCommit</b> method is not invoked.	
defaultReadO nly	N/A	Read-only setting. By default, the connection created through the current connection pool is read-only. If the connection is not set, the <b>setReadOnly</b> method is not invoked.	
defaultTransa ctionIsolation	N/A	<ul> <li>Transaction isolation level.</li> <li>The default transaction isolation policy is used for connections created through this pool. The value can be one of the following:</li> <li>NONE</li> <li>READ_COMMITTED: The read operation is committed.</li> <li>READ_UNCOMMITTED: The read operation is not committed.</li> <li>REPEATABLE_READ</li> <li>SERIALIZABLE</li> </ul>	
defaultCatalo g	N/A	The default catalog is used for connections created through this pool.	

<b>Table 4-15</b>	Parameters	of the	DBCP	2 cc	onnection	pool
-------------------	------------	--------	------	------	-----------	------

Parameter	Default Value	Description
cacheState	true	Cache status of the connection pool.
		If this parameter is set to <b>true</b> , the current read-only status and auto-commit settings are cached during the first read or write operation after the resource pool connects. This eliminates the need for additional database queries on subsequent <b>getter</b> calls.
		If the underlying connection is accessed directly, changes to the read-only state or auto-commit settings will not update the cache. Set this parameter to <b>false</b> to disable caching in such cases.
defaultQuery	null	Query timeout interval.
Timeout		<ul> <li>Enter an integer, which is used to specify the query timeout interval when a statement is created.</li> <li>If the value is <b>pull</b>, the default driver</li> </ul>
		settings are used.
enableAutoCo mmitOnRetur	true	When a connection is returned to the pool, the connection is automatically submitted.
n		Setting it to <b>true</b> will return the connection to the pool with <b>autoCommit</b> set to <b>true</b> by default.
rollbackOnRet urn	true	Roll back all operations when the connection is returned to the pool.
		Setting it to <b>true</b> will automatically execute " <b>rollback()</b> " when the connection is returned to the pool, provided that auto submission is enabled.
initialSize	0	Number of initial connections. Number of connections created during initialization when the current connection pool is started. The initial version is 1.2.
maxTotal	8	Maximum number of active connections in the pool. A negative value means there is no limit.
maxIdle	8	Maximum number of idle connections in the pool. Excess idle connections are released when returned to the pool. A negative value means there is no limit.

Parameter	Default Value	Description
minIdle	0	Minimum number of idle connections. Minimum number of idle connections to retain in the pool. If the number of idle connections falls below this value, new idle connections are created. A value of <b>0</b> means no idle connections are created. <b>NOTE</b> The value takes effect only when <b>timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis</b> is set to a positive number.
maxWaitMillis	N/A	Maximum waiting time for obtaining a connection from the connection pool.
		<ul> <li>If this parameter is set to -1 and no connection is available, the connection pool waits indefinitely until a connection is obtained.</li> </ul>
		• If the parameter is set to <i>N</i> , the connection pool waits for <i>N</i> milliseconds. If the waiting time is insufficient, an exception is thrown.
validationQue ry	SELECT 1	Query confirmation SQL statement, which validates the connection before it is returned to the caller by the connection pool.
		• If specified, the query must be a <b>SELECT</b> statement that returns at least one row of data.
		<ul> <li>If no value is specified, the connection is verified by invoking the "isValid()" method.</li> </ul>
validationQue ryTimeout	N/A	Query timeout interval for valid SQL statements, in seconds.
		If the parameter is set to a positive number, the value is transferred to the "setQueryTimeOut()" method of the JDBC driver. The setting takes effect for the SQL statement for confirming the validity of the query.
testOnCreate	false	Whether to verify the validity of a connection immediately after creation. If verification fails, the creation attempt fails.
testOnBorrow	true	Whether to verify the validity of a connection when it is leased from the pool. If verification fails, the connection is released and another is leased.

Parameter	Default Value	Description
testOnReturn	false	Whether to verify the validity of a connection before returning it to the pool.
testWhileIdle	false	Whether to verify the validity of idle connections using an evictor, if available. Invalid connections are released.
timeBetween EvictionRuns Millis	-1	Hibernate time (in milliseconds) for the idle object eviction thread. A non-positive value disables the thread.
numTestsPerE victionRun	3	Number of objects checked during the running of each idle object eviction thread.
minEvictableI dleTimeMillis	1000 * 60 * 30	Minimum number of milliseconds in which objects that meet the eviction conditions are idle in the pool. Minimum duration for releasing an idle connection, in milliseconds.
softMinEvicta bleIdleTimeMi llis	-1	Minimum number of milliseconds in which objects that meet the eviction conditions are idle in the pool.
		Idle connections are released after at least <i>N</i> milliseconds, provided that at least the number of connections specified by minIdle is retained in the pool.
		If <b>miniEvictableIdleTimeMillis</b> is set to a positive number, the idle connection evictor checks <b>miniEvictableIdleTimeMillis</b> first, and then <b>softMinEvictableIdleTimeMillis</b> and the <b>minIdle</b> condition.
maxConnLifet imeMillis	-1	Maximum lifetime of a connection (in milliseconds). Connections exceeding this time fail on the next activation, passivation, or verification. A value of <b>0</b> or negative means unlimited lifetime.
logExpiredCo nnections	true	Whether to write logs when an expired connection is closed by the pool. If a connection's lifespan exceeds <b>maxConnLifetimeMillis</b> , it will be reclaimed by the connection pool and a log will be generated by default. If this parameter is set to <b>false</b> , no log will be written.
connectionInit Sqls	N/A	This parameter executes a set of SQL statements to initialize a physical connection when it is first created. These statements run only once per connection.

Parameter	Default Value	Description	
lifo	true	<ul> <li>Last in first out.</li> <li>Last in first out. If this parameter is set to true, the connection pool returns the last used connection first (if there are available idle connections in the pool).</li> <li>If this parameter is set to false, the pool operates as a FIFO queue and obtains connections from the idle connection instance pool in the sequence in which they are returned.</li> </ul>	
poolPrepared Statements	false	This determines whether the preprocessing statement pool in the connection pool will be applied.	
maxOpenPrep aredStatemen ts	N/A	Maximum number of statements that can be allocated in the statement pool at the same time. A negative value means no limit. This setting also applies to the pre- processed statement pool. When a statement pool is created for each connection, the pre-processed statements generated by the following method are included. public PreparedStatement prepareStatement(String sql) public PreparedStatement prepareStatement(String sql, int resultSetType, int resultSetConcurrency) <b>NOTE</b> Ensure that connections leave resources for other statements by setting <b>maxOpenPreparedState-</b> <b>ments</b> to a value less than the maximum number of cursors.	
accessToUnde rlyingConnect ionAllowed	false	This controls whether the PoolGuard can access underlying connections.	
removeAband onedOnMaint enance removeAband	false	Whether to delete abandoned connections that have been abandoned for a period longer than the time specified by <b>removeAbandonedTimout</b> .	
onedOnBorro w		If the value is <b>true</b> , connections unused for longer than <b>removeAbandonedTimeout</b> are considered abandoned and removed.	
		Creating or executing statements resets the <b>lastUsed</b> property of the parent connection.	
		Setting this parameter to <b>true</b> helps recover connections in applications with few write operations.	

Parameter	Default Value	Description
removeAband onedTimeout	300	Timeout interval for removing a discarded connection, in seconds.
logAbandone d	false	Whether to enable stack tracing for discarded statements or connected code in an application. When enabled, stack traces for discarded statements and connection- related logs will be overwritten each time a connection is opened or a statement is created.
abandonedUs ageTracking	false	When this parameter is set to <b>true</b> , the connection pool records stack traces each time a method is called on a pooled connection, retaining the latest stack trace to aid in debugging abandoned connections. <b>NOTE</b> Setting this parameter to <b>true</b> will increase the overhead. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
fastFailValidat ion	false	This parameter refers to the quick failure of validation statements if a fatal exception occurs, without executing <b>isValid()</b> or the validation query. Fatal exceptions include specific <b>SQL_STATE</b> codes.
		• 57P01 (ADMIN SHUTDOWN)
		• 57P02 (CRASH SHUTDOWN)
		• 57P03 (CANNOT CONNECT NOW)
		01002 (SQL92 disconnect error)
		JZ0C0 (Sybase disconnect error)
		<ul> <li>JZ0C1 (Sybase disconnect error)</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Any SQL_STATE code that starts with "08"</li> </ul>
		Exception codes need to be overwritten. For details, see <b>disconnectionSqlCodes</b> .
disconnection SqlCodes	N/A	Exception code, which is an SQL_STATE code separated by commas (,). This parameter is valid only when <b>fastFailValidation</b> is set to <b>true</b> .
jmxName	N/A	This parameter registers a DataSource as a JMX MBean with a specified name that adheres to the JMX object name syntax.
registerConne ctionMBean	true	Whether to register and connect to the JMX MBean.

----End

## Configuring the Hikari CP Connection Pool

- Step 1 Download the JDBC driver package. For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.
  - Download the HikariCP driver package from https://mvnrepository.com/ artifact/com.zaxxer/HikariCP/4.0.3.
  - Download the SLF4J driver package from https://www.slf4j.org/ download.html.
- **Step 2** Add the JDBC, HikariCP, and SLF4J driver packages to the project and configure parameters related to the database connection pool.

Parameter	Default Value	Description	
driverClassN ame	Enter the value of <b>org.postgresql.Driv</b> er.	Name of the database driver.	
jdbcUrl	N/A	URL for connecting to the database.	
username	N/A	Username.	
password	N/A	Password.	
autoCommit	true	Whether to automatically submit transactions when the connection returns to the connection pool.	
connectionT imeout	30000	Maximum timeout interval for obtaining connections from the connection pool.	
idleTimeout	60000	Maximum lifetime of an idle connection. This setting takes effect only when the value of <b>minimumIdle</b> is less than that of <b>maximumPoolSize</b> .	
		<ul> <li>If the number of idle connections is greater than the value of minimumIdle and the idle time of a connection is greater than the value of idleTimeout, the connection is deleted from the connection pool.</li> </ul>	
		• <b>0</b> indicates no timeout.	
keepaliveTi me	0	Interval for checking whether idle connections are available, in milliseconds. <b>0</b> indicates that the function is disabled.	
maxLifetime	1800000	Maximum connection lifetime, in milliseconds. <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	

Table 4-16 Hikari CP connection pool parameters

Parameter	Default Value	Description	
connectionT estQuery	N/A	Query statement for connection detection.	
minimumIdl e	10	Minimum number of idle connections. To improve performance, you are advised not to set this parameter. The size of the connection pool is fixed.	
maximumP oolSize	10	Maximum number of connections.	
metricRegist ry	N/A	This parameter can only be accessed through programmatic configuration or the IoC container.	
		This parameter specifies the Codahale/ Dropwizard MetricRegistry instance used by the pool to record various metrics.	
healthCheck Registry	N/A	This parameter can only be accessed through programmatic configuration or the IoC container.	
		This parameter specifies the Codahale/ Dropwizard HealthCheckRegistry instance used by the pool to record health information.	
poolName	N/A	Name of a connection pool.	
initialization FailTimeout	1	<ul> <li>Whether the connection pool fails to initialize quickly.</li> <li>If the value is greater than 0, the system attempts to obtain a connection within the specified duration (connectionTimeout + initializationFailTimeout). If unsuccessful, the pool is not enabled, and an exception is thrown.</li> <li>If the value is 0, the system attempts to obtain and verify the connection. If verification fails, the pool is not enabled.</li> <li>If the value is less than 0, the pool starts without attempting connection initialization</li> </ul>	
isolateIntern alQueries	false	Whether to isolate HikariCP queries in a transaction. This setting takes effect when <b>autoCommit</b> is set to <b>false</b> .	

Parameter	Default Value	Description
allowPoolSu spension	false	Whether to allow the connection pool to be suspended and resumed through JMX. When the connection pool is suspended, the connection does not time out until the connection pool is restored.
readOnly	false	Whether the connection is read-only.
registerMbe ans	false	Whether to enable JMX.
catalog	N/A	Default database <b>catalog</b> .
connectionI nitSql	N/A	SQL statement executed after the connection pool is initialized.
transactionI solation	N/A	Default transaction isolation level.
validationTi meout	5000	Timeout interval for connection detection. The value must be greater than the value of <b>connectionTimeout</b> . The minimum value is <b>250</b> .
leakDetectio nThreshold	0	Maximum duration a connection can be lent out. The minimum value is 2000 milliseconds, used for logging connection leakage.
schema	N/A	Default database <b>schema</b> .
threadFacto ry	N/A	The <b>java.util.concurrent.ThreadFactory</b> instance used by the connection pool for thread creation. This parameter can only be accessed through programmatic configuration or the IoC container.
scheduledEx ecutor	N/A	The <b>java.util.concurrent.ScheduledExecutor-</b> <b>Service</b> instance used by the connection pool to execute scheduled tasks. This parameter can only be accessed through programmatic configuration or the IoC container.

----End

# **Configuring the Druid Connection Pool**

Step 1 Download the JDBC driver package. For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.

Download the Druid driver package from https://druid.apache.org/downloads/.

**Step 2** Add the JDBC and Druid driver packages to the project and configure parameters related to the database connection pool.

Parameter	Default Value	Description	
url	N/A	URL for connecting to the database.	
username	N/A	Username.	
password	N/A	Password.	
driverClassNa me	Enter the value of <b>org.postgresql.Driv</b> er.	Name of the database driver.	
initialSize	0	Number of physical connections established during initialization. Initialization occurs when the <b>init</b> method is invoked explicitly or when the <b>getConnection</b> method is invoked for the first time.	
maxActive	8	Maximum number of connections in the thread pool.	
minIdle	0	Minimum number of idle threads in the thread pool. Druid periodically scans the number of connections. If the number exceeds the specified parameter, redundant connections are closed. If fewer connections are available, new ones are created. This parameter helps manage connections during high request volumes, though it can be time- consuming.	
connectTimeo ut	N/A	Timeout interval for connecting to the database, in milliseconds.	
socketTimeou t	N/A	Timeout interval for the socket to connect to the database, in milliseconds.	
maxWait	-1	Waiting time for a new request when the connections in the connection pool are used up, in milliseconds. -1 indicates infinite waiting until timeout occurs.	
poolPrepared Statements	false	Whether to cache preparedStatement, that is, PSCache. The PSCache greatly improves the performance of the database that supports cursors.	

Parameter	Default Value	Description
maxOpenPrep aredStatemen ts	N/A	If PSCache is enabled, the value of this parameter must be greater than <b>0</b> . If the value is greater than <b>0</b> , <b>poolPreparedStatements</b> will be automatically set to <b>true</b> .
validationQue ry	SELECT 1	SQL statement used to check whether a connection is valid. If <b>validationQuery</b> is null, the <b>testOnBorrow</b> , <b>testOnReturn</b> , and <b>testWhileIdle</b> parameters do not take effect because the three parameters are used to verify the validity of the database connection by running the SQL statement specified by <b>validationQuery</b> .
testOnBorrow	N/A	When applying for a connection, the <b>validationQuery</b> command checks its validity. This configuration may reduce performance, so use it cautiously.
testOnReturn	N/A	When a connection is returned, the <b>validationQuery</b> command checks its validity. This configuration may also impact performance, so use it cautiously.
testWhileIdle	true	Whether a connection should be checked when it is requested. It is best to set this parameter to <b>true</b> to ensure security without compromising performance. If the idle time is greater than the value of <b>timeBetweenEvictionRunMills</b> , running the <b>validationQuery</b> command to verify the connection's validity will not have any effect.

Parameter	Default Value	Description
timeBetween EvictionRuns Millis	60s	The <b>validationQuery</b> command checks connection validity. If the number of idle connections exceeds <b>minIdle</b> , redundant connections are closed. If fewer idle connections are available, new ones are added. Connections not used within the time specified by <b>timeBetweenEviction-</b> <b>RunsMillis</b> are disabled.
		This parameter also:
		<ol> <li>Sets the interval for the Destroy thread to check connections.</li> </ol>
		<ol> <li>Functions as a reference for checking testWhileIdle. For details, see the description of the testWhileIdle attribute.</li> </ol>
minEvictableI dleTimeMillis	30min	Maximum lifetime of an idle connection before eviction. If the time since the last activity exceeds <b>minEvictableIdleTime-</b> <b>Millis</b> , the connection is closed by the Destroy thread. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter conflicts with the <b>timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis</b> parameter. You can leave this parameter empty.
connectionInit Sqls	N/A	The SQL statement is executed when the physical connection is initialized.
exceptionSort er	N/A	When the database throws some unrecoverable exceptions, the connection is discarded.
filters	N/A	<ul> <li>This parameter configures an extension plug-in using an alias. The attribute type is string. Common plug-ins include the filters used for monitoring and statistics:</li> <li>stat: monitoring statistics</li> <li>log4j: log record</li> <li>wall: SQL injection prevention</li> </ul>
proxyFilters	N/A	The type is List <com.alibaba.druid,filter.filter>. You can configure both filter and proxyFilters.</com.alibaba.druid,filter.filter>

Parameter	Default Value	Description
removeAband oned	false	Whether to reclaim leaked connections. When <b>getNumActive()</b> approaches <b>getMaxActive()</b> , the system reclaims invalid connections not used within the <b>removeAbandonedTimeout</b> period (300 seconds by default). Connections exceeding this timeout are forcibly closed.
removeAband onedTimeout	300s	Time limit for Druid to forcibly reclaim connections, in seconds. Druid will forcibly reclaim a connection from the pool after a specified time has elapsed since the connection was established, starting from the moment the program retrieves the connection from the pool.
logAbandone d	false	Whether to print a log when reclaiming leaked connections. This parameter specifies whether to record the stack information of the current thread to logs when the <b>removeAbandoned</b> occurs.
removeAband onedTimeout Millis	5min	Timeout interval for reclaiming connections. If <b>removeAbandoned</b> is set to <b>true</b> , Druid periodically checks whether the thread pool overflows. If the thread pool is not in the running state and the specified time is exceeded, the thread pool is reclaimed.
maxEvictableI dleTimeMillis	7hours	Maximum idle time. The default value is 7 hours.
maxPoolPrepa reStatementP erConnection Size	20	Maximum number of SQL statements that can be cached for each connection.
keepAlive	false	Number of minIdle connections to maintain when the pool is initialized. If the number of connections falls below <b>minIdle</b> and idle time exceeds <b>minEvictableIdleTimeMillis</b> , the <b>keepAlive</b> operation is performed to maintain the <b>minIdle</b> value.

Parameter	Default Value	Description
notFullTimeo utRetryCount	0	Number of retry times when the sum of the number of lent connections in the connection pool and the number of available connections is less than the maximum allowed connections. The default value is <b>0</b> .
logSlowSql	false	Whether to print slow SQL statements.

#### Step 3 Use the Druid connection pool based on the following example.

#### Create the **db.properties** file in the **resource** directory.

# Database connection parameters url=jdbc:postgresql://10.10.0.13:8000/gaussdb username=user password=pass validationQuery=select 1 validationQueryTimeout=300 #driverClassName=JDBC driver name driverClassName=org.postgresql.Driver # Number of initialized connections initialSize=1 # Maximum number of connections maxActive=20 # Number of core threads. If the number of core threads is greater than this configured value, the threads are released. minIdle=10

#### Example code:

```
import com.alibaba.druid.pool.DruidDataSource;
import com.alibaba.druid.pool.DruidDataSourceFactory;
import com.alibaba.druid.pool.DruidPooledConnection;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.Statement;
import java.util.Properties;
public class TestDataSource {
  private static DruidDataSource dataSource;
  public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
     Properties properties = loadProperties();
     dataSource = (DruidDataSource) DruidDataSourceFactory.createDataSource(properties);
     dataSource.setTimeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis(50 * 1000);
     dataSource.setRemoveAbandoned(true);
     dataSource.setRemoveAbandonedTimeout(120);
     dataSource.setSocketTimeout(5000);
     dataSource.setConnectTimeout(5000);
     dataSource.setQueryTimeout(5);
     final DruidPooledConnection connection = dataSource.getConnection();
     final Statement statement = connection.createStatement();
     execute(statement);
  }
  public static void execute(Statement statement) {
     ResultSet resultSet = null;
     try {
        resultSet = statement.executeQuery("select 1");
       while (resultSet.next()) {
          String str = resultSet.getString(1);
          System.out.println("n1 :" + str);
```

```
return;
        }
     } catch (Exception e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
     }
  }
   * Load the configuration file and obtain parameters from the configuration file.
  public static Properties loadProperties() {
     InputStream inputStream =
TestDataSource.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream("db.properties");
     Properties ps = new Properties();
     try {
        ps.load(inputStream);
     } catch (IOException e) {
        e.printStackTrace();
     }
     return ps;
  }
3
```

----End

## 4.5.1.8 Using ODBC to Connect to a Cluster

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to use an ODBC driver to connect to the database through an ECS on the Huawei Cloud platform or over the Internet.

For details about how to use the ODBC API, see the official document.

#### Prerequisites

 You have downloaded ODBC driver packages dws\_x.x.x\_odbc\_driver\_for\_xxx.zip (for Linux) and dws\_odbc\_driver\_for\_windows.zip (for Windows). For details, see Downloading the JDBC or ODBC Driver.

GaussDB(DWS) also supports open-source ODBC driver: PostgreSQL ODBC 09.01.0200 or later.

- You have downloaded the open-source unixODBC code file 2.3.0 from https:// sourceforge.net/projects/unixodbc/files/unixODBC/2.3.0/ unixODBC-2.3.0.tar.gz/download.
- You have downloaded the SSL certificate file. For details, see **Downloading** an SSL Certificate.

#### Using an ODBC Driver to Connect to a Database (Linux)

- **Step 1** Upload the ODBC package and code file to the Linux environment and decompress them to the specified directory.
- **Step 2** Log in to the Linux environment.
- Step 3 Prepare unixODBC.
  - 1. Decompress the **unixODBC** code file. tar -xvf unixODBC-2.3.0.tar.gz
  - Compile the code file and install the driver. cd unixODBC-2.3.0 ./configure --enable-gui=no --prefix=[your\_path]

make make install

**NOTE** 

- In the command, **[your\_path]** indicates the installation path, which can be specified as required. The path must be an absolute path.
- After the unixODBC is compiled and installed, the \*.so.2 library file will be in the installation directory. To create the \*.so.1 library file, change LIB\_VERSION in the configure file to 1:0:0.
   LIB\_VERSION="1:0:0"
- This driver dynamically loads the libodbcinst.so.\* library files. If one of the library files is successfully loaded, the library file is loaded. The loading priority is libodbcinst.so > libodbcinst.so.1 > libodbcinst.so.1.0.0 > libodbcinst.so.2 > libodbcinst.so.2.0.0.

For example, a directory can be dynamically linked to **libodbcinst.so.1**, **libodbcinst.so.1.0.0**, and **libodbcinst.so.2**. The driver file loads **libodbcinst.so** first. If **libodbcinst.so** cannot be found in the current environment, the driver file searches for **libodbcinst.so.1**, which has a lower priority. After **libodbcinst.so.1** is loaded, the loading is complete.

- Step 4 Replace the driver file. (This document uses the dws\_8.1.x\_odbc\_driver\_for\_x86\_redhat.zip package of Red Hat as an example.)
  - 1. Decompress the **dws\_8.1.x\_odbc\_driver\_for\_x86\_redhat.zip** package. unzip dws\_8.1.x\_odbc\_driver\_for\_x86\_redhat.zip
  - Copy all files in the lib directory extracted from the dws\_8.1.x\_odbc\_driver\_for\_x86\_redhat.zip package to the [your\_path]/lib directory.
  - 3. Copy **psqlodbcw.la** and **psqlodbcw.so** in the **odbc/lib** directory to [your\_path]/lib/odbc.
- **Step 5** Run the following command to modify the configuration of the driver file: vi [your\_path]/etc/odbcinst.ini

Copy the following content to the file:

[DWS]

Driver64=[your\_path]/lib/odbc/psqlodbcw.so

The parameters are as follows:

- [DWS]: indicates the driver name. You can customize the name.
- **Driver64** or **Driver**: indicates the path where the dynamic library of the driver resides. For a 64-bit operating system, search for **Driver64** first. If **Driver64** is not configured, search for **Driver**.
- **Step 6** Run the following command to modify the data source file:

vi [your\_path]/etc/odbc.ini

Copy the following content to the configuration file, save the modification, and exit.

[DWSODBC] Driver=DWS Servername=10.10.0.13 Database=gaussdb Username=dbadmin Password=*password* Port=8000 Sslmode=allow

Parameter	Description	Example Value
[DSN]	Data source name.	[DWSODBC]
Driver	Driver name, corresponding to <b>DriverName</b> in <b>odbcinst.ini</b> .	Driver=DWS
Servername	IP address of the server. When the cluster is bound to an ELB, set this parameter to the IP address of the ELB.	Servername=10.10.0.13
Database	Name of the database to be connected to.	Database=gaussdb
Username	Database username.	Username=dbadmin
Password	Database user password.	Password=password
Port	Port number of the server.	Port=8000

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Sslmode	SSL certification mode. This parameter is enabled for the cluster by default.	Sslmode=allow
	Values and meanings:	
	<ul> <li>disable: only tries to establish a non-SSL connection.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>allow</b> : tries establishing a non-SSL connection first, and then an SSL connection if the attempt fails.	
	• <b>prefer</b> : tries establishing an SSL connection first, and then a non-SSL connection if the attempt fails.	
	• <b>require</b> : only tries establishing an SSL connection. If there is a CA file, perform the verification according to the scenario in which the parameter is set to <b>verify</b> - <b>ca</b> .	
	• <b>verify-ca</b> : tries establishing an SSL connection and checks whether the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA.	
	<ul> <li>verify-full: not supported by GaussDB(DWS)</li> </ul>	
	NOTE The SSL mode delivers higher security than the common mode. By default, the SSL function is enabled in a cluster to allow SSL or non-SSL connections from the client. You are advised to use the SSL mode when using ODBC to connect to a GaussDB(DWS) cluster.	

#### 

• You can view the values of **Servername** and **Port** on the GaussDB(DWS) console. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console and click **Client Connections**. In the **Data Warehouse Connection String** area, select the target cluster and obtain **Private Network Address** or **Public Network Address**. For details, see **Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.
#### Step 7 Configure environment variables.

vi ~/.bashrc

Add the following information to the configuration file:

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=[your_path]/lib/:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
export ODBCSYSINI=[your_path]/etc
export ODBCINI=[your_path]/etc/odbc.ini
```

**NOTE** 

It is not recommended to add LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH in the Kylin OS, as it may cause conflicts with the **libssl.so** library. The latest cluster versions 8.2.1 and 9.1.0 now include the **rpath** mechanism, which allows the dependency to be located without using LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

#### Step 8 Import environment variables.

source ~/.bashrc

**Step 9** Run the following commands to connect to the database: [your\_path]/bin/isql -v DWSODBC

If the following information is displayed, the connection is successful:

+		+
Connected!		
   sql-statement   help [tablename]	1	
quit 		
+ SQL>		+

----End

#### Using an ODBC Driver to Connect to a Database (Windows)

- Step 1 Decompress ODBC driver package dws\_odbc\_driver\_for\_windows.zip (for Windows) and install psqlodbc.msi.
- Step 2 Decompress the SSL certificate package to obtain the certificate file.

You have the option to deploy the certificate either automatically or manually, depending on your requirements.

• Automatic deployment:

Double-click the **sslcert\_env.bat** file to trigger automatic deployment of the certificate to a default location.

**NOTE** 

The **sslcert\_env.bat** file ensures the purity of the certificate environment. When the **%APPDATA%\postgresql** directory exists, a message will be prompted asking you whether you want to remove related directories. If you want to remove related directories, back up files in the directory.

- Manual deployment:
  - Create a new folder named **postgresql** in the **%APPDATA%** directory.
  - Copy files client.crt, client.key, client.key.cipher, and client.key.rand to the %APPDATA%\postgresql directory and change client in the file name to postgres. For example, change the name of client.key to postgres.key.

#### Copy cacert.pem to %APPDATA%\postgresql and change the name of cacert.pem to root.crt.

#### **Step 3** Open Driver Manager.

GaussDB(DWS) provides 32-bit and 64-bit ODBC drivers. Choose the version suitable for your system when configuring the data source. (Assume the Windows system drive is drive C. If another disk drive is used, modify the path accordingly.)

 If you want to develop 32-bit programs in the 64-bit OS and have installed the 32-bit driver, open the 32-bit Driver Manager at C:\Windows \SysWOW64\odbcad32.exe.

Do not choose Control Panel > System and Security > Administrative Tools > Data Sources (ODBC) directly.

**NOTE** 

WOW64 is the acronym for Windows 32-bit on Windows 64-bit. C:\Windows \SysWOW64\ stores the 32-bit environment on a 64-bit system.

• If you want to develop 64-bit programs in the 64-bit OS and have installed the 64-bit driver, open the 64-bit Driver Manager at C:\Windows \System32\odbcad32.exe.

Do not choose Control Panel > System and Security > Administrative Tools > Data Sources (ODBC) directly.

**NOTE** 

**C:\Windows\System32\** stores the environment consistent with the current OS. For technical details, see Windows technical documents.

• In a 32-bit OS, open C:\Windows\System32\odbcad32.exe.

Alternatively, click **Computer**, and choose **Control Panel**. Click **Administrative Tools** and click **Data Sources (ODBC)**.

**Step 4** Configure a data source to be connected to.

1. On the User DSN tab, click Add and choose PostgreSQL Unicode for setup.

Figure 4-35 Configuring a data source to be connected to

PostgreSQL ANSI ODBC Driver (psqlODBC) Setup				
<u>D</u> ata Source	dws	Des <u>c</u> ription	test	
Data <u>b</u> ase	postgres	SS <u>L</u> Mode	verify-ca	-
<u>S</u> erver	10.154.74.195	<u>P</u> ort	8000	
<u>U</u> ser Name	dbadmin	Pass <u>w</u> ord	•••••	
Options			ſ	Test
Datasource	Global N	Manage DSN	Save	Cancel

You can view the values of **Server** and **Port** on the GaussDB(DWS) console. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console and click **Client Connections**. In the **Data Warehouse Connection String** area, select the target cluster and obtain **Private Network Address** or **Public Network Address**. For details, see **Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.

2. Click **Test** to verify that the connection is correct. If **Connection successful** is displayed, the connection is correct.

#### **Step 5** Compile an ODBC sample program to connect to the data source.

The ODBC API does not provide the database connection retry capability. You need to implement the connection retry processing in the service code.

The sample code is as follows:

```
// This example shows how to obtain GaussDB(DWS) data through the ODBC driver.
// DBtest.c (compile with: libodbc.so)
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <sglext.h>
#ifdef WIN32
#include <windows.h>
#endif
                            // Handle ODBC environment
SQLHENV
             V_OD_Env;
SQLHSTMT
             V OD hstmt;
                             // Handle statement
SQLHDBC
             V OD hdbc;
                             // Handle connection
          typename[100];
char
SQLINTEGER value = 100;
SQLINTEGER V_OD_erg,V_OD_buffer,V_OD_err,V_OD_id;
int main(int argc,char *argv[])
   // 1. Apply for an environment handle.
   V_OD_erg = SQLAllocHandle(SQL_HANDLE_ENV,SQL_NULL_HANDLE,&V_OD_Env);
   if ((V_OD_erg != SQL_SUCCESS) && (V_OD_erg != SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO))
   {
       printf("Error AllocHandle\n");
       exit(0):
   // 2. Set environment attributes (version information).
   SQLSetEnvAttr(V_OD_Env, SQL_ATTR_ODBC_VERSION, (void*)SQL_OV_ODBC3, 0);
   // 3. Apply for a connection handle.
   V_OD_erg = SQLAllocHandle(SQL_HANDLE_DBC, V_OD_Env, &V_OD_hdbc);
   if ((V OD erg != SQL SUCCESS) && (V OD erg != SQL SUCCESS WITH INFO))
   {
       SQLFreeHandle(SQL_HANDLE_ENV, V_OD_Env);
       exit(0):
   }
   // 4. Set connection attributes.
   SQLSetConnectAttr(V_OD_hdbc, SQL_ATTR_AUTOCOMMIT, SQL_AUTOCOMMIT_ON, 0);
   // 5. Connect to a data source. You do not need to enter the username and password if you have
configured them in the odbc.ini file. If you have not configured them, specify the name and password of
the user who wants to connect to the database in the SQLConnect function.
   V_OD_erg = SQLConnect(V_OD_hdbc, (SQLCHAR*) "gaussdb", SQL_NTS,
                 (SQLCHAR*) "", SQL_NTS, (SQLCHAR*) "", SQL_NTS);
   if ((V_OD_erg != SQL_SUCCESS) && (V_OD_erg != SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO))
   {
      printf("Error SQLConnect %d\n",V_OD_erg);
      SQLFreeHandle(SQL_HANDLE_ENV, V_OD_Env);
      exit(0);
   }
   printf("Connected !\n");
   // 6. Set statement attributes.
   SQLSetStmtAttr(V_OD_hstmt,SQL_ATTR_QUERY_TIMEOUT,(SQLPOINTER *)3,0);
   // 7. Apply for a statement handle.
   SQLAllocHandle(SQL_HANDLE_STMT, V_OD_hdbc, &V_OD_hstmt);
   // 8. Executes an SQL statement directly.
   SQLExecDirect(V_OD_hstmt,"drop table IF EXISTS testtable",SQL_NTS);
```

```
SQLExecDirect(V_OD_hstmt,"create table testtable(id int)",SQL_NTS);
SQLExecDirect(V_OD_hstmt,"insert into testtable values(25)",SQL_NTS);
// 9. Prepare for execution.
SQLPrepare(V_OD_hstmt,"insert into testtable values(?)",SQL_NTS);
// 10. Bind parameters.
SQLBindParameter(V_OD_hstmt,1,SQL_PARAM_INPUT,SQL_C_SLONG,SQL_INTEGER,0,0,
          &value,0,NULL);
// 11. Execute the ready statement.
SQLExecute(V_OD_hstmt);
SQLExecDirect(V_OD_hstmt,"select id from testtable",SQL_NTS);
// 12. Obtain the attributes of a certain column in the result set.
SQLColAttribute(V_OD_hstmt,1,SQL_DESC_TYPE,typename,100,NULL,NULL);
printf("SQLColAtrribute %s\n",typename);
// 13. Bind the result set.
SQLBindCol(V_OD_hstmt,1,SQL_C_SLONG, (SQLPOINTER)&V_OD_buffer,150,
      (SQLLEN *)&V_OD_err);
// 14. Collect data using SQLFetch.
V_OD_erg=SQLFetch(V_OD_hstmt);
// 15. Obtain and return data using SQLGetData.
while(V_OD_erg != SQL_NO_DATA)
ł
  SQLGetData(V OD hstmt,1,SQL C SLONG,(SQLPOINTER)&V OD id,0,NULL);
  printf("SQLGetData ----ID = %d\n",V_OD_id);
  V_OD_erg=SQLFetch(V_OD_hstmt);
};
printf("Done !\n");
// 16. Disconnect from the data source and release handles.
SQLFreeHandle(SQL_HANDLE_STMT,V_OD_hstmt);
SQLDisconnect(V_OD_hdbc);
SQLFreeHandle(SQL_HANDLE_DBC,V_OD_hdbc);
SQLFreeHandle(SQL_HANDLE_ENV, V_OD_Env);
return(0);
```

----End

}

# 4.5.2 Using the Third-Party Database Adapter Psycopg2 (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection

After creating a GaussDB(DWS) cluster and using the third-party database adapter psycopg2 to connect to the cluster, you can use Python to access GaussDB(DWS) and perform various operations on data tables.

# **Preparations Before Connecting to a Cluster**

- An EIP has been bound to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.
- You have obtained the administrator username and password for logging in to the database in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

MD5 algorithms may by vulnerable to collision attacks and cannot be used for password verification. Currently, GaussDB(DWS) uses the default security design. By default, MD5 password verification is disabled, and this may cause failures of connections from open source clients. You are advised to contact the technical support to check whether the value of

**password\_encryption\_type** is **1**. If the value is not **1**, change it. Then change the password of the database user to be used.

#### D NOTE

- For security purposes, GaussDB(DWS) no longer uses MD5 to store password digests by default. As a result, the open-source drives and clients may fail to connect to the database. To use the MD5 algorithm used in an open-source protocol, you must modify your password policy and create a new user, or change the password of an existing user.
- The database stores the hash digest of passwords instead of password text. During password verification, the system compares the hash digest with the password digest sent from the client (salt operations are involved). If you change your cryptographic algorithm policy, the database cannot generate a new hash digest for your existing password. For connectivity purposes, you must manually change your password or create a new user. The new password will be encrypted using the hash algorithm and stored for authentication in the next connection.
- You have obtained the public network address, including the IP address and port number in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster. For details, see Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- You have installed the third-party database adapter Psycopg2. Download address: https://pypi.org/project/psycopg2/. For details about installation and deployment, see https://www.psycopg.org/install/.

#### **NOTE**

- In CentOS and Red Hat OS, run the following yum command: yum install python-psycopg2
- Psycopg2 depends on the libpq dynamic library of PostgreSQL (32-bit or 64-bit version, whichever matches the psycopg2 bit version). In Linux, you can run the **yum** command and do not need to install the library. Before using Psycopg2 in Windows, install libpq in either of the following ways:
  - Install PostgreSQL and configure the libpq, ssl, and crypto dynamic libraries in the environment variable PATH.
  - Install psqlodbc and use the libpq, ssl, and crypto dynamic libraries carried by the PostgreSQL ODBC driver.

#### Version

There are many versions of GaussDB(DWS) clusters, Python, and Psycopg2. The following table lists only the supported mainstream versions.

Psycopg2 Version	Python Version	GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Version
2.7.x	3.8.x	8.1.3 or later
	3.9.x	8.1.3 or later
2.8.x	3.8.x	8.1.3 or later
	3.9.x	8.1.3 or later
2.9.x	3.8.x	8.1.3 or later
	3.9.x	8.1.3 or later

#### Table 4-18

# Constraints

Psycopg2 is a PostgreSQL-based client interface, and its functions are not fully supported by GaussDB(DWS). For details, see **Table 4-19**.

#### D NOTE

The following APIs are supported based on Python 3.8.5 and Psycopg 2.9.1.

Class Name	Usage	Function/Member Variable	Supp ort	Remarks
connectio ns	basic	cursor( <i>name=None</i> , <i>cursor_factory=None</i> , <i>scrollable=None</i> , <i>withhold=False</i> )	Y	-
		commit()	Y	-
		rollback()	Y	-
		close()	Y	-
	Two-	xid( <i>format_id</i> , <i>gtrid</i> , <i>bqual</i> )	Y	-
	phase commit	tpc_begin( <i>xid</i> )	Y	-
	support methods	tpc_prepare()	N	The kernel does not support explicit <b>PREPARE</b> <b>TRANSACTIO</b> <b>N</b> .
		tpc_commit([ <i>xid</i> ])	Y	-
		tpc_rollback([ <i>xid</i> ])	Y	-
		tpc_recover()	Y	-
		closed	Y	-
		cancel()	Y	-
		reset()	N	DISCARD ALL is not supported.
		dsn	Y	-

Table 4-19	Psycopa2 APIs supported	bv	GaussDB	'DWS	١
	i sycopyz Ai is supported	Uy	Gaussee		,

Class Name	Usage	Function/Member Variable	Supp ort	Remarks
	Transactio n control methods and attributes.	set_session( <i>isolation_level=No ne, readonly=None, deferrable=None, autocommit=None</i> )	Y	The database does not support the setting of <b>default_trans</b> <b>action_read_o</b> <b>nly</b> in a session.
		autocommit	Y	-
		isolation_level	Y	-
		readonly	N	The database does not support the setting of <b>default_trans</b> <b>action_read_o</b> <b>nly</b> in a session.
		deferrable	Y	-
		set_isolation_level( <i>level</i> )	Y	-
		encoding	Y	-
		set_client_encoding(enc)	Y	-
		notices	Ν	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .
		notifies	Y	-
		cursor_factory	Y	-
		info	Y	-
		status	Y	-
		object	Ν	The database does not support operations related to large objects.

Class Name	Usage	Function/Member Variable	Supp ort	Remarks
	Methods	poll()	Y	-
	related to asynchron	fileno()	Y	-
	ous support	isexecuting()	Y	-
	Interopera	pgconn_ptr	Y	-
	other C API modules	get_native_connection()	Y	-
	informativ	get_transaction_status()	Y	-
	e methods of the	protocol_version	Y	-
	native	server_version	Y	-
n	n	get_backend_pid()	Y	The obtained PID is not the background PID, but the ID of the logical connection.
		get_parameter_status(parame ter)	Y	-
		get_dsn_parameters()	Y	-
cursor	basic	description	Y	-
		close()	Y	-
		closed	Y	-
		connection	Y	-
		name	Y	-
		scrollable	N	The database does not support SCROLL CURSOR.
		withhold	N	The <b>withhold</b> <b>cursor</b> needs to be closed before the commit operation.

Class Name	Usage	Function/Member Variable	Supp ort	Remarks
	Command	execute( <i>query</i> , <i>vars=None</i> )	Y	-
	s execution	executemany( <i>query</i> , <i>vars_list</i> )	Y	-
	methods	callproc( <i>procname</i> [, <i>parameters</i> ])	Y	-
		mogrify( <i>operation</i> [, <i>parameters</i> ])	Y	-
		setinputsizes( <i>sizes</i> )	Y	-
		fetchone()	Y	-
		fetchmany([ <i>size=cursor.arrays</i> <i>ize</i> ])	Y	-
		fetchall()	Y	-
	scroll( <i>value</i> [, <i>mode='relative'</i> ])	N	The database does not support SCROLL CURSOR.	
		arraysize	Y	-
		itersize	Y	-
		rowcount	Y	-
		rownumber	Y	-
		lastrowid	Y	-
		query	Y	-
		statusmessage	Y	-
		cast( <i>oid</i> , <i>s</i> )	Y	-
		tzinfo_factory	Y	-
		nextset()	Y	-
-		setoutputsize( <i>size</i> [, <i>column</i> ])	Y	-
	COPY- related methods	copy_from( <i>file, table, sep='</i>     <i>t', null='</i>     N', <i>size=8192, columns=None</i> )	Y	-
		copy_to( <i>file, table, sep='\\t',</i> <i>null='\\\N', columns=None</i> )	Y	-
		copy_expert( <i>sql, file, size=8192</i> )	Y	-

Class Name	Usage	Function/Member Variable	Supp ort	Remarks
	Interopera tion with other C API modules	pgresult_ptr	Y	-

# Using the Third-Party Function Library psycopg2 to Connect to a Cluster (Linux)

Step 1 Log in to the Linux environment as user root.

Copy and paste the following content to the python\_dws.py file:

```
#!/usr/bin/python
# -*- coding: UTF-8 -*-
from __future__ import print_function
import psycopg2
def create_table(connection):
  print("Begin to create table")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("drop table if exists test;"
                "create table test(id int, name text);")
     connection.commit()
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
     cursor.close()
def insert_data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
     connection.commit()
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
     cursor.close()
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     connection.commit()
```

```
print("Total number of rows updated :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("delete from test where id=3;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else:
     print("Operation done successfully")
     cursor.close()
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = psycopg2.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
                     port='8000',
                      database='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
                      user='dbadmin',
                     password='password') # Database user password
  except psycopg2.DatabaseError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update_data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Step 3 Change the public network address, cluster port number, database name, database username, and database password in the python\_dws.py file based on the actual cluster information.

The psycopg2 API does not provide the connection retry capability. You need to implement the retry processing in the service code.

conn = psycopg2.connect(host='10.154.70.231', port='8000', database=**'gaussdb'**, # Database to be connected user='dbadmin', password='password') # Database user password

**Step 4** Connect to the cluster using the third-party database adapter Psycopg. python python\_dws.py

----End

# Using the Third-Party Function Library psycopg2 to Connect to a Cluster (Windows)

- Step 1 In the Windows operating system, click the Start button, enter cmd in the search box, and click cmd.exe in the result list to open the command-line interface (CLI).
- Step 2 In the CLI, run the following command to create the python\_dws.py file: type nul> python\_dws.py

Copy and paste the following content to the **python\_dws.py** file:

```
#!/usr/bin/python
# -*- coding:UTF-8 -*-
from __future__ import print_function
import psycopg2
def create_table(connection):
  print("Begin to create table")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("drop table if exists test;"
                "create table test(id int, name text);")
     connection.commit()
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
     cursor.close()
def insert_data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
     connection.commit()
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
     cursor.close()
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
```

```
cursor.execute("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows updated :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete_data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("delete from test where id=3;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except psycopg2.ProgrammingError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else:
     print("Operation done successfully")
     cursor.close()
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = psycopg2.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
                      port='8000',
                      database='postgresgaussdb', # Database to be connected
                      user='dbadmin',
                      password='password') # Database user password
  except psycopg2.DatabaseError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update_data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Step 3 Change the public network address, cluster port number, database name, database username, and database password in the python\_dws.py file based on the actual cluster information.

```
conn = psycopg2.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
port='8000',
database='gaussdb'', # Database to be connected
user='dbadmin',
password='password') # Database user password
```

**Step 4** On the CLI, run the following command to use Psycopg to connect to the cluster: python python\_dws.py

----End

## Why CN Retry Is Not Supported When Psycopg2 Is Connected to a Cluster?

With the CN retry feature, GaussDB(DWS) retries a statement that failed to be executed and identifies the failure type. However, in a session connected using Psycopg2, a failed SQL statement will report an error and stop to be executed. In a primary/standby switchover, if a failed SQL statement is not retried, the following error will be reported. If the switchover is complete during an automatic retry, the correct result will be returned.

psycopg2.errors.ConnectionFailure: pooler: failed to create 1 connections, Error Message: remote node dn\_6003\_6004, detail: could not connect to server: Operation now in progress

#### Error causes:

- 1. Psycopg2 sends the **BEGIN** statement to start a transaction before sending an SQL statement.
- 2. CN retry does not support statements in transaction blocks.

#### Solution:

- In synchronous connection mode, end the transaction started by the driver. cursor = conn.cursor() # End the transaction started by the driver. cursor.execute("end; select \* from test order by 1;") rows = cursor.fetchall()
- Start a transaction in an asynchronous connection. For details, visit the PyScopg official website at: https://www.psycopg.org/docs/advanced.html? highlight=async #!/usr/bin/env python3

```
# _*_ encoding=utf-8 _*_
import psycopg2
import select
# Wait function provided by Psycopg2 in asynchronous connection mode
#For details, see https://www.psycopg.org/docs/advanced.html?highlight=async.
def wait(conn):
  while True:
     state = conn.poll()
     if state == psycopg2.extensions.POLL_OK:
        break
     elif state == psycopg2.extensions.POLL_WRITE:
        select.select([], [conn.fileno()], [])
     elif state == psycopg2.extensions.POLL_READ:
        select.select([conn.fileno()], [], [])
     else:
        raise psycopg2.OperationalError("poll() returned %s" % state)
```

```
def psycopg2_cnretry_sync():
  # Create a connection.
  conn = psycopg2.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
                     port='8000'.
                     database='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
                     user='dbadmin',
                     password='password', # Database user password
                     async=1) # Use the asynchronous connection mode.
  wait(conn)
  # Execute a query.
  cursor = conn.cursor()
  cursor.execute("select * from test order by 1;")
  wait(conn)
  rows = cursor.fetchall()
  for row in rows:
     print(row[0], row[1])
  # Close the connection.
  conn.close()
if __name__ == '__main__':
 psycopg2_cnretry_async()
```

# 4.5.3 Using the Third-Party Database Adapter PyGreSQL (in Python) for GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connection

After creating a GaussDB(DWS) cluster and using the third-party database adapter PyGreSQL to connect to the cluster, you can use Python to access GaussDB(DWS) and perform various operations on data tables.

# **Preparations Before Connecting to a Cluster**

- An EIP has been bound to the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.
- You have obtained the administrator username and password for logging in to the database in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

MD5 algorithms may by vulnerable to collision attacks and cannot be used for password verification. Currently, GaussDB(DWS) uses the default security design. By default, MD5 password verification is disabled, and this may cause failures of connections from open source clients. You are advised to contact the technical support to check whether the value of **password\_encryption\_type** is **1**. If the value is not **1**, change it by referring to **Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**. Then change the password of the database user to be used.

#### **NOTE**

- For security purposes, GaussDB(DWS) no longer uses MD5 to store password digests by default. As a result, the open-source drives and clients may fail to connect to the database. To use the MD5 algorithm used in an open-source protocol, you must modify your password policy and create a new user, or change the password of an existing user.
- The database stores the hash digest of passwords instead of password text. During password verification, the system compares the hash digest with the password digest sent from the client (salt operations are involved). If you change your cryptographic algorithm policy, the database cannot generate a new hash digest for your existing password. For connectivity purposes, you must manually change your password or create a new user. The new password will be encrypted using the hash algorithm and stored for authentication in the next connection.

- You have obtained the public network address, including the IP address and port number in the data warehouse cluster. For details, see Obtaining the Connection Address of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- You have installed the third-party function library PyGreSQL.

Download address: http://www.pygresql.org/download/index.html

For details about the installation and deployment operations, see <a href="http://www.pygresql.org/contents/install.html">http://www.pygresql.org/contents/install.html</a>

**NOTE** 

- In CentOS and Red Hat OS, run the following **yum** command: yum install PyGreSQL
- PyGreSQL depends on the libpq dynamic library of PostgreSQL (32-bit or 64-bit version, whichever matches the PyGreSQL bit version). In Linux, you can run the **yum** command and do not need to install the library. Before using PyGreSQL in Windows, you need to install libpq in either of the following ways:
  - Install PostgreSQL and configure the libpq, ssl, and crypto dynamic libraries in the environment variable **PATH**.
  - Install **psqlodbc** and use the **libpq**, **ssl**, and **crypto** dynamic libraries carried by the PostgreSQL ODBC driver.

# Constraints

PyGreSQL is a PostgreSQL-based client interface, and its functions are not fully supported by GaussDB(DWS). For details, see **Table 4-20**.

#### **NOTE**

The following APIs are supported based on Python 3.8.5 and PyGreSQL 5.2.4.

PyGreSQL		Yes	Remarks
Module functions and constants	connect – Open a PostgreSQL connection	Y	-
	get_pqlib_version – get the version of libpq	Y	-
	get/set_defhost – default server host [DV]	Y	-
	get/set_defport – default server port [DV]	Y	-
	get/set_defopt – default connection options [DV]	Y	-
	get/set_defbase – default database name [DV]	Y	-
	get/set_defuser – default database user [DV]	Y	-

#### Table 4-20 PyGreSQL APIs supported by GaussDB(DWS)

PyGreSQL		Yes	Remarks
	get/set_defpasswd – default database password [DV]	Y	-
	escape_string – escape a string for use within SQL	Y	-
	escape_bytea – escape binary data for use within SQL	Y	-
	unescape_bytea – unescape data that has been retrieved as text	Y	-
	get/set_namedresult – conversion to named tuples	Y	-
	get/set_decimal – decimal type to be used for numeric values	Y	-
	get/set_decimal_point – decimal mark used for monetary values	Y	-
	get/set_bool – whether boolean values are returned as bool objects	Y	-
	get/set_array – whether arrays are returned as list objects	Y	-
	get/set_bytea_escaped – whether bytea data is returned escaped	Y	-
	get/set_jsondecode – decoding JSON format	Y	-
	get/set_cast_hook – fallback typecast function	Y	-
	get/set_datestyle – assume a fixed date style	Y	-
	get/set_typecast – custom typecasting	Y	-
	cast_array/record – fast parsers for arrays and records	Y	-
	Type helpers	Y	-

PyGreSQL			Remarks
	Module constants	Y	-
Connection – The connection object	query – execute a SQL command string	Y	-
	send_query - executes a SQL command string asynchronously	Y	-
	query_prepared – execute a prepared statement	Y	-
	prepare – create a prepared statement	Y	-
	describe_prepared – describe a prepared statement	Y	-
	reset – reset the connection	Y	-
	poll - completes an asynchronous connection	Y	-
	cancel – abandon processing of current SQL command	Y	-
	close – close the database connection	Y	-
	transaction – get the current transaction state	Y	-
	parameter – get a current server parameter setting	Y	-
	date_format – get the currently used date format	Y	-
	fileno – get the socket used to connect to the database	Y	-
	set_non_blocking - set the non-blocking status of the connection	Y	-
	is_non_blocking - report the blocking status of the connection	Y	-
	getnotify – get the last notify from the server	N	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .

PyGreSQL		Yes	Remarks
	inserttable – insert a list into a table	Y	Use double quotation marks ("") to quote <b>\n</b> in the <b>copy</b> command.
	get/set_notice_receiver – custom notice receiver	Y	-
	putline – write a line to the server socket [DA]	Y	-
	getline – get a line from server socket [DA]	Y	-
	endcopy – synchronize client and server [DA]	Y	-
	locreate – create a large object in the database [LO]	N	Operations related to large objects
	getlo – build a large object from given oid [LO]	N	Operations related to large objects
	loimport – import a file to a large object [LO]	N	Operations related to large objects
	Object attributes	Y	-
The DB wrapper class	Initialization	Y	-
	pkey – return the primary key of a table	Y	-
	get_databases – get list of databases in the system	Y	-
	get_relations – get list of relations in connected database	Y	-
	get_tables – get list of tables in connected database	Y	-
	get_attnames – get the attribute names of a table	Y	-
	has_table_privilege – check table privilege	Y	-

PyGreSQL		Yes	Remarks
	get/set_parameter – get or set run-time parameters	Y	-
	begin/commit/rollback/ savepoint/release – transaction handling	Y	-
	get – get a row from a database table or view	Y	-
	insert – insert a row into a database table	Y	-
	update – update a row in a database table	Y	-
	upsert – insert a row with conflict resolution	Y	-
	query – execute a SQL command string	Y	-
	query_formatted – execute a formatted SQL command string	Y	-
	query_prepared – execute a prepared statement	Y	-
	prepare – create a prepared statement	Y	-
	describe_prepared – describe a prepared statement	Y	-
	delete_prepared – delete a prepared statement	Y	-
	clear – clear row values in memory	Y	-
	delete – delete a row from a database table	Y	A tuple must have unique key or primary key.
	truncate – quickly empty database tables	Y	-
	get_as_list/dict - read a table as a list or dictionary	Y	-

PyGreSQL			Remarks
	escape_literal/identifier/ string/bytea – escape for SQL	Y	-
	unescape_bytea – unescape data retrieved from the database	Y	-
	encode/decode_json – encode and decode JSON data	Y	-
	use_regtypes – determine use of regular type names	Y	-
	notification_handler – create a notification handler	N	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .
	Attributes of the DB wrapper class	Y	-
Query methods	getresult – get query values as list of tuples	Y	-
	dictresult/dictiter – get query values as dictionaries	Y	-
	namedresult/namediter – get query values as named tuples	Y	-
	scalarresult/scalariter – get query values as scalars	Y	-
	one/onedict/onenamed/ onescalar – get one result of a query	Y	-
	single/singledict/ singlenamed/singlescalar – get single result of a query	Y	-
	listfields – list fields names of previous query result	Y	-
	fieldname, fieldnum – field name/number conversion	Y	-
	fieldinfo – detailed info about query result fields	Y	-
	ntuples – return number of tuples in query object	Y	-

PyGreSQL			Remarks
	memsize – return number of bytes allocated by query result	Y	-
LargeObject – Large Objects	open – open a large object	N	Operations related to large objects
	close – close a large object	N	Operations related to large objects
	read, write, tell, seek, unlink – file-like large object handling	N	Operations related to large objects
	size – get the large object size	N	Operations related to large objects
	export – save a large object to a file	N	Operations related to large objects
	Object attributes	N	Operations related to large objects
The Notification Handler	Instantiating the notification handler	N	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .
	Invoking the notification handler	N	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .
	Sending notifications	N	The database does not support <b>listen/notify</b> .
	Auxiliary methods	N	The database does not support listen/notify.
pgdb			
Module functions and constants	connect – Open a PostgreSQL connection	Y	-

PyGreSQL			Remarks
	get/set/reset_typecast – Control the global typecast functions	Y	-
	Module constants	Y	-
	Errors raised by this module	Y	-
Connection – The connection object	close – close the connection	Y	-
	commit – commit the connection	Y	-
	rollback – roll back the connection	Y	-
	cursor – return a new cursor object	Y	-
	Attributes that are not part of the standard	Y	-
Cursor – The cursor object	description – details regarding the result columns	Y	-
	rowcount – number of rows of the result	Y	-
	close – close the cursor	Y	-
	execute – execute a database operation	Y	-
	executemany – execute many similar database operations	Y	-
	callproc – Call a stored procedure	Y	-
	fetchone – fetch next row of the query result	Y	-
	fetchmany – fetch next set of rows of the query result	Y	-
	fetchall – fetch all rows of the query result	Y	-
	arraysize - the number of rows to fetch at a time	Y	-

PyGreSQL		Yes	Remarks
	Methods and attributes that are not part of the standard	Y	-
Type – Type objects and	Type constructors	Y	-
constructors	Type objects	Y	-

# Using the Third-Party Function Library PyGreSQL to Connect to a Cluster (Linux)

- Step 1 Log in to the Linux environment as user root.
- Step 2 Run the following command to create the python\_dws.py file: vi python\_dws.py

Copy and paste the following content to the python\_dws.py file:

```
#!/usr/bin/env python3
# _*_ encoding:utf-8 _*_
from __future__ import print_function
import pg
def create_table(connection):
  print("Begin to create table")
  try:
     connection.query("drop table if exists test;"
                 "create table test(id int, name text);")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
def insert_data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     connection.query("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     connection.guery("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     connection.query("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     print("Total number of rows updated :", result)
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
```

print(e)

```
else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete_data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("delete from test where id=3;")
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", result)
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1])
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else:
     print("Operation done successfully")
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = pg.DB(host='10.154.70.231',
              port=8000,
              dbname='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
              user='dbadmin',
              passwd='password') # Database user password
  except pg.InternalError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Alternatively, use the dbapi interface.

```
#!/usr/bin/python
# -*- coding: UTF-8 -*-
from __future__ import print_function
import pg
import pgdb
def create_table(connection):
    print("Begin to create table")
    try:
        cursor = connection.cursor()
        cursor.execute("drop table if exists test;"
```

```
"create table test(id int, name text);")
     connection.commit()
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
     cursor.close()
def insert_data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
     connection.commit()
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
     cursor.close()
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows updated :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete_data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("delete from test where id=3;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
```

```
except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else.
     print("Operation done successfully")
     cursor.close()
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = pgdb.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
                          port='8000',
                          database='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
                          user='dbadmin',
                          password='password') # Database user password
  except pg.InternalError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update_data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Step 3 Change the public network address, cluster port number, database name, database username, and database password in the python\_dws.py file based on the actual cluster information.

#### **NOTE**

The PyGreSQL API does not provide the connection retry capability. You need to implement the retry processing in the service code.

**Step 4** Run the following command to connect to the cluster using the third-party function library PyGreSQL: python python\_dws.py

----End

# Using the Third-Party Function Library PyGreSQL to Connect to a Cluster (Windows)

- **Step 1** In the Windows operating system, click the **Start** button, enter **cmd** in the search box, and click **cmd.exe** in the result list to open the command-line interface (CLI).
- **Step 2** In the CLI, run the following command to create the **python\_dws.py** file: type nul> python\_dws.py

Copy and paste the following content to the **python\_dws.py** file:

#!/usr/bin/env python3
# \_\*\_ encoding:utf-8 \_\*\_
from \_\_future\_\_ import print\_function
import pg

```
def create_table(connection):
  print("Begin to create table")
  try:
     connection.query("drop table if exists test;"
                  "create table test(id int, name text);")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
def insert data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     connection.query("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     connection.query("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     connection.query("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     print("Total number of rows updated :", result)
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete_data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("delete from test where id=3;")
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", result)
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     result = connection.query("select * from test order by 1;")
     rows = result.getresult()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1])
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else:
     print("Operation done successfully")
```

```
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = pg.DB(host='10.154.70.231',
             port=8000,
              dbname='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
              user='dbadmin',
              passwd='password') # Database user password
  except pg.InternalError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update_data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Alternatively, use the dbapi interface.

```
#!/usr/bin/python
# -*- coding: UTF-8 -*-
from __future__ import print_function
import pg
import pgdb
def create_table(connection):
  print("Begin to create table")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("drop table if exists test;"
               "create table test(id int, name text);")
     connection.commit()
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Table created successfully")
     cursor.close()
def insert_data(connection):
  print("Begin to insert data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(1,'number1');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(2,'number2');")
     cursor.execute("insert into test values(3,'number3');")
     connection.commit()
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("Insert data successfully")
     cursor.close()
def update_data(connection):
  print("Begin to update data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("update test set name = 'numberupdated' where id=1;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows updated :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
```

rows = cursor.fetchall()

```
for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Update, Operation done successfully")
def delete_data(connection):
  print("Begin to delete data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("delete from test where id=3;")
     connection.commit()
     print("Total number of rows deleted :", cursor.rowcount)
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
  else:
     print("After Delete, Operation done successfully")
def select_data(connection):
  print("Begin to select data")
  try:
     cursor = connection.cursor()
     cursor.execute("select * from test;")
     rows = cursor.fetchall()
     for row in rows:
        print("id = ", row[0])
        print("name = ", row[1], "\n")
  except pg.InternalError as e:
     print(e)
     print("select failed")
  else:
     print("Operation done successfully")
     cursor.close()
if __name__ == '__main__':
  try:
     conn = pgdb.connect(host='10.154.70.231',
                          port='8000',
                          database='gaussdb', # Database to be connected
                          user='dbadmin',
                          password='password') # Database user password
  except pg.InternalError as ex:
     print(ex)
     print("Connect database failed")
  else:
     print("Opened database successfully")
     create_table(conn)
     insert_data(conn)
     select_data(conn)
     update_data(conn)
     delete_data(conn)
     conn.close()
```

Step 3 Change the public network address, cluster port number, database name, database username, and database password in the python\_dws.py file based on the actual cluster information.

The PyGreSQL API does not provide the connection retry capability. You need to implement the retry processing in the service code.

conn = pgdb.connect(host='10.154.70.231', port='8000', database=**'gaussdb'**, # Database to be connected user='dbadmin', password='password') # Database user password

**Step 4** Run the following command to connect to the cluster using the third-party function library PyGreSQL:

python python\_dws.py

----End

# **5** Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Database and User

The default database **gaussdb** of GaussDB(DWS) is not used as the customer's service database. You can use multiple databases to ensure service isolation. When you first connect to **gaussdb** as the system administrator (**dbadmin**), it is important to plan the service databases, users, and roles based on the service requirements. This involves creating a service and transferring any existing upstream service data to GaussDB(DWS).

A role is a set of permissions. For details about the relationship between users and roles, see **Permissions Management** in the *Developer Guide*. You can create common roles, such as a role for database creation, before creating a user. Then, you can assign the created role to the user.

Users, roles, and permissions can be exported. For details, see **Exporting a User**, **Exporting User Permissions**, **Exporting Roles**, and **Exporting Role Permissions**.

# **Constraints and Limitations**

- Avoid having all business operations run under a single database user. Instead, plan different database users according to the business modules.
- For better access control of different business modules, it is better to use multiple users and permissions instead of depending on the system administrator user to run business operations.
- For more information about development and design specifications, see **Development and Design Proposal**.

# Creating a Database

You can use the DDL syntax or SQL editor to create a table.

• DDL syntax: For details about the syntax, see "CREATE DATABASE".

# Creating a Role

Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.

- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management**.
- **Step 4** Click the **Roles** tab and click **Create Role**. The role creation page is displayed.
- **Step 5** Configure role information. The parameters are described as follows:

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Role Name	The value must start with a letter and can contain a maximum of 63 characters, including letters, digits, and underscores (_).	DWS-demo
Expires	Expiration time of the role permissions.	-
System Administrator	Whether the role has the system administrator rights.	-
Create Database	Whether the role has the permission to create databases.	-
Create Role	Whether the role has the permission to create users and roles.	-
Inherit Permissions	Whether the role inherits the permissions from its role group. By default, this function is enabled and it is best to keep it that way.	-

**Table 5-1** Parameters for configuring role information

- **Step 6** Confirm the settings and click **Next**.
- **Step 7** Configure the permissions of the role.

Click **Add** to add a permission configuration. Select the database object type and the corresponding objects. Then, select permissions. For details about permission definitions, see "DCL Syntax" > "GRANT" in **GaussDB(DWS) SQL Overview**.

**Step 8** After the authorization is complete, click **Create**.

----End

## **Creating a Database User**

You can use the DDL syntax or create a table on the GaussDB(DWS) console. For details about the DDL syntax, see "CREATE USER".

- If the current console does not support this feature, contact technical support.
- After a cluster is created, the users or roles created with it cannot be modified.
- Before using this function, ensure that the cluster is available.
- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management**.
- **Step 4** On the **Users** page, click **Create User**.
- **Step 5** Set the parameters on the **Configure Basic Settings** page.

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Username	The value must start with a letter and can contain a maximum of 63 characters, including letters, digits, and underscores (_).	DWS-demo
Password	Enter a value that is 12 to 32 characters long and can contain letters, digits, underscores (_), and special characters. <b>NOTE</b> Your password must contain a minimum of three of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters (~!?,.:;_(){} []/<>@#%^&*+ \=-)	-
Maximum Connections	Maximum number of connections between the user and the database. The value <b>-1</b> indicates that the number of connections is not limited.	-1
Expires	Expiration time of the user's permissions.	-
System Administrato r	Whether the user is a system administrator.	-
Create Database	Whether the user has the permission to create databases.	-
Create Role	Whether the user has the permission to create users and roles.	-

Table 5-2 Parameters on the	Configure Basic	Settings page
-----------------------------	-----------------	---------------

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Inherit Permissions	Whether the user inherits permissions from its user group. By default, this function is enabled and it is best to keep it that way.	-

- **Step 6** Confirm the settings and click **Next**.
- **Step 7** On the **Configure Roles** page, select the role to be assigned to the user and click **Next**.
- **Step 8** Configure permissions not included in the roles of the user.

Click **Add** to add a permission configuration. Select the database object type and corresponding database object, and select the permission to complete assignment. For details about permission definitions, see "DCL Syntax" > "GRANT" in **GaussDB(DWS) SQL Overview**.

**Step 9** After the authorization is complete, click **Create**.

----End

#### Modifying a User

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose User Management.
- **Step 4** In the user list, select a user and click **Modify**. The page for modifying user details is displayed.
- **Step 5** Modify the user information. For details, see **Table 5-2**. After confirming that the information is correct, click **Next**.
- **Step 6** Select the role to be granted to the user and click **Next**.
- **Step 7** After selecting a permission type, you can click **Edit** in the **Operation** column and click **Modify** in the **Permission** column to add or remove a permission.
- **Step 8** Confirm the permissions. Click **Save**.

----End

## **Deleting a User**

#### Prerequisites

To prevent any problems with deleting a user, check for dependencies between database objects (such as tables) beforehand. If there are any dependencies, delete them first before proceeding with the user deletion.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose User Management.
- **Step 4** Select a user from the user list and click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If you select **Forcibly delete and remove dependencies**, tables and other database objects under the current user will be transferred to the administrator account.
- Step 5 Click OK.

----End

#### **Exporting a User**

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management**.
- **Step 4** Click **Export** in the upper part of the user list and select the number of records to be exported to export the user list.

Figure 5-1 Exporting a user

Exporting	Users		×
Start position	0	Exported Data Volume	1,000
		Cancel	Export

**Step 5** Confirm the configurations and click **Export**.

----End

#### **Exporting User Permissions**

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose User Management.
- **Step 4** Select a user from the user list and click **Export Permissions** to export the user permission list.

#### Figure 5-2 Exporting permissions

Users Roles Access	External Identity Sources			
Create User Export				
(C), Salicid a properly or enter a largeered.				00
User $\Theta$	Description $\Theta$	Maximum Connections 🖯	User Type 😣	Operation
dbədmin	-	4	-	Modily Export Permissions Delete
test		4	-	Nodly Export Permissions Delete

----End

#### Modifying a Role

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose User Management.
- **Step 4** In the role list, select a user and click **Modify**. The page for modifying role details is displayed.
- **Step 5** Modify the role information. For the parameter description, see **Table 5-1**.
- **Step 6** Confirm the settings and click **Next**.
- Step 7 Configure permissions. Select a permission type as required, click Edit in the Operation column, and click Modify in the Permission column to add or remove permissions.
- **Step 8** Confirm the permissions. Click **Save**.

----End

#### Deleting a Role

#### Prerequisites

To prevent any problems with deleting a role, check for dependencies such as database objects beforehand. If there are any dependencies, delete them first before proceeding with the role deletion.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management**.

- **Step 4** Select a role from the role list and click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
- **Step 5** Click **OK** to delete the role.

#### **Exporting Roles**

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management** and click **Roles** to switch to the role list page.
- **Step 4** Click **Export** in the upper part of the role list and select the number of roles to be exported.

Figure 5-3 Exporting roles

Exporting	Roles		×
Start position	0	Exported Data Volume	1,000
		Cancel	Export

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **Export**.

----End

#### **Exporting Role Permissions**

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The cluster information page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **User Management** and click **Roles** to switch to the role list page.
- **Step 4** Select a user from the role list, click **Export Permissions**, and select the number of records to be exported.

#### Figure 5-4 Exporting role permissions

Users Rokes Access External Identity Sources				
Create Role Export				
C. Select a preperty or enter a keyword.				00
Rote O	Description 0	Maximum Connections ()	Operation	
gs_role_analyze_any		4	Modify Export Permissions Detele	
gs_role_block		4	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
91_1000_1004_141_15255		4	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
gs_role_reduction		- A	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
gs_role_signal_backand		4	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
ps_role_sqt_management		a	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
gs_role_vecum_env		-1	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
4_15475448		4	Modify Export Permissions Devide	
3_744e#3ec		- A	Modify Export Permissions Delete	
Total Recents: 9 10 v (1)				

----End

# **6** Migrating Service Data to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 6.1 Migrating Data to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Using GDS-Kafka

# 6.1.1 Overview

GaussDB(DWS) helps you migrate data from multiple sources and integrate diverse data sources, quick and easy. Currently, data can be migrated from Kafka, MySQL, Oracle, and IoT to GaussDB(DWS).

#### 

- This feature is supported only in 8.2.0 or later.
- Data cannot be migrated from one GaussDB(DWS) database to another due to the limitations of the data source being used.

#### **Supported Data Sources**

Source Data Source	Destination Data Source	Description
Kafka	GaussDB(DWS)	-
MySQL	GaussDB(DWS)	-
Oracle	GaussDB(DWS)	-
IOT	GaussDB(DWS)	-

# 6.1.2 Managing Instances

#### Overview

Data migration provides independent clusters for secure and reliable data migration. Clusters are isolated from each other and cannot access each other. With instance management, you can easily create and manage clusters by purchasing GDS-Kafka instances. GDS-Kafka consumes and caches data from Kafka. If the data cache time or size reaches a preconfigured threshold, GDS-Kafka will copy the data to a GaussDB(DWS) temporary table, and then insert or update data in the temporary table.

- The format of data generated by the Kafka message producer is specified by the kafka.source.event.type parameter. For details, see Message Formats Supported by GDS-Kafka.
- In GDS-Kafka, you can directly insert data for tables without primary keys, or update data by merging. Direct insert can achieve better performance, because it does not involve update operations. Determine your update mode based on the target table type in GaussDB(DWS). The data import mode is determined by the **app.insert.directly** parameter and whether a primary key exists. For details, see GDS-Kafka Data Import Modes.

#### D NOTE

- GDS-kafka only allows lowercase target table and column names.
- GDS-Kafka deletes historical data based on **pos** in the extended field. If imported data involves the delete operation, the extended field must be used.

#### Purchasing a GDS-Kafka Instance

To use the data migration feature, you need to purchase a GDS-kafka instance (cluster). Cluster instances provide secure and reliable data migration services. Clusters are isolated from each other.

#### Constraints

- Currently, only standalone clusters are supported.
- Only the pay-per-use billing mode is supported.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Instances**.
- **Step 3** In the upper right corner of the page, click **Buy GDS-Kafka Instance**. Configure cluster parameters.

Parameter	Description	Example Value
CPU Architecture	The following CPU architectures can be selected:	x86
	• x86	
	• Kunpeng	
	NOTE The x86 and Kunpeng architectures differ only in their underlying structure, which is not sensible to the application layer. Both architectures use the same SQL syntax. If you need to create a cluster and find that x86 servers are not enough, you can opt for the Kunpeng architecture.	
Flavor	Select a node flavor.	-
Capacity	Storage capacity of a node.	-
Current Flavor	Current flavor of the cluster.	-
Name	Set the name of the data warehouse cluster.	-
	Enter 4 to 64 characters. Only case- insensitive letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_) are allowed. The value must start with a letter. Letters are not case-sensitive.	
Version	Version of the database instance installed in the cluster.	-
VPC	Specify a VPC to isolate the cluster's network.	-
	If you create a data warehouse cluster for the first time and have not configured the VPC, click <b>View VPC</b> . On the VPC management console that is displayed, create a VPC as needed.	
Subnet	Specify a VPC subnet.	-
	A subnet provides dedicated network resources that are isolated from other networks, improving network security.	
Security Group	Specify a VPC security group.	-
	A security group restricts access rules to enhance security when GaussDB(DWS) and other services access each other.	

#### Table 6-1 Parameter description

Parameter	Description	Example Value
EIP	Specify whether users can use a client to connect to a cluster's database over the Internet. The following methods are supported:	-
	• <b>Do not use</b> : Do not specify any EIPs here. If GaussDB(DWS) is used in the production environment, first bind it to ELB, and then bind it to an EIP on the ELB page.	
	• <b>Buy now</b> : Specify bandwidth for EIPs, and the system will automatically assign EIPs with dedicated bandwidth to clusters. You can use the EIPs to access the clusters over the Internet. The bandwidth name of an automatically assigned EIP starts with the cluster name.	
	• <b>Specify</b> : Specify an EIP to be bound to the cluster. If no available EIPs are displayed in the drop-down list, click <b>Create EIP</b> to go to the <b>Elastic IP</b> page and create an EIP as needed. The bandwidth can be customized.	
Enterprise Project	Select the enterprise project of the cluster. You can configure this parameter only when the Enterprise Project Management service is enabled. The default value is <b>default</b> .	default

**Step 4** If the configuration is correct, click **Buy Now**.

----End

#### **Viewing Instance Details**

On the instance details page, you can view the basic information and network information about the cluster.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Instances**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of an instance to go to the instance details page.

Figure 6-1 Viewing Instance Details

( Buseau into				
Details				
Job Management	Basic Information		Network	
	Name	gi-test-1826	VPC	vpo-dws123
	ID .	cac4ac66-b045-4664-a01158c4066d3511	Subnet	subnet-dws (192.168.0.0/24)
	Version	8.3.1.100	Security Group	gk-gk-test-1826-8000
	Status	O Available	Public Network IP Address	- Ø Brd EIP
	Task Information	-		
	Node Specifications	dvss2.gk:slarge   4 vCPUs   16 GB Memory   50 GB Common I/O	Differe before a ferr	
	Enterprise Project	default.	Comp Provident	
			Billing Mode	Pay-per-use
			Created	Apr 29, 2024 18:34:17 GMT+08:00

#### Message Formats Supported by GDS-Kafka

#### Table 6-2 Message formats supported by GDS-Kafka

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
cdc.drs.avro	Internal format of Huawei Cloud DRS. DRS generates data in the avro format used by Kafka. GDS-Kafka can directly interconnect with DRS to parse and import the data.	None

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
drs.cdc	To use the avro format for <b>drs.cdc</b> , specify the Maven dependency of GDS-Kafka-common and GDS-Kafka- source in the upstream programs of Kafka, and then create and fill in the <b>Record</b> object. A <b>Record</b> object represents a table record. It will be serialized into a <b>byte[]</b> array, produced and sent to Kafka, and used by the downstream GDS-Kafka. In the following example, the target table is the <b>person</b> table in the <b>public</b> schema. The <b>person</b> table consists of the <b>id</b> , <b>name</b> , and <b>age</b> fields. The <b>op_type</b> is <b>U</b> , which indicates an update operation. This example changes the <b>name</b> field from <b>a</b> to <b>b</b> in the record with the ID <b>0</b> , and changes the value of the <b>age</b> field from <b>18</b> to <b>20</b> . Record record = new Record(); // Set the schema and table name of the target table. record.setTableName("public.person"); // Set the field list. List <field> fields = new ArrayList&lt;&gt;(); fields.add(new Field("name", 1)); fields.add(new Field("name", 1)); fields.add(new Field("age", 2)); record.setFields(fields); // Set the field value list before the table record is updated. List<object> before = new ArrayList&lt;&gt;(); before.add(new Integer(0, "0")); before.add(new Integer(0, "18")); record.setBeforeImages(before); // Set the field value list after the table record is updated. List<object> after = new ArrayList&lt;&gt;(); after.add(new Integer(0, "20")); after.add(new Integer(0,</object></object></field>	<ul> <li>Standard avro format:</li> <li>The tableName field is used to describe the target table and schema names that the current record belongs to. [Mandatory]</li> <li>The operation field is used to describe the operation type of the current record. I indicates insert, U indicates update, and D indicates deletion. [Mandatory]</li> <li>updateTimesta mp indicates the time when an operation is performed on the source end. [Optional]</li> <li>The beforeImages list describes the information before the current record is updated or deleted. The fields in the before body correspond to those in the target table. [Mandatory for U/D]</li> <li>The afterImages list describes the updated or deleted or updated or upda</li></ul>

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
		newly inserted information of the current record. [Mandatory for U/D]
		<ul> <li>The fields list describes the field list of the current table record. The index values of the fields must be in the same sequence as those in beforeImage and afterImage. [Mandatory]</li> </ul>

cdc.jsonIn the following example, the target table is the <b>person</b> table in the <b>public</b> schema. The <b>person</b> table consists of the <b>id</b> , <b>name</b> , and <b>age</b> fields. The on type is II which indicates anStandard JSON format: • The <b>table</b> field describes the
<ul> <li>a update oper is 0, winch indicates and update oper is 0, winch is 0, and the age field from 18 to 20.</li> <li>a tradet "indicates and it is 0, the operation is 0</li></ul>

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
		<ul> <li>The after object list describes the update or newly inserted information of the current record. [Mandatory for U/D]</li> </ul>
industrial.iot.json	{ "beader": {	loT data format:
	<pre>"leader : { "thing_id":"a0001", "instance_id":"1", "thing_model_name":"computer", "timestamp":"1668426344" }, "body": { "status":"Normal", "temperature":"10", "working_time":"10000" }, }</pre>	<ul> <li>thing_model_n ame in header indicates the table name. [Mandatory]</li> <li>The values of thing_id, instance_id, and timestamp in header and the content in the body comprise the fields of the current record.</li> <li>IoT data is time series data and does not involve update or deletion. Only insert operations are involved.</li> </ul>

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
industrial.iot.recu rsion.json	<pre>{     "header": {     "header": {     "thing_id":"a0001",     "instance_id":"1",     "thing_model_name":"computer",     "timestamp":"1668426344"     },     "body": {     "status":"Normal",     "temperature":"10",     "property":{         "key1":"1",         "key2":2     },     "working_time":"10000"     },     } }</pre>	<ul> <li>loT data format:</li> <li>thing_model_n ame in header indicates the table name. [Mandatory]</li> <li>The values of thing_id, instance_id, and timestamp in header and the content in the body comprise the fields of the current record.</li> <li>IoT data is time series data and does not involve update or deletion. Only insert operations are</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>In this data format, the key and value of <b>body</b> are added to the <b>property</b> and <b>value</b> fields in the new format to generate multiple pieces of new data. In this way, rows are converted to columns.</li> </ul>

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
industrial.iot.eve nt.json.independe nt.table	{     "event_id":"1",     "event_name":"test",     "start_time":"1970-1-1T00:00:00.000Z",     "end_time":"1970-1-1T00:00:00.000Z",     "fields":{         "field1":"value1",         "field2":2         }	<ul> <li>loT event stream data format:</li> <li>event_name indicates a table name. [Mandatory]</li> </ul>
	}	<ul> <li>event_id, start_time, end_time, and fields comprise the field content of a record. [Mandatory]</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>IoT event stream data is time series data and does not involve update or deletion. Only insert operations are involved.</li> </ul>

Kafka Source Event Type	Format	Description
industrial.iot.json. multi.events	{ "event_id":"1", "event_name":"test",	loT event stream data format:
	"start_time":"1970-1-1T00:00:00.000Z", "end_time":"1970-1-1T00:00:00.000Z", "fields":{ "field1":"value1", "field2":2, "field2":{	• event_name indicates a table name. [Mandatory]
	"key1":"1", "key2":2 } }	<ul> <li>event_id, start_time, end_time, and fields comprise the field content of a record. [Mandatory]</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>IoT event stream data is time series data and does not involve update or deletion. Only insert operations are involved.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>In this data format, the key and value of fields are added to the field_name and field_value fields in the new format to generate multiple pieces of new data. In this way, rows are converted to columns.</li> </ul>

#### GDS-Kafka Import Modes

To import GDS-Kafka data to the database, copy the data to a temporary table, and then merge or insert the data. The following table describes their usage and scenarios.

Operatio n	Direct Insertion	Primary Key Table	Import Mode
insert	<b>true</b> (only for tables without primary keys)	No	Use <b>INSERT SELECT</b> to write data from the temporary table to the target table.
	false	Yes	Merge data from the temporary table to the target table based on the primary key.
		No	Use <b>INSERT SELECT</b> to write data from the temporary table to the target table.
delete	<b>true</b> (only for tables without primary keys)	No	Use <b>INSERT SELECT</b> to write data from the temporary table to the target table.
	false NOTE You can mark deletion by configuring the <b>app.del.flag</b> parameter. The flag of a deleted record will be set to <b>1</b> .	Yes	<ul> <li>If the delflag field is set, merge will be performed based on the primary key. If a matched primary key is found, and the value of pos in the target table is smaller than that in the temporary table, the delflag field will be set to 1. Otherwise, a new record will be inserted.</li> <li>If the delflag field is not set, a matched primary key is found, and the value of pos in the target table is smaller than that in the temporary table, the delflag field is not set, a matched primary key is found, and the value of pos in the target table is smaller than that in the temporary table, the record will be deleted from the target table.</li> </ul>

Table 6-3 GDS-Kafka import modes

Operatio n	Direct Insertion	Primary Key Table	Import Mode
		No	<ul> <li>If the delflag field is set, all the fields in the temporary table will be used to match and merge with the target table. If a matched record is found, and the value of pos in the target table is smaller than that in the temporary table, the delflag field will be set to 1. Otherwise, a new record will be inserted.</li> <li>If the delflag field is not set, all the fields in the temporary</li> </ul>
			table will be used to match the target table. If a matched record is found, and the value of <b>pos</b> in the target table is smaller than that in the temporary table, the matched record will be deleted from the target table.
update	<b>true</b> (only for tables without primary keys)	No	Use <b>INSERT SELECT</b> to write data from the temporary table to the target table.
	false <b>NOTE</b> The update	Yes	Equivalent to the insert+delete operation on a table with a primary key.
	The message in before or beforeImage is processed as a delete operation, and the message in after or afterImage is processed as an insert operation. Then, the message is saved to the database based on the insert and delete operations.	No	Equivalent to the insert+delete operation on a table without a primary key.

# 6.1.3 Managing Connections

#### Description

Before creating a data migration task, you need to create a connection, so that the cluster can read and write the data source. A migration job requires a source

connection and a destination connection. Data sources that support exporting are used as source connections and data sources that support importing are used as destination connections.

The connection parameters you can configure vary according to the data source. This section describes how to create these connections.

#### Prerequisites

- A GDS-kafka cluster has been created.
- The GDS-kafka cluster can communicate with the destination data source.
  - If the destination data source is an on-premises database, you need the Internet or Direct Connect. If the Internet is used for communication, ensure that an EIP has been bound to the GDS-kafka cluster, the security group of GDS-kafka allows outbound traffic from the host where the offcloud data source is located, the host where the data source is located can access the Internet, and the connection port has been enabled in the firewall rules.
  - If the destination data source is a cloud service, the following requirements must be met for network interconnection:
    - If the GDS-kafka cluster and the cloud service are in different regions, the Internet or a Direct Connect is required for enabling communication between the CDM cluster and the cloud service. If the Internet is used for communication, ensure that an EIP has been bound to the GDS-kafka cluster, the host where the data source is located can access the Internet, and the port has been enabled in the firewall rules.
    - If the GDS-kafka cluster and the cloud service are in the same region, VPC, subnet, and security group, they can communicate with each other by default. If they are in the same VPC but in different subnets or security groups, you must configure routing rules and security group rules.
    - The cloud service instance and the cluster belong to the same enterprise project. If they do not, you can modify the enterprise project of the workspace.
- You have obtained the URL, account, and password for accessing the destination data source. The account is granted with the read and write permissions on the data source.

#### Creating a Connection

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Connections**.
- Step 3 Click Create Connection.
- **Step 4** Configure connection parameters. For more information, see **Connection parameters**.

	leedon parameters	•	
Protocol	Parameter	Mandatory	Description
Kafka	Connection Name	Yes	Connection name, which can be customized.
			Only letters, numbers, underscores (_), and hyphens (-) are allowed.
	Туре	Yes	Currently, MRS Kafka, IoT Kafka, DMS Kafka, and Default Kafka are supported. Default Kafka is an open- source Kafka.
	Service	Yes	Kafka connection address.
	Address		Format: <i>Domain name</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number or IP address</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number</i>
	Topics	Yes	List of Kafka topics, which are separated by commas (,).
	Ciphertext Access	No	This function must be enabled during Kafka authentication. The SASL_SSL and SASL_PLAINTEXT protocols are supported.
	User	No	Username for connecting to Kafka
	Password	No	Password for connecting to Kafka.
	SSL Authenticatio n	No	Whether the SSL protocol is supported.
	Certificate	No	SSL certificate in binary JKS format.
	Certificate Password	No	Certificate encryption password.

 Table 6-4 Connection parameters

Protocol	Parameter	Mandatory	Description
	Host Configuration	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. When you connect to MRS-Kafka in security mode, you need to configure the host file of the VM where Gds-Kafka resides. Therefore, you need to upload the host file to be modified. The file format can only be TXT. The file content is as follows: 192.168.4.111 node-master1JuQr.mrs- yd8z.com 192.168.4.204 node- master3mgqy.mrs-yd8z.com 192.168.4.221 node- master2Ktgg.mrs-yd8z.com The information on the left is the IP address of the Kafka broker. If MRS-Kafka and GDS-Kafka are not in the same VPC, replace the IP address with a public IP address. The information on the right is the host name of the broker. You can log in to FusionInsightManage and access the Kafka cluster to obtain the host name corresponding to the broker instance.
	Security mode	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. When the security mode is enabled, Kerberos authentication is required.
	Krb5 File	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. When the security mode is enabled, you need to upload the krb5 file. This file is the authentication credential of the machine- machine account applied for on FusionInsight Manager of MRS. <b>NOTE</b> If MRS-Kafka and GDS-Kafka are not in the same VPC, replace the internal IP address of the broker in the file with the public IP address.

Protocol	Parameter	Mandatory	Description
	Keytab File	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. When the security mode is enabled, you need to upload the Keytab file. This file is the authentication credential of the machine- machine account applied for on FusionInsight Manager of MRS.
	Account	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. It is a machine- machine account applied for on FusionInsight Manager of MRS.
	SSL	No	MRS-Kafka configuration parameter. When SSL is enabled, you need to upload the SSL certificate and key.
	Authenticatio n Mechanism	No	DMS-Kafka configuration parameter. It indicates the security authentication protocol.
MySQL	Connection Name	Yes	Connection name, which can be customized. Only letters, numbers, underscores (_), and hyphens (-) are allowed.
	Service Address	Yes	MySQL connection address. Format: <i>Domain name</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number or IP address</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number</i>
	User	Yes	Username for logging in to the database.
	Password	Yes	Password used to log in to the database.
	Database	Yes	MySQL database name.
Oracle	Connection Name	Yes	Connection name, which can be customized. Only letters, numbers, underscores (_), and hyphens (-) are allowed.

Protocol	Parameter	Mandatory	Description
	Service Address	Yes	Oracle connection address. Format: <i>Domain name</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number or IP address</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number</i>
	User	Yes	Username for logging in to the database.
	Password	Yes	Password used to log in to the database.
	Database	Yes	Oracle database name.
	Schema	Yes	Schema name. You can configure one or more schema names and use commas (,) to separate them.
IoT	Service Address	Yes	Address of the iot-edge-node page. Format: domain name or IP address
	User	Yes	Account for logging in to the IoT platform.
	Password	Yes	Password for logging in to the IoT platform.
DWS	Connection Name	Yes	Connection name, which can be customized. Only letters, numbers, underscores (_), and hyphens (-) are allowed.
	Service Address	Yes	GaussDB(DWS) connection address. Format: <i>Domain name</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number or IP address</i> + <i>Port</i> <i>number</i> , for example, <b>192.168.0.10:8000</b> .
	User	Yes	Username for logging in to the database.
	Password	Yes	Password used to log in to the database.
	Database	Yes	GaussDB(DWS) database name.

Protocol	Protocol Parameter		Description
	Schema	Yes	Name of a schema in the GaussDB(DWS) database.

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

#### Modifying a Connection

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Connections**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a connection, click **Modify**.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box for modifying connection configurations, modify the connection configuration based on the rules.
- **Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

#### **Deleting a Connection**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Connections**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a connection, click **Delete**.
- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.

----End

### 6.1.4 Managing Table Mappings

#### **Mapping Overview**

Before creating a job, you need to create a mapping to map the table structures of the source and destination databases, facilitating data migration between databases.

#### Creating a Table Mapping

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data > Data Integration > Table Mappings**.

#### Step 3 Click Create Table Mapping.

Create Table Mapp	ping				>
Mapping Jobs					
★ Table Mapping Name					
		Q			Q
Source Table	Target Table	Operation	Source Column	Destination Column	Operation
	+			+	
		ОК	Cancel		

#### **Step 4** Configure parameters.

- 1. Click in the list on the left. Configure **Table Mapping Name**, **Source Table**, and **Target Table**.
- 2. Click in the list on the right and configure the parameters.

**NOTE** 

If no column mappings are specified in the list on the right, all the columns with the same name will be mapped with by default.

Step 5 Confirm the information and click OK.

----End

#### Modifying a Table Mapping

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data > Data Integration > Table Mappings**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a table mapping, click **Modify**.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box for modifying table mapping configurations, modify the table mapping configuration based on the rules.
- **Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

#### Checking a Table Mapping

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data > Data Integration > Table Mappings**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a table mapping, click **Modify**.
- **Step 4** In the **Modify Table Mapping** dialog box, click **Jobs** to view the bound jobs. ----**End**

#### **Deleting a Table Mapping**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data > Data Integration > Table Mappings**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a table mapping, click **Delete**.
- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.

----End

#### 6.1.5 Managing Jobs

After creating a cluster instance, you can customize a job, enable a job, and migrate data.

You can create jobs to migrate data or automatically create tables.

- Data migration: Data is migrated from Kafka to GaussDB(DWS).
- Automatic table creation: Tables and fields in the source database are synchronized to GaussDB(DWS), but data is not migrated.

#### **Creating a Job**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Data > Data Integration > Instances.
- **Step 3** Click the name of an instance to go to the details page.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, click **Manage Job**.
- **Step 5** Click **Data Migration** or **Create Table**. (By default, the **Kafka Connection** parameter cannot be configured if you click **Create Table**.)
- **Step 6** Enter the job name, configure **Kafka Connection**, **DWS Cluster Connection**, and **Customized Table/Field Mapping**, and click **Test Connection**.
- Step 7 Check to ensure the connection passes the test, and click Next.
- **Step 8** Click **Next** and confirm the settings.
- Step 9 Click OK.

**Step 10** Return to the job list. In the **Operation** column of the job, click **Start**. For details, see **Starting a Job**.

----End

#### **Viewing Job Details**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data > Data Integration > Instances**.
- Step 3 Click the name of an instance to go to the details page.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, click **Manage Job**.
- **Step 5** Click a job name to go to the details page. Check the job information, including the connections, service parameters, and table/column mappings.

		DWS	✓	ata	Katalener	
DWSConnection				KafkaConnection		
Connection Name	Test_DWS			Connection Name Test_Kafka		
Connection Address		Usemame	dbadmin	Connection Address		
Database	gausadb	Schema Name	public	Topics drs2		
Service Parameters T	Table/Column Mapping					
						Enter a parameter name. Q
Parameter Group		Parameter	Value	Value Range	Mandatory	Description
		kafka source event type	cdc.drs.avro	odo drs. avro)odo jeon(odi jeon)yam jeon(industrial.iot jeon	Yes	Data format in Kafka. Options: cdc.drs.avro, cdc.json, cd
		kafka partition	-		No	Partitions consumed by each Kafka lopic. If this paramet
		kalka consumer group	-	-	No	User-defined consumer group name. Multiple names ar
		kerberos domain name			No	Kerberos service domain name. This parameter is mand
V-B		security protocol	PLAINTEXT	PLAINTEXTISASL_PLAINTEXT	No	Authentication protocol.
rusina connection group		sasi kerberos service name		-	No	Service name used by Gds-Kafka for Kerberos authenti
		java security ktb5 conf	-	-	No	Address of the ktbS configuration file
		principle	-	-	No	Kerberos usemarre used by Gds-Kafka for Kerberos au

----End

#### Starting a Job

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Data > Data Integration > Instances.
- **Step 3** Click the name of an instance to go to the details page.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, click **Manage Job**.
- **Step 5** In the **Operation** column of a job, click **Start**.
- **Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK** to start the job.

----End

#### Stopping a Job

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Data** > **Data Integration** > **Instances**.

- **Step 3** Click the name of an instance to go to the details page.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, click **Manage Job**.
- **Step 5** In the **Operation** column of a job, click **Stop**.
- **Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK** to stop the job.

#### Deleting a Job

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Data > Data Integration > Instances.
- **Step 3** Click the name of an instance to go to the details page.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, click **Manage Job**.
- **Step 5** In the **Operation** column of a job, click **Delete**.
- Step 6 Click OK.

----End

# 6.2 Data Source Management

## 6.2.1 MRS Data Sources

#### 6.2.1.1 MRS Data Source Usage Overview

#### **MRS Cluster Overview**

MRS is a big data cluster running based on the open-source Hadoop ecosystem. It provides the industry's latest cutting-edge storage and analysis capabilities of massive volumes of data, satisfying your data storage and processing requirements. For details about MRS, see the *MapReduce Service User Guide*.

You can use Hive/Spark (analysis cluster of MRS) to store massive volumes of service data. Hive/Spark data files are stored in HDFS. On GaussDB(DWS), you can connect a data warehouse cluster to MRS clusters, read data from HDFS files, and write the data to GaussDB(DWS) when the clusters are on the same network.

#### **NOTE**

Currently, storage-compute coupled data warehouses (standalone mode) cannot import data from MRS.

#### **Operation Process**

Perform the following operations to import data from MRS to a data warehouse cluster:

- 1. Prerequisites
  - a. Create an MRS cluster. For details, see **Buying a Custom Cluster**.
  - b. Create an HDFS foreign table for querying data from the MRS cluster over APIs of a foreign server.

For details, see **Importing Data from MRS to a Data Warehouse Cluster** in *Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Data Migration and Synchronization*.

- Multiple MRS data sources can exist on the same network, but one GaussDB(DWS) cluster can connect to only one MRS cluster at a time.
- 2. In the data warehouse cluster, create an MRS data source connection according to **Creating an MRS Data Source Connection**.
- 3. Import data from an MRS data source to the cluster. For details, see **Importing Data from MRS to a Cluster**.
- 4. (Optional) When the HDFS configuration of the MRS cluster changes, update the MRS data source configuration on GaussDB(DWS). For details, see **Updating the MRS Data Source Configuration**.

#### 6.2.1.2 Creating an MRS Data Source Connection

#### Scenario

Before GaussDB(DWS) reads data from MRS HDFS, you need to create an MRS data source connection that functions as a channel of transporting data warehouse cluster data and MRS cluster data.

#### Impact on the System

- You can create only one MRS data source connection in the data warehouse cluster at a time.
- When an MRS data source connection is being created, the system automatically adds inbound and outbound rules to security groups of the data warehouse cluster and MRS cluster. Nodes in the same subnet can be accessed.
- For the MRS cluster with Kerberos authentication enabled, the system automatically adds a **Machine-Machine** user that belongs to user group **supergroup** to the MRS cluster.

#### Prerequisites

- You have created a data warehouse cluster and recorded the VPC and subnet where the cluster resides.
- An MRS cluster of the analysis type has been created.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** Log in to the Huawei Cloud console.

**Step 2** Go to the MRS console and create an MRS cluster.

Configure parameters as required. For details, see "Cluster Operation Guide > Custom Creation of a Cluster" in the *MapReduce Service User Guide*.

- The VPC of the MRS cluster must be the same as that of the data warehouse cluster.
- Select an MRS cluster version. The following versions are supported:
  - For clusters of version 8.1.1.300 and later, MRS clusters support versions 1.6. \*, 1.7. \*, 1.8. \*, 1.9. \*, 2.0. \*, 3.0. \*, 3.1. \*, 3.2. \*, 3.3. \*, and later (\*indicates a number).
  - For clusters earlier than version 8.1.1.300, MRS clusters support versions 1.6.\*, 1.7.\*, 1.8.\*, 1.9.\*, and 2.0.\* (\*indicates a number).
- Select the Hadoop component.

If you already have a qualified MRS cluster, skip this step.

- **Step 3** Go to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 4** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 5** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 6** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Data Sources** > **MRS Data Sources**.
- Step 7 Click Create MRS Cluster Connection and configure parameters.

Parameter	Description
Data Source	GaussDB(DWS) database server name. It can contain 3 to 63 characters, including lowercase letters, numbers, and underscores (_), and must start with a lowercase letter.
Configuration Mode	The way in which the system obtains files. The options are as follows:
	• <b>MRS Account</b> : Configure the username and password of the Manager of the MRS cluster. The system will log in to the Manager and automatically download configuration and verification files. For more information, see <b>Table 6-6</b> .
	<ul> <li>File upload: Download the configuration file from the Manager of the MRS cluster and manually upload it. You can use this method for Kerberos authentication. For more information, see Table 6-7.</li> <li>NOTE</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If you select File upload, ensure that MRS can communicate with the GaussDB(DWS) cluster.</li> </ul>
Database	Database where the data source is located.
Description	Description of the connection.

 Table 6-5 MRS common connection parameters

Parameter	Description		
MRS Data Source	Select an MRS cluster that can be connected to GaussDB(DWS) from the drop-down list box. By default, the custom, hybrid, and analytical MRS clusters that are in the same VPC and subnet as the current GaussDB(DWS) cluster and available to the current user are displayed. After you select an MRS cluster, the system automatically displays whether Kerberos authentication is enabled for the selected cluster. Click <b>View MRS Cluster</b> to view its detailed information.		
	If the <b>MRS Data Source</b> drop-down list is empty, click <b>Create MRS Cluster</b> to create an MRS cluster.		
MRS Account	Account used when a GaussDB(DWS) cluster connects to an MRS cluster.		
Password	Password of the connection user. If you change the password, you need to create a connection again. <b>NOTICE</b> Ensure the account has been used for logging in to MRS Manager. If you use a new account, you will be asked to change your password when you first log in. In this case, the MRS data source will fail to be configured.		
Use a Machine- Machine Account	Creates a machine-machine account named dws in MRS and uses it for interaction with MRS. This account is in the <b>supergroup</b> group and has all permissions. If the switch is toggled off, the configured man-machine account will be used. Ensure this account has the permission to access data, or a message will be displayed during data source access, indicating the required file does not exist.		

Table 6-6	Parameters	of the	MRS	Account mode
-----------	------------	--------	-----	--------------

#### Table 6-7 Parameters of the File upload mode

Parameter	Description
Authentication Credential	Keytab file of a user A credential file downloaded from Manager of the MRS cluster. File name format: <b>Username_Timestamp_keytab.tar</b>
	<ul> <li>For MRS 2.x or earlier, choose System &gt; Manage User. In the Operation column of a user, choose More &gt; Download authentication credential.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>For MRS 3.x or later, choose System &gt; Permission &gt; User. In the Operation column of a user, choose More &gt; Download Authentication Credential.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description	
Client Profile	Client configuration files of HDFS, Hive, and hosts. When downloading the client, set <b>Select Client Type</b> to <b>Configuration Files Only</b> .	
	<ul> <li>For MRS 2.x or earlier, choose Services and click Download Client.</li> </ul>	
	• For MRS 3.x or later, choose Homepage. Click the More icon and choose Download Client.	

#### Step 8 Click OK to save the connection.

**Configuration Status** turns to **Creating**. You can view the connection that is successfully created in the MRS data source list and the connection status is **Available**.

#### **NOTE**

- In the **Operation** column, you can click **Update Configurations** to update **MRS Cluster Status** and **Configuration Status**. During configuration update, you cannot create a connection. The system checks whether the security group rule is correct. If the rule is incorrect, the system rectifies the fault. For details, see **Updating the MRS Data Source Configuration**.
- In the **Operation** column, you can click **Delete** to delete the unnecessary connection. When deleting a connection, you need to manually delete the security group rule.
- If the security group rules are not deleted, nodes in the data warehouse cluster can still communicate with nodes in the MRS cluster. If you have strict requirements on network security, manually delete the rules.

----End

#### 6.2.1.3 Updating the MRS Data Source Configuration

#### Scenario

For MRS, if the following parameter configurations of the HDFS cluster change, data may fail to be imported to the data warehouse cluster from the HDFS cluster. Before importing data using the HDFS cluster, you must update the MRS data source configuration.

#### Prerequisites

You have created an MRS data source connection for the data warehouse cluster.

#### Impact on the System

When you are updating an MRS data source connection, the data warehouse cluster will automatically restart and cannot provide services.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.

- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, click **MRS Data Sources**.
- **Step 3** In the MRS data source list, select the MRS data source that you want to update. In the **Operation** column, click **Update Configurations**.

**MRS Cluster Status** and **Configuration Status** of the current connection will be updated. During configuration update, you cannot create a connection. The system checks whether the security group rule is correct. If the rule is incorrect, the system rectifies the fault. The following table describes the parameters.

Parameter	Description
dfs.client.read.shortcircuit	Specifies whether to enable the local read function.
dfs.client.read.shortcircuit.skip.c hecksum	Specifies whether to skip data verification during the local read.
dfs.client.block.write.replace- datanode-on-failure.enable	Specifies whether to replace the location storing copies with the new node when data blocks fail to be written to HDFS.
dfs.encrypt.data.transfer	Specifies whether to enable data encryption. The value <b>true</b> indicates that the channels are encrypted. The channels are not encrypted by default.
	<ul> <li>NOTE</li> <li>This parameter is available only for clusters with</li> </ul>
	Kerberos authentication enabled.
	<ul> <li>This parameter is valid only when hadoop.rpc.protection is set to privacy.</li> </ul>
dfs.encrypt.data.transfer.algorit hm	Specifies the encryption and decryption algorithm for key transmission.
	This parameter is valid only when <b>dfs.encrypt.data.transfer</b> is set to <b>true</b> .
	The default value is <b>3des</b> , indicating that the 3DES algorithm is used for encryption.
dfs.encrypt.data.transfer.cipher.s uites	Specifies the encryption and decryption algorithm for the transmission of actually stored data.
	If this parameter is not specified, the cryptographic algorithm specified by <b>dfs.encrypt.data.transfer.algorithm</b> is used for data encryption. The default value is <b>AES/CTR/NoPadding</b> .
dfs.replication	Specifies the default number of data copies.
dfs.blocksiz	Specifies the default size of a data block.

#### Table 6-8 Parameter description

Parameter	Description		
hadoop.security.authentication	Specifies the security authentication mode.		
hadoop.rpc.protection	Specifies the RPC communication protection mode. Default value:		
	<ul> <li>Security mode (Kerberos authentication enabled): privacy</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Common mode (Kerberos authentication disabled): authentication</li> </ul>		
	NOTE		
	<ul> <li>authentication: indicates that only authentication is required.</li> </ul>		
	• <b>integrity</b> : indicates that authentication and consistency check need to be performed.		
	<ul> <li>privacy: indicates that authentication, consistency check, and encryption need to be performed.</li> </ul>		
dfs.domain.socket.path	Specifies the locally used <b>Domain socket</b> path.		

# 6.2.2 Managing OBS Data Sources

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to access data on OBS by using an agency. You can create a GaussDB(DWS) agency, grant the OBS OperateAccess or OBS Administrator permission to the agency, and bind the agency to an OBS data source you created. In this way, you can access data on OBS by using OBS foreign tables.

#### **NOTE**

- This feature is supported only in 8.2.0 or later.
- For the OBS data source of a cluster, only one of the creation, modification, and deletion operations can be performed at a time.

#### Creating an OBS Agency

#### Scenario

Before creating an OBS data source, create an agency that grants GaussDB(DWS) the OBS OperateAccess or OBS Administrator permission.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Click your account in the upper right corner of the page and choose **Identity and Access Management**.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Agency**. In the upper right corner, click **Create Agency**.

- Step 3 Select Cloud Service and set Cloud Service to DWS.
- **Step 4** Click **Next** to grant the OBS OperateAccess or OBS Administrator permission to the agency.
- **Step 5** Click **Next**. Select **All resources** or specific resources, confirm the information, and click **Submit**.

#### **Creating an OBS Data Source**

#### Prerequisites

An agency has been created to grant GaussDB(DWS) the OBS OperateAccess permission.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, choose **Data Sources** > **OBS Data Source**.
- Step 3 Click Create OBS Cluster Connection and configure parameters.

Parameter	Description	
Data Source Name	Name of the OBS data source connection to be created. You can assign a personalized value to this parameter.	
	The data source name is used as the server name specified in the statement for creating an OBS foreign table.	
OBS Agency	Agency with the OBS OperateAccess permission to be granted to GaussDB(DWS)	
Database	Database where the OBS data source connection is to be created	
Description	Description about the OBS data source connection	

 Table 6-9 OBS data source connection parameters

**Step 4** Confirm the settings and click **OK**. The creation takes about 10 seconds.

----End

#### Updating the OBS Data Source Configuration

#### Scenario

After an OBS data source connection is created, GaussDB(DWS) periodically updates the temporary agency information used by the data source. If the

automatic update fails for 24 hours, the data source connection will be unavailable. To solve this problem, manually update the information on the console.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, choose **Data Sources** > **OBS Data Source**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of an OBS data source, click **Update Configuration**.
- Step 4 Confirm the settings and click OK. The update takes about 10 seconds.

----End

#### Changing the OBS Data Source Agency

#### Scenario

You can change the agency bound to the OBS data source.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, choose **Data Sources** > **OBS Data Source**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a data source, click **Manage Agency**. In the dialog box that is displayed, select a new agency.
- **Step 4** Confirm the settings and click **OK**. The change takes about 10 seconds.

----End

#### **Deleting an OBS Data Source**

- **Step 1** On the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, choose **Data Sources** > **OBS Data Source**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of an OBS data source, click **Delete**.
- **Step 4** Confirm the settings and click **OK**. The deletion takes about 10 seconds.

----End

#### Using an OBS Data Source

GaussDB(DWS) uses foreign tables to access data on OBS. The **SERVER** parameters specified for accesses with and without an agency are different.

If you access OBS without an agency, the **SERVER** provided on the console contains parameters **access\_key** and **secret\_access\_key**, which are the AK and SK of the OBS access protocol, respectively.

If you access OBS with an agency, the **SERVER** provided on the console contains the **access\_key**, **secret\_access\_key**, and **security\_token** parameters, which are the temporary AK, temporary SK, and the **SecurityToken** value of the temporary security credential in IAM, respectively.

After the OBS agency and OBS data source are created, you can obtain the **SERVER** information on the console. Assume that the OBS data source name is **obs\_server**. The way users create and use foreign tables with an agency is the same as the way they do without an agency. For how to use the OBS data source, see **Importing Data from OBS**.

The following example shows how common user **jim** reads data from OBS through a foreign table.

- 1. Repeat the preceding steps to create an OBS data source named **obs\_server**.
- Connect to the database as system administrator dbadmin, create a common user, and grant the common user the permission to use OBS servers and OBS foreign tables. Replace **{Password}** with the actual password and **obs\_server** with the actual OBS data source name. CREATE USER jim PASSWORD '{Password}'; ALTER USER jim USEFT; GRANT USAGE ON FOREIGN SERVER obs\_server TO jim;
- 3. Connect to the database as common user **jim** and create an OBS foreign table **customer\_address** that does not contain partition columns.

In the following command, replace **obs\_server** with the name of the created OBS data source. Replace **/user/obs/region\_orc11\_64stripe1/** with the actual OBS directory for storing data files. **user** indicates the OBS bucket name. CREATE FOREIGN TABLE customer\_address

(			
ca_address_sk	integer	not null,	
ca_address_id	char(16)	not null,	
ca_street_number	char(10)	,	
ca_street_name	varchar(60)	,	
ca_street_type	char(15)	,	
ca_suite_number	char(10)	,	
ca_city	varchar(60)	,	
ca_county	varchar(30)	,	
ca_state	char(2)	,	
ca_zip	char(10)	,	
ca_country	varchar(20)	,	
ca_gmt_offset	decimal(36,33	),	
ca_location_type	char(20)		
)			
SERVER obs_server O	PTIONS (		
FOLDERNAME '/us	er/obs/region_orc1	1_64stripe1/',	
FORMAT 'ORC',			
ENCODING 'utf8',			
TOTALROWS '20'			
)			
DISTRIBUTE BY round	lrobin;		
Query data stored in OBS by using a foreign table			
SELECT COLINIT(*) EP	OM customer add	ress.	
count		1033,	

20 (1row)

4.
# GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Data Security and Encryption

# 7.1 Enabling Separation of Duties for GaussDB(DWS) Database Users

#### Scenario

By default, the administrator specified when you create a GaussDB(DWS) cluster is the database system administrator. The administrator can create other users and view the audit logs of the database. That is, separation of permissions is disabled.

To ensure cluster data security, GaussDB(DWS) supports separation of duties for clusters. Different types of users have different permissions.

For details about the default permissions mode and the separation of permissions mode, see **Separation of Permissions** in the *Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide*.

#### Impact on the System

- After you modified the security parameters and the modifications take effect, the cluster may be restarted, which makes the cluster unavailable temporarily.
- When a storage-compute decoupled cluster is created, a logical cluster is created by default. After the separation of duties is enabled, only the system administrator has the permission to create, modify, delete, and allocate logical clusters. Accessing a logical cluster requires permissions.

#### Prerequisites

To modify the cluster's security configuration, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The cluster status is **Available** or **Unbalanced**.
- The target cluster should not be undergoing any node additions, specification changes, configurations, upgrades, redistribution operations, or restarts.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. On the page that is displayed, click **Security Settings**.

By default, **Configuration Status** is **Synchronized**, which indicates that the latest database result is displayed.

**Step 4** On the **Security Settings** page, configure separation of permissions.

When separation of permissions is enabled, configure the username and password for **Security Administrator** and **Audit Administrator**. Then the system automatically creates these two users. You can use these two users to connect to the database and perform database-related operations. **By default, this function is disabled.** 

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Security Administrator	The username must meet the following requirements:	security_admin
	<ul> <li>Consists of lowercase letters, digits, or underscores.</li> </ul>	
	• Starts with a lowercase letter or an underscore.	
	• Contains 6 to 64 characters.	
	• The username cannot be a keyword of the GaussDB(DWS) database. For details about the keywords of the GaussDB(DWS) database, see Keyword in the Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide.	
Password	The password complexity requirements are as follows:	-
	• Contain 12 to 32 characters.	
	• Cannot be the username or the username spelled backwards.	
	<ul> <li>Contains at least three of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters (~!?,.:;_(){}[]/&lt;&gt;@#%^&amp;*+ \\=-)</li> </ul>	
	• Perform the weak password check on the passwords that you have created.	
Confirm Password	Enter the password of the security administrator again.	-

 Table 7-1
 Security parameters

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Audit Administrator	The username must meet the following requirements:	audit_admin
	<ul> <li>Consists of lowercase letters, digits, or underscores.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Starts with a lowercase letter or an underscore.</li> </ul>	
	Contains 6 to 64 characters.	
	• The username cannot be a keyword of the GaussDB(DWS) database. For details about the keywords of the GaussDB(DWS) database, see Keyword in the Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide.	
Password	The password complexity requirements are as follows:	-
	Contain 12 to 32 characters.	
	<ul> <li>Cannot be the username or the username spelled backwards.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Must contain at least 3 of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters ~!@#%^&amp;*()=+ [{}];:,&lt;.&gt;/?</li> </ul>	
	Passes the weak password check.	
Confirm Password	Enter the password of the audit administrator again.	-

#### Step 5 Click Apply.

- **Step 6** In the displayed **Save Configuration** dialog box, select or deselect **Restart the cluster** and click **Yes**.
  - If you select **Restart the cluster**, the system saves the settings on the **Security Settings** page and restarts the cluster immediately. After the cluster is restarted, the security settings take effect immediately.
  - If you do not select **Restart the cluster**, the system only saves the settings on the **Security Settings** page. Later, you need to manually restart the cluster for the security settings to take effect.

After the security settings are complete, **Configuration Status** can be one of the following on the **Security Settings** page:

- **Applying**: The system is saving the settings.
- **Synchronized**: The settings have been saved and taken effect.
- **Take effect after restart**: The settings have been saved but have not taken effect. Restart the cluster for the settings to take effect.

----End

# 7.2 Using KMS to Encrypt GaussDB(DWS) Clusters

## 7.2.1 Overview

#### **Encrypting GaussDB(DWS) Databases**

In GaussDB(DWS), you can enable database encryption for a cluster to protect static data. After you enable encryption, data of the cluster and its snapshots is encrypted. Encryption is an optional and immutable setting that can be configured during cluster creation. To encrypt an unencrypted cluster, you must export all data from the unencrypted cluster and import it into a new cluster that has database encryption enabled. GaussDB(DWS) encrypts data as it is written to the database, and automatically decrypts it when queried, returning the results to the user.

If encryption is required, enable it during cluster creation. Although encryption is an optional setting of GaussDB(DWS), you are advised to enable this setting for clusters to protect data.

#### NOTICE

- Only storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 and later support database encryption.
- The database encryption function cannot be disabled once it is enabled. For details, see **Encrypting the Database**. After a normal cluster is created, you can convert it to an encrypted cluster.
- After **Encrypt DataStore** is enabled, the key cannot be disabled, deleted, or frozen when being used. Otherwise, the cluster becomes abnormal and the database becomes unavailable.
- Snapshots created after the database encryption function is enabled cannot be restored using open APIs.

#### **Viewing Database Encryption Information**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Click the name of a cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the **Data Encryption Information** area on the cluster information page, view the database encryption information, as shown in **Table 7-2**.

Parameter	Description
Key Name	Indicates the database encryption key of the cluster when <b>Encrypt DataStore</b> is enabled.
Last Key Rotation Time	Indicates the time when the last encryption key is rotated when <b>Encrypt DataStore</b> is enabled.
Cryptograp hic	Indicates the encryption algorithm of the cluster when <b>Encrypt DataStore</b> is enabled.
Algorithm	Encryption algorithms include:
	<ul> <li>AES256 (general encryption algorithm, SM algorithms not supported)</li> </ul>
	SM4 (compatible with international algorithms)

#### Table 7-2 Data encryption information

#### **NOTE**

If database encryption is disabled by default during cluster creation, the encryption module is not displayed on the cluster details page.

----End

#### Encrypting GaussDB(DWS) Databases Using KMS

When you choose KMS to manage GaussDB(DWS) keys, a three-layer key management structure is adopted, including the cluster master key (CMK), cluster encryption key (CEK), and database encryption key (DEK).

- The CMK is used to encrypt the CEK and is stored in KMS.
- The CEK is used to encrypt the DEK. The CEK plaintext is stored in the data warehouse cluster's memory, and the ciphertext is stored in GaussDB(DWS).
- The DEK is used to encrypt database data. The DEK plaintext is stored in the data warehouse cluster's memory, and the ciphertext is stored in GaussDB(DWS).

The procedure of using the keys is as follows:

- 1. You choose a CMK.
- 2. GaussDB(DWS) randomly generates the CEK and DEK plaintext.
- 3. KMS uses the CMK you choose to encrypt the CEK plaintext and imports the encrypted CEK ciphertext to GaussDB(DWS).
- 4. GaussDB(DWS) uses the CEK plaintext to encrypt the DEK plaintext and saves the encrypted DEK ciphertext.
- 5. GaussDB(DWS) transfers the DEK plaintext to the cluster and loads it to the cluster's memory.

When the cluster is restarted, it automatically requests the DEK plaintext from GaussDB(DWS) through an API. GaussDB(DWS) loads the CEK and DEK ciphertext to the cluster's memory, invokes KMS to decrypt the CEK using the CMK, loads the

CEK to the memory, decrypts the DEK using the CEK plaintext, loads the DEK to the memory, and returns it to the cluster.

#### **Rotating Encryption Keys**

Encryption key rotation is used to update the ciphertext stored on GaussDB(DWS). On GaussDB(DWS), you can rotate the encrypted CEK of an encrypted cluster.

The procedure of rotating the keys is as follows:

- 1. The GaussDB(DWS) cluster starts key rotation.
- 2. GaussDB(DWS) decrypts the CEK ciphertext stored on GaussDB(DWS) based on the CMK to obtain the CEK plaintext.
- 3. Use the obtained CEK plaintext to decrypt the DEK ciphertext in GaussDB(DWS) to obtain the DEK plaintext.
- 4. GaussDB(DWS) randomly generates new CEK plaintext.
- 5. GaussDB(DWS) uses the new CEK plaintext to encrypt the DEK and saves the encrypted DEK ciphertext.
- 6. Use the CMK to encrypt the new CEK plaintext and import the encrypted CEK ciphertext to GaussDB(DWS).

You can plan the key rotation interval based on service requirements and data types. To improve data security, you are advised to periodically rotate the keys to prevent the keys from being cracked. Once you find that your keys may have been disclosed, rotate the keys in time.

#### **NOTE**

- When GaussDB(DWS) rotates the cluster's CEK, snapshots of the cluster do not need CEK rotation, because the CEK is not stored in snapshots. The CEK plaintext is stored in the GaussDB(DWS) cluster memory, and the ciphertext is stored in GaussDB(DWS).
- The DEK is not updated during key rotation, so data encryption and decryption are not affected.

### 7.2.2 Rotating Encryption Keys

If you have enabled the **Encrypt DataStore** function in **Advanced Settings** during cluster creation, you can rotate the encryption keys for the cluster after the cluster is created successfully. When a normal cluster is converted to an encrypted cluster, you can rotate the encryption key for the cluster. Each key rotation will update the CEK once. During the key rotation, the cluster is still in **Available** status.

#### Rotating Encryption Keys for GaussDB(DWS) Clusters

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the Data Encryption Information area, click Key Rotation.
- **Step 5** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Yes**.

----End

## 7.2.3 Converting an Ordinary Cluster to an Encrypted Cluster

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to convert an unencrypted cluster to an encrypted cluster when the cluster status is **Available** on the console. To ensure data security, converting a cluster to an encrypted cluster is an **irreversible high-risk operation** and will restart the cluster. As a result, services may be unavailable for a short period of time. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

#### **NOTE**

If the current console does not support this function, contact technical support..

#### Creating a KMS Agency

#### Scenario

Before converting a cluster to an encrypted cluster, you need to create an agency that grants the KMS Administrator permissions to GaussDB(DWS).

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Click your account in the upper right corner of the page and choose **Identity and Access Management**.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Agency**. In the upper right corner, click **Create Agency**.
- Step 3 Select Cloud Service and set Cloud Service to DWS.
- **Step 4** Click **Finish**. In the displayed dialog box, click **OK** to grant the **KMS Administrator** permission to the agency.
- **Step 5** Click **Next**. Select **All resources** or specific resources, confirm the information, and click **Submit**.

----End

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- Step 2 In the cluster list, locate the row that contains the target cluster and choose More > Convert to Encrypted Cluster in the Operation column.
- **Step 3** In the dialog box that is displayed, select the key source, key name, and encryption algorithm to convert the cluster to an encrypted cluster.
  - Method 1: Select a key name.
  - Method 2: Enter the key ID. Enter the key ID used for authorizing the current tenant..

When you grant permissions on the page, the authorized object must be an account instead of a user. The authorized operations must at least contain **Querying key details**, **Encrypting data**, and **Decrypting data**.

Parameter	Description
Key Source	You can select a key name from the key list or directly enter a key name.
Cryptographic Algorithm	<ul> <li>The encryption algorithms are as follows:</li> <li>AES256 (general encryption algorithm, SM algorithms not supported)</li> <li>SM4 (compatible with international algorithms)</li> </ul>

Table	7-3	Parameter	description
-------	-----	-----------	-------------

#### **NOTE**

- The database encryption function cannot be disabled once it is enabled.
- After **Encrypt DataStore** is enabled, the key cannot be disabled, deleted, or frozen when being used. Otherwise, the cluster becomes abnormal and the database becomes unavailable.
- Snapshots created after the database encryption function is enabled cannot be restored using open APIs.
- By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. IAM users under an account do not have the permission to query or create agencies by default. Contact a user with that permission and complete the authorization on the current page.
- **Step 4** After the conversion, you can click the cluster name to go to the **Cluster Details** page to view the cluster details. For details, see **Viewing Database Encryption Information**.

----End

# 7.3 Enabling Critical Operation Protection for the GaussDB(DWS) Console

#### Scenario

GaussDB(DWS) protects mission-critical operations. If you want to perform a mission-critical operation on the management console, you must enter a credential for identity verification. You can perform the operation only after your identity is verified. For account security, it is a good practice to enable operation protection. The setting will take effect for both the account and users under the account.

Currently, the following operations are supported: binding an EIP, scaling out a cluster, changing specifications, deleting a cluster, restarting a cluster, starting a cluster, stopping a cluster, adding or deleting a CN, upgrading a cluster, modifying parameters, deleting idle nodes, and enabling or disabling auto scaling.

#### **Enabling Critical Operation Protection**

Operation protection is disabled by default. To enable it, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Move the cursor to the username in the upper right corner of the page and click **Security Settings** from the drop-down list.
- **Step 3** On the **Security Settings** page, click the **Critical Operations** tab. Click **Enable** in the **Operation Protection** area.

#### Figure 7-1 Critical Operations

Security Settings ①	
Basic Information Critical Operations Login Authentication Policy Password Policy ACL	
Virtual MRA Device The virtual MRA device bound to your account authenticates conside logins. Download the HIMMECCODE and or an authenticator app on your mobile phone and bind it to your account.	Lunbound   Bind
Login Protection Login protection enhances the security of your account and cloud sentces.	Disabled   Enable
Operation Protection Operation protection adheeticates you and users created using your account by a virtual MEA device, SMS, or email before being allowed to perform critical console operations such as deleting an ECS or unbinding an ER Laam more	▲ Disabled   Enable
Access Key Management By default, this option is disabled; and all the users under your account can manage (onable, enable, disable, and delete) their own access keys. If you enable this option, only the administrator can manage access keys of users.	A Disabled

#### **Step 4** On the **Operation Protection** page, select **Enable** to enable operation protection.

#### **NOTE**

- When IAM users created using your account perform a critical operation, they will be prompted to choose a verification method from email, SMS, and virtual MFA device.
  - If a user is only associated with a mobile number, only SMS verification will be available.
  - If a user is only associated with an email address, only email verification will be available.
  - If the user has not bound an email address, a mobile number, or a virtual MFA device, the user needs to bind one to continue with the critical operation.
- Change your phone number or email address for verification in **My Account** on the management console.
- **Step 5** After operation protection is enabled, when you perform a mission-critical operation, the system will protect the operation.

For example, when you delete a cluster, a verification dialog box for missioncritical operation protection is displayed. You need to select a mode to perform verification. This helps avoid risks and losses caused by misoperations.

#### ----End

#### **Disabling Operation Protection**

To disable operation protection, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Move the cursor to the username in the upper right corner of the page and click **Security Settings** from the drop-down list.

# **Step 3** On the **Security Settings** page, click the **Critical Operations** tab. Click **Change** in the **Operation Protection** area.

#### Figure 7-2 Modifying operation protection settings

ecurity Settings 💿	
Basic Information Critical Operations Login Authentication Policy Password Policy ACL	
Virtual MFA Device The virtual MFA device bound to your account authenticates conside logins. Download the HAMPE CLOUD are or an authenticater app on your mobile phone and bind it to your account.	▲ Unbound   Bind
Login Protection Login protection enhances the security of your account and cloud services.	▲ Disabled   Enable
Operation Protection Operation protection authenticates you and users created using your account by a Vehual MFA device, SME, or email before being allowed to perform critical console operations such as deleting an ECS or unbinding an EIP Learn more	Change
Access Key Management By default, this option is disabled, and all the users under your account can manage consiste, enable, disable, and deletely their own access keys. If you enable this option, only the administrator can manage access keys of users.	▲ Disabled

Step 4 On the Operation Protection page, select Disable and click OK.

----End

# 8 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Management

# 8.1 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Details

Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation tree on the left, click **Dedicated Clusters > Clusters**. In the cluster list, locate the required cluster and click its name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.

#### Figure 8-1 Cluster details

Basic Information				Connection
Cluster	a	Cluster ID	eca54974-9057-439a-6712-365f1be7f0e5	Private Network Domain Name 🕥 avei 🕐 Modify
Cluster Status	O Available	Cluster Version	8.2.1.230	Private Network IP Address 192.168.0.169, 192.168.0.127
Parameter Configuration Status	Synchronized ()	Task Information		Public Network Domain Name 💿 - Create
Nodec	Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0	Enterprise Project	default	Public Network IP Address 🛞 - Edit
Node Flavor	dws2.km1.xlarge	Current Specifications	Coupled storage and compute   4 vCPUs   32 GB Memory   200 GB Common I/O	Initial Administrator doedmin
Logical Cluster		Cluster Description	- 0	Pot 8000
				Default Database gaussido
Time Zone 🕥	UTC+08:00 (Beijing, Chongeing, Hong Kong, Urumo) d			ELB Address - Associate ELB
Network				Storage/Backup Capacity
Region	CN North-Ulangab203	AZ	A23	Storage
VPC	spc lesting nodelete	Subret	subvet-2600 (192 168.0.0(24)	Common VO
Security Group	Modify			UsediAlocated 926/600 GB 154%
				Backup
Billing Information				Pree () 0/600 GB Paid 0 OB
Billing Mode	Pay-per-use	Created	Jan 13, 2025 16:19:53 GMT+08:00	Used Cold Data Capacity 0 B

On the **Cluster Information** page, you can view the following information:

- Basic Information: Table 8-1 lists the related parameters.
- Connection: Table 8-2 describes the parameters.
- **Network**: Table 8-3 lists the related parameters.
- Billing Information: Table 8-4 describes the parameters.
- Storage/Backup Capacity: Table 8-5 describes the parameters.
- **O&M Account**: Table 8-6 describes the related parameters.
- Data Encryption Information: Table 8-7 lists the related parameters.

#### D NOTE

You can view this module if you enable the data encryption function when creating a cluster.

Parameter	Description
Cluster Name	Cluster name specified when a cluster is created.
Cluster Status	Cluster running status. For details, see Cluster Status.
Parameter Configurati on Status	Parameter configuration status of a cluster.
Task Information	Cluster task status. For details, see <b>Cluster Task Information</b> .
Current Specificatio ns	Current node specifications.
Nodes	Number of nodes in the cluster.
Logical Clusters	You can enable it as required. The <b>Logical Clusters</b> menu item will be displayed after you enable it.
Cluster ID	ID of the cluster.
Cluster Version	Cluster version information.
Node Flavor	Node flavor of the cluster.
Enterprise Project	Enterprise project to which a cluster belongs. You can click the enterprise project name to view and edit it on the console of the Enterprise Project service.
Time Zone	The cluster time zone affects the node OS, log files, and data warehouse. You can change the time zone for the node OS and log files, but not for the data warehouse databases. To change the time zone of the data warehouse databases, use the GUC parameter <b>timezone</b> . For details, see <b>Modifying GUC</b> <b>Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster</b> .

#### Table 8-1 Basic information

	Table	8-2	Connection
--	-------	-----	------------

Parameter	Description
Private Network Domain Name	Domain name for accessing the cluster database through the internal network. The domain name corresponds to all CN IP addresses. The private network domain address is automatically generated when a cluster is created. NOTE
	<ul> <li>If the cluster name does not comply with the domain name standards, the prefix of the default access domain name will be adjusted accordingly.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Load balancing is not supported.</li> </ul>
	You can click <b>Modify</b> to change the private network domain name. The access domain name contains 4 to 63 characters, which consists of letters, digits, and hyphens (-), and must start with a letter.
	For details, see Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names.
Private Network IP Address	IP address for accessing the database in the cluster over the private network. NOTE
	<ul> <li>A private IP address is automatically generated when you create a cluster. The IP address is fixed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The number of private IP addresses equals the number of CNs. You can log in to any node to connect to the cluster.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If you access a fixed IP address over the internal network, all the resource pools will run on a single CN.</li> </ul>
	• If IPv6 is enabled for a cluster, both IPv4 and IPv6 private addresses will be displayed. You can use either of them as needed.
Public Network Domain Name	Name of the domain for accessing the database in the cluster over the public network. For details, see <b>Managing</b> GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names.
	Load balancing is not supported.
Public Network IP Address	IP address for accessing the database in the cluster over the public network. NOTE
	• If no EIP is assigned during cluster creation and <b>Public Network IP</b> Address is empty, click <b>Edit</b> to bind an EIP to the cluster.
	• If an EIP is bound during cluster creation, click <b>Edit</b> to unbind the EIP.
Initial Administrato r	Database administrator specified during cluster creation. When you connect to the cluster for the first time, you need to use the initial database administrator and password to connect to the default database.
Port	Port number for accessing the cluster database through the public network or private network. The port number is specified when the cluster is created.

Parameter	Description
Default Database	Database name specified when the cluster is created. When you connect to the cluster for the first time, connect to the default database.
ELB Address	To achieve high availability and avoid single-CN failures, a new cluster needs to be bound to ELB. You are advised to use the ELB address to connect to the cluster.

#### Table 8-3 Network

Parameter	Description		
Region	Current working zone of the cluster.		
AZ	AZ selected during cluster creation		
VPC	VPC selected during cluster creation. A VPC is a secure, isolated, and logical network environment. After a data warehouse cluster is created, its VPC cannot be changed. However, you can edit and modify the current VPC. You can click the VPC name to go to the VPC details page to configure it. For details about VPC operations, see <b>Modifying a</b> <b>VPC</b> in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i> .		
Subnet	Subnet selected during cluster creation. A subnet provides dedicated network resources that are isolated from other networks, improving network security. After a data warehouse cluster is created, its subnet cannot be changed. However, you can edit and modify the current subnet. You can click the subnet name to go to the subnet details page to configure it. For details about subnet operations, see Modifying a Subnet in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i> .		
Security Group	<ul> <li>Security group selected during cluster creation.</li> <li>After a GaussDB(DWS) cluster is created, you can change the security group. You can also add, delete, or modify security group rules in the current security group. Changing the security group of a cluster may cause brief service disruption. Exercise caution when performing this operation. For better network performance, do not select more than five security groups.</li> <li>To change the security group, click <b>Modify</b> on the right of the security group name, select the security group name to be changed, and click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>Modifying an existing security group rule: Click the security group in the <i>Virtual Private Cloud User Guide</i>.</li> </ul>		

Table 8-4 Billing	information
-------------------	-------------

Parameter	Description
Billing Mode	Billing mode.
	Pay-per-use
Created	Time when a pay-per-use or yearly/monthly cluster is created.

Table 8-5	Storage/Backup	capacity
-----------	----------------	----------

Parameter	Description				
Storage	<ul> <li>The storage class Ultra-high I/O and the storage space usage are displayed.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>The used storage capacity does not include data on OBS foreign tables. It includes only GaussDB(DWS) data, including files, logs, snapshots, and indexes.</li> <li>The available storage space is half of the actual disk capacity.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
Backup	The space in use, free space, and charged space of the cluster are displayed.				
Cold Data Used Capacity (storage- compute decoupling)	OBS hot data capacity used by storage-compute decoupled clusters. <b>NOTE</b> OBS capacity usage. It is synchronized every four hours.				
Used Cold Partition Data Capacity	OBS capacity used by cold data. NOTE OBS capacity usage. It is synchronized every four hours.				
Used Capacity of OBS Foreign Tables	OBS capacity used by the foreign tables of the default OBS server of the cluster: <b>default_obs_foreign_table_server</b> . <b>NOTE</b> OBS capacity usage. It is synchronized every four hours.				

Parameter	Description		
O&M Account	Specifies whether to enable the cluster O&M account.		
	Check the created O&M account. Its name format is om_user_First_eight_numbers_in_cluster_ID. The gs_role_analyze_any, gs_role_vacuum_any, gs_role_read_all_stats, and gs_role_signal_backend roles will be assigned to the account. For details, see Preset Roles.		
Account Status	Displays the status of the current cluster O&M account, which can be <b>Normal</b> or <b>Expired</b> .		
Expires	Indicates the expiration time of the O&M account of the current cluster.		
Extend by 8h	<ul> <li>For a normal account, its validity period is extended to 8 hours later than its expiration time.</li> <li>For an expired account, its validity period is extended to 8</li> </ul>		
	hours later than the current time.		

#### Table 8-6 O&M account

 Table 8-7 Data encryption information

Parameter	Description
Key Name	Indicates the database encryption key of the cluster when <b>Encrypt DataStore</b> is enabled.
Last Key Rotation Time	Indicates the time when the last encryption key is rotated when <b>Encrypt DataStore</b> is enabled.

#### Changing a Cluster Name

You can change the name of a created GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

After the cluster name is changed, the names of all nodes in the current cluster are changed accordingly.

#### **NOTE**

- If the cluster name cannot be changed on the console, contact technical support to upgrade the console.
- If the cluster name fails to be changed, the cluster functions are not affected. You can contact technical support to rectify the fault if needed.

#### Constraints

If the cluster is in the **Unavailable** status or is performing other tasks, the cluster name cannot be changed. You can change the cluster name only after the cluster status changes to **Available** or the running tasks are complete.

#### Method 1:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the modification icon next to a cluster name to modify the cluster.

Figure 8-2 Changing the name of a cluster in the cluster list

Seneci a property or erear a naywore.									
Cluster Norse ()	Cluster Status ()	Cluster Version ()	Task information ()	Node Flavor ()	Dilling Mode 😑	Recent Events $\theta$	Enterprise Proj 🖯	Operation ()	
c387680e-92ab-4645-bc38-e71788	don failed Dotate	8.2.1.231		elvis, m3 xlarge		2	default.	Log In: Monitoring Planet More +	
CHITERN 1200-4540 [ LG ] 0	O Available	8.2.1.230 Upgradable		dvis2.km1.xlarge	Pay-per-Use Created at Sep 13, 2824 11:17:13	4	default	Log In: Monitoring Panel More ~	

- **Step 3** In the displayed dialog box, enter a new cluster name.
- **Step 4** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

Method 2:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** On the displayed **Cluster Details** page, click the modification icon next to the cluster name in the **Basic Information** area.

Figure 8-3 Changing the cluster name on the cluster details page

Basic Information			
Cluster	( Z	Cluster ID	eca64974-9057-439a-b7f2-365f1be7f0e5
Cluster Status	O Available	Cluster Version	8.2.1.230
Parameter Configuration Status	Synchronized ③	Task Information	-
Nodes	Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0	Enterprise Project	default
Node Flavor	dws2.km1.xlarge	Current Specifications	Coupled storage and compute   4 vCPUs   32 GB Memory   200 GB Common I/O
Logical Cluster		Cluster Description	- 2
Time Zone (2)	UTC+08:00 (Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi) 🖉		

**Step 4** After confirming that the information is correct, click **OK** to deliver the cluster modification task. After the task is complete, the cluster name is changed.

----End

## 8.2 Checking the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Status

Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and you can view the general information about a cluster in the displayed cluster list, such as the cluster status, task information, recent events, and node specifications.

#### Querying General Information of a Cluster

Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. The cluster list displays all clusters. If there are a large number of clusters, you can turn pages to view the clusters in any status.

In the upper part of the cluster list, click the search box and search for the required cluster based on the filter criteria (cluster name, cluster status, cluster

version, task information, node specifications, billing mode, recent events, and

enterprise project). Click C to refresh the cluster list and billing mode. You can also click **Search by Tag** to search for clusters based on cluster tags. For details, see **Searching for Clusters Based on Tags**.

Clusters are listed in chronological order by default, with the most recent clusters displayed at the top. **Table 8-8** describes the cluster list parameters.

Table 8-	8 Cluster	list parameters	5
----------	-----------	-----------------	---

Parameter	Description
Cluster Name	Cluster name specified when a cluster is created. <b>NOTE</b> If the cluster name cannot be changed on the console, contact technical support.
Cluster Status	Cluster running status. For details, see Cluster Status.
Cluster Version	Version of the current cluster. For details, see <b>Table 8-10</b> .
Task Information	Cluster task status. For details, see <b>Cluster Task Information</b> .
Node Flavor	Node flavors of clusters.
Billing Mode	Cluster billing mode. • In pay-per-use mode, the cluster creation time is displayed.
Recent Events	Number of recent events in a cluster. You can click the number to view event details.
Enterprise Project	Enterprise project to which a cluster belongs.

Parameter	Description		
Operation	<ul> <li>Log In: For details, see Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.</li> <li>Monitoring Panel: For details, see Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on the Monitoring Panel (DMS).</li> </ul>		
	More		
	<ul> <li>Convert to Encryption Cluster: For details, see Converting an Ordinary Cluster to an Encrypted Cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>View Metric: For details, see Viewing GaussDB(DWS)</li> <li>Cluster Monitoring Information on Cloud Eye.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Restart: Click Restart to restart a cluster. For details, see Restarting a cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Start: Click Start to start a stopped cluster. For details, see Starting a Cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Stop: Click Stop to stop a running cluster. For details, see Stopping a Cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Scale Node: For details, see Scaling GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Nodes.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Change Specifications: For details, see Changing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Specifications.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Reset Password: For details, see Resetting the Password the GaussDB(DWS) Database Administrator.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Create Snapshot: For details, see Backing Up and Restoring a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Delete: Click Delete to delete a cluster.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Manage CN: For details, see Adding or Deleting a CN in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.</li> </ul>		

#### **Cluster Status**

Table 8-9 Cluster status description

Status	Description
Available	Indicates that the cluster runs properly.

Status	Description				
Read-only	A cluster goes into this state when the disk usage of the cluster or a single node in the cluster is greater than 90%. The cluster can still work in this state but supports only query operations. Write operations are not supported. When the cluster status becomes read-only, remove the status by referring to <b>Removing the Read- only Status</b> . If the status cannot be removed, contact technical support engineers.				
	After the read-only status is canceled for the cluster, you are advised to perform the following operations:				
	<ul> <li>Use the SQL client tool to connect to the database as the administrator and run the following command to periodically clear and reclaim the storage space:</li> <li>VACUUM FULL;</li> <li>After you delete data stored in GaussDB(DWS) data</li> </ul>				
	disk space is not released. This results in disk space waste. It is recommended that the storage space be cleared periodically.				
	• You are advised to check the disk capacity and analyze whether the existing cluster specifications meet service requirements. If not, expand the cluster capacity. For details, see <b>Scaling Out a Cluster</b> .				
Unbalance d	If the role of a GTM or DN in the cluster is different from the initial role, the cluster is in the <b>Unbalanced</b> state. In the <b>Unbalanced</b> state, the number of primary instances on some nodes increases. As a result, the load pressure is high. In this case, the cluster is normal, but the overall performance is not as good as that in a balanced state. You are advised to switch a cluster to the <b>Available</b> state during off-peak hours. For details, see <b>Performing</b> a <b>Primary/Standby Switchback</b> .				
Redistribut ing	A cluster goes into this state when it detects that the service data on the original nodes is significantly larger than that on the new node after a new node is added to the cluster. In this case, the system automatically redistributes data on all nodes. The cluster can still work in this state.				
Redistribut ion failed	A cluster goes into this state when data redistribution fails, but no data loss occurs. The cluster can still work in this state. You are advised to contact technical support.				
Degraded	A cluster goes into this state when some nodes in the cluster are faulty, but the whole cluster runs properly. You are advised to contact technical support.				
Unavailabl e	A cluster goes into this state when it cannot provide database services. You are advised to contact technical support.				
Creating	A cluster goes into this state when it is being created.				
Creation failed	A cluster goes into this state when it fails to be created.				

Status	Description
Creating, restoring	A cluster goes into this state when it is being restored from a snapshot.
Deleting	A cluster goes into this state when it is being deleted.
Frozen for legal reasons	Indicates that the cluster is frozen for legal reasons. In this case, the cluster cannot be deleted or unsubscribed, and its name cannot be changed.
Frozen	Indicates that the cluster is frozen (excluding legal reasons). In this case, the cluster name cannot be changed.
	If your account balance is insufficient and fee deduction fails, the retention period starts. During the retention period, the service resources will be frozen and cannot be used, but resources and data are reserved. To unfreeze the clusters, you need to top up your account to ensure that the account balance is not <b>0</b> .
To be restarted	This status indicates that GUC parameters have been modified in the cluster and the modification can take effect only after the cluster is restarted. Before the cluster is restarted, some O&M operations cannot be performed. After you manually restart the cluster, the GUC parameter takes effect and the cluster status changes to <b>Available</b> .
Stopped	Indicates that the cluster is stopped.

#### **Cluster Version**

#### Table 8-10 Cluster version

Version	Description
<i>x.x.x</i>	Current cluster version. To improve system stability, click <b>Upgradable</b> to go to the upgrade management page. For details, see <b>Upgrading a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster</b> .

#### **Cluster Task Information**

#### Table 8-11 Task information description

Status	Description
Creating snapshot	Indicates that a snapshot is being created in the cluster.
Snapshot creation failed	Indicates that a snapshot fails to be created.

Status	Description			
Observing	Indicates that the cluster is to be submitted after the automatic upgrade.			
Configurin g	Indicates that the system is storing modifications of cluster parameters.			
Restarting	Indicates that a cluster is being restarted.			
Restart failed	Indicates that a cluster fails to be restarted.			
Converting to encryption cluster	Indicates that the cluster is being converted to an encrypted cluster.			
Encryption cluster conversion failed	Indicates that the cluster fails to be encrypted.			
Scaling out	Indicates that a cluster is being scaled out.			
Scale-out failed	Indicates that a cluster fails to be scaled out.			
Expanding disk capacity	Indicates that disk capacity is being expanded.			
Disk expansion failed	Indicates that disk capacity fails to be expanded.			
Associating ELB	Indicates that ELB is being associated.			
Failed to associate ELB	Indicates that ELB fails to be associated.			
Disassociat ing ELB	Indicates that ELB is being disassociated.			
Failed to disassociat e ELB	Indicates that ELB fails to be disassociated.			
Checking scale-in	The service is checking whether a cluster can be scaled in.			

Status	Description
Scale-in check failed	<ul> <li>A cluster does not meet the scale-in requirements. For example:</li> <li>The value of default_storage_nodegroup is not installation.</li> <li>In the cluster database, data_redis is a reserved redistribution schema, but the schema contains user tables.</li> <li>The cluster disk space does not meet the scale-in requirements. For details, see Scaling In a Cluster.</li> </ul>
Scaling in	A cluster is being scaled in.
Scale-in failed	The cluster scale-in fails. You need to manually scale in the cluster again as soon as possible, or your services will be affected.
Switching back	The primary/standby relationship of a cluster is being restored.
Switchback failed	<ul> <li>The primary/standby relationship of a cluster fails to be restored. Possible causes are as follows.</li> <li>Redo operations are being performed on DNs. Wait until the operations are completed and try again.</li> <li>Failed to query DN redo information. Check tenant logs to identify the failure cause.</li> <li>Primary/standby catchup is in progress. Wait until it is completed and try again.</li> <li>Failed to query primary/standby catchup information. Check tenant logs to identify the failure cause.</li> <li>Primary/standby catchup failed. Contact technical support or try again later. Check tenant logs to identify the failure cause.</li> <li>The cluster is abnormal.</li> </ul>
Changing node flavor	The cluster is being scaled.
Node flavor change failed	All specifications change failed
Waiting for payment	The order for changing a pay-per-use cluster to a yearly/monthly cluster has not been paid. After the order is paid or canceled, the status will change.
Changing all specificatio ns	All the specifications of the cluster being changed.

Status	Description
All specificatio ns change failed	Specifications change failed because of insufficient quotas or permissions, or abnormal cluster status.
Maintainin g	A maintenance change operation, such as cluster upgrade or plug- in upgrade, is being performed on the cluster.
Maintain_f ailure	A cluster fails to be restarted.
Stopping	Indicates that the cluster is being stopped.
Starting	Indicates that the cluster is being started.
Inspecting	Indicates that the cluster is being inspected before the change.
Inspection failed	Indicates that the cluster inspection fails.

# 8.3 Viewing the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Topology

#### **Overview**

A topology shows all the nodes in a cluster. You can check the node statuses, processes, and IP addresses.

#### **NOTE**

- You can check the topology structure and node processes.
- Only cluster versions 8.0.0 and later can display the topology structure. Only cluster versions 8.2.0 and later can display node processes.

#### Viewing the Cluster Topology

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** On the **Cluster Details** page, click the **Cluster Topology** tab.
- **Step 4** In the pper right corner of the page, you can select **IP Address** or **Node Name**. After entering the IP address or node name in the search box, you can view the location of the IP address or node name in the cluster topology.

----End

#### **Topology Overview**

1	Node Name auto-dws-cn-cn-1-2.	a		Scale Out Restart Montoring Panel
Cluster Topology ③	Node Status © Running Manage IP & & & & & () Traffic IP 12000000015 (1)			
	Internal IP 200000002 CT Internalmont IP 12000000018 CT Processes Process No.	i Status Primary	Stendby	PAdnes
	DN 0004 DN 0003	Normal Current node Normal auto-dws-on-on-3-1	auto duo-ch-ch-3-1 Current node	
Client ELB	Lite-dws-cn-cn-1-1	auto-duis-cn-cn-1-2	auto-dws-cn-cn-1-3	3
EP				

This figure shows a topology. The elements marked in the figure are as follows:

- 1. Public IP address of the ELB bound to the cluster. If no public IP addresses are bound to the ELB, the service address is displayed.
- 2. EIP bound to the cluster.
- 3. Search category. You can perform exact search by IP address or node name.
- 4. Rings in the cluster.
- 5. This box represents a ring, with each line and icon indicating a node within the ring. If there are at least three cluster rings created, you can view the distributed deployment of CNs.
- 6. A node. The type of the node is displayed in the upper right corner of the icon. Currently, the type can only be CN or DN. If there is a CN process on the node, **CN** is displayed. If there are no CN processes on the node, **DN** is displayed.
- 7. Node details, including the node name, status, IP addresses, and task process. Node details are displayed when you hover your cursor over a node icon.

#### Terms in the Topology View

Name	Description	Usage	
ELB	Elastic Load Balance (ELB) automatically distributes incoming traffic across multiple backend servers based on listening rules you configure.	If the private IP address or EIP of a CN is used to connect to a GaussDB(DWS) cluster, the failure of this CN will lead to a cluster connection failure. If a private or public domain name is used for connection, the DNS service randomly selects a private IP address or EIP for each client. This cannot balance loads or avoid single-CN failures. ELB is used to solve these problems. For details, see <b>Binding and</b> <b>Unbinding ELBs for a GaussDB(DWS)</b> <b>Cluster</b> .	

 Table 8-12
 Cluster structure description

Name	Description	Usage
EIP	The Elastic IP (EIP) service provides static public IP addresses and scalable bandwidths that enable your cloud resources to communicate with the Internet.	EIPs can be bound to or unbound from ECSs, BMSs, virtual IP addresses, load balancers, and NAT gateways.
Ring	A security ring is used for isolating faulty servers. A fault in a ring does not affect servers outside the ring.	Data on a DN has multiple copies in a ring, and will not be lost even if the DN server is faulty. For example, if Server1 in a ring is faulty, the standby DN1 on Server2, the standby DN2 on Server3, and the standby DN3 on Server3 are still running. The loads of servers in a ring are still balanced. A cluster can run properly as long as the number of faulty servers does not exceed the number of rings. <b>NOTE</b> The ring is the minimum unit for a scale- out. When you scale out a cluster, the added nodes must be a multiple of the ring quantity.

#### Table 8-13 Node IP addresses

Name	Description	Usage	
Manage IP	IP address used by a data warehouse node to communicate with the management plane	It is used by the management plane to deliver commands, and used by the node to report node status and monitoring information.	
Traffic IP	IP address of a data warehouse node for external access.	This IP address can be bound to an EIP or ELB, or directly connect to a VPC.	
Internal IP	IP address used for communication inside a data warehouse cluster.	-	

Name	Description	Usage
Internalmgnt IP	IP address used by nodes to send internal management commands in a data warehouse cluster.	-

Name	Description	Usage
CMS	A Cluster Manager (CM) manages and monitors the running status of functional units and physical resources in the distributed system, ensuring system stability. CM Server (CMS) is a module of CM.	<ul> <li>A CM consists of CM Agent, OM Monitor, and CM Server.</li> <li>CM Agent monitors the running status of primary and standby GTMs, CNs, and primary and standby DNs on the host, and reports the status to CM Server. In addition, it executes the arbitration instruction delivered by CM Server. A CM Agent process runs on each server.</li> <li>OM Monitor monitors scheduled tasks of CM Agent and restarts CM Agent when CM Agent stops. If CM Agent cannot be restarted, the server will be unavailable. In this case, you need to manually rectify this fault.</li> <li>NOTE A CM Agent restart fails probably because of lack of system resources, which rarely happens.</li> <li>CM Server checks whether the current system is normal according to the instance status reported by CM Agent. In the case of exceptions, CM Server delivers recovery commands to CM Agent.</li> <li>GaussDB(DWS) deploys CM Server in primary/ standby mode to ensure system HA. CM Agent</li> </ul>

 Table 8-14 Node processes

Name	Description	Usage
		connects to the primary CM Server. If the primary CM Server is faulty, the standby CM Server is promoted to primary to prevent single-CM faults.
GTM	A Global Transaction Manager (GTM) generates and maintains the globally unique information, such as the transaction ID, transaction snapshot, and timestamp.	A cluster includes only one pair of GTMs: one primary and one standby GTM.
CN	A Coordinator (CN) receives access requests from applications, and returns execution results to the client; splits tasks and allocates task fragments to different DNs for parallel processing.	CNs in a cluster have equivalent roles and return the same result for the same DML statement. Load balancers can be added between CNs and applications to ensure that CNs are transparent to applications. If a CN is faulty, the load balancer connects its applications to another CN. CNs need to connect to each other in the distributed transaction architecture. To reduce heavy load caused by excessive threads on GTMs, no more than 10 CNs should be configured in a cluster.

Name	Description	Usage
CCN	Central Coordinator (CCN)	GaussDB(DWS) handles the global resource load in a cluster using the Central Coordinator (CCN) for adaptive dynamic load management. When the cluster is started for the first time, the CM selects the CN with the smallest ID as the CCN. If the CCN is faulty, CM replaces it with a new one.
DN	A Data Node (DN) stores data in row-store, column-store, or hybrid mode, executes data query tasks, and returns execution results to CNs.	There are multiple DNs in the cluster. Each DN stores part of data. If DNs are not deployed in primary/standby mode and a DN is faulty, data on the DN will be inaccessible.

# 8.4 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Connections

## 8.4.1 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Access Domain Names

#### Overview

A domain name is a string of characters separated by dots to identify the location of a computer or a computer group on the Internet, for example, www.example.com. You can enter a domain name in the address box of the web browser to access a website or web application.

On GaussDB(DWS), you can access clusters using the private network domain name or the public network domain name.

Private network domain name: Name of the domain for accessing the database in the cluster through the private network. The private network domain name is automatically generated when you create a cluster.

Public network domain name: Name of the domain for accessing the database in the cluster through the public network. If a cluster is not bound to an EIP, it cannot be accessed using the public network domain name. If you bind an EIP during cluster creation, the public network domain name is automatically generated.

#### D NOTE

Neither public nor private domain names support load balancing. To use load balancing, see **Configuring JDBC to Connect to a Cluster (Load Balancing Mode)**.

After a cluster is created, you can set private and public domain names for accessing the cluster as required. The operations are as follows:

- Modifying a Private Network Domain Name
- Creating a Public Network Domain Name
- Modifying a Public Network Domain Name
- Releasing a Public Network Domain Name

#### Modifying a Private Network Domain Name

The private network domain name is automatically generated during cluster creation. After the cluster is created, you can modify the default domain name based on site requirements.

To modify the private network domain name, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the **Connection** area, click **Modify** next to the automatically generated **Private Network Domain Name**.

Figure 8-4 Modifying a private network domain name

Basic Information				Connection		
Cluster	to R	Cluster ID	2497a3cb-b0b0-4514-09ec-70fea4e3f294	Private Network Domain Name	on d	Modify
Cluster Status	O Available	Cluster Version	9.1.0.211	Private Network IP Address	192.168.0.103, 192.168.0.240	
Parameter Configuration Status	O Synchronized ③	Task information		Public Network Domain Name ③	- Create	
Nodes	Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0	Enterprise Project	detaut	Public Network IP Address ③	IPV4 🕜 Ede	
Node Flavor	4U160.4DPU	Current Specifications	Decoupled storage and compute   4 vCPUs   16 GB Memory   200 GB Common I/O	Initial Administrator	zgse539s1wrqe9y12pt09b1ayrdssdm7ijnsgkz	
Logical Cluster		Cluster Description	- 0	Port	8000	
				Default Database	gaussidb	
Time Zone	UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) 22			ELB Address	- Associate ELB	
Cluster Mode	Logical Cluster Mode					
				Storage/Backup Capacity		
Network				Strana		
Region	CN North-Ulangab203	AZ	A23	Hot Storage (with Cache)		
VPC	vpc-testing-nodelete	Subnet	subnet-2600 (192,168,0.9/24)	Common IIO		
Security Group	0 Modity			Lised Marcalest 27 99 /000 00	4	67%
Dition Information				Backup		10%
owny moniation				Free () 0.47/300 08	Paid 0	GB
Eitling Mode	Pay-per-use	Created	Dec 11, 2024 14:13:25 GMT+08:00	Used Cold Data Capacity 0 B		

**Step 5** In the **Modify Private Network Domain Name** dialog box, enter the target domain name and click **OK**.

The private network domain name contains 4 to 63 characters, which consists of letters, digits, and hyphens (-) and must start with a letter.

After the domain name is modified, click copy button next to the private network domain name to copy it.

----End

#### **Creating a Public Network Domain Name**

A cluster is not bound to an EIP by default during cluster creation. That is, cluster access using the public network is disabled. After a cluster is created, if you want to access it over the public network, bind an EIP to the cluster and create a public network domain name.

#### **NOTE**

By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. By default, the IAM users in those accounts cannot query or create agencies. When the users use the EIP, the system makes the binding function unavailable. Contact a user with the **DWS Administrator** permissions to authorize the agency on the current page.

To create a public network domain name, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the Connection area, Public Network Domain Name and Public Network IP Address are empty. Click Edit to bind the cluster with an EIP.
- **Step 5** In the **Edit Elastic IP** dialog box, select an EIP from the drop-down list to bind it to a specified CN.

If no available EIPs are displayed, click **View EIP** to go to the **Elastic IP** page and create an EIP that satisfies your needs. After the new EIP is created, click the refresh icon next to the drop-down list. The newly created EIP will be displayed in the **EIP** drop-down list.

After the EIP is bound successfully, the specific public network IP address is displayed in the **Connection** area.

- **Step 6** In the **Connection** area, click **Create** next to **Public Network Domain Name** to create a public network domain name for the cluster.
- **Step 7** In the **Apply for Public Network Domain Name** dialog box, enter the target domain name and click **OK**.

The public network domain name contains 4 to 63 characters, which consists of letters, digits, and hyphens (-) and must start with a letter.

The specific public network domain name is displayed in the **Connection** area

after being created. Click copy button  $\square$  to copy the public network domain name.

----End

#### Modifying a Public Network Domain Name

If you bind an EIP during cluster creation, the public network domain name is automatically generated. After a cluster is created, you can modify the public network domain name as required. To modify the public network domain name, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 Click Modify next to the Public Network Domain Name in the Connection area.
- **Step 5** In the **Modify Public Network Domain Name** dialog box, enter the target domain name and click **OK**.

----End

#### Releasing a Public Network Domain Name

After a cluster is created, you can release unnecessary public network domain names.

To do so, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 Click Release next to the Public Network Domain Name in the Connection area.
- Step 5 In the Release Domain Name dialog box, click Yes.

----End

# 8.4.2 Binding and Unbinding ELBs for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

#### Overview

If the private IP address or EIP of a CN is used to connect to a cluster, the failure of this CN will lead to cluster connection failure. If a private or public domain name is used for connection, the DNS service randomly selects a private IP address or EIP for each client. This cannot balance loads or avoid single-CN failures. ELB is used to solve these problems.

An ELB distributes access traffic to multiple ECSs for traffic control based on forwarding policies. It improves the fault tolerance capability of application programs. For details, see the *Elastic Load Balance User Guide*.

With ELB health checks, CN requests of a cluster can be quickly forwarded to normal CNs. If a CN is faulty, the workload can be immediately shifted to a healthy node, minimizing cluster access faults. Currently, ELBs can be bound in the same VPC or across VPCs.

#### D NOTE

- This feature is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1.200 or later.
- To ensure load balancing and high availability and prevent service interruption, ensure created clusters are to an ELB.
- When you bind a cluster to ELB across VPCs, you can bind it to a dedicated load balancer.
- ELB does not support cross-database access.

#### **Constraints and Limitations**

- To bind an ELB to a GaussDB(DWS) cluster, the ELB must be in the same region, VPC, and enterprise project as the cluster.
- Only dedicated load balancers can be bound to GaussDB(DWS).

#### NOTICE

Load balancing is not supported in regions where the dedicated load balancer is not available. You can check whether dedicated load balancers are supported on the ELB console.

- The ELB to be associated must use TCP and has a private IP address.
- When creating an ELB instance, determine its specifications based on your service access traffic. You are advised to select the maximum specifications. On the GaussDB(DWS) console, you can bind to an ELB instance but cannot change its specifications.
- You only need to create a load balancer if you want to use ELB. GaussDB(DWS) automatically creates the required ELB listeners and backend server groups.
- When creating a load balancer, ensure that the listeners do not use the same port as the database. Otherwise, ELB cannot be associated.
- When you associate ELB, the **ROUND\_ROBIN** policy is set by default. In addition, the health check interval is set to 10 seconds, the timeout duration is set to 50 seconds, and the number of maximum retries is set to 3. Exercise caution when you modify these ELB parameters.
- When you bind a cluster to ELB across VPCs, you can only bind it to a dedicated load balancer.
- Before you bind a cluster to ELB across VPCs, ensure that the subnet segment of the cluster VPC is different from that of the ELB VPC.
- When you disassociate ELB from a cluster, related cluster information is cleared on GaussDB(DWS) but the load balancer is not deleted. Delete the load balancer in time to prevent unnecessary costs.
- If you need to access the ELB cluster using a public IP address or domain name, bind an EIP or domain name on the ELB management console.
- If the cluster is an IPv4 cluster, only IPv4 ELBs can be bound. If the cluster is an IPv6 dual-stack cluster, only IPv6 dual-stack ELBs can be bound.

#### **Associating ELB**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** On the **Basic Information** page that is displayed, click **Associate ELB** and select the ELB name. If no load balancer exists, create one on the ELB management console. Then refresh the GaussDB(DWS) page and associate ELB with the cluster.

**NOTE** 

By default, the ELB in the VPC of the cluster is selected for GaussDB(DWS). If you select **Bind to ELB in another VPC**, the list of ELBs in other VPCs will be displayed for you to choose from. Before binding your cluster to an ELB across VPCs, ensure the cluster VPC has been connected to the ELB VPC. For details, see **Prerequisites for Binding an ELB to a Cluster Across VPCs**.

- **Step 5** After the request is delivered, go back to the **Clusters** page. Task information **Associating ELB** of the cluster is displayed. The process takes some time.
- Step 6 Log in to the ELB management console, choose Elastic Load Balance > Load Balancers, click the name of the bound load balancer, switch to the Backend Server Groups tab, and check whether the cluster CNs are associated with the load balancer.

Sumn	nary Backend Servers Associated Resources					
	Backend Servers				Add	Modily Weight Remove
	Q. Select a property or enter a keyword.					C 🛞
	Name1D 0	Status 0	Private IP Address 0	Health Check Result	Weight 0	Backend Port 0
		O Healthy	192.168.209.211 Extension NIC	Healthy View	1	8000
	ald5c461-1c26-4af6-8bd7-65f07bca1ae1	Healthy	192.168.147.18 Extension NIC	Healthy View	1	8000
	b7c411ae 947c-43e9 8c7d=e31a54a57437	Healthy	192.168.128.230 Extension NIC	Healthy View	1	8000
	10 v Total Records: 3 < 1					
	✓ IP as Backend Servers				Add Modify Weight Re	nove Import Export
	V Supplementary Network Interfaces				Add	Modily Weight Remove

#### **NOTE**

If the health check result indicates that the ELB backend nodes are deleted, ignore the problem.

**Step 7** In the **Basic Information** area of the **Cluster Information** page, check the **ELB Address**, which is used for connecting to the cluster.

----End

#### Prerequisites for Binding an ELB to a Cluster Across VPCs

#### Enabling ELB for a cross-VPC backend server

**Step 1** Log in to the ELB console.

**Step 2** In the ELB list, click the name of a dedicated ELB to go to its details page.

handdoward		Danaw Change Billing Me	ute Unsale	orika										9 8 9
cores Control		Name1D	Munituring	Roature	Type	Specifications.	IP Address and Network	Listener (Prostend Proto	Band	width Information	Diffing Mode	Enterprise Project	Operation	
Inalling Control	-	D 50x000x 0001 4x74-9874	8	<ul> <li>Burning</li> </ul>	Desirated	Network lead leaters	162,168.0.8 (Private IPv4 address) 160,55,146,170 (IPv4 (IP) spc-259a (VPC))		1714	5 Mores Pay parters By Isoroboldhy	Pay-par-sea Created on Dec. 25, 2022 10:22:42	stafault	Add Listaner   Modily iPol Bandold	Alexa e
Jastic IP and landwidth IAT Gatavory		D 213/08/0 0404-0016-004	ø	<ul> <li>Running</li> </ul>	Destinated	National Isaa Isalami ettivitteatic tax 1.10	162,468,0,428 (Private IPv4 adds 160,85,223,69 (IPv4 EIP) spc-259a (VP0)		-	1 Motors Pagapananan By komologiality	Pay per see Created on Dec 26, 2022 15 34:11	shafasih	Add Listaner   Modily (Pol Bandold	Aller a
Load Balance	-	□	æ	<ul> <li>Rurning</li> </ul>	Destruted	Network lead balanc allo/3 basic 1ac   10	183, 168, 0.60 (Private PrvL addre 160, 83, 0.16 (PrvL EP) vpc.265a (VPC)		inst.	B Allation Younty Monthly Younty Monthly 25 days will auto deletion	Yearly/Monthly 25 days until aspiration	states.it	Add Linkson   Modily (Ped Bandold	A Mare +
Basharal Earour Groups Carifficates		214(694)-4980-4884-886	w	O Rarring	Deshaded	Network lead balanc	192,198,0.231 (Private Private dist 100,93,9,126 (Private Private) vgs268a (VPC)	No Intervers adults! Add may	IPv4	1 Albins Pag-par-use By bonduidth	Pay par-use Created on Dec 23, 2022 16:50:36	shelmali	Add Linkson   Modily Ped Bandood	A Mare -
IF Address Groups TLS Security Policies	•	Dive 202 Budge 4056 6265	120	<ul> <li>Running</li> </ul>	Dedicated	Network lead balanc altro3 hanis 1 ar   40	192, 168, 0, 109, (Private IPv4 adds 100, 86, 114, 69, (Prv4, 53P) vps: 269a, (VPC)	No Intervers added. Add now	inst.	6 Million Pay-partone By bandwidth	Pay-par-use Created on Day, 15, 2022 16:34:54	default	Add Listener   Modily Perl Banderid	t More -
PC Endpoint	1	······································	tgp	<ul> <li>Nummig</li> </ul>	Shared	Guaranteed Portann	192,188.0.246 (Private IPv4 adds 100.93.6.6 (Pv4 EIP) spx-268e (VPC)	No listeners added. Add now	1744	1 Million Pag-per-use By bondwidth	Pay-par-use Created on Day 10, 2022 14:38:50	default	Add Listener   Modily IPv4 Bandwidt	Allon -
interprise Router	-	451761aa 3c3a 4550 b7a	120	<ul> <li>Running</li> </ul>	Dedicated	Nationsk lead balanc	192,160.0.230 (Vitrata IPv4 addr 100.86.126.83 (IPv4 EIP) vpc-dws123 (VPC)	Raturner-WX1 (TCP/0000)	area.	1 Malin Payderose By bandwidth	Pay-par-see Granted ant.Nat. 22, 2022, 19, 21, 22	defect	Add Listener   Modily IPv4 Bandwid	N More -
lastic Closed Barver	~		ø	<ul> <li>Buncing</li> </ul>	Dedicated	Nationali Isaal kalane ellev3.luesle.1ae   10	192.188.99.92 (Philate Philador 100.86.319.107 (Philater) vec-htfle. (Pfila	The Balances added. Add now	and a	0 Millin Pay-per-use By bandwidth	Pay-par-sea Created so: Nov. 04, 2022, 17, 95, 12	20031124324	Add Ustaner   Modily IPv4 Dandwidt	
		-	ø	<ul> <li>Running</li> </ul>	Deckare	Application load hal	192.166.0.21 (Prinate Prof.edm., 160.65.112.72 (Prof.E37) specification (VPC)	Notion of C222011101000001	and a	5 Mblin Pay-bet-use By bandwidth	Pay par sea Strated on Rep 55, 2022 19.50,20	outsuit	And Colorer   Modily Investment	Nore -

**Step 3** On the **Summary** page, enable **IP as a Backend**, confirm the information, and click **OK**.

< Load balancer ("THE Last peer) 🔘 Running						
Summary Listeners	Monitoring Access Logs Tags					
Name	• Fill and test-peer 🖉	VPC	vpc-4d7e			
ID	abe5e857-80b0-49e2-b399-976e5785312d 🗇	IPv4 Subnet	- test			
Туре	Dedicated	IPv6 Subnet				
AZ	AZ2	Backend Subnet	, infining test 2			
Specification	Network load balancing (TCP/UDP)   Small   elbv3.basic.1az   10 LCUs	IP as a Backend	Enabled ⑦			
Billing Mode	Pay-per-use	IP Address	Private IPv4 address   192.168.90.92 🗇 Modify   Unbind			
			IPv4 EIP   100.85.219.107 🗗 Unbind			
Enterprise Project		Bandwidth Information	IPv4   5 Mbit/s   Pay-per-use - By bandwidth			
Description	🖉	Created	Nov 04, 2022 17:05:05 GMT+08:00			
Modification Protection ⑦	Disabled Configure					

**Step 4** Check the VPC and subnet segment.

Listeners	Monitoring Access Logs Tags		
lame	- margan L	VPC	ypc-447e
D	aba64857-8880-8942-8399-97645785312d	IPv4 Subnet	survey of the second seco
Гуре	Dedicated	IPv6 Subnet	
12	A22	Backend Subnet	ou dance 2
Specification	Network local balancing (TCPNDP)   Small   elbv3 basis.1az   10 LCUs	IP as a Backend	Enabled (1)
Silling Mode	Pay-per-usa	IP Address	Private IPv4 address   192.168.50.52 🗗 Modily   Unbind
			IPv4 EIP   108.65.219.107 🗗 Unbind
Enterprise Project	and the second se	Bandwidth Information	IPv4   5 Mbit/s   Pay-per-use - By bandwidth
Description	- 2	Created	Nev 04, 2022 17:05:05 GMT+08:00
Modification Protection	Disabled Configure		

#### ----End

Connecting the cluster VPC and the ELB VPC (by using VPC peering as an example)

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster to go to the cluster details page. Check the VPC and subnet segment of the cluster.

Network			
Region	North-Ulanqab203	AZ	AZ3
VPC	vpc-259a	Subnet	subnet-2600 (192.168.0.0/24)
Security Group	29-8000		

- **Step 4** Log in to the VPC console. Choose **My VPCs** in the navigation pane and locate the VPC for which you want to create a VPC peering connection.
- **Step 5** Choose **VPC Peering Connections**. In the upper right corner of the page, click **Create VPC Peering Connection**.
- **Step 6** On the displayed page, set **Local VPC** to the cluster VPC, and set **Peer VPC** to the VPC of the ELB. Confirm the settings and click **OK**.
| <ul> <li>A VPC peering connection</li> <li>same region.</li> <li>If you need two VPC</li> </ul> | ction allows two VPCs to communicate with each other<br>in different regions to communicate with each other, | er if they are in the<br>use Cloud Connect. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Local VPC Settings                                                                              |                                                                                                              |                                             |
| ★ Name                                                                                          | peering-68a3                                                                                                 |                                             |
| ★ Local VPC                                                                                     | vpc-259a 👻                                                                                                   | C Cluster VPC                               |
| Local VPC CIDR Block                                                                            | 192.168.0.0/16                                                                                               |                                             |
| Peer VPC Settings                                                                               |                                                                                                              |                                             |
| * Account                                                                                       | My account Another account                                                                                   | ?                                           |
| ★ Peer Project                                                                                  | cn-north-7 👻                                                                                                 | 0                                           |
| ★ Peer VPC                                                                                      | vpc-4d7e 👻                                                                                                   | ELB VPC                                     |
| Peer VPC CIDR Block                                                                             | 192.168.0.0/16                                                                                               |                                             |
|                                                                                                 | ſ                                                                                                            | 7                                           |

- **Step 7** Click **Add Route** to add the route information.
- **Step 8** Click the name of the created VPC peering connection. On the displayed page, click the **Local Routes** tab, click **Route Tables**, and add the route table of the cluster VPC.



**Step 9** In the local route table, set **Destination** to the subnet CIDR block of the ELB VPC, set **Next Hop Type** to **VPC peering connection**, and set **Next Hop** to the created VPC peering connection. Click **OK**.

Add Route				×	
Route Table rtb-vpc-259a(Defau	it)				
Destination (?)	Next Hop Type	Next Hop ⑦	Description		
192.168.90.0/24	VPC peerin •	peering-3115(9ac7d73e-97d3-4aa0 💌		Ū	
ELB subnet address		Add Route			
		OK Cancel			ripti

**Step 10** Go to the basic information page of the created VPC peering connection, click the **Peer Routes** tab, click **Route Tables**, and add the route table of the ELB VPC.

v peering-3115 Basic Information Local Routes	Peer Routes			
Switch to the Route Tables page to add rout				
Destination	Next Hop Type	Next Hop	Route Table	

**Step 11** In the peer route table, set **Destination** to the subnet CIDR block of the cluster VPC, set **Next Hop Type** to **VPC peering connection**, and set **Next Hop** to the created VPC peering connection. Click **OK**.

_	Add Route ×	
	Route Table tb-vpc-4d7e(Default)	
	Destination ⑦ Next Hop Type ⑦ Next Hop ⑦ Description	
	192.168.0.0/24         VPC peerin ▼         peering-3115(9ac7d73e-97d3-4aa0 ▼         Ū	
routes.	Cluster subnet address       Add Route	
Next Hop Ty	OK Cancel	ription
Local		alt route that enables instance con

**Step 12** After the cluster is created, the network between the VPC where the cluster resides and the VPC where the load balancer resides is connected. For details, see section **Binding an ELB**.

----End

## **Disassociating ELB**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** On the **Basic Information** page that is displayed, click **Disassociate ELB**.
- **Step 5** After the request is delivered, go back to the **Clusters** page. Task information **Dissociating ELB** of the cluster is displayed. The process takes some time.
- **Step 6** Log in to the ELB management console, click the name of the dissociated ELB, switch to the **Backend Server Groups** tab, and check whether the cluster CNs are deleted.

----End

## 8.4.3 Adding or Deleting a CN in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

#### Purpose

After a cluster is created, the number of required CNs varies with service requirements. The CN management function enables you to adjust the number of CNs in the cluster. The operations are as follows:

- Adding CNs
- Deleting CNs

#### D NOTE

- This feature is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1 or later.
- Only cluster versions 8.1.3.300 and later (excluding 8.2.0) support online CN addition, deletion, and concurrent addition of multiple CNs.

## **Constraints and Limitations**

- During resource provisioning, the default number of CNs is 3. You can adjust the number of CNs based on the number of provisioned nodes. The number of CNs ranges from 2 to 20.
- Do not perform other O&M operations when adding or deleting a CN.
- Adding CNs consumes lots of CPU and I/O resources, which will greatly impact job performance. You are advised to perform this operation during off-peak hours or after services are stopped.
- If a fault occurs when you add a CN node and the rollback fails, try adding the CN again. The deletion of a CN node cannot be rolled back.
- For a CN that fails to be added, you can only retry the addition. For a CN that fails to be deleted, you can only retry the deletion. Other O&M operations are not allowed for such CNs.
- If DDL operations, such as schema and function creation, are performed during CN deletion, an error may be reported because the deleted CN cannot be found. In this case, try again.
- If one of your CNs is abnormal, you can only delete this abnormal CN. If two or more CNs are abnormal, you can delete CNs only after the CNs are recovered from faults.

## Adding CNs

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to which you want to add a CN.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the specified cluster, choose More > Manage CN > Add CN Node.
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, determine whether to add a CN to a specified node.
  - If you select No, you can set the CN quantity after adjustment.
  - If you select **Yes**, specify the node.

Whether to add CN to a specified node       ● Yes       No         Private J≡       Node Name J≡       AZ J≡       St J≡         ∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞∞	Whether to add CN to a specified node ● Yes No Private J≡ Node Name J≡ AZ J≡		No	ecified node 💿 Yes 🔿	Whether to add CN to a sp
Private ↓Ξ         Node Name ↓Ξ         AZ ↓Ξ         St ↓Ξ	Private J≡ Node Name J≡ AZ JΞ				
Ava		St ↓≣	AZ JΞ	Node Name ↓Ξ	Private ↓≣
	C CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR	📀 Ava	cn-north-7c	www.cn	

#### NOTICE

- Before adding a CN, ensure that the cluster is in the **Available** or **Unbalanced** state.
- The number of CNs cannot exceed the total number of nodes after adjustment.
- You cannot add more CNs than the number of CNs that have already been deployed.

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

## **Deleting CNs**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to which you want to delete a CN.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the specified cluster, choose More > Manage CN > Delete CN Node.
- **Step 4** On the displayed page, select the CN node to be deleted. After confirming that the information is correct, enter **DELETE** or click **One-Click Input** and click **OK** to delete the CN node.

eratio	n.			
	Private Netwo ↓Ξ	Node Name ↓Ξ	AZ JΞ	Status J≡
	*******	**************************************	cn-north-7c	<ul> <li>Available</li> </ul>
	******	dws-cn-cn-2-1	cn-north-7c	Available
			cn-north-7c	🕗 Available

#### NOTICE

- At least two CN must be retained.
- When deleting a CN from a multi-AZ cluster, reserve a normal CN node in each AZ. Faulty CN nodes (if any) can be deleted.
- When you delete a CN, the cluster must be in the **Available**, **Degraded**, or **Unbalanced** state.
- If an elastic IP address has been bound to a CN, the CN cannot be deleted.
- If abnormal nodes exist, only the abnormal CNs can be deleted.
  - If one CN is faulty, only this CN can be deleted.
  - If two or more CNs are faulty, no CN can be deleted.

----End

## 8.4.4 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Database Connections

## Scenario

By default, a database supports a certain number of connections. Administrators can manage database connections to learn about the connection performance of the current database or increase the connection limit so that more users or applications can connect to the database at the same time.

## **Maximum Number of Connections**

The number of connections supported by a cluster depends on its node flavor.

Parameter	Description	Number of CN Connections	Number of DN Connections
max_connecti ons	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent connections to the database.	800	Max (Number of vCPU cores/Number of DNs on a single node x 120 + 24, 5000)
max_pool_size	Specifies the maximum number of connections between the connection pool of a CN and another CN or DN.		

 Table 8-15 Number of supported connections

Parameter	Description	Number of CN Connections	Number of DN Connections
max_prepared _transactions	Specifies the maximum number of transactions that can stay in the <b>prepared</b> state simultaneously.		

#### D NOTE

For details about CNs and DNs, see Logical Cluster Architecture.

## Viewing the Maximum Number of Connections

Method 1: Post cluster creation, select the cluster name on the GaussDB(DWS) console to access the **Parameter Modification** page and view the value of **max\_connections**.

Method 2: Use an SQL client tool to establish a database connection within the cluster and execute an SQL query to obtain the value of **max\_connections**. SHOW max\_connections;

Information similar to the following is displayed, showing that the maximum number of database connections is **200** by default.

max\_connections -----200 (1 row)

## Viewing the Number of Used Connections

- Step 1 Use the SQL client tool to connect to the database in a cluster.
- Step 2 View the number of connections in scenarios described in Table 8-16.

#### NOTICE

Except for database and user names that are enclosed with double quotation marks (") during creation, uppercase letters are not allowed in the database and user names in the commands in the following table.

Description	Command
View the maximum number of sessions connected to a specific	Run the following command to view the maximum number of sessions connected to user <b>dbadmin</b> . SELECT ROLNAME,ROLCONNLIMIT FROM PG_ROLES WHERE ROLNAME='dbadmin';
	Information similar to the following is displayed1 indicates that the number of sessions connected to user <b>dbadmin</b> is not limited. rolname   rolconnlimit
	+
View the number of session connections that have been used by	Run the following command to view the number of session connections that have been used by <b>dbadmin</b> . SELECT COUNT(*) FROM V\$SESSION WHERE USERNAME='dbadmin';
a user.	Information similar to the following is displayed. <b>1</b> indicates the number of session connections used by user <b>dbadmin</b> .
	count  1 (1 row)
View the maximum number of sessions	View the upper limit of connections used by <b>gaussdb</b> . SELECT DATNAME,DATCONNLIMIT FROM PG_DATABASE WHERE DATNAME='gaussdb';
database.	Information similar to the following is displayed. <b>-1</b> indicates that the number of sessions connected to database <b>gaussdb</b> is not limited.
	datname   datconnlimit 
View the number of session connections	View the number of session connections that have been used by <b>gaussdb</b> .
that have been used by a database.	SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PG_STAT_ACTIVITY WHERE DATNAME='gaussdb';
	Information similar to the following is displayed. <b>1</b> indicates the number of session connections used by database <b>gaussdb</b> .
	count  1 (1 row)
View the number of session connections that have been used by all users.	Run the following command to view the number of session connections that have been used by all users: <b>SELECT COUNT(*) FROM PG_STAT_ACTIVITY</b> ; count

Table 8-16         Viewing the number	of connections
---------------------------------------	----------------

# 8.5 GaussDB(DWS) Resource Load Management

## 8.5.1 Overview

The system resources (CPU, memory, I/O, and storage resources) of a database are limited. When multiple types of services (such as data loading, batch analysis, and real-time query) are running at the same time, they may compete for resources and hinder operations. As a result, the throughput decreases and the overall query performance deteriorates. To avoid this problem, resources must be properly allocated.

GaussDB(DWS) provides the resource management function. You can put resources into different resource pools, which are isolated from each other. Then, you can associate database users with these resource pools. When a user starts a SQL query, the query will be transferred to the resource pool associated with the user. You can specify the number of queries that can be concurrently executed in a resource pool, the upper limit of memory used for a single query, and the memory and CPU resources that can be used by a resource pool. In this way, you can limit and isolate the resources occupied by different workloads, properly utilizing resources to process hybrid database loads and achieve high query performance. After a cluster is converted into a logical cluster, you can create, modify, or delete a resource pool in the logical cluster.

## NOTICE

- This feature is supported only by clusters of version 8.0.0 or later.
- Resources cannot be managed during offline scale-out. If a resource management plan is enabled, stop it before performing offline scale-out.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support resource management.

## **Enabling or Disabling Resource Management**

You can enable or disable resource management, and configure the maximum global concurrency. **Max. Concurrent Queries** refers to the maximum concurrent queries on a single CN. If you disable **Resource Management**, all resource management functions will be unavailable.

## **Resource Management Functions**

The resource management functions of GaussDB(DWS) can be classified into the following types based on managed resources:

• Computing resource management. It is implemented using resource pools. Computing resources are isolated and controlled to prevent cluster-level issues caused by abnormal SQL queries. Computing resource management includes concurrency management, memory management, CPU management, and exception rules. For details, see **Resource Pool**.

- Storage space management: Storage is managed at user and schema level to prevent disk exhaustion, which makes the database read only. For details, see Workspace Management.
- Resource management plan: Resources are managed automatically based on a preconfigured plan, which can flexibly cope with complex scenarios. For details, see **Importing or Exporting a Resource Management Plan**.

The resource management functions of GaussDB(DWS) can be classified into the following types based on when they are implemented:

• Management before a query

The service checks whether there are sufficient resources for a query. If there are, the query can be executed. If there are not, the query waits in a queue, and can be executed only after resources are released by other queries. Concurrency and memory are managed in this phase.

• Management during a query

During query execution, resources used by the query are managed and controlled to prevent cluster exceptions caused by time-consuming SQL statements. Memory, CPU, storage space, and exception rules are managed in this phase.

## Simple and Complex Queries

GaussDB(DWS) supports fine-grained resource management. Before resource management is implemented, queries are classified into complex queries (with long execution time and high resource consumption) and simple queries (with short execution time and low resource consumption). Simple and complex queries also differ in their estimated memory usage.

- The estimated memory usage of a simple query is less than 32 MB.
- The estimated memory usage of a complex query is 32 MB or higher.

In a hybrid load database, complex queries often occupy a large number of resources for a long time. A simple query queued after a complex query is time consuming, because it has to wait for the complex query to complete and resources to be freed up. To improve execution efficiency and system throughput, GaussDB(DWS) provides the short query acceleration function, managing simple queries separately.

- If short query acceleration is enabled, simple queries and complex queries are managed separately. Simple queries do not need to compete with complex queries for resources.
- If short query acceleration is disabled, simple and complex queries are under the same resource management rules.

To prevent a large number of simple queries from consuming too many resources during acceleration, concurrency management is performed on the queries. Resource management is not performed, because it may affect query performance and system throughput.

### 

Queries are categorized based on estimated memory usage, but the estimation does not equal the actual usage, nor does it reflect the query duration or CPU usage. In resource pools that are insensitive to performance and only run specific services, you can disable short query acceleration to manage resources and handle exceptions for simple queries.

## 8.5.2 Resource Pool

## 8.5.2.1 Feature Description

GaussDB(DWS) resource pools provide concurrency management, memory management, CPU management, and exception rules.

## **Concurrency Management**

Concurrency represents the maximum number of concurrent queries in a resource pool. Concurrency management can limit the number of concurrent queries to reduce resource contention and improve resource utilization.

In the **Short Query Configuration** area, you can enable or disable the short query acceleration function. To change the number of simple statements (-1 by default. **0** or -1 indicates that the concurrent short queries are not controlled), you can enable short query acceleration.

The concurrency management rules are as follows:

- If short query acceleration is enabled, complex queries are under resource pool concurrency control, and simple queries are under short query concurrency control.
- If short query acceleration is disabled, complex and simple queries are both under resource pool concurrency control. Short query concurrency control is invalid.

#### **Memory Management**

Each resource pool occupies a certain percentage of memory.

Memory management aims to prevent out of memory (OOM) in a database, isolate the memory of different resource pools, and to control memory usage. Memory is managed from the following aspects:

• Global memory management

To prevent OOM, set the global memory upper limit (**max\_process\_memory**) to a proper value. Global memory management before a query controls memory usage to prevent OOM management. Global memory management during a query prevents errors during query execution.

– Management before a query

The service checks the estimated memory usage of a query in the slow queue, and compares it with the actual usage. The estimation will be adjusted if it is smaller than the actual usage. Before a query is executed, the service checks whether the available memory is sufficient for the query. If yes, the query can be executed directly. If no, the query needs to be queued and executed after other queries release resources. - Management during a query

During a query, the service checks whether the requested memory exceeds a certain limit. If yes, an error will be reported, and memory occupied by the query will be released.

Resource pool memory management

Resource pool memory management puts a limit on dedicated quotas. A workload queue can only use the memory allocated to it, and cannot use idle memory in other resource pools.

The resource pool memory is allocated in percentage. The value range is 0 to 100. The value **0** indicates that the resource pool does not perform memory management. The value **100** indicates that the resource pool performs memory management and can use all the global memory.

The sum of memory percentages allocated to all resource pools cannot exceed 100. Resource pool memory management is performed only before a query in the slow queue starts. It works in a way similar to the global memory management before a query. Before a query in the slow queue in a resource pool is executed, its memory usage is estimated. If the estimation is greater than the resource pool memory, the query needs to be queued and can be executed only after earlier queries in the pool are complete and resources released.

## **CPU Management**

CPU share and CPU limit can be managed.

- CPU share: If the system is heavily loaded, CPU resources are allocated to resource pools based on the specific CPU shares. If the system not busy, this configuration does not take effect.
- CPU limit: It specifies the maximum number of CPU cores used by a resource pool. The resource usage of jobs in the resource pool cannot exceed this limit no matter whether the system is busy or not.

In the Resource Configuration area, you can modify the CPU time limit and CPU usage limit.

Choose either of the preceding management methods as needed. In CPU share management, CPUs can be shared and fully utilized, but resource pools are not isolated and may affect the query performance of each other. In CPU limit management, the CPUs of different resource pools are isolated, but this may result in the waste of idle resources.

#### **NOTE**

The CPU limit is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.

## **Exception Rules**

To avoid query blocking or performance deterioration, you can configure exception rules to let the service automatically identify and handle abnormal queries, preventing slow SQL statements from occupying too many resources for a long time.

In the **Associated Exception Rules** area, you can view the exception rules bound to the current resource pool, bind new exception rules, and unbind existing exception rules. For more information, see **Exception parameters**.

#### **NOTE**

- The cluster version 8.2.1 and later supports downgradation of exception rules. All exception rules support downgradation behaviors. After downgradation, only network resource preemption is downgraded to a low priority. Downgraded network queries are scheduled only when there is no normal queries.
- Only clusters of version 8.2.0 or later support association and unbinding of exception rules.

Parameter	Description	Value Range (0 Means No Limit)	Operation
Blocking Time	Job blocking time. It refers to the total time spent in global and local concurrent queuing. The unit is second. For example, if the blocking time is set to 300s, a job executed by a user in the resource pool will be terminated after being blocked for 300 seconds.	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Execution Time	Time that has been spent in executing the job, in seconds. For example, if <b>Time required</b> <b>for execution</b> is set to 100s, a job executed by a user in the resource pool will be terminated after being executed for more than 100 seconds.	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Total CPU time on all DNs.	Total CPU time spent in executing a job on all DNs, in seconds.	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Interval for Checking CPU Skew Rate	Interval for checking the CPU skew, in seconds. This parameter must be set together with <b>Total CPU Time</b> <b>on All DNs</b> .	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited

#### Table 8-17 Exception rule parameters

Parameter	Description	Value Range (0 Means No Limit)	Operation
Total CPU Time Skew Rate on All DNs	CPU time skew rate of a job executed on DNs. The value depends on the setting of Interval for Checking CPU Skew Rate.	An integer in the range 1 to 100. The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Data Spilled to Disk Per DN	Allowed maximum job data spilled to disks on a DN. The unit is MB. <b>NOTE</b> This rule is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later.	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Average CPU Usage Per DN	Average CPU usage of a job on each DN. If <b>Interval for</b> <b>Checking CPU Skew Rate</b> is configured, the interval takes effect for this parameter. If the interval is not configured, the check interval is 30 seconds by default. <b>NOTE</b> This rule is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later.	An integer in the range 1 to 100. The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited
Maximum Bandwidth on a Single DN	Maximum network bandwidth (MB) for a job on a single DN. <b>NOTE</b> This rule is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.1 or later.	An integer in the range 1 to 2,147,483,647 . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	Terminated, Downgraded, or Not limited

## 8.5.2.2 Creating a Resource Pool

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Clusters**. Click the name of a cluster.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management Configurations.
- Step 4 Click Add Resource Pool.

**NOTE** 

Up to 63 resource pools can be created.

**Step 5** Configure the resource pool. For more information, see **Table 8-18**.

## Table 8-18 Resource pool parameters

Parameter	Description	Defa ult Valu e		
Name	Resource pool name	-		
CPU Resource (%)	<ul> <li>CPU share: Percentage of CPU time that can be used by users associated with the current resource pool to execute jobs. The value is an integer ranging from 1 to 99.</li> <li>CPU limit: Maximum percentage of CPU cores used</li> </ul>			
	by a database user in a resource pool. The value is an integer ranging from 0 to 100. <b>0</b> indicates no limit.			
	<ul> <li>NOTE</li> <li>The sum of the parameter values of all the resource pools cannot exceed 99%. If there is only one resource pool, the CPU share parameter does not take effect.</li> </ul>			
	• The CPU share parameter takes effect only when CPU contention occurs. For example, resource pools A and B are bound to CPU 1. If A and B are both running, the parameter takes effect. If there is only A running, the parameter does not take effect.			
	• The sum of the CPU limits of all the resource pools cannot exceed 100%. The default value is 0.			
	<ul> <li>The CPU limit is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>You are not advised to allocate multiple dedicated resource pools when the number of CPU cores is small. The minimum value of the dedicated CPU quota is 1. If the number of CPU cores is small and the resource pool created earlier has used up the remaining CPU cores, the resource pool created later will share the CPU cores of the previous resource pool. As a result, the CPU ratio may be inconsistent with the actual CPU ratio.</li> <li>Assume that the cluster has two CPU cores and three resource pools are set up with CPU allocation ratios of 15%, 25%, and 60%. The first core is assigned 1 unit (minimum value), the second core is also assigned 1 unit, and the third core is assigned 1 unit as well, with no additional CPU cores available, sharing the previous CPU.</li> </ul>			
Memory Resource (%)	Percentage of the memory that can be used by a resource pool.	0 (not		
	You can manage memory and query concurrency separately or jointly. Under joint management, jobs can be delivered only when both the memory and concurrency conditions are met.	limit ed)		

Parameter	Description	Defa ult Valu e
Storage Resource (MB)	Size of the available space for permanent tables. This parameter indicates the total tablespace of all DNs in a resource pool. Available space of a single DN = Configured value/Number of DNs.	-1 (not limit ed)
Complex Statement Concurrency	Maximum number of concurrent queries in a resource pool. You can manage memory and query concurrency separately or jointly. Under joint management, jobs can be delivered only when both the memory and concurrency conditions are met.	10
Network Bandwidth Weight	<ul> <li>Weight for network scheduling. The value is an integer ranging from 1 to 2147483647. The default value is -1.</li> <li>CAUTION</li> <li>Only clusters of 8.2.1 and later versions support the network bandwidth weight feature. Unfortunately, storage-compute decoupled clusters do not support this.</li> </ul>	-1 (not limit ed)

**Step 6** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

## 8.5.2.3 Modifying a Resource Pool

You can modify the parameters of a resource pool on the resource management page.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management Configurations.
- Step 4 In the Resource Pools drop-down list, click the name of a resource pool, including Short Query Configuration, Resource Configuration, Associated Exception Rules, and Associated User.
- **Step 5** Modify the short query configuration. Set the parameters as required and click **Save** on the right.

Parameter	Description	Value
Short Query Acceleration	Whether to enable short query acceleration. This function is enabled by default.	Enable

Parameter	Description	Value
Simple Statement Concurrency	A short query is a job whose estimated memory used for execution is less than 32 MB. The default value <b>-1</b> indicates that the job is not controlled.	10

## **Step 6** Modify the resource configuration.

1. Click **Edit** on the right and modify the parameters according to **Table 8-19**.

 Table 8-19 Resource pool parameters

Parameter	Description	Defa ult Valu e
Name	Resource pool name.	-
CPU Share	<ul> <li>Percentage of CPU time that can be used by users associated with the current resource pool to execute jobs. The value is an integer ranging from 1 to 99.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>The sum of the parameter values of all the resource pools cannot exceed 99%. If there is only one resource pool, the CPU share parameter does not take effect.</li> <li>The CPU share parameter takes effect only when CPU contention occurs. For example, resource pools A and B are bound to CPU 1. If A and B are both running, the parameter takes effect.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-
CPU Limit	<ul> <li>Maximum percentage of CPU cores used by a database user in a resource pool. The value is an integer ranging from 0 to 100. 0 indicates no limit.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>The sum of the CPU limits of all the resource pools cannot exceed 100%. The default value is 0.</li> <li>Only clusters of 8.1.3 and later versions support the dedicated CPU limit.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-
Memory Resource (%)	Percentage of the memory that can be used by a resource pool. You can manage memory and query concurrency separately or jointly. Under joint management, jobs can be delivered only when both the memory and concurrency conditions are met.	0 (not limit ed)
Storage Resource (MB)	Size of the permanent tablespace that can be used. This parameter indicates the total tablespace of all DNs in a resource pool. Available space of a single DN = Configured value/Number of DNs.	-1 (not limit ed)

Parameter	Description	Defa ult Valu e
Complex Statement Concurrency	Maximum number of concurrent queries in a resource pool. You can manage memory and query concurrency separately or jointly. Under joint management, jobs can be delivered only when both the memory and concurrency conditions are met.	10
Network Bandwidth Weight	<ul> <li>Weight for network scheduling. The value is an integer ranging from 1 to 2147483647. The default value is -1.</li> <li>CAUTION Only clusters of 8.2.1 and later versions support the network bandwidth weight feature. Unfortunately, storage-compute decoupled clusters do not support this. </li> </ul>	-1 (not limit ed)

## 

The CPU limit is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.

2. Click OK.

**Step 7** Associate exception rules.

- 1. Click Associated Exception Rules on the left.
- 2. Select the exception rules to be associated from the current exception rule list. You can select multiple exception rules at a time.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. To unbind an exception rule, click **Disassociate Rule**.

#### **NOTE**

- Only clusters of version 8.2.0 or later support association and unbinding of exception rules.
- The default exception rules take effect for users not associated with any resource pools, and for users whose resource pools do not have any exception rules configured. If a user-defined rule is associated with a resource pool, this rule prevails in the pool.
  - The default exception rules are supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later. After a cluster of an earlier version is upgraded to version 8.2.0 or later, the default exception rules do not take effect. You can create exception rules as needed.
  - The cluster version 8.2.1 supports downgradation of exception rules. All exception rules support downgradation behaviors. After downgradation, only network resource preemption is downgraded to a low priority. Downgraded network queries are scheduled only when there is no normal queries.
  - A resource pool can be associated with up to 16 exception rules.
- A resource pool can be associated with multiple groups of exception rules, which work in an OR way. One group of exception rules works if all its conditions are met. For example, a resource pool is associated with two groups of rules. One group specifies elapsedtime=2400, and the other group specifies elapsedtime=1200 and memsize=2000. If the execution time of a job reaches 1,200 seconds and the memory usage reaches 2,000 MB, or if the execution time reaches 2,400 seconds, the job will be terminated.

#### Step 8 Associate users.

- 1. Click **User Association** on the left.
- 2. In the current user list, select the users to be associated. You can select multiple users at a time.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. To disassociate a user, click **Disassociate User**.

#### D NOTE

- The resources used by a user to run jobs can be controlled only after the user is added to a resource pool.
- A database user can be added to only one resource pool. Users removed from a resource pool can be added to another pool.
- In the user binding list, the lock status can be unlocked, locked, or unknown. In versions before 8.5.0.100, only "Unknown" is shown for user lock status. A locked user cannot be chosen for association as the selection button is disabled. An unknown user can be selected, but successful binding depends on the user's actual lock status.
- Database administrators cannot be associated.
- If no resource pools are associated with a user, the user will be associated with default\_pool by default, and its resource usage will be restricted by default\_pool. The default\_pool will be automatically created after resource management is enabled.

----End

## 8.5.2.4 Deleting a Resource Pool

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management Configurations.
- **Step 4** In the **Resource Pools** area on the left, click the name of a resource pool.

#### Step 5 Click Delete Resource Pool.

D NOTE

Deleting a resource pool that is associated with a database user is not allowed. To delete the resource pool, you need to first disassociate it from the database user.

----End

## 8.5.3 Resource Management Plan

## 8.5.3.1 Managing Resource Management Plans

### Overview

The resource management plan is an advanced resource management feature provided by GaussDB(DWS). You can create a resource management plan, add multiple stages to the plan, and configure different queue resource ratios for the stages. After a plan is started, it automatically changes the resource configurations in different stages as scheduled. If you need to run services in different stages with different proportions of resources, you can create a resource management plan to automatically change resource configurations in different stages.

#### D NOTE

Resource management plans are supported in version 8.1.0.100 or later.

## **Creating a Resource Management Plan**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- Step 4 Click to the Resource Management Plans tab and click Add.
- Step 5 Enter a plan name and click OK.

#### NOTICE

- Before creating a resource management plan, you must design and create a resource pool. For details, see **Creating a Resource Pool**.
- You can create up to 10 resource management plans.

----End

## Starting or Stopping a Resource Management Plan

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- Step 4 Switch to the Resource Management Plans tab page and click Start/Stop.
- **Step 5** After confirming that the information is correct, click **OK** in the dialog box that is displayed to start or stop the plan.

#### NOTICE

- Only one plan can be started for each cluster.
- A plan must have at least two stages before it can be started.

----End

#### Viewing the Execution Logs of a Resource Management Plan

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Clusters**. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 4** Click **Resource Management Plans**. In the plan execution logs area, click **View** to view the plan execution logs.

----End

#### **Deleting a Resource Management Plan**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 4** Click **Resource Management Plans** and click **Delete** to delete the current resource management plan.

#### NOTICE

You cannot delete a running resource management plan.

----End

## 8.5.3.2 Managing Resource Management Plan Stages

#### Prerequisites

The following conditions must be met when you add or modify a resource management plan:

- The total CPU share of all resource pools does not exceed 99%.
- The total CPU limit of all resource pools does not exceed 100%.

**NOTE** 

- The CPU usage limit can be configured only in 8.1.3 and later versions.
- The default start time is the UTC time. The next execution time is your local time.

#### Adding a Resource Management Plan Stage

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Clusters**. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- Step 4 Go to the plan details page and click Add in the Plan stage area. On the Add Stage page, enter the stage name and configure the resource information. Confirm the configuration and click OK.

#### NOTICE

- Stages cannot be added to a running resource management plan.
- You can add a maximum of 48 stages for each plan.
- The switchover time of all phases in a plan cannot be the same.
- Configure the time, date, and month. Do not set an invalid date, for example, February 30.

Add Stage	e					>
* Stage						
* Month	1 11 11 All	2 3 3 12	4 5	6 7 7	8 ¥ 9 ¥	10
* Day	1 11 21 31 V All	2 3 12 13 2 22 23 2	4 5 14 15 24 25	6     7       16     17       26     27	8 9 18 19 28 29	10 20 30
★ Start Time	00:00:00 Note: The UTC to	(UTC) (UTC) me is used by default. Se	it the policy based on the	e time zone and time diff	erence as required.Lear	m more
Selected Resou	urce Pools				Enter a reso	ource pool name. Q
Reso	urce Pool Name	Share	Limit	Memory (%)	Concurrency	Simple Stateme
OK Cancel						

----End

## Modifying a Resource Management Plan Stage

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- Step 4 Switch to the Resource Management Plans tab page and click Modify in the **Operation** column of the plan stage.
- **Step 5** Modify parameters, such as the stage changing time and resource configurations.

Modify Sta	ge stag	e1									×
	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	
	31										
	All										
★ Start Time	00:00:00	<b>(</b>	JTC)								
	Note: The l	JTC time is us	ed by defaul	t. Set the poli	cy based on	the time zor	ne.				
Selected Resour	ce Pools								Enter a reso	urce pool nam	ie. Q
Resou	rce Po	Shared Que	ota Lim	it	Memory	(%)	Concurrency	/ Simp	ole State	Network	band
pool1		20	0		0		10	-1		4	
					~	$\approx$					
Available Queues	S								Enter a reso	urce pool nam	ie. Q
Resou	rce Po	Shared Que	ota Lim	it	Memory	(%)	Concurrency	simp	ole State	Network	band
pool2		24	0		0		10	-1		-1	
					OK	Cancel					

 $\times$ 

#### D NOTE

Only clusters of the version 8.2.1 and later support the network bandwidth weight.

----End

## Manually Changing the Resource Management Plan Stage

If a running plan needs to be switched to a stage in advance, you can manually do it.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 4** Click **Resource Management Plans** and click the switch button in the plan overview area, and select the target stage.

Plan Overview	
Plan Status	Started
Current Stage	test_stage1 Switch over
Current Time	2022-12-27 1 test_stage1 test_stage2

----End

## Importing/Exporting Resource Management Plan Stages

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Clusters**. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 4** Switch to the **Resource Management Plans** tab page. In the plan stages area, click **Import/Export** to import or export a resource management plan stage.

#### NOTICE

- Configurations cannot be imported to a running resource management plan.
- Ensure there is a resource pool before import.

----End

## **Deleting a Resource Management Plan Stage**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) management console.
- Step 2 Choose Clusters. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 4** Switch to the **Resource Management Plans** tab page and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column of the plan stage.

----End

#### NOTICE

Stages in a running resource management plan cannot be deleted.

## 8.5.4 Workspace Management

## Overview

Your cluster may run out of space if disk usage is not controlled, resulting in cluster exceptions and service interruption. Once disks are full, it takes long and huge efforts to recover workloads. Setting a database to read-only can reduce disk usage, but it also interrupts services. To solve this problem, GaussDB(DWS) provides multi-dimensional storage management. You can limit the permanent space that can be occupied by a schema; and can limit the usage of permanent space, temporary space, and operator space for a user.

- Schema level: Schema space management allows you to query database and schema space information in a cluster and modify the total schema space.
- User level: User space management allows you to limit users' space usage, preventing task execution from being blocked due to insufficient storage space. When you create a user in GaussDB(DWS), you can specify the space available to the user. The following types of storage space can be managed:
  - Permanent space (PREM SPACE)

Space occupied by permanent tables (non-temporary tables) created by users

- Temporary space (TEMP SPACE)

Space occupied by temporary tables created by users

- Operator spill space (SPILL SPACE)

During query execution, if the actual memory usage is greater than estimated, the query may be spilled to disks. The storage space occupied in this case is called operator spill space. You can control a user's operator spill space usage during query execution.

#### **NOTE**

- This feature is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1 or later.
- Currently, the GaussDB(DWS) management plane only supports schema space management.

## Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Clusters**. Click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Basic Information** page and click the **Resource Management** tab in the navigation pane on the left.
- Step 4 On the Schema Space Manage page, select a database.
- **Step 5** In the row where the scheme to be edited resides, click **Edit** and modify the space limit.

Step 6 Click OK.

D NOTE

- The space quota limits only common users but not database administrators. Therefore, when the used space is equal to the space limit, the actual used space may exceed the specified value.
- Quota for a single DN = Total quota/Number of DNs. Therefore, the configured value may be slightly different from the displayed value.

----End

## 8.5.5 Exception Rules

## **Feature Description**

Some complex statements may consume a large number of resources for computing, leading to performance deterioration of the entire GaussDB(DWS) database. To maintain system stability, GaussDB(DWS) allows you to customize exception rules, and terminate/downgrade the tasks that hit the rules. You can use SQL syntax to configure exception rules based on your resource and workload conditions, and associate the rules with resource pools. The system has a default exception rule to maintain stability when resources are insufficient, in case no user-defined rule is set up.

#### Figure 8-5 Exception rules

Resource Pool Workload Plans Schema Space Managemen	# Exception Rule		
Add			Enter an exception rule name Q
Rule:	Associated Resource Pool	Operation Upon Exception	Operation
✓ defaul_cpu_percent		Terminated	Edit Delete
✓ defaul_splitze		Terminaled	Edit Delete
11 • Total Records: 2 < 1 >			

#### NOTICE

- This feature is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later. The exception rule "Maximum Bandwidth on a Single DN" is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.1 or later.
- The cluster version 8.2.1 supports downgradation of exception rules. All exception rules support downgradation behaviors. After downgradation, only network resource preemption is downgraded to a low priority. Downgraded network queries are scheduled only when there is no normal queries.
- The default exception rules are supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later. After a cluster of an earlier version is upgraded to version 8.2.0 or later, the default exception rules do not take effect. You can create exception rules as needed.
- The default exception rule **default\_memsize** is added to the cluster version 9.1.0.100, but it takes effect only in the newly installed cluster version 9.1.0.100 or later. When the cluster is upgraded to 9.1.0.100 or later, the default exception rules do not take effect. You can create rules as required.
- A resource pool can be associated with multiple groups of exception rules, which work in an OR way. One group of exception rules works if all its conditions are met. For example, a resource pool is associated with two groups of rules. One group specifies elapsedtime=2400, and the other group specifies elapsedtime=1200 and memsize=2000. If the execution time of a job reaches 1200 seconds and the memory usage reaches 2,000 MB, or if the execution time reaches 2,400 seconds, the job will be terminated.
- Rules in the same exception rule group take effect only if all the conditions are met. For example, if you set **elapsedtime=1000** and **memsize=500**, it indicates that a job is terminated only if its execution time reaches 1,000 seconds and its memory usage reaches 500 MB. If only one of the thresholds is reached, the job will not be terminated.
- The default exception rules take effect for users not associated with any resource pools, and for users whose resource pools do not have any exception rules configured. If a user-defined rule is associated with a resource pool, this rule prevails in the pool.

## **User-defined Exception Rules and Default Exception Rules**

The following table describes the user-defined exception rules and default exception rules supported by the current GaussDB(DWS) version.

Exception Threshol d Type	Description	Value Range (-1 disables a parameter. 0 is not supported.)	Operatio n upon Exception
Blocking Time	Job blocking duration, in seconds. The time includes the total time spent in global and local concurrent queuing. The queuing time of each substatement (if any) in a statement is also counted.	-1 or 1 to INT64_MAX-1	Terminate / Downgra de
Execution Time	Execution duration of a job, in seconds. The time indicates the duration from the start point of execution to the current time point. The execution time of each substatement (if any) in a statement is also counted.	-1 or 1 to INT64_MAX-1	Terminate / Downgra de
Total CPU time on all DNs.	Total CPU time spent in executing a job on all DNs, in seconds.	-1 or 1 to INT64_MAX-1	Terminate / Downgra de
Total CPU Time Skew Rate on All DNs	CPU time skew of a job executed on DNs. The value depends on the setting of <b>elapsedtime</b> . The system starts to check the CPU time skew of a job every 5 seconds after the job execution time reaches <b>elapsedtime</b> .	- <b>1</b> , or 1 to 100	Terminate / Downgra de
Average CPU Usage Per DN	Average CPU usage of a job executed across all DNs.	- <b>1</b> , or 1 to 100	Terminate / Downgra de
Data Spilled to Disk Per DN	Allowed maximum job data spilled to disks on a DN. The unit is MB.	-1 or 1 to INT64_MAX-1	Terminate / Downgra de
Maximum Bandwidt h on a Single DN	Maximum network bandwidth (MB) for a job on a single DN.	-1 or 1 to INT64_MAX-1	Terminate / Downgra de

Table 8-20 User-defined exception rules

Rule Name	Description	Operation upon Exception
default_cpu _percent	This rule is triggered if multiple jobs are running in a cluster, and the CPU usage of a resource pool reaches 90%. (If no resource pools are configured, the total CPU usage of the cluster is checked). This rule terminates the job whose execution time reached 15 minutes and average CPU usage exceeded 50%.	Terminate
default_spill size	This rule is triggered if the size of data spilled to disk on a single DN reaches 1/10 of the instance space during job execution in the cluster.	Terminate
default_me msize	This event is triggered when the memory used by a job on a single DN reaches 80% or more of the minimum available memory of all DNs in the default cluster. <b>This rule is supported only by</b> <b>clusters of version 9.1.0.100 or later.</b>	Terminate

 Table 8-21
 Default exception rules

## **Creating an Exception Rule**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Resource Management** and switch to the **Exception Rules** tab page.
- **Step 4** Click **Add** to add an exception rule.
- Step 5 Click OK.

**NOTE** 

- After an exception rule is created, it does not take effect immediately. You need to associate it to a resource pool. For details, see **1.** Associate exception rules.
- The cluster version 8.2.1 supports downgradation of exception rules. All exception rules support downgradation behaviors. After downgradation, only network resource preemption is downgraded to a low priority. Downgraded network queries are scheduled only when there are no normal queries.

#### ----End

## Editing an Exception Rule

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Resource Management** and switch to the **Exception Rules** tab page.

**Step 4** Locate the row that contains the target exception rule and click **Edit** in the **Operation** column to edit the exception rule.

**NOTE** 

- When editing an exception rule, if you want to delete an exception rule threshold, clear the value or set it to **-1**.
- If the exception threshold is changed during job execution, the new threshold will take effect for the statement being executed.

----End

#### **Deleting an Exception Rule**

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Resource Management** and switch to the **Exception Rules** tab page.
- **Step 4** Locate the row that contains the target exception rule and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column to delete the rule.

**NOTE** 

If an exception rule has been associated to a resource pool, the exception rule cannot be deleted. You need to disassociate the exception rule from the resource pool before deleting it.

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

## 8.5.6 Using the Query Filter

## **Functions**

When using GaussDB(DWS), performance degradation or even complete unavailability of the cluster system can occur due to slow SQL queries. To address this, GaussDB(DWS) offers a query filter function that allows you to intercept problematic statements by creating filtering rules. The filter can block slow SQL queries based on their SQL ID. Additionally, if an exception rule is triggered a certain number of times, the corresponding SQL ID is automatically added to the blacklist for interception. For details, see **Exception Rules**. The system also supports other interception criteria, such as SQL hash and regular expression matching. Furthermore, interception rules can be customized, allowing them to be applied to specific users or databases.

#### **NOTE**

This function is supported only by clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later.

## Figure 8-6 Query filter

Resource Pool	Workload Plans	Schema Space Management	Exception Rule	Query Filter					
Database gaussdt	• • • •								Create
Q Select a proper	ty or enter a keyword.								0
Rule Name 🗧	)	SQL ID \varTheta	SQL Hash \varTheta		Statement Type \varTheta	SQL 🖯	Created \ominus	Operation	
					No data available.				

## **Creating a Query Filter**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster to access the **Basic Information** page.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management and click Query Filter.
- Step 4 Click Create to add a query filter.

#### Figure 8-7 Adding a query filter

Create			
Database	demo	✓ ★ Rule Name	3
Name			
Match SQL	SOL SQL ID SQL Hash	* SQL	
Туре			
Statement	All types	✓ Bind User	Not Bind ~
Туре			
Client Name		Client IP	
		Address	
Maximum		Maximum	
number of		number of	
partitions		tables	
Maximum		Task Type	
Number of			
Rows			
Resource	Not Bind	✓ Max	
Pool Name		Concurrent	cies
A *			
			Cancel

 Table 8-22
 Parameter description

Parameter	Mandator y	Description
Database Name	Yes	Select a database from the drop-down list.
Rule Name	Yes	Name of the query filter. The value can contain 3 to 63 characters, including uppercase letters, lowercase letters, underscores (_), and dollar signs (\$). The value must be unique.

Parameter	Mandator y	Description
Match SQL Type	Yes	<ul> <li>You can select SQL, SQL ID, or QL Hash.</li> <li>SQL: Query the SQL statement that matches the filtering rule.</li> <li>SQL ID: Query the unique_sql_id value that</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>matches the filtering rule.</li> <li>SQL Hash: Query the sql_hash value that matches the filtering rule.</li> </ul>
Statement Type	No	You can select <b>All types</b> (default), <b>SELECT</b> , <b>UPDATE</b> , <b>INSERT</b> , <b>DELETE</b> , and <b>MERGE</b> .
Bind User	No	The setting takes effect for a specified user.
Client Name	No	Name of the application that is connected to the database. You can assign a custom application name to each connection, such as <b>gsql</b> .
Client IP Address	No	The setting takes effect for a specified IP address.
Maximum number of partitions	No	Estimated maximum number of partitions on the node to be scanned.
Maximum number of tables	No	Estimated maximum number of tables to be scanned.
Maximum Number of Rows	No	Estimated maximum number of rows on a node to be scanned.
Task Type	No	Type of a task that is actively marked.
Resource Pool Name	No	Name of the resource pool that matches the filtering rule.
Max. Concurrencies	No	Maximum number of concurrent statements corresponding to the filtering rule.
Alarm	No	Whether to enable alarm reporting for filtering rules.

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

## Modifying a Query Filter

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster to access the **Basic Information** page.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management and click Query Filter.
- Step 4 Click Edit in the Operation column of the target filter to modify it.
- **Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

#### Figure 8-8 Modifying a query filter

Databaca	anuredb				+ Pule Name			
Name	gaussob			× .	× Rule Name			
Name								
Match SQL	SQL	SQL ID	SQL Hash		* SQL			
Туре								
Statement	All types			~	Bind User	Not Bind	~	h
Туре								
Client Name					Client IP			
Client Name					Address			
Maximum					Maximum			
number of					number of			
partitions					tables			
Maximum					Task Type			
Number of								
Rows								
Resource	Not Bind			~	Max			
Pool Name					Concurrencies			
*****								
							Cancel	0
								_

#### ----End

### **Deleting a Query Filter**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster to access the **Basic Information** page.
- Step 3 Choose Resource Management and click Query Filter.
- Step 4 Click delete in the Operation column of the target filter to delete it.
- Step 5 Click OK.
  - ----End

## 8.6 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Logical Clusters

## 8.6.1 Logical Cluster Overview

#### Concepts

A physical cluster can be divided into Node Groups, which are logical clusters. All physical nodes in a physical cluster are divided into multiple logical clusters. A logical cluster is essentially a node group that contains one or more physical

nodes. Each physical node belongs to only one logical cluster, and user data tables can only be distributed within the same logical cluster. The data of each logical cluster is isolated from the others. The physical resources allocated to a logical cluster are mainly used for operations on its own data tables, but also for interactive queries with other logical clusters. An enterprise can deploy services on different logical clusters to implement unified service management, and meanwhile isolate the data and resources of services.

Logical clusters are created by dividing nodes of a physical cluster. Tables in a database can be allocated to different physical nodes by logical cluster. A logical cluster can contain tables from multiple databases. **Figure 8-9** shows the relationships between logical clusters, databases, and tables.

An elastic cluster is a cluster that always exists in logical cluster mode and consists of nodes that are not part of any logical cluster. It is a special node group that can have multiple or zero DNs. An elastic cluster cannot be manually created. When the first logical cluster is created in a physical cluster, an elastic cluster is also automatically created and all physical nodes not belonging to the logical cluster are automatically added to the elastic cluster. DNs in the elastic cluster will be used for logical clusters created later. To create a logical cluster, ensure that your logical cluster has DNs. (DNs are not required only when you create the first logical cluster in physical cluster mode.) You can add new physical nodes to the elastic cluster through scale-out.



#### Figure 8-9 Relationships between logical clusters, databases, and tables

## **NOTE**

- Logical clusters are supported in 8.1.0.100 or later.
- You are advised to allocate tables in a database to the same logical cluster.
- A logical cluster is not an independent sub-cluster. It can isolate data, resource, and permissions, but cannot be independently operated or maintained.
- The Change all specifications option does not support logical clusters.
- If the original physical cluster contains data, it is not possible to switch the logical cluster of a cluster. Ensure the original physical cluster is empty during the switchover.

## Logical Cluster Architecture

**Figure 8-10** shows the architecture of a physical cluster divided into multiple logical clusters. Nodes in the physical cluster are divided into Node Groups. The jobs of users 1 and 2 are executed in different Node Groups. The two users can define resource pools within their own logical cluster to control resources (CPU, memory, and I/O) used for different jobs. If some jobs of user 1 need to access the data of user 2, they can access data across Node Groups after being authorized. For a logical cluster, you can configure resources accessible across logical clusters to ensure its resources are sufficient.



#### Figure 8-10 Logical Cluster Architecture

A physical cluster is divided into multiple logical ones. You can define a resource pool for each of them based on service requirements. User tables are not distributed across logical clusters. If services do not access data across logical clusters, they will not compete for resources. Resources can be allocated to jobs in the same logical cluster by using resource pools. If necessary, you can let services access data across logical clusters, and control the resources used for such access to reduce resource competition between jobs within and outside a logical cluster.

After creating a physical cluster, you need to decide whether to divide it into logical clusters. You cannot divide it into logical clusters if you have already created user tables before, because these user tables are distributed on all physical nodes. For more information about the limitations, see **Constraints and Limitations**. If you want to manage an existing cluster (for example, a database cluster built in a version earlier than 8.1.0.100) as a logical cluster, you can upgrade the cluster to 8.1.0.100 or later and then convert all the nodes in the cluster into a single logical cluster. Then, add nodes to the physical cluster and create another logical cluster on the new nodes.

Operations on logical clusters include:

- Adding/Deleting a Logical Cluster:
  - Creating a logical cluster: After converting a physical cluster into a logical cluster, you can group some physical nodes into a logical cluster by specifying the name and the nodes of the logical cluster.

- Deleting a logical cluster: You can delete a logical cluster with a specified name. After the logical cluster is deleted, the released physical nodes are removed from the physical cluster.
- Managing Logical Clusters:
  - Modifying a logical cluster: You can add or remove nodes from a logical cluster as needed.
  - Resource management (logical cluster mode): You can manage resources in a specified logical cluster (supported only by 8.1.3.x and later versions).
  - Scaling out a logical cluster: This operation increases the number of physical nodes in the logical cluster and redistributes tables in the logical cluster to the new physical nodes.
  - Restarting a logical cluster: This operation restarts all DNs in the logical cluster. Considering the impact on the entire physical cluster, the DNs in a logical cluster cannot be stopped or started individually.
  - Scaling in a logical cluster: Select and scale in a host ring from an elastic cluster.
- **Elastically Adding or Deleting a Logical Cluster**: Computing logical clusters can be created and deleted during the scheduled period of time to dynamically scale computing resources.

## **Constraints and Limitations**

- The smallest unit of the creation, scale-out, and scale-in of a logical cluster is a ring. A ring consists of at least three hosts, where the primary, standby, and secondary DNs are deployed.
- During the logical cluster switchover, if the original physical cluster has data, the cluster will be locked. You can run simple DML statements, such as adding, deleting, modifying, and querying data. However, running complex DDL statements, such as operating database objects, will block services and report errors. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- A logical cluster cannot be independently backed up or restored.
- A logical cluster cannot be independently upgraded.
- A physical cluster cannot be rolled back to a physical cluster after it is converted to a logical cluster.
- In logical cluster mode, only logical clusters can be created, and Node Groups cannot be created. In addition, Node Groups cannot be created in a logical cluster.
- O&M operations (creation, deletion, editing, scale-out, scale-in, and restart) of logical clusters cannot be performed concurrently.
- Public database objects (excluding system catalogs, foreign tables, and views) are distributed on all nodes in a physical cluster. After a node of the logical cluster is restarted, the DDL operations performed by other logical clusters on the objects will be interrupted.
- In logical cluster mode, each DN only contains the tables in the logical cluster that the DN belongs to. User-defined functions need to be created on all DNs. Therefore, **%type** cannot be used to reference table field types in the function body.
- In logical cluster mode, the **WITH RECURSIVE** statement cannot be pushed down.

- In logical cluster mode, partitions can be swapped only in the same logical cluster. Partitioned tables and common tables in different logical clusters cannot be swapped.
- In logical cluster mode, if the function parameters or return values contain table types, these table types must belong to the same logical cluster.
- In logical cluster mode, when you create a foreign table using **CREATE TABLE... LIKE**, the source table and the foreign table to be created must be in the same logical cluster.
- In logical cluster mode, tables cannot be created schemas (by using **CREATE SCHEMA... CREATE TABLE** statements). Create a schema, and then create tables in the schema.
- A logical cluster does not support the architecture of one primary node and multiple standby nodes. A logical cluster takes effect only in the architecture of one primary node, one standby node, and one secondary node.
- A logical cluster user cannot access the global temporary tables created by another logical cluster user.
- When a subquery in a query statement is in a different execution cluster than the parent query and includes filter criteria related to the parent query, the filter criteria cannot be applied across clusters in logical cluster mode. This leads to additional operator overhead, potentially resulting in poorer performance compared to a single-cluster setup.

## **Required Permissions on Tools**

The following describes user permissions for database objects in logical clusters:

- The **CREATE ON NODE GROUP** permission can be granted to any user or role for performing operations such as creating tables in a logical cluster.
  - If the schema specified for a created table is a private schema of a user (that is, the schema has the same name as the user and the owner of the schema is the user), the owner of the created table defaults to the user. You do not need to associate the table with a logical cluster.
  - When a user associated with a logical cluster creates a table, if the to group clause is not specified, the table will be created in that logical cluster. The logical cluster associated with the user can be changed.
  - If a user is not associated with any logical cluster, when the user creates a table, the table will be created in the logical cluster specified by default\_storage\_nodegroup. If default\_storage\_nodegroup is set to installation, the table will be created in the first logical cluster. In logical cluster mode, the logical cluster with the smallest OID is set as the first logical cluster. If default\_storage\_nodegroup is not set, its value is installation by default.
  - A storage-compute decoupled cluster supports the creation of read-only logical clusters. If a user is associated with a read-only logical cluster, session-level temporary tables (local temporary tables and volatile temporary tables, excluding global temporary tables) can be created only in the read-only logical cluster. If the user creates other common and foreign tables, the tables will be created in the logical cluster specified by default\_storage\_nodegroup. If default\_storage\_nodegroup is set to installation, the table will be created in the first logical cluster.
- The system administrator can run the ALTER ROLE command to set the default storage nodegroup for each user. For details about the syntax, see ALTER ROLE
- Table creation rules
  - If to group is not specified for a user table but default\_storage\_nodegroup is set, tables will be created in the specified logical cluster.
  - If **default\_storage\_nodegroup** is set to **installation**, tables will be created in the first logical cluster, that is, the logical cluster with the smallest OID.
- The owner of a table can be changed to any user. However, you need to check the schema and node group permissions when performing operations on the table.
- A system administrator can be associated with a logical cluster and can create tables in multiple logical clusters.
  - If the system administrator is associated with a logical cluster and to group is not specified when you create a table, the table will be created in the associated logical cluster by default. If to group is specified, the table is created in the specified logical cluster.
  - If the system administrator is not associated with a logical cluster and to group is not specified, tables are created in the logical cluster of default\_storage\_nodegroup. For details, see the table creation rules.
- System administrator permissions can be granted to a user associated with a logical cluster, but the **table creation rules** also apply.
- The logical cluster permission for accessing non-table objects (such as schemas/sequences/functions/triggers) will not be checked.
- A resource pool must be associated with a logical cluster.
  - A logical cluster can be associated with multiple resource pools but a resource pool can be associated with only one logical cluster.
  - Jobs executed by logical cluster users associated with a resource pool can only use resources in the resource pool.
  - You do not need to create a workload group to define the number of concurrent jobs in a logical cluster. Therefore, workload groups are not required for logical clusters.
- When a logical cluster is deleted, only the table, foreign table, and resource pool objects are deleted.
  - Objects dependent on the tables (including the partly dependent sequences/functions/triggers) in the logical cluster will also be deleted.
  - Logical cluster associations with its users and parent-child tenants will be removed during the process. As a result, the users will be associated with the default **installation** node group and with the default global resource pool.
- A logical cluster user can create a database if granted the permission.

## Replication Table Node Group

A replication table node group is a special node group in logical cluster mode. It can contain one or more logical clusters, but can only create replication tables.

One typical scenario is to create public dimension tables. If multiple logical clusters require some common dimension tables, create a replication table node group and add the common dimension tables to it. The logical clusters contained in the replication table node group can access these dimension tables on the local DNs, with no need to access the tables on other DNs. If a logical cluster is scaled in, the replication table node group will be scaled accordingly. If the logical cluster is deleted, the replication table node group will be scaled in. However, if the replication table node group contains only one logical cluster and the logical cluster is deleted, the replication table node group will also be deleted. In this case, create tables in a logical cluster instead.

Create a replication table node group using the **CREATE NODE GROUP** SQL statement and delete one using **DROP NODE GROUP**. Before deleting a replication table node group, delete all table objects in the node group.

#### **NOTE**

Creation of replication table node groups is supported in 8.1.2 or later.

### **Application Scenarios**

#### Scenario 1: Isolating data with different resource requirements



Figure 8-11 Logical cluster division based on resource requirements

As shown in the preceding figure, data with different resource requirements is stored in different logical clusters, and different logical clusters also support mutual access. This ensures that functions are not affected while resources are isolated.

- Tables T1 and T2 are used to calculate a large amount of data and generate report data (for example, bank batch processing). This process involves large batch import and big data query, which consume a lot of memory and I/O resources of nodes and take a long time. However, such a query does not require high real-time performance. Therefore, the data of these two tables can be separated into a different logical cluster.
- Tables T3 and T4 contain some computing data and real-time data, which are mainly used for service point query and real-time query. These queries need high real-time performance. To prevent the interference of other high-load

operations, the data of these two tables can be separated into a different logical cluster.

• Tables T5 and T6 are mainly used for OLTP operations with high concurrency. Data in these tables is frequently updated and sensitive to I/O. To prevent the impact of big data query on I/O, the data of these two tables can be separated into a different logical cluster.

#### Scenario 2: Isolating data for different services and enhancing the multitenancy of a data cluster

**Figure 8-12** Logical cluster-based multi-service data and multi-tenant management



A large database cluster often stores data for various services. Each service has its own data tables. To allocate resources for different services, you can create multiple tenants. Specifically, assign different service users to different tenants to minimize resource contention among services. As the service scale grows continuously, the number of services in the cluster system also increases. Creating multiple tenants becomes less effective in controlling resource competition. Since each table is distributed across all DNs of a database cluster, every data table operation may involve all DNs, which increases network load and system resource consumption. Simply scaling up the cluster is not enough to solve this problem. Therefore, multiple logical clusters can be created to handle the increasing number of services, as shown in the figure above.

You can create a separate logical cluster and assign new services to it. This way, new services have little impact on existing services. Also, if the service scale in existing logical clusters grows, you can scale out the existing logical clusters.

#### **NOTE**

A logical cluster is not suitable for managing multiple independent database systems. An independent database system requires independent O&M and needs to be managed, monitored, backed up, and upgraded separately. Moreover, faults must be isolated between clusters. Logical clusters cannot achieve independent O&M and complete fault isolation.

# 8.6.2 Adding/Deleting a Logical Cluster

# Adding a Logical Cluster

#### Precautions

- If you access the **Logical Clusters** page for the first time, the metadata of the logical cluster created at the backend is synchronized to the frontend. After the synchronization is complete, you can view information about the logical clusters at the frontend. The logical cluster name is case sensitive. For example, metadata of **lc1** and **LC1** cannot be synchronized.
- The original resource pool configuration is cleared when the cluster is converted from physical to logical. The resource pool information configured after the cluster is converted to a logical cluster will be bound to the logical cluster.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** Enable **Logical Clusters**. The **Logical Clusters** menu item will be displayed in the navigation pane on the left.

Figure 8-13 Logical Cluster switch button

2 &	Cluster ID	a0dd6047-1ef4-400e-aa54-8e5034bcbfd5
Available	Cluster Version	9.1.0.210
Synchronized (9)	Task Information	-
Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0	Enterprise Project	default
4U16G.4DPU	Current Specifications	Decoupled storage and compute   4 vCPUs   16 GB Memory   80 GB Common I/O
	Cluster Description	- 2
UTC+08:00 (Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi) &		
Logical Cluster Mode		
	2 & • Available • Synchronized • Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0 4U16G.4DPU UTC-08:00 (Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi) & Logical Cluster Mode	2 2 Cluster ID Cluster ID Cluster Version Cluster Version Task Information Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0 Total 3   Used 3   Idle 0 Current Specifications Cluster Description UTC-08:00 (Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi) 2 Logical Cluster Mode

- Step 4 Go to the Logical Clusters tab and click Add Logical Cluster.
- **Step 5** Move the ring you want to add from the right to the left panel, enter the logical cluster name, and click **OK**.

----End

# **Deleting Logical Clusters**

#### Precautions

- The first manually added logical cluster cannot be deleted.
- Nodes of the deleted logical cluster are added to the elastic cluster.

#### Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.

- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, switch to the **Logical Clusters** page, locate the row that contains the logical cluster to be deleted, and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.

**NOTE** 

If a read-only logical cluster is manually deleted, the status of the one-off deletion plan changes to the completed state. For a read-only logical cluster that is bound to a periodic addition or deletion plan, the next execution time in the deletion column of the plan is automatically updated to the next period or the end of the period after the plan is manually deleted.

**Step 4** Confirm that all information is correct and click **OK**.

----End

# 8.6.3 Managing Logical Clusters

# **Editing a Logical Cluster**

#### Precautions

- Nodes are added to or removed from a logical cluster by ring.
- At least one ring must be reserved in a logical cluster.
- The ring removed from the logical cluster will be added to the elastic cluster.
- Logical clusters of version 8.1.3 and later support online scale-out. Clusters of version 8.2.1.100 and later support job termination.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Logical Clusters** and click **Edit** in the **Operation** column of the target cluster.
- **Step 4** Add a node to the logical cluster by moving the selected ring from the right to the left, or remove a node from the logical cluster by moving the selected ring from the left to the right, and click **OK**.
- **Step 5** When adding a node, select online or offline scale-out as needed.
- Step 6 If you select online scale-out, you can configure job termination. When job termination is enabled and there is congestion during online scale-out, the system will wait for the specified duration before terminating the congested jobs. The duration value must be an integer ranging from 30 to 1200.

----End

# Managing Resources (in a Logical Cluster)

#### Precautions

The original resource pool configuration is cleared when the cluster is converted from physical to logical. You have to add the resource pool again if you want to configure it after the conversion.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose Logical Cluster Management. In the Operation column of a logical cluster, click Resource Management Configurations. On the displayed page, you can manage resources in a logical cluster. For details, see GaussDB(DWS) Resource Load Management.

----End

#### **Restarting Logical Clusters**

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, switch to the Logical Clusters page, locate the row that contains the logical cluster to be restarted, and click More > Restart in the Operation column.
- **Step 4** Confirm that all information is correct and click **OK**.

----End

## Scaling Out a Logical Cluster

#### Prerequisites

- Logical clusters of version 8.1.3 and later support online scale-out.
- Before a scale-out, you need to enable the logical cluster mode and add a logical cluster.
- After scaling out or scaling in a logical cluster, you need to reconfigure the backup policy for full backup. For details, see Configuring an Automated Snapshot Policy.

#### Procedure

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** On the displayed **Clusters** page, choose **More** > **Scale Node** > **Scale Out**.

Step 3 On the scale-out page, select a logical or elastic cluster. Enabling online scale-out also allows you to enable congested job termination. If congestion occurs during online scale-out and job termination is enabled, the system will wait for the specified duration before terminating congested jobs. The duration value must be an integer between 30 and 1200.

#### **NOTE**

Clusters of version 8.2.1.100 and later support job termination.

----End

### Scaling In a Logical Cluster

#### Constraints

- A host ring with CN nodes cannot be scaled in.
- A host ring with GTM and CM nodes cannot be scaled in.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, switch to the **Logical Clusters** page. Locate the row that contains the target elastic pool and click **Edit** in the **Operation** column to delete nodes from the elastic pool (move the selected ring from the left to the right).
- Step 4 Click OK.

----End

# 8.6.4 Elastically Adding or Deleting a Logical Cluster

#### Context

VMs can be manually added or deleted, and also can be automatically added or deleted. Computing logical clusters can be created and deleted during the scheduled period of time to dynamically scale computing resources.

- A custom scheduled scaling plan creates a logical cluster that provides computing power. Once such logical cluster is associated, user's queries are handled by it, while table creation statements are still managed by the original logical cluster. For instructions on how to configure a custom scheduled scaling plan, see Configuring a Custom Scheduled Scaling Plan.
- An auto scaling plan creates a logical cluster that facilitates parallel expansion. Once such logical cluster is associated with the primary logical cluster, specific queries from the primary logical cluster are routed to the logical cluster, but table creation statements are still executed in the original logical cluster. For how to configure an auto scaling plan, see **Configuring an Auto Scaling Plan**.

To reduce statement queuing time, use parallel expansion. When the primary cluster is overwhelmed by high-concurrency tasks and lacks resources like memory, GaussDB(DWS) will automatically add extra cluster capacity to process the increased read and write statements. The performance and data consistency are consistent for users, regardless of whether the statement is executed on the primary cluster or the parallel extended cluster. You can set up a resource pool to control which statements are directed to a parallel extended cluster. When parallel expansion is enabled, qualifying statements are directed to the concurrent expansion cluster instead of being queued.

#### D NOTE

- You can manually add or delete plans for storage-compute decoupled clusters. For earlier versions, contact technical support to upgrade them.
- Only storage-compute decoupled clusters and ECS clusters of 9.1.0.200 and later versions support auto elastic addition and deletion.

## **Notes and Constraints**

#### Constraints for custom scheduled scaling plans:

- A user can be bound to only one computing logical cluster.
- If a user associated with the read-only logical cluster has workloads in progress when the cluster is deleted, an error may be reported.
- To avoid affecting services and ensure resources are available at the scheduled time, the plan may be skipped if it conflict with O&M operations, and may be executed about 20 minutes earlier than planned if the cluster creation is time-consuming.
- You are advised to manually add nodes to a logical cluster based on the following rules:
  - Optimal configuration for parallel workloads: The number of nodes in an elastic logical cluster is determined based on the historical memory usage of services routed to the cluster. If *n* jobs are to be routed to the elastic logical cluster, the peak memory usage of the *i* job is *m<sub>i</sub>*, the number of nodes in the logical cluster is *N*, and the available memory of a single node is *S*. In this case, you are advised to set the number of nodes in the

elastic logical cluster to  $\sum_{i=0}^{m_i * N/S}$ . You can query the **max\_peak\_memory** field of **GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_INFO** to view the peak memory usage and query the **max\_dynamic\_memory** field of **PGXC\_TOTAL\_MEMORY\_DETAIL** to view the available memory of a single node.

Optimal configuration for serial workloads: The number of nodes in an elastic logical cluster is determined by the job with the highest memory usage in the serial workloads. If the maximum memory usage of a serial job is *M*, the number of nodes in a logical cluster is *N*, and the available memory of a single node is *S*, you are advised to set the number of

elastic logical clusters to  $M^*N/S$ . You can check the peak memory usage of a job and the available memory of a single node by referring to the preceding method.

#### **Constraints for auto scaling plans:**

You are advised to enable and use the concurrent extension feature based on the following rules:

- Only V3 tables and foreign tables are supported. If the table is a replication table, only **SELECT** is supported.
- Only **SELECT**, **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, and **DELETE** statements are supported.
- **COPY** cannot be used to import data.
- The **UPSERT** statement is not supported.
- Transaction blocks are not supported.
- Stored procedures are not supported.
- Recursive statements with the **RETURNING** clause and **WITH RECURSIVE** are not supported.
- Lightweight update is not supported.
- **INSERT** statements generated by a single **VALUES** or **generate\_series** are not supported.

# Configuring a Custom Scheduled Scaling Plan

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 3** After storage-compute decoupled clusters are created, they are in logical cluster mode.
  - For storage-compute decoupled clusters: In the navigation pane on the left, click **Logical Clusters**. On the displayed page, click **Add Plan** to configure a proper scheduling plan.
- **Step 4** Select a plan type. It can be:
  - **Periodicity**: The plan is executed once in every specified period (week or month). A logical cluster is created or deleted as scheduled as long as it does not conflict with other O&M operations. You can set the weekly time intervals for creating or deleting logical clusters.
  - **One-time**: The plan is executed only once in the specified period.
- **Step 5** Click **OK**. In the scheduled plan list, you can view the plan details and next execution time.

----End

# Configuring an Auto Scaling Plan

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.

- **Step 3** Click **Logical Clusters** on the left to access the page for cluster management. Because once you have created a storage-compute decoupled cluster, it will be in logical cluster mode.
- **Step 4** Click **Auto Resiliency Switch** to enable the auto scaling function for logical clusters.

Enabling this function allows the system to efficiently manage node resources by detecting service demand and creating or deleting read-only elastic logical clusters as needed. This means that unused nodes are free of charge and the system can adapt to peak and off-peak hours seamlessly.

 Calce WriteRate
 Calce Calce Strate
 Calce Calce Stra

Figure 8-14 Enabling auto scaling for logical clusters

Step 5 After auto scaling is enabled, run SQL statements after completing the operation described in Using the SQL Editor to Connect to a Cluster to create and set a resource pool, and bind a user to the resource pool to enable auto scaling for the

specified resource pool. In the command, **poolg** indicates the resource pool name, which can be customized.

No deta availabil

create resource pool "poolg" with(nodegroup = 'v3\_logical'); alter user "write\_user" with resource pool "poolg"; alter resource pool "poolg" with (enable\_concurrency\_scaling=true);

#### Figure 8-15 Setting a resource pool



----End

# 8.6.5 Tutorial: Converting a Physical Cluster That Contains Data into a Logical Cluster

#### Scenario

A large database cluster usually contains a large amount of data put in different tables. With the **resource management** feature, you can create resource pools to isolate the resources of different services. Different service users can be allocated

to different resource pools to reduce resource (CPU, memory, I/O, and storage) competition between services.

As the service scale grows, the number of services in the cluster system also increases. Creating multiple resource pools becomes less effective in controlling resource competition. GaussDB(DWS) uses the distributed architecture and its data is distributed on multiple nodes. Each table is distributed across all DNs in the cluster, an operation on a data table may involve all DNs, which increases network loads and system resource consumption. To solve this problem, scale-out is not effective. You are advised to divide a GaussDB(DWS) cluster into multiple logical clusters.

You can create a separate logical cluster and assign new services to it. This way, new services have little impact on existing services. Also, if the service scale in existing logical clusters grows, you can scale out the existing logical clusters.

**Figure 8-16** shows an example. The original service data tables of a company are stored in the original physical cluster **dws-demo** (in green). After services are switched over to the logical cluster **lc1** (in blue), a new logical cluster **lc2** is added to the physical cluster through scale-out. The original service data tables are switched to logical cluster **lc1**, and new service data tables are written to logical cluster **lc2**. In this way, the data of old and new services is isolated. User **u2** associated with logical cluster **lc2** can access the tables of logical cluster **lc1** across logical clusters after authorization.

- **Cluster scale**: Scale out the original physical cluster from three nodes to six nodes and split it into two logical clusters.
- **Service isolation**: New and old service data is isolated in different logical clusters.



Figure 8-16 Accessing data across logical clusters

# **Creating a Cluster and Preparing Table Data**

Step 1 Create a cluster. For details, see Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster.

**Step 2** After connecting to the database, create table **name** as the system administrator **dbadmin** and insert two data records into the table.

CREATE TABLE name (id int, name varchar(20)); INSERT INTO name VALUES (1,'joy'),(2,'lily');

----End

# Converting to Logical Cluster lc1

#### NOTICE

During the conversion, you can run simple DML statements, such as adding, deleting, modifying, and querying data. Complex DDL statements, such as operations on database objects, will block services. You are advised to perform the conversion during off-peak hours.

- Step 1 Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console. In the navigation pane, choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. Click the name of a cluster to go to the Cluster Information page.
- Step 2 Toggle on the Logical Cluster switch.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Logical Clusters**.
- **Step 4** Click **Add Logical Cluster** in the upper right corner, enter the logical cluster name **lc1**, and click **OK**.

During the switchover, the current cluster is unavailable. Wait for about 2 minutes (the conversion time varies depending on the service data volume). If **lc1** is displayed on the logical cluster page, the conversion is successful.

< -						Scale Out	Restart	Monitoring Panel	С
Cluster Information									
Cluster Topology	Logical Cluster Management		Add Logical Cluster	×				Add Logical Cluster	
Configurations	Cluster Name ↓≣	Status J≘	Add Eoglean cluster		Nodes		Operation		
Logical Clusters			Current cluster already has business data, it can only be converted to a logical cluster. Whether to						
Intelligent OSM			continue						
Snapshots	Operation History		After converting to a logical cluster, you can expand the nodes from the elastic cluster, and then add a new logical cluster		A		• Enter	a cluster name	
Parameters	operation matory		Logical Cluster Name: Ic1						
Security	Operation 4E	Cluster Name ↓Ξ			Result		Action Log		
Data Sources •			OK Cancel						

Figure 8-17 Adding a logical cluster

----End

# Adding Nodes to the elastic\_group Cluster

- Step 1 Return to the Cluster Management page. In the Operation column of the cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Scale Out.
- **Step 2** Set **New Nodes** to **3**. Enable **Online Scale-out**. Set **elastic\_group** as the target logical cluster. Confirm the settings, select the confirmation check box, and click **Next: Confirm**.
- **Step 3** Click **Next: Confirm**, and then click **OK**.

Wait for about 10 minutes until the scale-out is successful.

----End

# Adding Logical Cluster lc2

- **Step 1** On the **Cluster Management** page, click the name of a cluster to go to the cluster details page. In the navigation pane, choose **Logical Clusters**.
- **Step 2** Click **Add Logical Cluster** in the upper right corner, select three nodes from the right pane to add to the left pane, enter the logical cluster name **lc2**, and click **OK**.

After about 2 minutes, the logical cluster is successfully added.

Figure 8-18 Adding a logical cluster

Logical Cluster Managen	Add Logical Cluster X	Add Logical Cluster
Cluster Name ↓⊟		Operation
elastic_group	Logical Cluster  Selected Host  Q Available Elastic Cluster Host Reg  Q	Edit   Resource Management Configurations
lc1	Host Ring CPU RAM Storage Nodes	Edit   Resource Management Configurations
	V host-172-16-14-223.ha 12 96 120 3	
Operation History	No data avallebe.	Enter a cluster name. Q
Operation ↓Ξ	>>	Action Log
Expand outside		View
Add		View
	OK Cancel	

#### Figure 8-19 Selecting a host ring

Add Logical Cluster				
Logical Cluster ⑦ Ic2	Selected Host Ring	Q	Available Elastic Cluster Host Ring	Q
Most Ring	CPU RAM Storage	Nodes	Host Ring CPU RAM	Storage Nodes
kost-172-16-14-223.ho	12 96 120	3	<< No data available	
		ОК	Cancel	

----End

# Creating Logical Clusters, Associating Them with Users, and Querying Data Across Logical Clusters

**Step 1** Connect to the database as the system administrator and run the following SQL statement to query the original service table **name**.

Verify that service data can be queried after the conversion.

SELECT \* FROM name;

- Step 2 Create logical clusters lc1 and lc2 for u1 and u2, respectively. CREATE USER u1 NODE GROUP "lc1" PASSWORD '{password}; CREATE USER u2 NODE GROUP "lc2" PASSWORD '{password};
- Step 3 Log in to the database as user u1, create table u1.t1, insert two data records into the table, and grant user u2 the permission to access the table. CREATE TABLE u1.t1 (id int, name varchar(20));

INSERT INTO u1.t1 VALUES (1,'joy'),(2,'lily'); GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA u1 TO u2; GRANT SELECT ON TABLE u1.t1 TO u2;

Step 4 Log in to the database as user u2 and query data in the original service table t1. A message is displayed, indicating that you do not have the permission to access logical cluster lc1. The result shows that even if user u1 has authorized user u2 to access the table, the table cannot be accessed because it is in different logical clusters. This proves that data is isolated between logical clusters.
SELECT \* FROM u1.t1:

SQL execution records Notice			
Enter a keyword.			۵)
Result Information	SQL Details	Status	Times
['error_code':"DWS.90010001',"error_msg^*/sql error. STATE: 42501, message: ERROR: USAGE permission denied to user \'u2\' for node group \'tc1\''')	SELECT * FROM u1.11	ARunning failed	6ms
Total Records:1			

- **Step 5** Switch back to system administrator **dbadmin** and grant the access permission of logical cluster **lc1** to user **u2**. GRANT USAGE ON NODE GROUP lc1 TO u2;
- Step 6 Switch to user u2 and query the t1 table. This proves that the user bound to logical cluster lc2 can query the original service table t1 across logical clusters. In this way, data is shared between logical clusters.
  SELECT \* FROM u1.t1;

SQL execution records Notice Result1 ×			
table Chart Export ~		Copy Column 🗸 🗸 🗸	olumns id $\times$ name $\times$ $\checkmark$
id	name		
1	joy		
2	liy		
Total Records: 2			10 ~ < 1 >

----End

# 8.6.6 Tutorial: Dividing a New Physical Cluster into Logical Clusters

#### Scenario

This section describes how to divide a new six-node physical cluster (having no service data) into two logical clusters. If your physical cluster already has service data, perform operations by referring to **Tutorial: Converting a Physical Cluster That Contains Data into a Logical Cluster**.

## Prerequisites

Create a six-node cluster. For details, see **Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster**.

## **Dividing a Cluster into Logical Clusters**

- **Step 1** On the **Cluster Management** page, click the name of a cluster to go to the cluster details page. In the navigation pane, choose **Logical Clusters**.
- **Step 2** Click **Add Logical Cluster** in the upper right corner, select a host ring (three nodes) on the right, add it to the list on the left, enter the logical cluster name **lc1**, and click **OK**.

After about 2 minutes, the logical cluster is added.

**Step 3** Repeat the preceding steps to create the second logical cluster **lc2**.

----End

# Creating Logical Clusters, Associating Them with Users, and Querying Data Across Logical Clusters

**Step 1** Connect to the database as system administrator **dbadmin** and run the following SQL statement to check whether the logical cluster is created: SELECT group name FROM PGXC GROUP;

	id	name
1	1	joy
2	2	lily

**Step 2** Create users **u1** and **u2** and associate them with logical clusters **lc1** and **lc2**, respectively.

CREATE USER u1 NODE GROUP "lc1" password '{password}; CREATE USER u2 NODE GROUP "lc2" password '{password};

- Step 3 Switch to user u1, create table t1, and insert data into the table. SET ROLE u1 PASSWORD '{password}; CREATE TABLE u1.t1 (id int); INSERT INTO u1.t1 VALUES (1),(2);
- Step 4 Switch to user u2, create table t2, and insert data into the table. SET ROLE u2 PASSWORD '{password}; CREATE TABLE u2.t2 (id int); INSERT INTO u2.t2 VALUES (1),(2);
- Step 5 Query the u1.t1 table as user u2. The command output indicates that the user does not have the permission.
  SELECT \* FROM u1.t1:

ERROR: permission denied for schema u1

Step 6Switch back to the system administrator dbadmin and query the u1.t1 and u2.t2<br/>tables, which are created in clusters lc1 and lc2, respectively, corresponding to two<br/>services. In this way, data is isolated based on logical clusters.SET ROLE dbadmin PASSWORD '{password};<br/>SELECT p.oid,relname,pgroup,nodeoids FROM pg\_class p LEFT JOIN pgxc\_class pg ON p.oid = pg.pcrelid

#### WHERE p.relname = 't1';

SELECT p.oid,relname,pgroup,nodeoids FROM pg\_class p LEFT JOIN pgxc\_class pg ON p.oid = pg.pcrelid WHERE p.relname = 't2';

oid	relname	pgroup	nodeoids
25374	ti	1c1	16718 16719 16720
oid	relname	pgroup	nodeoids
25377	t2	1c2	16676 16713 16717

**Step 7** Grant user **u2** the permissions to access logical cluster **lc1**, schema **u1**, and table **u1.t1**.

```
GRANT usage ON NODE GROUP lc1 TO u2;
GRANT usage ON SCHEMA u1 TO u2;
GRANT select ON TABLE u1.t1 TO u2;
```

#### **NOTE**

Logical clusters implement permission isolation (by node groups) based on physical clusters. To let a user access data across logical clusters, you need to grant the logical cluster (node-group layer) permissions, schema permissions, and table permissions to the user in sequence. If no logical cluster permissions are granted, the error message "permission denied for node group xx" will be displayed.

**Step 8** Switch to user **u2** and query the **u1.t1** table. The query is successful. The logical cluster implements data isolation and allows cross-logical cluster access after user authorization.

SET ROLE u2 PASSWORD ' <i>{password}</i> ; SELECT * FROM u1.t1;	
	id
1	2
2	1

----End

# 8.6.7 Tutorial: Setting a Read-Only Logical Cluster and Binding It to a User

#### Scenario

If your workloads vary greatly in different periods of time, a three-node cluster may be unable to handle all the throughput during peak hours; but a six-node cluster may be too large, wasting resources and increasing costs. In this case, you can follow this tutorial and the instructions in **Elastically Adding or Deleting a Logical Cluster** to use only three nodes during off-peak hours at night, six nodes during daytime, and nine nodes during peak hours.

This tutorial describes how to configure a new logical cluster (without service data) as read-only and switch some users to the cluster. In this way, tables created by those users are still in the original Node Group, but the computing logic is switched to the read-only logical cluster.

# Prerequisites

A six-node cluster has been created and divided into two logical clusters: v3\_logical and lc1. The lc1 cluster has no service data. For details, see Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Decoupled Cluster.

## Configuring a Read-Only Logical Cluster and Switching Users to the Cluster

- Step 1
   Connect to the database as system administrator dbadmin and run the following SQL statement to check whether the logical cluster is created:

   SELECT group\_name FROM PGXC\_GROUP;
- **Step 2** Set logical cluster **lc1** to be read-only.

SET xc\_maintenance\_mode=on; ALTER NODE GROUP lc1 SET READ ONLY; SET xc\_maintenance\_mode=off;

**Step 3** Create a user.

create user testuser password 'testuser12#\$%';

**Step 4** Bind the user to the logical cluster **lc1**. Replace variables in the following statements (such as **testuser** and **lc1**) as needed.

Find the NodeGroup of the user. If a record can be found, set the record to the **default\_storage\_nodegroup** of the user so that the tables created by the user will still be in the original Node Group. If no records are found, directly run the two ALTER statements in the end.

SELECT nodegroup FROM pg\_user WHERE usename='testuser';

ALTER USER testuser SET default\_storage\_nodegroup='nodegroup'; // Replace nodegroup with the node group name obtained in the preceding SQL statement.

Bind the user to the new read-only logical cluster. In this way, the computing logic of the user is switched to the read-only logical cluster for execution.

ALTER USER testuser NODE GROUP lc1; ALTER USER testuser SET enable\_cudesc\_streaming=ON;

----End

# 8.7 Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

After a cluster is created, you can modify the cluster's database parameters as required. On the GaussDB(DWS) console, you can configure common database parameters. For details, see **Modifying Parameters**. You can also view the parameter modification history. For details, see **Viewing Parameter Change History**. Click **Export** to export all parameter settings of the cluster. You can run SQL commands to view or set other database parameters. For details, see **Configuring GUC Parameters**.

#### Prerequisites

You can modify parameters only when no task is running in the cluster.

### **Modifying Parameters**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 Click the Parameters tab and modify the parameter values. Then click Save.

To modify parameters based on filter criteria, click the drop-down list above the parameter list and search for the desired parameters. The filter criteria include **Common Configuration**, **Function Control Configuration**, **Cluster Memory Configuration**, **Cluster Disk Configuration**, **Cluster Network Configuration**, **SQL Tuning Configuration**, **SQL Compatibility Configuration**, and **All Configuration**. If you choose **Common Configuration**, you will see the first 20 frequently modified parameters in the region where the cluster is located. If there are no statistics available, you can use a customized configuration. Select **All Configurations** to view all parameters. Set the parameters based on **Function Control Parameters**.

Click the search box to search for a parameter based on the parameter name and whether to restart the cluster.

- **Step 5** In the **Modification Preview** dialog box, confirm the modifications and click **Save**.
- **Step 6** You can determine whether you need to restart the cluster after parameter modification based on the **Restart Cluster** column.

#### D NOTE

- If cluster restart is not required for a parameter, the parameter modification takes effect immediately.
- If cluster restart is required for parameter modifications to take effect, the new parameter values will be displayed on the page after the modification, but will not take effect until the cluster is restarted. Before a restart, the cluster status is **To be restarted**, and some O&M operations are disabled.

#### ----End

#### Viewing Parameter Change History

Perform the following steps to view the parameter modification history and check whether the modifications have taken effect:

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 4 Click the Modify Records tab.

#### D NOTE

- If a parameter can take effect immediately after modification, its status will change to **Synchronized** after you modify it.
- If a parameter can take effect only after a cluster restart, its status will change to **To be restarted** after you modify it. You can click the expansion icon on the left to view the parameters that have not taken effect. After the cluster is restarted, the status of the record will change to **Synchronized**.
- **Step 5** By default, only the change history within a specified period is displayed. To check the entire change history of a parameter, search for it in the search box in the upper right corner.

----End

#### **Exporting the Parameter List**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** Click **Parameters** and click **Export**. You can export cluster configuration parameters.

Parameters Charge History					
Export Save Ca	ncel				Parameter         v         Enter a parameter name.         Q         Q
Parameter 🕀	Value for CN	Value for DN	Unit	Value Range 🔰 Restart Cluster 🕀	Description
FencedUDFMemoryLimit	0	0	KB	0~2,147,483,647 No	Controls the virtual memory used by each fenced udf worker process.
UDFWorkenNemHardLimit	1048576	1048576	KB	0~2,147,483,647 Yes	Specifies the maximum value of fenced/UDFMemoryLimit. Unit: KB.
agg_max_mem	2007152	2007152	KB	0~2,147,483,647 No	Specifics the maintum mentrory that can be used by an App operation when the appropriate column of an App operator in an execution pole exceeds the columns. Unit XD. This parameter is wild only when usery, many much specific than an The walke is sets than 23 MB, the splere automatically sets this parameter to the default walke. If this case, the menory usage of the App operator is not imited based on the value.

Figure 8-20 Exporting parameter settings

----End

# **Function Control Parameters**

<b>Table 0 23</b> Function control parameters
-----------------------------------------------

Parameter	Description	Value Range
audit_enabled	Whether to enable or disable the audit process. After the audit process is enabled, it can read the auditing information written by the background process from the pipe and save it into audit files.	on or off
audit_space_limit	Maximum storage space occupied by audit files Unit: KB	1,024– 1,073,741,824
autoanalyze	Whether to allow automatic statistics collection for a table that has no statistics or a table whose amount of data modification reaches the threshold for triggering <b>ANALYZE</b> when a plan is generated. In this case, <b>AUTOANALYZE</b> cannot be triggered for foreign tables or temporary tables with the <b>ON COMMIT [DELETE</b> <b>ROWS DROP]</b> option. To collect statistics, you need to manually perform the <b>ANALYZE</b> operation. If an exception occurs in the database during the execution of <b>AUTOANALYZE</b> on a table, after the database is recovered, the system may still prompt you to collect the statistics of the table when you run the statement again. In this case, manually perform <b>ANALYZE</b> on the table to synchronize statistics.	on or off
autovacuum_max_ workers	Maximum number of concurrent <b>autovacuum</b> threads. <b>0</b> indicates that <b>autovacuum</b> is disabled.	0-128
autovacuum_max_ workers_hstore	Number of <b>automerge</b> threads in the <b>hstore</b> table. The value cannot be greater than the value of <b>autovacuum_max_workers</b> . To modify this parameter, add the value of <b>autovacuum_max_workers_hstore</b> to the original value of <b>autovacuum_max_workers</b> .	0-128
autovacuum_napti me	Interval between two autovacuum operations, in seconds.	1–2,147,483

Parameter	Description	Value Range
autovacuum_vacuu m_cost_delay	Value of the cost delay used in the <b>autovacuum</b> operation.	-1-100
behavior_compat_o ptions	Configuration items for database compatibility. Multiple items are separated by commas (,). strict_concat_functions and strict_text_concat_td are mutually exclusive.	-
checkpoint_segmen ts	Minimum number of WAL segment files retained in a period. The size of each log file is 16 MB.	1–2,147,483,646
ddl_lock_timeout	Number of seconds a DDL command should wait for the locks to become available. If the time spent in waiting for a lock exceeds the specified time, an error is reported.	0–2,147,483,647
enable_resource_re cord	Whether to enable resource recording.	on or off
enable_resource_tra ck	Whether to enable resource monitoring.	on or off
enable_track_record _subsql	Whether to enable the function of recording and archiving sub- statements. When this function is enabled, sub-statements in stored procedures and anonymous blocks are recorded and archived to the corresponding <b>INFO</b> table ( <b>GS_WLM_SESSION_INFO</b> ). This parameter is specific to a session and can be set and applied within the session connected to the CN. Only the statements executed within that session will be affected. It can also be configured on both the CN and DN and take effect globally.	on or off
enable_user_metric _persistent	Whether to dump the historical monitoring data of user resources. If this parameter is set to <b>on</b> , data in the <b>PG_TOTAL_USER_RESOURCE_INFO</b> view is periodically sampled and saved to the system catalog <b>PG_WLM_USER_RESOURCE_HISTORY</b> .	on or off
enable_view_updat e	Whether to enable the view update function.	on or off

Parameter	Description	Value Range
extra_float_digits	Number of digits displayed for floating-point values, including float4, float8, and geometric data types. The parameter value is added to the standard number of digits (FLT_DIG or DBL_DIG as appropriate).	-15-3
failed_login_attemp ts	Number of consecutive incorrect password attempts after which the account is locked. <b>0</b> indicates that the number of incorrect password attempts is not limited.	0–1,000
instr_unique_sql_co unt	Whether to collect unique SQL statements and how many statements can be collected.	0-2,147,483,647
job_queue_processe s	Number of jobs that can be concurrently executed. This parameter is a postmaster parameter. You can set it using <b>gs_guc</b> , and you need to restart <b>gaussdb</b> to make the setting take effect.	0–1,000
lockwait_timeout	Maximum wait time for a single lock, in milliseconds. If the lock wait time exceeds the value, the system will report an error.	0–2,147,483,647
max_active_statem ents	Maximum number of concurrent jobs. This parameter applies to all the jobs on one CN. <b>–1</b> and <b>0</b> indicate that the number of concurrent jobs is not limited.	-1- 2,147,483,647
max_files_per_node	Maximum number of files that can be opened by a single SQL statement on a single node.	-1- 2,147,483,647
max_prepared_tran sactions	Maximum number of transactions that can stay in the <b>prepared</b> state simultaneously. If the value of this parameter is increased, GaussDB(DWS) requires more System V shared memory than the default system setting.	0–536,870,911
max_process_mem ory_auto_adjust	Whether to enable automatic modification for the <b>max_process_memory</b> parameter.	on or off

Parameter	Description	Value Range
object_mtime_recor d_mode	Update action of the <b>mtime</b> column in the <b>PG_OBJECT</b> system catalog.	-
	<ul> <li>default: ALTER, COMMENT, GRANT/REVOKE, and TRUNCATE operations update the mtime column by default.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>none: The mtime column is not updated.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>disable_acl: GRANT/REVOKE operations do not update the mtime column.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>disable_truncate: TRUNCATE operations do not update the mtime column.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>disable_partition</b> : The <b>mtime</b> field is not updated for <b>ALTER</b> operations in partitioned tables.	
plog_merge_age	Output interval of performance log data.	0–2,147,483,647
random_function_v ersion	Random function version selected by <b>ANALYZE</b> during data sampling.	0–1
resource_track_cost	Minimum execution cost for resource monitoring on statements. <b>-1</b> indicates that resource monitoring is disabled. If the value is greater than or equal to <b>0</b> , and the cost of executing statements exceeds the value and is greater than or equal to 10, resource monitoring is performed.	-1- 2,147,483,647
resource_track_dura tion	Minimum time for archiving executed statements recorded during real-time monitoring, in seconds. <b>0</b> indicates that all the statements are archived. If the value is greater than <b>0</b> , historical information about statements whose execution time exceeds the specified value is archived.	0-2,147,483,647

Parameter	Description	Value Range
resource_track_level	Resource monitoring level of the current session. This parameter is valid only when <b>enable_resource_track</b> is set to <b>on</b> .	-
	<ul> <li>none indicates that resources are not monitored.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>query</b> enables the query-level resource monitoring. If this function is enabled, the plan information (similar to the output information of <b>explain</b> ) of SQL statements will be recorded in top SQL statements.	
	• <b>perf</b> enables the perf-level resource monitoring. If this function is enabled, the plan information (similar to the output information of <b>EXPLAIN ANALYZE</b> ) that contains the actual execution time and the number of execution rows will be recorded in top SQL statements.	
	• <b>operator</b> enables the operator-level resource monitoring. If this function is enabled, not only the information including the actual execution time and number of execution rows is recorded in the top SQL statements, but also the operator-level execution information is updated to the top SQL statements.	
security_enable_opt ions	Operations that can be unprohibited in security mode.	-
	• <b>on</b> indicates that <b>grant to public</b> can be used in security mode.	
	• <b>on</b> indicates that <b>with grant option</b> can be used in security mode.	
	• foreign_table_options allows users to perform operations on foreign tables in security mode without explicitly granting the useft permission to users.	
session_timeout	Timeout interval of an idle session, in seconds. <b>0</b> indicates that the timeout limit is disabled.	0-86,400

Parameter	Description	Value Range
space_once_adjust_ num	Threshold of the number of files processed each time in slow build and fine-grained calibration in space management and space statistics. <b>0</b> indicates that the slow build and fine- grained calibration functions are disabled. The number of files in the database can impact its resources. You are advised to set this parameter to a proper value. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.	0-2,147,483,647
statement_timeout	Statement timeout interval, in milliseconds. When the execution time of a statement exceeds the value (starting from the time when the server receives the command), the statement reports an error and exits.	0–2,147,483,647
timezone	Time zone for displaying and interpreting time stamps.	-
topsql_retention_ti me	<ul> <li>Data storage retention period of the gs_wlm_session_info and gs_wlm_operator_info catalogs in historical top SQL statements, in days. Before setting this GUC parameter to enable the data storage function, clear data in the gs_wlm_session_info and gs_wlm_operator_info tables.</li> <li>If it is set to 0, the data is stored permanently.</li> </ul>	0-3,650
	<ul> <li>If the value is greater than 0, the data is stored for the specified number of days.</li> </ul>	
user_metric_retenti on_time	Retention time of the user historical resource monitoring data. This parameter is valid only when <b>enable_user_metric_persistent</b> is set to <b>on</b> .	0–3,650
view_independent	Whether to decouple views from tables, functions, and synonyms. After the base table is restored, automatic association and re-creation are supported.	on or off

Parameter	Description	Value Range
wlm_memory_feed back_adjust	Whether to enable memory negative feedback for dynamic load management. The available options include:	on or off
	• <b>on</b> indicates that memory negative feedback is enabled.	
	• <b>off</b> indicates that memory negative feedback is disabled.	
enable_generate_pl an_hash	Whether to generate a plan hash for hint_option, which specifies the priority between the binding outline and the manual outline. It defines the priority of hints that take effect when both manual hints and plan management hints are present. NOTE This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	on or off
turbo_engine_versio n	Whether the executor is allowed to use the Turbo engine. <b>0</b> indicates that the executor is not allowed to use the Turbo engine, while <b>3</b> indicates that all operators should use the Turbo engine as much as possible. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	0-3
analyze_predicate_c olumn_threshold	Whether to enable analyze operations for predicate columns. When the value is set to <b>0</b> , the predicate column collection is disabled. Values greater than <b>0</b> indicate that the predicate column collection is enabled, and it will only analyze tables with a number of columns greater than or equal to the specified value. This parameter is used to improve the performance of large tables. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	0–10,000
syscache_clean_poli cy	Policy for clearing the <b>syscache</b> memory.	[0,1],[0,1], [0,2147483647]

Parameter	Description	Value Range
spill_compression	Compression algorithm for the executor to write data to disks.	-
	• <b>lz4</b> : forward compatible.	
	<ul> <li>zstd: newly added compression algorithm.</li> <li>NOTE This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.</li> </ul>	
hudi_sync_max_co mmits	Maximum number of commits for Hudi synchronization tasks. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	-1- 2,147,483,647
enable_hstore_binlo g_table	Whether binlog tables can be created. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	on or off
binlog_consume_ti meout	Timeout interval for cyclically determining whether all binlog records are consumed during binlog table online scale-in or VACUUM FULL operations. NOTE This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	0-86,400
cu_preload_max_dis tance	Maximum allowable distance between the CU ID being loaded and the CU ID that can be preloaded for each scanned table during the V3 column- store table read-ahead process. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	0-1,024
cu_preload_count	Number of CUs that can be loaded in advance for each scanned table during the V3 column-store table read-ahead process. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	0–10,000

Parameter	Description	Value Range
fine_dr_consistency _check_mode	Fine-grained DR consistency check (newly added).	-
	• none	
	• warning	
	• error	
	<b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	
hint_option	Priority between the binding outline and the manual outline.	-
	• <b>bind_hints_first</b> : When both the bind outline and manually written hints exist, the hints supported by the outline version take priority over the manual hints. For example, if the outline of version 821.001 supports leading, join, and scan hints, only these three hints in the outline will take effect, and the manually written hints of the same type will not take effect. Manually written hints other than these three types will take effect along with the outline hints.	
	<ul> <li>ignore_manual_hints: When a statement has a bind outline, the manually written hints in the statement will be ignored.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>ignore_bind_hints: When a statement has a bind outline, the hints in the bind outline will be ignored.</li> </ul>	
	NOTE This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0 or later versions.	
enable_concurrency _scaling	Dynamic elastic logical cluster switch. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later versions.	on or off

Parameter	Description	Value Range
concurrency_scaling _max_idle_time	Maximum idle time of elastic VWs, in minutes. If the idle time exceeds this value, elastic VW destruction starts. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later versions.	0–60
concurrency_scaling _limit_per_main_vw	Maximum number of elastic VWs that can be started by each primary VW. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later versions.	0-32
concurrency_scaling _max_vw_active_sta tements	Maximum number of statements that can be executed on the elastic VW. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later versions.	0–1,000,000
concurrency_scaling _max_waiting_state ments	Number of queuing elastic jobs that trigger elastic VW startup in the global queue. If the number exceeds the threshold, the process of requesting elastic VW startup begins. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by storage-compute decoupled clusters of version 9.1.0.200 or later versions	0–1,000,000

# **Cluster Memory Configuration Parameters**

|--|

Parameter	Description	Value Range
comm_usable_mem ory	Maximum memory available for buffering on the TCP proxy communication library or SCTP communication library on a single DN. The unit is KB.	102,400– 1,073,741,823
cstore_buffers	Size of the shared buffer used by column-store tables and column-store tables (ORC, Parquet, and CarbonData) of OBS and HDFS foreign tables. The unit is KB.	16,384– 1,073,741,823

Parameter	Description	Value Range
maintenance_work_ mem	Maximum size of memory used for maintenance operations, involving VACUUM, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY. This parameter may affect the execution efficiency of VACUUM, VACUUM FULL, CLUSTER, and CREATE INDEX.	1,024– 2,147,483,647
max_process_memo ry	Maximum physical memory available for a database node. The unit is KB. The default value is calculated by multiplying the physical memory by 0.8 and dividing it by the sum of 1 and the maximum number of primary DNs in the cluster.	2,097,152– 2,147,483,647
query_max_mem	Maximum memory that can be used by a query. If the value of <b>query_max_mem</b> is greater than <b>0</b> , an error will be reported if the query's memory usage exceeds that value.	0– 2,147,483,647
session_history_me mory	Memory size of historical query views, in KB.	10,240– 2,147,483,647
shared_buffers	Size of the shared memory used by GaussDB(DWS). If the value of this parameter is increased, GaussDB(DWS) requires more System V shared memory than the default system setting. The unit is 8 KB.	16– 1,073,741,823
udf_memory_limit	Maximum physical memory that can be used when UDFs are executed on each CN and DN, in KB.	204,800– 2,147,483,647

Parameter	Description	Value Range
work_mem	Size of the memory used by internal sequential operations and the Hash table before data is written into temporary disk files. Sort operations are required for <b>ORDER BY</b> , <b>DISTINCT</b> , and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, and hash-based processing of <b>IN</b> subqueries. In a complex query, several sort or hash operations may run in parallel; each operation will be allowed to use as much memory as this parameter specifies. If the memory is insufficient, data will be written into temporary files. In addition, several running sessions could be performing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used may be many times the value of <b>work_mem</b> .	64– 2,147,483,647

# **Cluster Disk Configuration Parameters**

Parameter	Description	Value Range
sql_use_spacelimit	Specifies the space size for files to be flushed to disks when a single SQL statement is executed on a single DN, in KB. The managed space includes the space occupied by ordinary tables, temporary tables, and intermediate result sets to be flushed to disks1 indicates no limit.	-1- 2,147,483,647
temp_file_limit	Size of a single file spilled to disk if splitting is triggered in a session. The temporary file can be a sort or hash temporary file, or the storage file for a held cursor.	-1- 2,147,483,647

Table 8	-25	Cluster	disk	configuration	parameters
---------	-----	---------	------	---------------	------------

# **Cluster Network Configuration Parameters**

Parameter	Description	Value Range
comm_max_stream	Maximum number of concurrent data streams supported by the TCP proxy communication library or SCTP communication library. The value of this parameter must be greater than the number of concurrent operators multiplied by the average number of stream operators per concurrent operator multiplied by the square of smp.	1–65,535
max_connections	Maximum number of allowed concurrent connections to the database. This parameter affects the concurrent processing capability of the cluster.	100–262,143
max_pool_size	Maximum number of connections between the CN connection pool and another CN/DN.	1–65,535

Table 8-26 Cluster network	configuration	parameters
----------------------------	---------------	------------

# SQL Tuning Parameters

Table 8-27	SOL	tunina	parameters
	- JQL	curning	purumeters

Parameter	Description	Value Range
agg_redistribute_en hancement	When the aggregate operation is performed, which contains multiple <b>group by</b> columns and none of them is the distribution key, a <b>group by</b> column will be selected for redistribution. This parameter specifies the policy of selecting a redistribution column.	on or off
best_agg_plan	Type of hashagg plan generated by the optimizer.	0–3

Parameter	Description	Value Range
cost_model_version	Model used for cost estimation in the application scenario. This parameter affects the distinct estimation of the expression, HashJoin cost model, estimation of the number of rows, distribution key selection during redistribution, and estimation of the number of aggregate rows.	0-4
default_statistics_ta rget	Default analysis ratio.	-100-10,000
enable_codegen	Whether to enable code optimization. Currently, LLVM optimization is used. The availability options are <b>on</b> and <b>off</b> . You can choose <b>on</b> to enable code optimization.	-
enable_extrapolatio n_stats	Whether the extrapolation logic is used for data of date type based on historical statistics. The logic can increase the accuracy of estimation for tables whose statistics are not collected in time, but will possibly provide an overlarge estimation due to incorrect extrapolation. Enable the logic only in scenarios where the data of date type is periodically inserted.	on or off

Parameter	Description	Value Range
hashjoin_spill_strat egy	<ul> <li>Select a hash join policy.</li> <li>0: If the size of the inner table is large and cannot be partitioned after data is spilled to disks for multiple times, the system attempts to place the outer table in the available memory of the database to create a hash table. If both the inner and outer tables are large, a nested loop join is performed.</li> </ul>	0-6
	• 1: If the size of the inner table is large and cannot be partitioned after data is spilled to disks for multiple times, the system attempts to place the outer table in the available memory of the database to create a hash table. If both the inner and outer tables are large, a hash join is forcibly performed.	
	• 2: If the size of the inner table is large and cannot be partitioned after data is spilled to disks for multiple times, a hash join is forcibly performed.	
	• 3: If the size of the inner table is large and cannot be partitioned after data is spilled to disks for multiple times, the system attempts to place the outer table in the available memory of the database to create a hash table. If both the inner and outer tables are large, an error is reported.	
	• 4: If the size of the inner table is large and cannot be partitioned after data is spilled to disks for multiple times, an error is reported.	
max_streams_per_q uery	Number of Stream nodes in a query plan.	-1-10,000

Parameter	Description	Value Range
qrw_inlist2join_opt mode	Whether to enable inlist-to-join query rewrite.	-
	<ul> <li>cost_base: cost-based inlist2join query rewriting</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>rule_base: forcible rule-based inlist2join query rewriting</li> </ul>	
	• A positive integer: threshold of Inlist2join query rewriting. If the number of elements in the list is greater than the threshold, the rewriting is performed.	
query_dop	User-defined symmetric multi- processing (SMP) degree. [1, 64]: Fixed SMP is enabled, and the system will use the specified degree. [-64, -1]: SMP adaptation is enabled, and the system will dynamically select a degree from the limited range.	-64-64

Parameter	Description	Value Range
rewrite_rule	Rewriting rule for enabled optional queries. Some query rewriting rules are optional. Enabling them cannot always improve query efficiency. In certain scenarios, you can set the query rewriting rules through this parameter to achieve optimal query efficiency.	-
	<ul> <li>none: No optional query rewrite rules are used.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Lazyagg: The Lazy Agg query rewrite rule is used to eliminate aggregate operations in subqueries.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>magicset</b> : The Magic Set query rewrite rule is used to push conditions from the main query down to promoted sublinks.	
	• <b>uniquecheck</b> : uses the Unique Check rewriting rule. (The situation can be enhanced when the target column does not include the sublink expression of the aggregate function. The function can only be activated if the value of the target column becomes unique after the sublink is aggregated using the associated column. Optimization engineers are advised to utilize this function.)	
	<ul> <li>disablerep: uses the rule for forbidding sublink pull-up for replicated tables.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>projection_pushdown</b> : uses the projection pushdown rewriting rule to remove the columns that are not used by the parent query in the subquery.	
	• <b>or_conversion</b> : uses the OR conversion rewriting rule to remove inefficiently executed associated OR conditions.	
	• plain_lazyagg: uses the Plain Lazy Agg query rewriting rule to remove aggregation operations in a single subquery. This option is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3.100 or later.	
	<ul> <li>eager_magicset: uses the eager_magicset query rewriting</li> </ul>	
Parameter	Description	Value Range
-----------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------
	rule to push down conditions from the main query to subqueries. This option is supported only by clusters of version 8.2.0 or later.	
	<ul> <li>casewhen_simplification: This rewrite rule uses the CASE WHEN statement to simplify queries. When enabled, it rewrites (case when xxx then const1 else const2)=const1. This option is supported only by clusters of version 8.3.0 or later.</li> </ul>	
	• <b>outer_join_quality_imply</b> : When there is an equi-join condition between a left outer join and a right outer join, this rule pushes the expression condition on the outer table's join column down to the inner table's join column. This option is supported only by clusters of version 8.3.0 or later.	
	<ul> <li>inlist_merge: This query rewrite rule uses the inlist_or_inlist method to merge OR statements with the same base table column. When enabled, it merges and rewrites (where a in (list1) or a in (list2)) to support inlist2join. This option is supported only by clusters of version 8.3.0 or later.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>subquery_qual_pull_up: For subqueries that cannot be promoted, if the subquery has filtering conditions on columns that are also used for joining with other tables, this rule extracts the filtering conditions from the subquery and passes them to the other side of the join condition. Currently, only var op const forms without type conversion, such as a &gt; 2, are supported. When enabled, it is assumed that outer_join_quality_imply is also enabled. This option is supported only by clusters of version 9.1.0 or later.</li> </ul>	

# **SQL Compatibility Parameters**

Table 8-28 SQL	. compatibility	parameters
----------------	-----------------	------------

Parameter	Description	Value Range
full_group_by_mod e	Behavior after enabling disable_full_group_by_mysql:	-
	• <b>nullpadding</b> indicates that NULL values in non-aggregate columns are filled with the non-NULL values in that column, potentially resulting in different rows in the result set.	
	• <b>notpadding</b> indicates that NULL values in non-aggregate columns are not processed, and the entire row data is used, resulting in a random row for non-aggregate columns in the result set.	

# 8.8 Managing GaussDB(DWS) Tags

# 8.8.1 Overview

A tag is a key-value pair customized by users and used to identify cloud resources. It helps users to classify and search for cloud resources.

Tags are composed of key-value pairs.

- A key in a tag can have multiple values.
- A cloud resource must have a unique key.

On GaussDB(DWS), after creating a cluster, you can add identifiers to items such as the project name, service type, and background information using tags. If you use tags in other cloud services, you are advised to create the same tag key-value pairs for cloud resources used by the same business to keep consistency.

GaussDB(DWS) supports the following tags:

Resource tags

Non-global tags created on GaussDB(DWS)

• Predefined tags

Predefined tags created on Tag Management Service (TMS). Predefined tags are global tags.

For details about predefined tags, see the *Tag Management Service User Guide*.

On GaussDB(DWS), tags can be added to the following resources:

Cluster

Tags can be added to a cluster when the cluster is being created or after it is successfully created. You can search for the cluster in the cluster list using tags.

Each cluster can have a maximum of 20 tags.

After you add tags to a cluster and then create a snapshot for the cluster, the tags cannot be restored if you use the snapshot to restore the cluster. Instead, you need to add tags again.

When a cluster is deleted, non-predefined tags associated with the cluster are also deleted. Predefined tags need to be deleted on TMS.

# 8.8.2 Managing Tags

This section describes how to search for clusters based on tags and how to add, modify, and delete tags for clusters.

# Adding a Tag to a Cluster

- **Step 1** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, click the name of the cluster to which a tag is to be added, and click **Tag**.
- Step 2 Click Add Tag.
- **Step 3** Configure tag information in the **Add Tag** dialog box. The value of a key cannot be left blank.

Paramete r	Description	Example Value
r Tag key	<ul> <li>You can:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag key or an existing resource tag key from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> <li>NOTE To add a predefined tag, you need to create one on TMS and select it from the drop-down list of Tag key. You can click View predefined tags to enter the Predefined Tags page of TMS. Then, click Create Tag to create a predefined tag. For more information, see Creating Predefined Tags in the Tag Management Service User Guide. </li> <li>Enter a tag key in the text box. A tag key can contain</li> </ul>	Value key01
	<ul> <li>Enter a tag key in the text box. A tag key can contain a maximum of 128 characters. It cannot be an empty string, start with _sys_, or start or end with a space. Only letters, digits, spaces, and the following characters are allowed: : = + - @</li> <li>NOTE</li> </ul>	

Table 8-29 Tag	parameters
----------------	------------

Paramete r	Description	Example Value
Tag value	<ul> <li>You can:</li> <li>Select a predefined tag value or resource tag value from the drop-down list of the text box.</li> </ul>	value01
	<ul> <li>Enter a tag value in the text box. A tag value can contain a maximum of 255 characters, which can be an empty string. It cannot start or end with a space. Only letters, digits, spaces, and the following characters are allowed: : = + - @</li> </ul>	

Step 4 Click OK.

----End

#### Searching for Clusters Based on Tags

You can quickly locate a tagged cluster using tags.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 3** Click the search box above the cluster list and select the **Resource Tag** filter.
- **Step 4** Click the tag key to be searched for and select the corresponding tag value. Click the search box again to add more tag filters.

Search by tag supports only the keys and values that exist in the drop-down list. If no tag key or value is available, create a tag for the cluster. For details, see **Adding a Tag to a Cluster**.

**Step 5** Click **Search**. The target cluster will be displayed in the cluster list.

----End

# Modifying a Tag

- **Step 1** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, click the name of the cluster to which a tag is to be added, and click **Tag**.
- **Step 2** Locate the row that contains the tag to be modified, and click **Edit** in the **Operation** column. The **Edit Tag** dialog box is displayed.
- **Step 3** Enter the new key value in the **Value** text box.
- Step 4 Click OK.

----End

# Deleting a Tag

**Step 1** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, click the name of the cluster from which a tag is to be deleted, and click **Tag**.

- **Step 2** Locate the row that contains the tag to be deleted, click **Delete** in the **Operation** column. The **Delete Tag** dialog box is displayed.
- **Step 3** After confirming that the information is correct, enter **DELETE** or click **Auto Enter** and click **OK** to delete the tag.

----End

# 8.9 Resetting the Password the GaussDB(DWS) Database Administrator

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to reset the password of the database administrator. If a database administrator forgets their password or the account is locked because the number of consecutive incorrect password attempts reaches the upper limit, the database administrator can reset the password on the **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** page. After the password is reset, the account can be automatically unlocked. You can set the maximum number of incorrect password attempts (10 by default) by configuring the **failed\_login\_attempts** parameter on the **Parameter** page of the cluster. For details, see **Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.

#### **Resetting a Password**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, choose **More** > **Reset Password**.
- **Step 4** On the displayed **Reset Password** page, set a new password, confirm the password, and then click **OK**.

The password complexity requirements are as follows:

- Contains 12 to 32 characters.
- Cannot be the username or the username spelled backwards.
- Contains at least three of the following character types: uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters (~!?,.:;\_(){}[]/<>@#%^&\*+|\=-)
- Passes the weak password check.
- Cannot be the same as the old password and cannot be the reverse of the old password.
- Cannot use a historical password.

#### **NOTE**

If the default database administrator account of the cluster is deleted or renamed, password resetting fails.

----End

# 8.10 Starting, Stopping, and Deleting a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# **Restarting a cluster**

If a cluster is in the **Unbalanced** state or cannot work properly, you may need to restart it for restoration. After modifying a cluster's configurations, such as security settings and parameters, manually restart the cluster to make the configurations take effect.

#### **NOTE**

If your cluster is in arrears, this function may be unavailable. Please top up your account in time.

#### Impact on the System

• A cluster cannot provide services during the restart. Therefore, before the restart, ensure that no task is running and all data is saved.

If the cluster is processing service data, such as importing data, querying data, creating snapshots, or restoring snapshots, cluster restarting will cause file damage or restart failure. You are advised to stop all cluster tasks before restarting the cluster.

View the **Session Count** and **Active SQL Count** metrics to check whether the cluster has active events. For details, see **Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on Cloud Eye**.

- The time required for restarting a cluster depends on the cluster scale and services. Generally, it takes about 3 minutes to restart a cluster. The duration does not exceed 20 minutes.
- If the restart fails, the cluster may be unavailable. Try again later or contact technical support.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the cluster to be restarted, choose More > Restart.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Yes**.

**Task Information** changes to **Restarting**. When **Cluster Status** changes to **Available** again, the cluster is successfully restarted.

----End

# Stopping a Cluster

If a cluster is no longer used, you can stop the cluster to bring services offline.

#### D NOTE

- If the current console does not support this feature, contact technical support. Billing resumes after the cluster is started.
- After the cluster is stopped, ECS basic resources (vCPUs and memory) are no longer reserved. When you start the service again, it may fail to be started due to insufficient resources. In this case, wait for a while and try again later.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** On the **Dedicated Clusters** page, locate the row that contains the target dedicated cluster, click **More** > **Stop** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Yes**.

The **Task Information** of the cluster changes to **Stopping**. If the **Cluster Status** changes to **Stopped**, the cluster is stopped successfully.

----End

#### **Starting a Cluster**

You can start a stopped cluster to restore cluster services.

#### D NOTE

If the current console does not support this feature, contact technical support. Billing resumes after the cluster is started.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** On the **Dedicated Clusters** page, locate the row that contains the target dedicated cluster, click **More** > **Start** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Yes**.

The **Task Information** of the cluster changes to **Starting**. If the **Cluster Status** changes to **Available**, the cluster is started successfully.

----End

#### **Deleting a Cluster**

If you do not need to use a cluster, perform the operations in this section to delete it.

#### D NOTE

- If your cluster is in arrears, this function may be unavailable. Please top up your account in time.
- You cannot delete a cluster that is either read-only or being scaled. Wait until the scaling process is finished or the read-only state is canceled before attempting to delete it.
- If a cluster has DR tasks, the cluster cannot be deleted. You need to delete the DR tasks and then delete the cluster.

#### Impact on the System

Deleted clusters cannot be recovered. Additionally, you cannot access user data and automated snapshots in a deleted cluster because the data and snapshots are automatically deleted. If you delete a cluster, its manual snapshots will not be deleted.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click <sup>(Q)</sup> in the upper left corner of the management console to select a region.
- Step 3 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster to be deleted.
- **Step 4** In the row of a cluster, choose **More** > **Delete**.
- **Step 5** In the displayed dialog box, confirm the deletion. You can determine whether to perform the following operations:
  - Create a snapshot for the cluster.

If the cluster status is normal, click **Create Snapshot**. On the snapshot list page, click **Create Snapshot** to create a snapshot for the cluster to be deleted. For details, see **Manual Snapshots**. In the row of a cluster, choose **More** > **Delete**.

- Delete associated resources.
  - Release the EIP bound to a cluster.

If an EIP is bound to the cluster, you are advised to select **EIP** to release the EIP of the cluster to be deleted. If you do not release the EIP, you can bind it to another cluster or cloud resource and it will be billed based on the EIP pricing rule of VPC.

- Delete automated snapshots.
- Delete manual snapshots.
  - If you have created a manual snapshot, you can select **Manual Snapshot** to delete it.
- **Step 6** After confirming that the information is correct, enter **DELETE** or click **Auto Enter** and click **OK** to delete the cluster. The cluster status in the cluster list will change to **Deleting** and the cluster deletion progress will be displayed.

If the cluster to be deleted uses an automatically created security group that is not used by other clusters, the security group is automatically deleted when the cluster is deleted.

----End

# 8.11 Managing Enterprise Projects

An enterprise project is a cloud resource management mode. Enterprise Management provides users with comprehensive management in cloud-based finance. The Enterprise Management console differs from typical management consoles as it focuses on resource management rather than independent control and configuration of cloud products. It assists enterprises in managing finances within the hierarchy of companies, departments, and projects.

Users who have enabled the Enterprise Project Management service can use it to manage cloud service resources.

# **Binding an Enterprise Project**

You can select an enterprise project during cluster creation to associate it with the cluster. For details, see **Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster**. The **Enterprise Project** drop-down list displays the projects you created. In addition, the system has a built-in enterprise project (**default**). If you do not select an enterprise project for the cluster, the default project is used.

Note that the Enterprise Project Management service is still in the OBT. Only users with the OBT permission can set enterprise projects. Common users cannot view the enterprise project information.

During cluster creation, if the cluster is successfully bound to an enterprise project, the cluster will be successfully created. If the binding fails, the system sends an alarm and the cluster fails to be created.

Snapshots of a cluster retain the association between the cluster and its enterprise project. When the cluster is restored, the association is also restored.

When you delete a cluster, the association between the cluster and its enterprise project is automatically deleted.

# **Viewing Enterprise Projects**

After a cluster is created, you can view the associated enterprise project in the cluster list and **Cluster Information** page. You can query only the cluster resources of the project on which you have the access permission.

- In the cluster list on the **Clusters** page, view the enterprise project to which the cluster belongs.
- In the cluster list, find the target cluster and click the cluster name. The Cluster Information page is displayed, on which you can view the enterprise project associated with the cluster. Click the enterprise project name to view and edit it on the Enterprise Management console.
- When querying the resource list of a specified project on the Enterprise Management console, you can also query the GaussDB(DWS) resources.

# Searching for Clusters by Enterprise Project

Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console and choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. Click the search box above the cluster list and select **Enterprise Project**. Enter the project name and click the search button to view all clusters associated with the project.

Figure 8-21 Search by enterprise projects

 
 Dependence of transmission
 Data Trans 0
 DataTrans 0
 Data Trans 0
 <t

# Migrating a Cluster to or Out of an Enterprise Project

A GaussDB(DWS) cluster can be associated with only one enterprise project. After a cluster is created, you can migrate it from its current enterprise project to another one on the Enterprise Management console, or migrate the cluster from another enterprise project to a specified enterprise project. After the migration, the cluster is associated with the new enterprise project. The association between the cluster and the original enterprise project is automatically released. For details, see "Resource Management" > "Managing Enterprise Project Resources" in the *Enterprise Management User Guide*.

#### **Enterprise Project-Level Authorization**

If permissions preset in the system cannot meet requirements, you can customize policies and grant the policies to user groups for refined access control. As an independent managed object, the enterprise project can be bound to a user group, and the customized policy can be granted to the user group. This implements refined authorization at the enterprise project level.

Step 1 Log in to the IAM console and create a custom policy.

Refer to the following to create the policy:

- Use the IAM administrator account, that is, the user in the admin user group, because only the IAM administrator has the permissions to create users and user groups and modify user group permissions.
- GaussDB(DWS) is a project-level service, so its **Scope** must be set to **Project-level services**. If this policy is required to take effect for multiple projects, authorization is required to each project.
- Some GaussDB(DWS) policy templates are preconfigured on IAM. When creating a custom policy, you can select one of the following templates and modify the policy authorization statement based on the template:
  - **DWS FullAccess**: all execution permissions for GaussDB(DWS)
  - **DWS ReadOnlyAccess**: read-only permission for GaussDB(DWS)
  - DWS Administrator: all execution permissions for GaussDB(DWS)
  - DWS Database Access: Users granted this permission can generate temporary database user credentials based on IAM users to connect to databases in the data warehouse clusters.
- You can add permissions corresponding to GaussDB(DWS) operations or RESTful APIs listed in List of Supported Actions to the action list in the policy authorization statement, so that the policy can obtain the permissions.

For example, if **dws:cluster:create** is added to the action list of a policy statement, the policy has the permission to create or restore clusters.

• If you want to use other services, grant related operation permissions on these services. For details, see the help documents of related services.

For example, when creating a data warehouse cluster, you need to configure the VPC to which the cluster belongs. To obtain the VPC list, add permission **vpc:\*:get\*** to the policy statement.

Policy example:

{

}

• Example in which multiple operation permissions are supported

The following policy has the permissions to create/restore/restart/delete a cluster, set security parameters, and reset passwords.

```
"Version": "1.1",
"Statement": [
    {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
             "dws:cluster:create",
             "dws:cluster:restart",
             "dws:cluster:delete",
             "dws:cluster:setParameter"
             "dws:cluster:resetPassword",
             "ecs:*:get*",
             "ecs:*:list*"
             "vpc:*:get*",
             "vpc:*:list*"
        ]
    }
]
```

• Example of wildcard (\*) usage

The following policy has all operation permissions on GaussDB(DWS) snapshots.

```
"Version": "1.1",

"Statement": [

{

    "Effect": "Allow",

    "Action": [

    "dws:snapshot:*",

    "ecs:*:get*",

    "ecs:*.list*",

    "vpc:*:get*",

    "vpc:*:list*"

]

}
```

- **Step 2** Click **Enterprise** in the upper right corner of the management console to enter the Enterprise Management console.
- Step 3 Choose Personnel Management > User Group Management in the left navigation tree. Then, create a user group and add users to it, add the user group to a project, and grant the newly created custom policy to the group so that users in the group can obtain the permissions defined by the policy.

For details, see "Project Management" > "Personnel Management" > "Managing User Groups in an Enterprise Project" in the *Enterprise Management User Guide*.

----End

}

# **9** GaussDB(DWS) Cluster O&M

# 9.1 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on the Monitoring Panel (DMS)

# 9.1.1 Database Monitoring Overview

# Overview

DMS is provided by GaussDB(DWS) to ensure the fast and stable running of databases. It collects, monitors, and analyzes the disk, network, and OS metric data used by the service database, as well as key performance metric data of cluster running. It also diagnoses database hosts, instances, and service SQL statements based on the collected metrics to expose key faults and performance problems in a database in a timely manner, and guides customers to optimize and resolve the problems.

# 

- The database monitoring function supports only cluster versions 8.1.1.200 and later.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support database monitoring.
- The database monitoring function and Cloud Eye monitor different data sources. In database monitoring, the size of a database is the total disk space used by the database, including the space occupied due to bloating.

# **Entering the Database Monitoring Page**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.

----End

# 9.1.2 Monitoring Metrics

You can check the status and available resources of a cluster and learn about its real-time resource consumption through the GaussDB(DWS) monitoring items.

 Table 9-1 describes GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metrics.

Table 9-1	GaussDB(DWS)	monitoring	metrics
-----------	--------------	------------	---------

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old								
Abnorm	Query ID	String	30s	Collect data	N/A								
Monitor ing Statistic	Statement executed for exception handling	String		regarding abnormal jobs whose status is <b>aborted</b> in the <b>PGXC_WLM_SESS</b> <b>ION_HISTORY</b>									
S	Block time before the statement is executed	≥ 0											
	Elapsed time when the statement is executed	≥ 0											
	Total time used by the CPU on the DN when the statement is executed for exception handling	≥ 0											
	CPU usage skew on the DN when the statement is executed for exception handling	≥ 0											
	cgroups used for exception handling during statement execution	String											
	Status of a statement after exception handling	String											
	Exception handling action executed by the statement	String											

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Reason why the statement is processed abnormally	String			
Node	Host name	String	60s	Gather	N/A
Status Statistic S	Host status	String		the current state and specifics of each ECS host instance (VM) in a cluster.	
Instance	Host name	String	60s	Gather	N/A
s by Status	Instance type	String		the current state and specifics of each CN/DN instance in the cluster.	
	Instance role	String			
	Instance status	String			
	Cause of the instance status.	String			
Cluster	Cluster status	String	30s	Monitor the cluster status.	N/A
Status	Whether an primary/ standby switchover has occurred	String			
	Whether redistribution has occurred	String			
	Whether the current cluster is read-only	String			
CPU usage	The default value is <b>ALL</b> .	String	30s	Gather CPU usage data from ECS instances (VMs) to monitor node CPU usage. High CPU usage can lead to SQL queuing and slow queries.	85 %
	User-mode CPU time %	≥ 0.0			
	CPU time the process with a negative <b>nice</b> value (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Kernel mode time (%)	≥ 0.0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	I/O wait time (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Hard interruption time (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Software interrupt time (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Time spent by the virtual CPU in involuntary waiting when the virtual machine manager serves another virtual processor (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Time spent running the virtual processor (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Idle time except for disk waiting operations (%)	≥ 0.0			
	Hyper-threading capability	Yes/No			
	Hyper-threading Enabled (Yes/No)	Yes/No			
	Number of processes in the runnable status	≥ 0			
	Number of processes waiting for I/O completion	≥ 0			
Active	Database name	String	30s	Collect	N/A
Sessions	Instance name	String		information on the current	
	Number of all user sessions	≥ 0		cluster's active sessions.	
	Distinct username	≥ 0			
	Distinct application name	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old						
	Number of queries in the <b>active</b> or <b>fastpathfunctioncall</b> state.	≥ 0									
Disk	Instance name	String	86400s	Collect statistics	N/A						
Capacit y	Database name	String	]	on the disk space used by each							
Statistic s	Database size	≥ 0		database in the current cluster.							
Transact	Database name	String	60s	Gather data on the running status of databases in the current cluster, such as the number of	Gather data on	N/A					
ion Status	Instance name	String	the running status of databases in t current cluster such as the number of updated, delet and inserted rows, transactions, a deadlocks.								
	Number of rows returned through a global database scan	≥ 0									
	Number of rows returned by querying indexes in the database	≥ 0						updated, delet and inserted rows, transactions, a	number of updated, deleted, and inserted rows, transactions, and	updated, deleted, and inserted rows, transactions, and	
	Number of rows inserted by queries in this database	≥ 0		deadlocks.							
	Number of rows updated by queries in this database	≥ 0									
	Number of rows deleted by queries in this database	≥ 0									
	Number of transactions in this database that have been committed	is ve ≥ 0									
	Number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back	≥ 0									

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old	
	Number of deadlocks detected in this database	≥ 0				
	Number of disk blocks read in this database	≥ 0				
	Number of disk blocks found in the buffer cache in the current database, that is, the number of blocks hit in the cache. (This only includes hits in the GaussDB(DWS) buffer cache, not in the file system cache.)	≥ 0				
	Time spent reading data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds	≥ 0.0				
	Time spent reading data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds	≥ 0.0				
	Number of queries canceled due to database recovery conflicts (conflicts that occur only on the standby server).	≥ 0				

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Number of temporary files created by queries in this database. This parameter calculates all temporary files (such as sorting or hashing) and ignores the <b>log_temp_files</b> setting.	≥ 0			
	Total amount of data written to temporary files by queries in this database. This parameter calculates all temporary files and ignores the <b>log_temp_files</b> setting.	≥ 0			
	Database capacity, in bytes.	≥ 0			
	Number of rows returned by global database scanning in a unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of rows returned by querying indexes in the database in a unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of rows inserted through database query in a unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of rows updated through database query in unit time	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Number of rows deleted by querying the database in a unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of transactions that have been submitted in the database per unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of transactions that have been rolled back in the database per unit time	≥ 0			
	Number of deadlocks retrieved in the database per unit time	≥ 0			
File Handle	Name of the disk file system	String	30s	Gather data on the disk inode	90 %
	Total inode capacity (unit: KB)	≥ 0		the cluster to monitor inode	
	Used capacity (unit: KB)	≥ 0		usage. High inode usage can pose risks.	
Node Disk	Name of the disk file system	≥ 0	30s	Track the disk usage of every	90 %
Usage	Total space (unit: KB)	≥ 0		ECS instance and switch the cluster	
	Used capacity (unit: KB)	≥ 0		to read-only mode when it hits 90%.	
	Available capacity (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Disk usage	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
gsar	Node name	String	30s	Monitor the	N/A
Usage	NIC name	String		the gsar NIC.	
Statistic s	NIC IP address	String			
	Data received by the NIC (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Number of packets received by the NIC	≥ 0			
	Average length of received packets (unit: byte)	≥ 0			
	Number of received data packets that are dropped by the NIC	≥ 0			
	Port transmit discard rate	≥ 0.0			
	Data sent by the network adapter (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Number of packets sent by the NIC	≥ 0			
	Average length of received packets (unit: byte)	≥ 0			
gsar TCP Statistic s	Number of retransmitted TCP packets due to timeout	≥ 0	30s	Monitor the TCP retransmission rate.	Nu mb er of
	Number of sent TCP packets	≥ 0			retr ans mit
	Number of retransmitted TCP packets	≥ 0			ted TCP pac
	TCP retransmission rate	≥ 0.0	-		s > 0

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old											
Node Disk I/O Statistic s	Disk name (devicename)	String	30s	Keep track of the I/O status of	350 MB											
	Number of transmissions per second (transferpersecond). The size of each transmission is unknown.	≥ 0.0		every disk on a node, which is indicated by the data transfer rates and the number of read and write operations. Excessive data transfer rates could affect cluster services.	every disk on a node, which is indicated by the data transfer rates and the number of read and write operations.	/s										
	Amount of data read from the device per second (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0			Excessive data transfer rates could affect cluster services											
	Amount of data written to the device per second (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0														
	Total amount of read data (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0														
	Total amount of written data (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0														
	Number of times that read requests to the device are combined per second	≥ 0.0														
	Number of times that write requests to the device are combined per second	≥ 0.0														
	Number of completed reads per second	≥ 0.0														
	Number of completed writes per second	≥ 0.0														
	Amount of data read per second (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0														

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Amount of data written per second (unit: KB)	≥ 0.0			
	Average data volume of each I/O operation (unit: sector)	≥ 0.0			
	Average request queue length	≥ 0.0			
	Average waiting time for each I/O request (unit: ms)	≥ 0.0			
	Average processing time for each I/O request (unit: ms)	≥ 0.0			
	Percentage of the time when the I/O queue is not empty (I/O operation time divided by the total time)	≥ 0.0			
Instance	Instance name	String	60s	Monitor instance and dynamic memory, gather memory usage statistics for each	85
Memory Monitor ing Statistic	Memory size occupied by the instance	≥ 0.0			%
S	Memory size used by a process	≥ 0.0		CN and DN. If the instance memory	
	Maximum dynamic memory	≥ 0.0		beyond the threshold, there	
	Used dynamic memory	≥ 0.0		may not be enough instance memory in the	
	Dynamic peak memory	≥ 0.0	cluster.	cluster.	
	Maximum dynamic shared memory context	≥ 0.0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Dynamic peak value of the shared memory context	≥ 0.0			
	Maximum shared memory	≥ 0.0			
	Used shared memory	≥ 0.0			
	Maximum memory allowed by column store	≥ 0.0			
	Memory used in column store	≥ 0.0			
	Maximum memory that can be used by the communication library	≥ 0.0			
	Used memory size of the communication library	≥ 0.0			
	Peak memory usage of the communication library	≥ 0.0			
	Maximum memory that can be used by top SQLs to record historical job monitoring information	≥ 0.0			
	Peak memory usage of the top SQL that records historical job monitoring information	≥ 0.0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old	
	Memory used by top SQLs to record historical job monitoring information	≥ 0.0				
	Other used memory	≥ 0.0				
	Memory size occupied by pooler connections	≥ 0.0				
	Memory size occupied by pooler idle connections	≥ 0.0				
	Memory size used by column-store compression and decompression	≥ 0.0				
	Memory reserved for the UDFWorker process	≥ 0.0				
	Memory size used by the MMAP	≥ 0.0				
Instance	Instance name	String	60s	Gather resource	85	
Resourc e Statistic s	Read the value (CPU usage %) in postmaster.pID/ cm_server.pID/ gtm.pID/etcd.pID.	≥ 0.0	-	usage statistics for each instance in a cluster.	% 	
	Read the value (memory usage %) in postmaster.pID/ cm_server.pID/ gtm.pID/etcd.pID.	≥ 0.0				

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
Instance	Instance name	String	86400s	Collect statistics	85
Size	Storage location	String		usage and	%
Statistic s	Disk space used by all databases on the current instance	≥ 0		monitor it.	
Node Memory Statistic s	Size of all available RAMs, that is, the remaining physical memory minus the reserved bits and kernel usage (unit: KB)≥ 030sGat usage for inst usage for for inst the loca met	Gather memory usage statistics for the ECS instance where the cluster is located. This metric tracks	70 %		
	Unused memory in the system. The value is <b>lowfree+highfree</b> (unit: KB).	≥ 0		VM OS-level memory, which differs from the instance memory.	
	Size of the cache used for the block device (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Size of the file buffer (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Total swap space (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Size of the RAM memory temporarily stored in the swap file (unit: KB)	≥ 0			
	Memory size of the virus-infected page (unit: KB)	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old	
Networ	NIC name	String	30s	Collect NIC status	N/A	
Statistic Statistic	NIC status (up/down)	up/ down		the cluster to monitor lost		
	NIC speed (1,000 Mbit/s or 100 Mbit/s)	≥ 0		packets on the cluster NIC and		
	Total data received by the NIC (unit: byte) $\geq 0$ throughput.Number of packets received by the NIC $\geq 0$	throughput.				
	Total number of NIC receiving errors	≥ 0				
	Number of received data packets that are dropped by the NIC	≥ 0				
	Number of FIFO buffer errors during reception	≥ 0				
	Number of received packet frame errors	≥ 0				
	Number of received compressed data packets	≥ 0				
	Number of received multicast frames	≥ 0				
	Total data sent by the NIC (unit: byte)	≥ 0				
	Total number of packets sent by the NIC	≥ 0				
	Total number of NIC sending errors	≥ 0				

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Total number of data packets discarded by the NIC during transmission	≥ 0			
	Number of FIFO buffer errors during sending	≥ 0			
	Number of collisions detected on the sending interface	≥ 0			
	Number of carrier losses detected by the device driver during transmission	≥ 0			
	Number of sent compressed data packets	≥ 0			
	Specifies whether NIC multi-queue is supported.	Yes/No			
	NIC multi-queue is enabled.	Yes/No			
	Specifies the CPU affinity of a multi- queue NIC.	String			
	Indicates whether the NIC works in duplex mode.	String			
	Network speed	≥ 0.0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
Node	Node name	String	60s	Use the	N/A
SQL Statistic	Username	String		NT view to query	
S	Number of <b>SELECT</b> statements	≥ 0		the number of running SQL statements on	
	Number of <b>UPDATE</b> statements	≥ 0		each node and monitor the	
	Number of <b>INSERT</b> statements	≥ 0		cluster's QPS.	
	Number of <b>DELETE</b> statements	≥ 0	-		
	Number of <b>MERGEINTO</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Number of <b>DDL</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Number of <b>DML</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Number of <b>DCL</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Total response time of <b>SELECT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Average response time of <b>SELECT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Maximum response time of <b>SELECT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Minimum response time of <b>SELECT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Total response time of <b>UPDATE</b> statements	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Average response time of <b>UPDATE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Maximum response time of <b>UPDATE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Minimum response time of <b>UPDATE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Total response time of <b>DELETE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Average response time of <b>DELETE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Maximum response time of <b>DELETE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Minimum response time of <b>DELETE</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Total response time of <b>INSERT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Average response time of <b>INSERT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Maximum response time of <b>INSERT</b> statements	≥ 0			
	Minimum response time of <b>INSERT</b> statements	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Difference between the numbers of <b>SELECT</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>UPDATE</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>INSERT</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>DELETE</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>MERGE INTO</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>DDL</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>DML</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the numbers of <b>DCL</b> statements at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the total <b>SELECT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Difference between the average <b>SELECT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the maximum <b>SELECT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the minimum <b>SELECT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the total <b>UPDATE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the average <b>UPDATE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the maximum <b>UPDATE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the minimum <b>UPDATE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the total <b>DELETE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Difference between the average <b>DELETE</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the maximum <b>DELETE</b> response time difference at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the minimum <b>DELETE</b> response time difference at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the total <b>INSERT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the average <b>INSERT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the maximum <b>INSERT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
	Difference between the minimum <b>INSERT</b> response time at two time points	≥ 0			
System Status Statistic s	TCP protocol stack retransmission rate (%)	≥ 0.0	30s	Collect the TCP protocol, stack protocol, and stack retransmission rate of the ECS instance server.	>0

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
Top SQL	Database name	String	60s	Collect SQL statements running on each CN in the current cluster to identify deadlock SQL statements, slow SQL statements, or SQL statements with high resource usage. SQL statements can be scanned and killed on the management plane.	N/A
s statistic	Instance name	String			
	Thread ID (session ID and session ID)	String			
	Internal query_ID used for statement execution	String			
	Job type, which can be set using the guc parameter <b>query_band</b> . The default value is a null string.	String			
	The value is obtained from the <b>query_band</b> field. The position is 0.	String			
	The value is obtained from the <b>query_band</b> field. The position is 1.	String			
	Username used for connecting to the backend	String			
	Name of the application that is connected to the backend	String			
	IP address of the client connected to the backend. A null value suggests a Unix socket connection or an internal server process, such as autovacuum.	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of <b>client_addr</b> . This column will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when <b>log_hostname</b> is enabled.	String			
	TCP port number used by the client to communicate with the backend. If the Unix socket is used, the value is -1.	String			
	Whether the backend is currently waiting on a lock. If yes, the value is <b>true</b> .	Yes/No			
	Time when the statement starts to be executed	≥ 0			
	Block time before the statement is executed. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Duration that a statement has been executed. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Estimated execution time of a statement. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Estimated remaining time of statement execution. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Resource status in workload management	String			
	Resource pool used by the user	String			
	<ul> <li>Priority of a job in the resource pool.</li> <li>The options are as follows:</li> <li>1: Low</li> <li>2: Medium</li> <li>4: High</li> </ul>	≥ 0			
	• 8: <b>Rush</b>				
	Cgroup used by the statement	String			
	Minimum memory peak of a statement across all DNs. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Maximum memory peak of a statement across all DNs. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Average memory usage during statement execution. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Memory usage skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
	Estimated memory used by the statement. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Statement spill information on all DNs	String			
	Minimum spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The default value is 0 (unit: MB).	≥ 0			
	Maximum spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The default value is 0 (unit: MB).	≥ 0			
	Average spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The default value is 0 (unit: MB).	≥ 0			
	DN spill skew when a spill occurs	≥ 0			
	Minimum execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Maximum execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Average execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Execution time skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
-------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------	----------------------------------------------	--------------	--------------------------------------------------
	Minimum CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Maximum CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Total CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	CPU time skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
	Warning. The following warnings and warnings related to SQL self-diagnosis tuning are displayed:	String			
	Average IOPS peak of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			
	I/O skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
	Maximum IOPS of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Minimum IOPS of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			
	Query statement	String			
	Query plan	String			
	Real-time running status of the current query statement. The value can be <b>active</b> , <b>idle</b> , <b>idleintransaction</b> , <b>idleintransaction</b> ( <b>aborted</b> ), <b>fastpathfunctioncall</b> , or <b>disabled</b> .	String			
	Running status of the query statement in the resource pool. The value can be <b>pending, running,</b> <b>finished, aborted,</b> <b>active</b> or <b>unknown</b> .	String			
	Statement attribute (ordinary, simple, complicated, or internal).	String			
	Fast and slow lanes ( <b>fast</b> or <b>slow</b> )	String			
	Whether a query is a system query	Yes/No			
	Whether the query is a system query (adapting to monitor)	Yes/No			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Time when this process was started, that is, when the client connected to the server	≥ 0			
	Execution time so far	≥ 0			
	Time when the current transaction was started ( <b>NULL</b> if no transactions are active) If the current query is the first of its transaction, the value of this column is the same as that of the <b>query_start</b> column.	≥ 0			
	Time when the <b>status</b> was changed in the previous time	≥ 0			
	Time when the statement starts to be executed	≥ 0			
	Actual execution duration of the statement, in seconds.	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
Historic	Database name	String	180s	Collect historical	N/A
au Queries	Instance name	String		SQL view to	
	Username	String		analyze SQL statements from	
	Name of the application that is connected to the backend	String		the past, identify deadlock or slow SQL statements, and optimize	
	IP address of the client connected to the backend. A null value suggests a Unix socket connection or an internal server process, such as autovacuum.	String		performance by rectifying any issues found.	
	Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of <b>client_addr</b> . This column will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when <b>log_hostname</b> is enabled.	String			
	TCP port number used by the client to communicate with the backend. If the Unix socket is used, the value is -1.	String			
	Job type, which can be set using the guc parameter <b>query_band</b> . The default value is a null string.	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	The value is obtained from the <b>query_band</b> field. The position is 0.	String			
	The value is obtained from the <b>query_band</b> field. The position is 1.	String			
	Duration that a statement is blocked before being executed, including the statement parsing and optimization duration. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Execution start time of a statement (unit: ms)	≥ 0			
	Execution end time of a statement (unit: ms)	≥ 0			
	Duration that a statement has been executed (unit: ms)	≥ 0			
	Estimated statement execution time (unit: ms)	≥ 0			
	Statement execution end status: • Finished (normal) • Aborted (Abnormal)	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Exception information displayed if the final statement execution status is <b>aborted</b> .	String			
	Resource pool used by the user	String			
	<ul> <li>Priority of a job in the resource pool.</li> <li>The options are as follows:</li> <li>8: Rush</li> <li>4: High</li> <li>2: Medium</li> <li>1: Low</li> </ul>	≥ 0			
	Cgroup used by the statement	String			
	Minimum memory peak of a statement across all DNs. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Maximum memory peak of a statement across all DNs. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Average memory usage during statement execution. The unit is MB.	≥ 0			
	Memory usage skew of a statement among DNs	≥ 0			
	Statement spill information on all DNs	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Minimum spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The unit is MB. The default value is <b>0</b> .	≥ 0			
	Maximum spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The unit is MB. The default value is <b>0</b> .	≥ 0			
	Average spilled data among all DNs when a spill occurs. The unit is MB. The default value is <b>0</b> .	≥ 0			
	DN spill skew when a spill occurs	≥ 0			
	Minimum execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Maximum execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Average execution time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Execution time skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
	Minimum CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Maximum CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	Total CPU time of a statement across all DNs. The unit is ms.	≥ 0			
	CPU time skew of a statement among DNs.	≥ 0			
	Minimum IOPS of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			
	Maximum IOPS of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			
	Average IOPS peak of a statement across all DNs. It is counted by ones in a column- store table and by ten thousands in a row-store table.	≥ 0			
	I/O skew of a statement among DNs	≥ 0			
	Warning. The following warnings and warnings related to SQL self-diagnosis tuning are displayed:	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Query ID	String			
	Statement executed	String			
	Execution plan of a statement	String			
	Logical cluster of the user running the statement	String			
Schema	Database name	base nameString3600sMonitor schema usage in a cluster by collecting usage data for each schema.8	85		
Usage Statistic s	Schema name	String	-	usage in a cluster by collecting usage data for each schema.	%
	Used capacity (unit: byte)	≥ 0			
	Total capacity (unit: byte)	≥ 0			
Session	Database name	String	180s	Gather session information for each CN in a cluster, including statistics on idle sessions and lock	N/A
Statistic s	Instance name	String			
	Thread ID (It can be used as a session ID or a connection ID.)	String			
	Database username	String		management	
	User application name	String		any idle sessions.	
	Client address	String			
	Host name of the client	String			
	TCP port number used by the client to communicate with the background. If the Unix socket is used, the value is -1.	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Time when this process was started, that is, when the client connected to the server	≥ 0			
	Execution time so far.	≥ 0			
	Time when the current transaction was started ( <b>NULL</b> if no transactions are active). If the current query is the first of its transaction, the value of this column is the same as that of the <b>query_start</b> column.	≥ 0			
	Time when the <b>status</b> was changed in the previous time	≥ 0			
	Whether the backend is currently waiting on a lock. If yes, the value is <b>true</b> .	Yes/No			
	Current overall state of this backend.	String			
	Resource pool used by the user	String			
	Actual execution duration of the statement, in seconds.	≥ 0			
	ID of a query	String			
	Time when the statement starts to be executed	≥ 0			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	cgroups currently used by the statement.	String			
	Lock type	String			
	Lock mode	String			
	Indicates whether to hold a lock when lock waiting exists. The value is true.	Yes/No			
	Resource that is waiting for the lock	String			
	Statement type	String			
	Query SQL.	String			
	Indicates whether the query is performed by the system.	Yes/No			
	Query plan	String			
SQL Probe	Query ID of a probe task	String	30s	Monitor cluster performance by	N/A
SQL Probe Statistic s	Cluster ID	String		statistics on the	
	Cluster project ID	String		duration of SQL probe execution.	
	Task type of the probe SQL	String		to detect sudden deterioration.	
	Time when a probe SQL task is created	≥ 0			
	SQL execution time	≥ 0			
	probe_ID of the associated probe SQL	String			
	Probe	String			

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Task status of the SQL probe. The options are as follows: • Running • Success • Fail	String			
Table	Database name	String	7200s	Gather	50
Page	Schema name	String		information on dirty pages for cluster tables, as a high dirty page rate can cause a decline in table query and insertion performance.	%
Rate Statistic	Table name (full name)	String	-		
5	Table owner	String			
	Table size (unit: byte)	≥ 0			
	Dirty page rate	≥ 0.0			
Table	Database name	String	7200s	Identify tables in the cluster with a skew rate exceeding 5%, as this can	10
Monitor	Schema name	String			90
ing Statistic s	Table name (full name)	String			
5	KangeInity Interval I (Raw Data)Task status of the SQL probe. The options are as follows: • Running • Success • FailStringDatabase nameStringDatabase nameStringSchema nameStringTable name (full name)StringTable size (unit: byte)> 0Dirty page rate> 0.0Database nameStringTable size (unit: byte)> 0Dirty page rate> 0.0Database nameStringTable name (full name)StringTable size (unit: byte)> 0Dirty page rate> 0.0Database nameStringSchema nameStringTable size (unit: byte)> 0Database nameStringSchema nameStringTable name (full name)StringTable size (unit: byte)> 0Skew rate> 0.0Load resource poolStringCPU quota of the resource pool> 0Memory quota of the resource pool> 0Disk quota of the <b< td=""><td></td></b<>				
	Table size (unit: byte)	≥ 0		performance.	
	Skew rate	≥ 0.0			
Resourc	Load resource pool	String	120s	Monitor system	N/A
e Pool Statistic s	CPU quota of the resource pool	≥ 0		resource usage and queuing status of the	
	Memory quota of the resource pool	≥ 0		cluster resource pool by collecting relevant	
	Disk quota of the resource pool	≥ 0		relevant information.	

Monito red Object	Metric	Value Range	Monito ring Interva l (Raw Data)	Metric Usage	Rec om me nde d Thr esh old
	Maximum number of concurrent simple jobs allowed by the resource pool	≥ 0			
	Maximum number of concurrent queries allowed by the resource pool	≥ 0			
	CPU usage of the resource pool	≥ 0.0			
	Memory usage of the resource pool	≥ 0.0			
	Disk usage of the resource pool	≥ 0.0			
	Number of concurrent simple jobs in the resource pool	≥ 0			
	Current number of concurrent requests in the resource pool	≥ 0			
Resourc	Load resource pool	String	30s	Gather data on users in the cluster resource	N/A
User	CPU quota of a user.	≥ 0			
Statistic S	Memory quota of a user	≥ 0		pool and track their resource usage.	
	Specifies the disk quota of a user	≥ 0			
	CPU usage of a user	≥ 0.0			
	Memory usage of a user	≥ 0.0			
	Disk usage of a user	≥ 0.0			
	User ID	String			
	Username	String			

# 9.1.3 Cluster Overview

# **Cluster Overview**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, click **Cluster Overview**.

On the page that is displayed, you can view the cluster status, real-time resource consumption, cluster resource consumption, and key database metrics.

----End

#### **NOTE**

Metrics can be collected and displayed on the cluster overview page only if their collection items are enabled. If a collection item is disabled, its metric will not be displayed, and a prompt will be displayed indicating this problem. In this case, you are advised to enable the collection item.

# **Cluster Status**

In the **Cluster Status** area, you can view the statistics about the current cluster status and instance status, including cluster statistics in the last 24 hours, cluster specifications, available/total CNs and DNs, used/total disk capacity, the number of CCN switchovers in the last 24 hours, and the number of primary/standby DN switchovers in the last 24 hours.

Cluster Status					
	Cluster Specific	ations	Database Overv	iew	
	Resource	Computing In-Me	Metric	Total	Used
Normal	Node Flavor	8 vCPUs   64 GB	Data Dis	349 GB	16 GE
	Nodes		Instance Status		
	Resource	Available/Total	Metric		Value
• Catching up 🔹 Degrad 🔌 1/4 🕨	CN	3/3	DN switchovers in	n I	:
Last 24 hours	DN	7/7	CCN switchovers	in	(

Figure 9-1 Cluster Status

#### D NOTE

The OBS usage details are displayed in storage-compute decoupled cluster information.

# Alarms

In the **Alarms** area, you can view all the uncleared alarms of the current cluster and the alarms generated in the last seven days. You can click **More** in the upper right corner to view details about the existing cluster alarms. For details, see **Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Alarms**.

#### Figure 9-2 Alarms

Alarms	:=
	🛑 Critical 🛑 Major 🛑 Minor 🛑 Warning
Critical	0
Major	0
Minor	0
Warning	0 0 Apr 16, 2024 Apr 18, 2024 Apr 20, 2024 Apr 22, 2024

# **Cluster Resources**

In the **Cluster Resources** area, you can view the resource usage of the current cluster, including the average CPU usage, disk I/O, disk usage, memory usage, and network I/O. You can click the metric of a resource to view its trend in the last 24 hours and the top five services that are occupying this resource. You can click **More** in the upper right corner of the area to go to the **Node Monitoring** page. Nodes are sorted by the metric value. For details, see **Node Monitoring**.

#### Figure 9-3 Cluster Resources



# Workloads

In the **Workloads** area, you can view the workload metrics of the current database, including TPS, QPS, stacked SQL queries, and resource pools. You can also click a workload metric to view its trend in the last 24 hours. The **SQL Stack Queries** metric depends on the real-time query monitoring function. If this function is disabled, no data will be displayed for the metrics.

#### Figure 9-4 Workloads



# Data Volume

In the **Data Volume** area, you can view the used capacity of the current database and schema. You can click a capacity metric to view the database or schema capacity trend in the last 24 hours and the top five databases or schemas ranked by capacity usage in the current cluster. You can click **More** in the upper right corner of the area to go to the **Database Monitoring** page. Databases are sorted by used capacity. For details, see **Database Monitoring**.

#### Figure 9-5 Data Volume

Data Volume 💿					:=
Database Capacity 0.7GB	Schema Capacity	0GB			
Database Capacity 🧿				Database Capaci	tyTop 5
GB				Databases	Capacity (GB)
1				postgres	0.07
			·····	gaussdb	0.06
				template1	0.06
0					
2024 18:10:00 Eeb 28 20	2/1 2 3+ 3 0+ 0 0 E e	b 20 2024 05:15:00	Eab 20 2024		

#### **NOTE**

The database capacity data is collected once a day. Therefore, the data volume fluctuates greatly. To view real-time capacity monitoring information, choose **Node Monitoring** > **Disks**.

# Queries

In the **Queries** area, you can check the average number of queries, sessions, and transactions. You can click a metric to view its trend in the last 24 hours. The **Average Queries** and **Average Sessions** metrics depend on the real-time query

monitoring function. If this function is disabled, no data will be displayed for the metrics.

#### Figure 9-6 Queries

Average Queries 0	Average Sessions 0	Average Transactions 2727	
		( . )	
		No. of the second secon	
		No data available.	

# 9.1.4 Monitoring

# 9.1.4.1 Node Monitoring

# **Node Monitoring**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Node Monitoring**.

On the page that is displayed, view the real-time consumption of nodes, memory, disks, disk I/O, and network I/O.

----End

# Overview

On the **Overview** tab page, you can view the key resources of a specified node based on the node name, including:

- Node Name
- CPU Usage (%)
- Memory Usage (%)
- Average Disk Usage (%)
- IP Address
- Disk I/O (KB/s)

- TCP Protocol Stack Retransmission Rate (%)
- Network I/O (KB/s)
- Status
- Monitoring: You can click in the **Monitoring** column to view the overall performance metric topology of the node in the last 1 hour, last 3 hours, last 12 hours, last 24 hours, last 7 days, or last 15 days.

		-
- which have have have have have have have hav		-
- M.M.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A.A	An and a second	

### Disks

On the **Disks** tab page, view the real-time disk resource consumption of a node by node name and disk name, including:

- Node Name
- Disk Name
- Disk Type
  - System disk
  - Data disk
  - Log disk
- Disk Capacity (GB)
- Disk Usage (%)
- Disk Read Rate (KB/s)
- Disk Write Rate (KB/s)
- I/O Wait Time (await, ms)
- I/O Service Time (svctm, ms)
- IOPS
- Monitoring: You can click in the **Monitoring** column to view the disk performance metric topology of the node in the last 1 hour, 3 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours, 7 days, or 15 days.



### D NOTE

The sum of the used disk space and available disk space is not equal to the total disk space. This is because a small amount of space is reserved in each default partition for system administrators to use. Even if common users have run out of space, system administrators can log in to the system and use their space required for solving problems.

Run the Linux **df** command to collect the disk capacity information, as shown in the following figure.

[Ruby@host-1	0-0-16-43 8_1	0]#df ·	-x tmpfs -x	devtmpfs
Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Available	Use% Mounted on
/dev/sda4	569616888	5757444	540228616	2% /
/dev/sda2	999320	107584	822924	12% /boot
/dev/sdal	204580	8368	196212	5% /boot/efi
/dev/sdd	3513495364	390076	3513105288	1% /var/chroot/DWS/datal
/dev/sde	3513495364	274192	3513221172	1% /var/chroot/DWS/data2
/dev/sdb	3513495364	34224	3513461140	1% /var/chroot/DWS/data3
/dev/sdc	3513495364	34224	3513461140	1% /var/chroot/DWS/data4
[Rubv@host-1	0-0-16-43 8 1	01#		

/dev/sda4: Used(5757444) + Available(540228616) != Total(569616888)

- **Filesystem**: path name of the device file corresponding to the file system. Generally, it is a hard disk partition.
- **IK-blocks**: number of data blocks (1024 bytes) in a partition.
- Used: number of data blocks used by the disk.
- Available: number of available data blocks on the disk.
- **Use%**: percentage of the space used by common users. Even if the space is used up, the partition still reserves the space for system administrators.
- Mounted on: mount point of the file system.

### Network

On the **Network** tab page, view the real-time network resource consumption of a node by node name and NIC name, including:

- Node Name
- NIC Name
- NIC Status
- NIC Speed (Mbps)
- Received Packets
- Sent Packets
- Lost Packets Received
- Receive Rate (KB/s)
- Transmit Rate (KB/s)
- Monitoring: You can click in the Monitoring column to view the network performance metric topology of the node in the last 1 hour, 3 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours, 7 days, or 15 days.

NIC Status	Received Packets
Status	Quantity
up	120000
	100000
	80000
	60000
	40000
	20000
down	0 ,
09:45:24 09:51:54 09:58:24 10:11:54 10:18:24 10:24:54 10:31:24	09:45:24 09:51:54 09:58:24 10:11:54 10:18:24 10:24:54 10:31:24
-O- etho	-O- ethu
Sent Packets	Lost Packets Received
Quantity 60000	Quantity 1
Quantity 60000	Quantity 1
Quantity 6000 5000	Quantity 1
Quantity 60000 50000 40000	Quantity 1
Quantity 60000 50000 40000 30000	Quantity 1
Quantity 60000 40000 30000 20000	Quantity 1
Quantity 6000 4000 3000 2000	Quantity 1
Quantity 6000 5000 4000 3000 2000 10000	Quantity 1
Quantity 6000 5000 4000 2000 2000 1000 0 994524 095154 095824 101154 101824 102454 103124	Quantity 1
Quantity 6000 50000 40000 20000 20000 20000 09-45:24 09:51:54 09:58:24 10:11:54 10:18:24 10:24:54 10:31:24 09:45:24 09:51:54 09:58:24 10:11:54 10:18:24 10:24:54 10:31:24	Quantity 1 0 094524 095124 095724 101024 101624 102224 102824 103424 09460

# 9.1.4.2 Performance Monitoring

# **Performance Monitoring**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Performance Monitoring**. The **Performance Monitoring** page displays the resource consumption trends of clusters, databases, nodes, and instances.

You can select a time range and check the performance trend in this range.

- By default, the monitoring information of the last hour is displayed.
- You can view the monitoring information of the last seven days.

----End

### **Monitoring Panel**

You can configure monitoring views by customizing monitoring panels. Monitoring panels are bound to users. After logging in to the system, you can view the user-defined monitoring panels.

- Creating a monitoring panel: You can click **Create Panel** to customize a monitoring panel.
- Modifying a monitoring panel: You can click **Modify** to change the name of a monitoring panel.
- Deleting a monitoring panel: You can click **Delete** to delete a monitoring panel. The default monitoring panel cannot be deleted.
- Sharing a monitoring panel: You can click **Share** to share a monitoring panel. The recipients can view the panel but cannot modify it.

#### Figure 9-7 Monitoring Panel

Montoring Panel         Soluci a panut         v         Modify         Dalata         Aufo Reteins <ul> <li>+ Aud Graph</li> <li>C Espont Montoring Data</li> <li>Lest 3 hours</li> <li>Lest 3 hours</li></ul>	Performance Monitoring ③		Create Monitoring Panel
Last 1 hour         Last 12 hours         Last 12 hours         Last 12 hours         Last 12 hours         East 17 days           Period         Original Value         ~         ~ <td< td=""><td>Monitoring Panel Select a panel.</td><td>Modify     Delete     Share     Auto Refresh</td><td>+ Add Graph Q Export Monitoring Data</td></td<>	Monitoring Panel Select a panel.	Modify     Delete     Share     Auto Refresh	+ Add Graph Q Export Monitoring Data
Pend Organi Value V	Last 1 hour Last 3 hours	Last 12 hours Last 24 hours Last 7 days	2024/05/11 08:36:16 - 2024/05/11 09:38:16
	Period Original Value ~		

# Adding a Monitoring View

Currently, DMS provides monitoring views for clusters, databases, nodes, and instances. You can click **Add View** to add a monitoring view as required. The monitoring metrics are as follows:

- Cluster-level monitoring metrics: CPU usage, memory usage, disk usage, disk I/O, network I/O, status, number of abnormal CNs, read-only or not, number of sessions, number of active sessions, number of deadlocks, number of abnormal DNs, DN CPU usage, average number of transactions per second, average number of queries per second, capacity, mode capacity, number of stacked SQL statements, number of queries, resource pools, and number of transactions.
- Database monitoring metrics: number of active sessions, number of sessions, number of inserted rows, number of updated rows, number of deleted rows, and capacity.
- Instance-level monitoring metrics: instance memory usage and dynamic memory usage.
- Node-level monitoring metrics: CPU usage, memory usage, average disk usage, TCP protocol stack retransmission rate, disk I/O, network I/O, total disk capacity, disk usage, disk read rate, disk write rate, disk I/O waiting time, disk I/O service time, disk I/O usage, NIC status, number of received packets, number of sent packets, number of discarded received packets, receiving rate, sending rate, CPU usage, and memory usage.

#### Figure 9-8 Adding a Monitoring View

Add Graph				×
Monitoring Item	Dimension Vode V	Monitoring Metric CPU Usage	Monitored Object	
⊕Add Monitoring	Item You can still add 11 monitoring items.			

### D NOTE

- A maximum of 20 views can be added to each panel. Adding too many views will increase the number of page requests and the rendering time.
- A maximum of 20 monitored objects can be selected in the node dimension. This feature is supported only in 8.1.3.310 and later cluster versions.

# **Exporting Monitoring Data**

Performance Monitoring supports data export. You can click **Export Data** to further process data. By default, data in all monitoring views on the current page is exported. The export time range is subject to the selected time range.

### D NOTE

Performance Monitoring allows data aggregation of different periods. You can aggregate raw data based on the corresponding sampling period to display indicator trends of a longer period.

# 9.1.4.3 Database Monitoring

# **Database Monitoring**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Database Monitoring**.

The **Database Monitoring** page displays the real-time and historical resource consumption a database.

----End

### **Database Resource Consumption**

You can select a database to view its resource usage. For details about the metrics, see **Monitoring Metrics**. including:

On the Database Monitoring page, you can check the database name, usage (GB), monitoring status, number of users, number of applications, number of sessions, number of queries, number of inserted rows, number of updated rows, number of deleted rows, number of deadlocks, number of temporary files, and temporary file capacity.

# **Database Trend Monitoring**

In the **Monitoring** column of a database, click  $\square$  to view the performance indicators of the database, including:

- Capacity
- Sessions
- Queries

# 9.1.4.4 Real-Time Queries

# Going to the Real-time Query Page

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.

**Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring** > **Queries**.

You can check the real-time information about all queries and sessions running in the cluster.

----End

### NOTICE

- Real-time query is supported only in clusters of version 8.1.2 and later.
- To enable real-time query monitoring, choose Settings > Monitoring, click Monitoring Collection, and enable Real-Time Query Monitoring. For details, see Monitoring Collection. Enabling real-time query may cause a large amount of data. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

# Prerequisites

You need to set GUC parameters before viewing data on the monitoring page. If GUC parameters are not set, real-time or historical query may be unavailable. However, if this parameter is set, the cluster performance may deteriorate. Therefore, you need to balance the settings of related parameters. The following table lists the recommended GUC parameter settings. For how to modify parameters, see **Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**. For details about the parameters, see **Setting GUC Parameters**.

GUC Parameter	CN Configuration	DN Configuration
max_active_statements	10	10
enable_resource_track	on	on
resource_track_level	query	query
resource_track_cost	0	0
resource_track_duration	10	10
enable_resource_record	on	on
session_statistics_memor y	1,000 MB	1,000 MB

 Table 9-2 Recommended GUC parameter settings

# Querying Information

You can view the queries statistics, the number of sessions, average session duration (time of all session connections divided by the number of sessions), number of queries, average query duration, and average query waiting time.

Cluster Overview	Divertes (2)				
And the second sec					
Faculty Microbiology					
	0	0.	0	0.	0.
makahasa Monthorma	Resident Article	Accerege Research Incretion	TRACTICE.	Average liberry thatebox	Average many Visit
Charles and					
Parameter Front				Hole Operation Operation Contract Contract	- Plan - Color a languaged, CL CC 00
had an entry wiring					
And a part of the					
Tanks					

# **Checking Live Sessions**

On the **Sessions** page, you can browse the real-time information about all running queries. You can click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to select the metrics to be displayed in the list. The metrics are as follows:

Session ID, username, session duration, application name, QueryBand, client IP address, access CN, session status, start time, lock mode, lock holding status, locked object, query SQL, lock wait, current query duration, and current query start time.

Here are the different session statuses:

- **idle**: The backend is waiting for new client commands.
- active: The backend is executing queries.
- **idle in transaction**: The backend is in a transaction, but there is no statement being executed in the transaction.
- **idle in transaction (aborted)**: The backend is in a transaction, but there are statements failed in the transaction.
- fastpath function call: The backend is executing a fast-path function.

#### **NOTE**

- You can click a session ID to view the queries in the current session. For details, see Viewing Real-time Query Monitoring Details.
- To terminate a session, select the session, click **Terminate a Session**, and confirm your operation.
- If you want to terminate all idle sessions, click **Clear Idle Sessions**.
- The fine-grained permission control function is added. Only users with the operate permission are able to terminate sessions. For users with the read-only permission, the **Terminate a Session** button is grayed out.

# **Checking Real-time Queries**

In the real-time query area, you can view details on all queries that are currently active in the cluster during a specific time period. To customize the metrics displayed in the list, click the settings button in the top right corner. The metrics are as follows:

Query ID, username, application name, database name, resource pool, submission time, blocking time (ms), execution time (ms), minimum CPU time (ms), maximum CPU time (ms), CPU time (ms), CPU time skew (%), DN spilling information, minimum spilled data among all DNs (MB), maximum spilled data among all DNs (MB), average spill to disk (MB), DN spill skew, query statement, access CN, client IP address, fast and slow lanes, query status, session ID, queuing status, job type, task name, task instance, TCP port, waiting or not, estimated total execution time (ms), estimated remaining time (ms), cgroup, minimum memory peak of DN (MB), maximum memory peak of DN (MB), average memory usage (MB), memory usage skew ratio across DNs, estimated memory usage (MB), minimum execution time of a statement across all DNs (ms), maximum execution time of a statement across all DNs (ms), average execution time of a statement on all DNs (ms), and execution time skew of a statement among DNs, alarms, average IOPS peak of a statement across all DNs (times/s for column-store tables and 10,000 times/s for row-store tables), I/O skew of a statement among DNs, statement status, and statement attributes.

Here are the different query statuses:

- **idle**: The backend is waiting for new client commands.
- active: The backend is executing queries.
- idle in transaction: The backend is in a transaction, but there is no statement being executed in the transaction.
- **idle in transaction (aborted)**: The backend is in a transaction, but there are statements failed in the transaction.
- fastpath function call: The backend is executing a fast-path function.

- You can click a query ID to view the monitoring details. However, details cannot be displayed for queries whose ID is **0**. Query **0** indicates that an exception occurs during the query.
- To terminate a query, select the query, click **Terminate Query**, and confirm your operation.
- The fine-grained permission control function is added. Only users with the operate permission are able to terminate queries. For users with the read-only permission, the **Terminate Query** button is grayed out.
- The fast and slow lanes are selected based on the cost in the execution plan. If the optimizer estimates that the memory usage of a statement is greater than 32 MB, the statement enters the slow lane. Otherwise, the statement enters the fast lane.

# Viewing Real-time Query Monitoring Details

You can click a query ID to view the query details, including the basic information of query statements, real-time and historical resource consumption, SQL description, and query plan.

Side (Information           amate         64, ex.1           ada out strained         March 12, 2001 141015           code         code           ada out strained         adove			Access Node ex.5001 Application Name gr4 Estimated Cexation Time (ms) 309 Estimated Remaining Time (ms) 0			Blocking Time (ms) 0 Execution Time 178129 Workload Queue default, pool				
al-Time Consum	ption Consumption History									
PU Time (ms)		Memory (MB)		Average Writ	ten Data (MB)		I/O (MB)		DN Execution Ti	ime (ms)
tem	Value	Item	Value	Item	Value		Item	Value	Item	Value
Max	0/1/	Max	4	Max	U		мах	U	Max	177968
din	4505	Min	4	Min	0		Min	0	Min	177958
wg	5352	Avg	4	Avg	0		Avg	0	Ang	177963
kew (%)	20	Skew (%)	0	Skew (%)	0		Skew (%)	0	Skew (%)	0
QL Query P	Plan (Text)									

# 9.1.4.5 Historical Queries

# Going to the Historical Query Page

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **History**.

All the historical queries in the current cluster will be displayed.

----End

#### **NOTE**

- Historical queries can be viewed only in clusters of version 8.1.2 and later.
- The historical query monitoring function is disabled by default. To enable it, choose Settings > Monitoring, click Monitoring Collection, and enable Historical Query Monitoring. For details, see Monitoring Collection. Enabling history query may cause a large amount of data. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

# **Checking Historical Queries**

In the **History** area, you can browse all historical query information based on the specified time period. You can click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to select the metrics to be displayed in the list. The metrics are as follows:

Query ID, username, application name, database name, resource pools, submission time, blocking time (ms), execution time (ms), CPU time (ms), CPU time skew (%), average spill to disk (MB), query statement, access CN, client IP address, query status, completion time, estimated total execution time (ms), and cancellation reason.

#### **NOTE**

If you do not want to see historical system queries, you can toggle on **Hide System Queries**.

# **Viewing Historical Query Monitoring Details**

You can click a historical query ID to view the query details, such as basic information about query statements, real-time resource consumption during execution, complete SQL statements, and query plans.

ame tg	t_ex_1			Access Node cn_5001			Blocking Time (ms) 0		
ise (i	lx_row	lx_row		Application Name	Application Name gsql				ime 178129
-Out Started Mar 11, 2021 14:10:15 GMT+08:00			Estimated Execution	Estimated Execution Time (ms) 389				≥ueue default_pool	
a	tive			Estimated Remain	ing Time (ms) 0				
(-Time Consump	Consumption His	story							
J Time (ms)		Memory (MB)		Average Writt	en Data (MB)	I/O (MB)		DN Execution Til	me (ms)
em	Value	Rem	Value	Item	Value	Item	Value	Item	Value
lax	6717	Max	4	Max	0	Max	0	Max	177968
in	4505	Min	4	Min	0	Min	0	Min	177958
rg	5352	Avg	4	Avg	0	Avg	0	Avg	177963
ew (%)	20	Skew (%)	0	Skew (%)	0	Skew (%)	0	Skew (%)	0

# 9.1.4.6 Instance Monitoring

# **Instance Monitoring**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Instance Monitoring**.

On the **Instance Monitoring** page, you can view the real-time and historical information about detected slow instances.

----End

### **Slow Instance Detection**

DMS can automatically configure and start the slow instance detection script on cluster CNs, periodically collect the cache table of the script, and report the detected slow instance data. You can view the number of slow instances detected within 24 hours and the distribution status in the time dimension on the GUI to quickly locate the slow nodes in the cluster and analyze the root causes.

The **Instance Monitoring** page consists of two parts. The upper part displays the time distribution chart of detected slow instances, that is, the number of slow instances detected in different detection periods. The lower part displays slow instance details. When you select any bar in the time distribution chart, details about the detection time, node name, instance name, and number of detections (within 24 hours) of slow instances are displayed.



### D NOTE

If the period of an instance exceeds 240 seconds, the instance is reported as a slow instance.

# 9.1.4.7 Resource Pool Monitoring

# Accessing the Resource Monitoring Page

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Resource Pool Monitoring**.

You can check the real-time statistics and resource consumption history about resource pools.

----End

### **Resource Pool**

You can check user-defined resource pools, real-time and historical resource consumption, and the resource quotas of resource pools. You can click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to select the metrics to be displayed in the list. The metrics are as follows:

- **Resource Pool**: Resource pool name.
- **Monitoring**: You can click the monitoring icon to display the historical consumption trends of resources such as the CPU, memory, and disk.
- **CPU Usage**: real-time CPU usage of a resource pool.
- CPU share: percentage of CPU time that can be used by users associated with the current resource pool to execute jobs.
- **Storage**: storage space of a resource pool.
- Disk Usage: real-time disk usage of a resource pool.
- Memory Resource: memory quota of a resource pool.
- Memory Usage: percentage of used memory.
- **Real-Time Concurrent Short Queries**: number of concurrent simple queries in a resource pool. Concurrent simple queries are not controlled by the resource pool.
- **Simple Statement Concurrency**: quota of simple concurrent queries in a resource pool.
- **Real-Time Concurrent Queries**: number of concurrent complex queries in a resource pool. Concurrent complex queries are controlled by the resource pool.
- **Complex Statement Concurrency**: quota of complex concurrent queries in a resource pool.
- **Operation**: resource pool configurations.

# User Resource Usage

Click the arrow next to a resource pool name to expand resource usage details. The metrics are as follows:

- User Name: name of a user in the current resource pool
- CPU Usage: real-time CPU usage of a user.
- **CPU Share**: percentage of CPU time that can be used by users associated with the current resource pool to execute jobs.
- Storage Resource: storage space used by a user.
- **Disk Usage**: disks used by a user.
- Memory Resource: memory used by a user.
- Memory Usage: percentage of memory used by a user.

#### Figure 9-9 User Resource Usage

Resou	Resource Pool Monitoring (0)												
Re	source Pools   Walting Queries	Circuit Breaking Queries											
								Enter a recenzoe posi	λ C @				
	Resource Pools	Mositoring	CPU Usage	Jii Disk Usage	Si Memory Usage Si	Real Time Concurrent Short Queries	E Real Time Concurrent Queries 18	Operation					
~	- 100_1	8		on 1	0N 0N		1	0 Configuration					
U	ser Resource Usage												
	User Name			CPU Usage UE		Disk Usage 28		Memory U	Sign (2				
	use_1			0%		0%			0.5				
	vow.2			0.5		0.%			0.5				
	um)			0%		0%			0.5				
	1,000			0%		0%			0%				
	we,5			0%		0%			0.5				
	um_6			0%		0%			0.5				
	T_Wey			15		0%			0.5				
	l, we			0.5		0%			0.5				
	enc.			0%		0%			0.5				
	use_10			0%		0%			0.5				

# **Queries Waiting in a Resource Pool**

You can view the queries waiting in a resource pool in real time to check workload status.

- **User**: user name of a query statement
- Application: application name of a query statement
- Database: name of the database to which a query statement is connected
- **Queuing Status**: queuing status of a query statement in a resource pool
- Wait Time (ms): waiting time before a query statement is executed.
- Resource Pool: resource pool that the query belongs to
- Query Statement: details of a query statement submitted by a user

# **Checking Circuit Breaking Queries**

You can view the status of a triggered circuit breaking query in a resource pool.

- Query ID: ID of a circuit breaking query
- Query Statement: circuit breaking query statement
- Blocking Time (ms): blocking time of a circuit breaking statement.
- **Execution Time (ms)**: execution time of a circuit breaking statement.
- **CPU Time (ms)**: CPU time consumed by a circuit breaking statement.
- CPU Skew (%): CPU skew of a circuit breaking statement on each DN

- **Exception Handling**: exception handling method of a circuit breaking statement
- **Status**: real-time status of a circuit breaking statement

# 9.1.5 Utilities

# 9.1.5.1 SQL Diagnosis

# Prerequisites

To enable SQL diagnosis, enable monitoring on real-time and historical queries on the **Queries** and **History** tabs, respectively. For details, see **Monitoring Collection**.

# Viewing SQL Diagnosis

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Utilities** > **SQL Diagnosis**. The metrics include:
  - Query ID
  - Database
  - Schema Name
  - User Name
  - Client
  - Client IP Address
  - Running Time (ms)
  - CPU Time (ms)
  - Scale-Out Started
  - Completed
  - Details
- Step 5 On the SQL Diagnosis page, you can view the SQL diagnosis information. In the Details column of a specified query ID, click View to view the detailed SQL diagnosis result, including:
  - Alarm Information
  - SQL Statement
  - Execution Plan

----End

# **Setting GUC Parameters**

GUC parameters related to SQL diagnosis are as follows. For details, see "GUC Parameters" in the *Data Warehouse Service (DWS) Developer Guide*.

### • enable\_resource\_track

- Value range: boolean
- Default value: **on**
- Expected DMS value: **on** (for reference only)
- Function: Specifies whether to enable the real-time resource monitoring function.

### NOTICE

If this parameter is enabled without other GUC-related parameters correctly configured, real-time resource consumption cannot be recorded.

- resource\_track\_cost
  - Value range: an integer ranging from –1 to INT\_MAX
  - Default value: **0**
  - Expected DMS value: **0** (for reference only)
  - Function: Specifies the minimum execution cost of statement resource monitoring for the current session. This parameter is valid only when enable\_resource\_track is on.

### NOTICE

If this parameter is set to a small value, more statements will be recorded, causing record expansion and affecting cluster performance.

- resource\_track\_level
  - Value range: enumerated type
  - Default value: query
  - Expected DMS value: query (for reference only)
  - Function: Specifies the resource monitoring level for the current session.
     This parameter is valid only when enable\_resource\_track is on.

### NOTICE

If the resource monitoring is set to operator-level, performance will be greatly affected.

#### • resource\_track\_duration

- Value range: an integer ranging from 0 to INT\_MAX, in seconds
- Default value: 60.
- Expected DMS value: **0** (for reference only)
- Function: Specifies the minimum statement execution time that determines whether information about jobs of a statement recorded in the real-time view will be dumped to a historical view after the statement is executed. That is, only statements whose execution time

exceeds the specified time are recorded in the historical view. This parameter is valid only when **enable\_resource\_track** is **on**.

#### NOTICE

If this parameter is set to a small value, the batch processing mechanism for dumping kernel statements becomes invalid, affecting the kernel performance.

- topsql\_retention\_time
  - Value range: an integer ranging from 0 to 3650, in days
  - Default value: **30**
  - Expected DMS value: **14** (for reference only)
  - Function: Specifies the aging time of pgxc\_wlm\_session\_info data in the view.

### NOTICE

If this parameter is set to **0**, data will not be aged, which will cause storage expansion.

- enable\_resource\_record
  - Value range: boolean
  - Default value: on
  - Expected DMS value: **on** (for reference only)
    - Function: Specifies whether to enable the archiving function for resource monitoring records. When this function is enabled, records in the history views (GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_HISTORY and GS\_WLM\_OPERATOR\_HISTORY) are archived to the info views (GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_INFO and GS\_WLM\_OPERATOR\_INFO) every 3 minutes. After the archiving, records in the history views are deleted.

### NOTICE

When this parameter is enabled, you are advised to set **topsql\_retention\_time** properly to configure the aging time. Otherwise, data in the **GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_INFO** or **GS\_WLM\_OPERATOR\_INFO** table will expand.

# 9.1.5.2 SQL Probes

You can upload and verify SQL probes, execute probe tasks in one click, and periodically execute probe tasks. Alarms can be reported for timeout SQL probes. The procedure is as follows:

• Adding a SQL Probe

- Enabling or Disabling a SQL Probe
- Modifying an SQL Probe
- Deleting a SQL Probe
- Executing a SQL Probe in One Click

#### 

- The SQL probe is supported only in 8.1.1.300 and later versions. To use it in earlier versions, contact technical support.
- Only **SELECT** statements can be used as SQL probes.
- Up to 20 SQL probes can be configured.
- To create an SQL probe, you must have the GaussDB(DWS) FullAccess permission.
- To enable the SQL probe function, choose Monitoring Settings > Monitoring Collection and enable the SQL Probe metric. For details, see Monitoring Collection. The default collection frequency is 30s.

# Adding a SQL Probe

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Utilities** > **SQL Probes**. Click **Add SQL Probe**.
- **Step 5** Configure SQL probe parameters.
  - Probe Name: Name of a probe.
  - **Database**: Database where the probe SQL statement is to be executed.
  - **SQL Statement**: Probe SQL statement to be executed. (Only **SELECT** statements are allowed).
  - Probe Threshold (ms): Timeout threshold of probe SQL execution.
  - **Description**: Probe SQL statement description.
- **Step 6** Confirm the SQL probe information and click **Confirm**.

----End

### Enabling or Disabling a SQL Probe

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Utilities** > **SQL Probes**.
- Step 5 In the probe list, click Enable (or Disable) in the Operation column of a probe.
- **Step 6** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

# Modifying an SQL Probe

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Utilities > SQL Probes.
- **Step 5** In the probe list, click **Modify** in the **Operation** column of a probe.
- **Step 6** On the **Modify Probe** page, modify the SQL probe parameters as required and click **OK**.

----End

### Deleting a SQL Probe

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Utilities > SQL Probes.
- **Step 5** In the probe list, click **Delete** in the **Operation** column of a probe.
- Step 6 Confirm the information and click OK.

----End

# **Executing a SQL Probe in One Click**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Utilities** > **SQL Probes**.
- **Step 5** In the probe list, select a probe and click **Run**. The system will execute the selected probe and update information about the probe.
- Step 6 Confirm the information and click OK.

----End

### 9.1.5.3 Table Diagnosis

GaussDB(DWS) provides statistics and diagnostic tools for you to learn table status, including:

- Skew Rate: monitors and analyzes data table statistics in the cluster, and displays information about the 50 largest tables whose skew rate is higher than 5%.
- **Dirty Page Rate**: monitors and analyzes data table statistics in the cluster, and displays information about the 50 largest tables whose skew rate is higher than 50%.
- **DDL Audit**: DDL review is a type of SQL review. To prevent improper DDL design from affecting services, this tool checks whether DDL metadata is standard, detecting potential table definition problems in advance. The check result can also be used as a reference for locating performance issues.

#### D NOTE

- Only 8.1.1.x and later versions support the table skew rate and dirty page rate features. For earlier versions, contact technical support.
- Only 8.1.1.300 and later versions support the DDL review feature. For earlier versions, contact technical support.
- The collection period of the table skew rate and dirty page rate can be configured on the **Monitoring Collection** page of the cluster. Frequent collection may affect cluster performance. Set a proper period based on your cluster workloads.

# **Skew Rate**

#### Context

Improper distribution columns can cause severe skew during operator computing or data spill to disk. The workloads will be unevenly distributed on DNs, resulting in high disk usage on a single DN and affecting performance. You can query your table size and skew rate, and change the distribution columns of tables with severe skew. In cluster versions 8.1.0 and later, you can use the syntax **ALTER TABLE**. In other cluster versions, perform the operations described in **How Do I Change Distribution Columns?**.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- Step 4 In the navigation tree on the left, choose Utilities > Table Diagnosis and click the Skew Rate tab. The tables that meet the statistics collection conditions in the cluster are displayed.

----End

# Dirty Page Rate

#### Context

DML operations on tables may generate dirty data, which unnecessarily occupies cluster storage. To handle large tables and those with a high dirty page rate, you can query the dirty page rate of a table and take into account its size and dirty page rate. For how to rectify the fault, see **Solution to High Disk Usage and Cluster Read-Only**.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**.
- Step 4 In the navigation tree on the left, choose Utilities > Table Diagnosis and click the Dirty Page Rate tab. The tables that meet the statistics collection conditions in the cluster are displayed.

----End

### **DDL Audit**

#### Viewing and Exporting DDL Audit Results

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- **Step 4** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Utilities** > **Table Diagnosis**, and click the **DDL Audit** tab. The audit results are displayed.

**NOTE** 

The selected audit items are displayed on the **DDL Audit** tab by default. You can configure the audit items on the **Monitoring Collection** tab. For more information, see **Table 9-3**.
Table 9-3 Audit items
-----------------------

ltem	Description		
Number of Distribution Keys	If there is no data skew, use no more than four distribution keys.		
(disKeyCount)	Generally, if you use many distribution keys, data can be evenly distributed in a cluster, thus avoid data skew. However, if too many distribution keys are used, the storage performance and joint query performance may deteriorate. You are advised to configure no more than four distribution keys.		
	• Storage performance issue: When data is added, the hash function calculates the result of each distribution column, aggregates the results, and then determine where to distribute data. A large number of distribution keys require time- consuming, complex calculation.		
	• Union query performance issue: During multi-table join query, if all the columns of the distribution key are involved in the join condition, data does not need to be redistributed in the execution plan. If a large number of distribution keys are used, some of them may not be the columns involved in the join condition, and data redistribution may occur, which consumes many resources and takes long.		
Number of Index Columns/PCKs (indexKeyOrPckCoun	It is recommended that the number of partial cluster keys (PCKs)/columns of an index be less than or equal to 4.		
t)	<ul> <li>A large number of index columns require many resources to maintain index data, and are likely to contain duplicate indexes.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>While column-store data is imported, PCK columns are compared and calculated to determine CU division. A large number of PCKs will consume many resources and much time, affecting performance. To efficiently filter CUs in a query, the prefixes of the columns involved in the query conditions must be PCK columns. (For example, if the PCK columns are a, b, and c, the query criteria must be a&gt;? and b&gt;? and c&gt;?.) Otherwise, all the CUs must be traversed, and data clustering does not contribute to query acceleration.</li> </ul>		

ltem	Description
Invalid PCKs (invalidPck)	Do not create invalid PCK columns. In 8.1.1 and later versions, the cluster can filter and compare data of the char, int8, int2, int4, text, bpchar, varchar, date, time, timestamp and timestamptz types. If a column of an unsupported data type is used as a PCK, the column is an invalid PCK column. It does not take effect during CU filtering and will consume resources for its maintenance.
numeric Data Usage (validityOfNumeric)	When numeric data types are used, use integers if possible. If the precision requirement is not high, use the float fixed-length data type. The float fixed-length data type has better computing performance than the numeric variable-length data type. That is, if the numeric type is used, you are advised to specify the scale and precision within 38 bits. When the
	numeric type is used for calculation, the underlying layer attempts to convert the calculation to the calculation between int and bigint to improve the calculation efficiency. That is, the large integer optimization of the data type is used.
	In 8.1.1 and later versions, if no precision is specified, a maximum of 131,072 digits can be placed before the decimal point and a maximum of 16,383 digits can be placed after the decimal point. That is, the maximum scale and precision are used. In this case, large integer optimization cannot be performed during calculation, and the calculation efficiency decreases accordingly.
Index Column Width (widthOfIndexKey)	Generally, wide index columns are character string columns, which do not involve compare operations and will lead to large indexes that consume unnecessary space. Specify a value smaller than 64 bytes.
Replication Table Size (sizeOfCopyTable)	Tables that occupy more storage space than the threshold (100 MB) on a single DN will be identified. For such tables, you are advised to use common associated columns as distribution keys (generally with one primary key).
	The cluster supports replication tables. A replication table maintains a full copy of data on each node and is mainly used to store data of enumerated types. If a table contains too much data, it will occupy a large amount of space. In addition, in a union query, the node traverses all table data, which may take a longer time than the union query after the table type is changed to distribution table. (Although data may be redistributed in the distribution table, the amount of data traversed by each node decreases.)

ltem	Description
Skew Detection for Single-Distribution- Key Tables (recognitionOfDa- taSkew)	Data skew of single-distribution-key tables is detected by statistics. This audit applies only to tables with one distribution key.
Distribution Key Usage (validityOfDiskey)	In a cluster, you are not advised to use a column of the Boolean or date type as a distribution column, because it may cause data skew.
Number of Cached Sequence Values (cacheSizeOfSequen ce)	Specify a number greater than 100. If a table column uses sequences, its <b>next_value</b> is obtained from the cached value in the local node. If cached sequence values are used up, a request will be sent asking GTM to obtain the value again. If a large amount of data is added but only a few values are cached, GTM will receive many requests, and may get overloaded and even break down. To avoid this problem, you are advised to set the cache value to a value greater than 100 when creating a sequence.
Optimizable Indexes (optimizableIndex- Key)	<ul> <li>Scenarios where indexes can be optimized:</li> <li>The index column of an index is the first <i>N</i> columns of another index.</li> <li>The index columns of two indexes are the same, but the orders are different.</li> </ul>

- **Step 5** If the review result of an item is **Failed**, click **View** to go to the details page.
- **Step 6** Click **Export** in the upper left corner to export the audit result.

----End

#### **Manually Auditing DDL Items**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- Step 4 In the navigation tree on the left, choose Utilities > Table Diagnosis, and click the DDL Audit tab. On the page that is displayed, select the items to be audited and click One-Click Audit.

----End

# 9.1.6 Workload Analysis

## 9.1.6.1 Workload Analysis Overview

The workload analysis tool of GaussDB(DWS) collects and analyzes database performance data. You can create workload snapshots to record cluster workload data in a specified period. A workload diagnosis report can be generated based on two workload information snapshots within a certain time segment. Workload Diagnosis Report (WDR) provides performance data in a specified period and presents the data on HTML web pages. It helps you detect exceptions, diagnose problems, and optimize performance. It is a powerful tool for database performance tuning.

#### **NOTE**

- The WDR function is available only in 8.1.1.300 and later cluster versions.
- Workload diagnosis reports can be stored only in OBS.

### 9.1.6.2 Workload Snapshots

You can check the basic information about the cluster workload snapshots, manually create a snapshot, and configure snapshot parameters.

## **Checking Workload Snapshots**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Snapshot**. Workload snapshots will be displayed.

----End

### **Creating a Workload Snapshot**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Snapshot**. Workload snapshots will be displayed.
- Step 5 Click Create Snapshot. Enter a snapshot name and click OK.

**NOTE** 

Before creating a workload snapshot, ensure that the performance view snapshot parameter is enabled. For details, see **Configuring Workload Snapshot Parameters**.

----End

## **Configuring Workload Snapshot Parameters**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, choose **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Snapshot**. Workload snapshots will be displayed.
- **Step 5** Click **Configure Snapshot** in the upper right corner. In the dialog box that is displayed, check or modify GUC parameters. For details, see **Table 9-4**.

#### ----End

Name	Default Value	Description
Performance view snapshot ( <b>enable_wdr_snapsho</b> <b>t</b> )	off	Whether to enable the performance view snapshot function. If this function is enabled, GaussDB(DWS) will periodically create snapshots for certain system performance views and save them to disk. You can also manually create snapshots.
Resource monitoring ( <b>enable_resource_trac</b> <b>k</b> )	on	Whether to enable the resource monitoring function. Resource statistics parameters are valid only if this parameter is enabled.
Logical memory management module ( <b>enable_memory_limi</b> <b>t</b> )	on	Whether to enable the logical memory management module.
Wait event statistics ( <b>enable_track_wait_e</b> <b>vent</b> )	off	Whether to collect statistics on wait events, including the number of occurrences, number of failures, duration, maximum waiting time, minimum waiting time, and average waiting time.
I/O call time series statistics ( <b>track_io_timing</b> )	off	Whether to collect time series statistics on database I/O calls. If this function is enabled, the collector will periodically query the OS time, which may cause heavy overhead on certain platforms.

#### Table 9-4 Workload snapshot parameters

Name	Default Value	Description
SQL count ( <b>track_sql_count</b> )	The default value is <b>off</b> for versions earlier than 8.1.3 and <b>on</b> for 8.1.3 and later versions.	Whether to collect statistics on the number of the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, and MERGE INTO statements that are being executed in each session, the response time of the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements, and the number of DDL, DML, and DCL statements. This parameter takes effect only if track_activities is set to on.
Session command statistics ( <b>track_activities</b> )	on	Whether to collect statistics on the commands that are being executed in each session.
Unique SQL statistics ( <b>instr_unique_sql_cou</b> <b>nt</b> )	0	Whether to collect unique SQL statements and how many statements can be collected.
Snapshot creation interval (wdr_snapshot_interv al)	60	Interval for automatically creating performance view snapshots. It must be longer than the time needed to create a snapshot. The unit is minute.
Maximum snapshot retention period (wdr_snapshot_retent ion_days)	8	Maximum retention period of performance snapshots. A large value will require a lot of disk space. The unit is day.

## 9.1.6.3 Workload Reports

You can create, download, and delete work diagnosis reports, and check historical workload diagnosis reports.

#### **NOTE**

To create a workload report, obtain the required OBS bucket permissions first.

## **Checking Workload Reports**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**. Workload reports will be displayed.

----End

## **Generating a Workload Report**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**.
- **Step 5** Click **Generate Report**. In the displayed dialog box, configure the following parameters and click **OK**:

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Report Name	User-defined. Ensure that the name is unique and contains a maximum of 100 characters, including digits, letters, and underscores (_).	test_show
Object Model	<ul> <li>The object types are as follows:</li> <li>node: The performance data of a specified node will be provided.</li> <li>cluster: The performance data of the entire cluster will be provided.</li> </ul>	node
Node Name	User defined	dn_6005_l006
Content Type	<ul> <li>The options are as follows:</li> <li>summary: A report contains only brief analysis and calculation results.</li> <li>detail: A report contains only detailed metric data.</li> <li>all: A report contains content of both the summary and detail reports.</li> </ul>	all

**Table 9-5** Parameters for generating a report

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Starting Snapshot	User defined	-
	NOTE The time of the starting snapshot start must be earlier than that of the ending snapshot.	
Ending Snapshot	User defined	-
OBS Bucket	Bucket name, which is used to store reports.	test123
OBS Path	Storage directory, which can be customized. Multi-level directories can be separated by slashes (/) and cannot start with slashes (/). Up to 50 characters are allowed.	wdr

----End

## **Downloading Workload Reports in Batches**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**.
- **Step 5** Select reports and click **Download**.

**NOTE** 

Up to 10 report records can be downloaded at a time.

----End

## **Deleting Workload Reports in Batches**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**.

**Step 5** Select reports and click **Delete**.

----End

## **Deleting a Workload Diagnosis Report**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**.
- **Step 5** Click **Delete** in the **Operation** column of a report to delete the report record and file.

----End

## **Configuring Workload Report Parameters**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters and locate the cluster whose load needs to be analyzed.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database monitoring page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Workload Analysis** > **Workload Reports**.
- **Step 5** Click **Configure Report** in the upper right corner. In the displayed dialog box, set the report retention period and OBS parameters.

Configure Snaps	hot	×
★ Create Agency ⑦	~	Q View OBS Bucket
* OBS Path		0
* Retention Period	365	days
		Cancel Save

----End

## 9.1.7 Settings

The **Monitoring** page displays the collection period of monitoring metrics.

#### D NOTE

- The cluster monitoring function is enabled by default.
- Disable the function if the cluster is being recovered. Enable the function when the fault is rectified.
- When a node in the cluster is powered off or the management IP address of the cluster is unavailable, the cluster monitoring switch and the button for configuring cluster indicator collection are unavailable.

#### Monitoring Collection

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, click Monitoring Panel.
- Step 4 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Monitoring Settings > Monitoring Collection. You can reconfigure the collection frequency or disable the collection of the monitoring item.

Monitoring Settings ③			
Monitoring Collection			Cluster Monitoring
			Metric Q Q
Name	Description	Collection Frequency (s)	Operation
Circuit Breaking Quaries	Collect the real-time status of queries that trigger the circuit breaking rule.	30	
Cluster Host Status	Cluster host status indicator collection	60	
Cluster Instance Status	Cluster instance status indicator collection	60	
Slow Instance Detection	Locate and collect the status of slow instances in a cluster.	240	
Cluster Status	Cluster status indicator collection	30	
CPU Status	CPU status indicator collection	30	
Database Active Status	Database active status indicator collection	30	
Database Capacity	Database capacity indicator collection	55,400	
Database Status	Database status indicator collection	60	
DDL Audit	Collection frequency of DDL audit data and related parameters	604,800	
10 ∽ Total Records: 27 < 1 2 3 →			

----End

## 9.1.8 Checking Task Details

On the task details page, you can view the status of tasks, such as enabling, disabling, resetting, and modifying cluster monitoring collection items; one-click DDL review; load snapshot generation; load diagnosis report generation; session termination; query termination; and the addition, modification, deletion, and one-click execution of probes.

#### **NOTE**

Only 8.1.3.110 and later cluster versions support the task details page.

#### **Prerequisites**

Tasks executed by users are related to SQL probes, load analysis, DDL one-click review, or monitoring collection items.

### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster to be monitored.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the cluster, click **Monitoring Panel**. The database overview page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Tasks** to view the execution details of the commands delivered by the cluster. Task information includes the task name, task execution result, task command, start time, and end time.

				-Select- V -Select-	~ Q
Task Name	Execution Result	Command	Started \ominus	Ended 🕀	
		1.17			
			2		
		No data availab	ble.		

----End

# 9.1.9 Typical Scenarios

## 9.1.9.1 SQL Diagnosis

### Symptom

The execution of SQL statements takes a long time, resulting in great resource consumption.

### **Troubleshooting Process**

If the execution efficiency of SQL statements is low, optimization suggestions are provided after the kernel executes the SQL statements. You can query the execution history to retrieve optimization suggestions and further optimize SQL statements to improve query efficiency.

### **Troubleshooting Procedure**

- **Step 1** On the **SQL Diagnosing** page, select a time period that does not seem right.
- **Step 2** Search for SQL statements based on indicators such as the start time, end time, and running duration of the statement.
- **Step 3** Click **View** to view SQL optimization suggestions.
- **Step 4** Optimize the SQL statement based on suggestions.

----End

# 9.2 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Monitoring Information on Cloud Eye

## Function

This section describes how to check cluster metrics on Cloud Eye. By monitoring cluster running metrics, you can identify the time when the database cluster is abnormal and analyze potential activity problems based on the database logs, improving database performance. This section describes the metrics that can be monitored by Cloud Eye as well as their namespaces and dimensions. You can use the management console or **APIs** provided by Cloud Eye to query the monitoring metrics and alarms generated by GaussDB(DWS).

## Namespace

SYS.DWS

## **Cluster Monitoring Metrics**

With the GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metrics provided by Cloud Eye, you can obtain information about the cluster running status and performance. This information will provide a better understanding of the node-level information.

Table 9-6 describes GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metrics.

Metric ID	Name	Description	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monito ring Period (Raw Data)
dws001_s hared_buf fer_hit_rat io	Cache Hit Ratio	Ratio of requested data that already exists in the cache. It is the ratio of the amount of data that already exists in the cache to the total amount of requested data. A higher cache hit ratio means higher cache usage of the system, fewer times that data needs to be read from the disk or network, and faster system response speed. Unit: Percent	0% to 100%	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s

 Table 9-6 GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metrics

Metric ID	Name	Description	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monito ring Period (Raw Data)
dws002_i n_memor y_sort_rat io	In-memory Sort Ratio	Ratio of the extra memory space used by the sorting algorithm to the memory space occupied by the sorted data. In a merge sort, for example, the size of the merge buffer is often proportional to the size of the sorted data, so the in-memory ratio is usually between 10% and 50%. Unit: Percent	0% to 100%	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws003_p hysical_re ads	File Reads	Total number of database file reads	> 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws004_p hysical_w rites	File Writes	Total number of database file writes	> 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws005_p hysical_re ads_per_s econd	File Reads per Second	Number of database file reads per second	≥ 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws006_p hysical_w rites_per_ second	File Writes per Second	Number of database file writes per second	≥ 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws007_d b_size	Data Volume	Total size of data in the database, in MB	≥ 0 MB	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s

Metric ID	Name	Description	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monito ring Period (Raw Data)
dws008_a ctive_sql_ count	Active SQL Count	Number of active SQLs in the database	≥ 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws009_s ession_co unt	Session Count	Number of sessions that access the database	≥ 0	Data warehouse cluster	4 minute s
dws010_c pu_usage	CPU Usage	CPU usage of each node in a cluster, in percentage	0% to 100%	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws011_ mem_usa ge	Memory Usage	Memory usage of each node in a cluster, in percentage <b>NOTE</b> After the console is upgraded to 8.3.0.202, the memory usage includes the memory occupied by the cache. Therefore, the value of this metric increases compared with that before the upgrade.	0% to 100%	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws012_i ops	IOPS	Number of I/O requests processed by each node in the cluster per second	≥ 0	Data warehouse node	1 minute

Metric ID	Name	Description	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monito ring Period (Raw Data)
dws013_b ytes_in	Network Input Throughput	Data input to each node in the cluster per second over the network Unit: byte/s	≥ 0 bytes/s	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws014_b ytes_out	Network Output Throughput	Data sent to the network per second from each node in the cluster Unit: byte/s	≥ 0 bytes/s	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws015_d isk_usage	Disk Usage	Disk usage of each node in a cluster, in percentage	0% to 100%	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws016_d isk_total_ size	Total Disk Size	Total disk space of each node in the cluster Unit: GB	100 to 2,000 GB	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws017_d isk_used_ size	Used Disk Space	Used disk space of each node in the cluster Unit: GB	0 to 3,600 GB	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws018_d isk_read_t hroughpu t	Disk Read Throughput	Data volume read from each disk in the cluster per second Unit: byte/s	≥ 0 bytes/s	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws019_d isk_write_ throughp ut	Disk Write Throughput	Data volume written to each disk in the cluster per second Unit: byte/s	≥ 0 bytes/s	Data warehouse node	1 minute

Metric ID	Name	Description	Value Range	Monitored Object	Monito ring Period (Raw Data)
dws020_a vg_disk_s ec_per_re ad	Average Time per Disk Read	Average time used each time when a disk reads data Unit: second	> 0s	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws021_a vg_disk_s ec_per_wr ite	Average Time per Disk Write	Average time used each time when data is written to a disk Unit: second	> 0s	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws022_a vg_disk_q ueue_leng th	Average Disk Queue Length	Average I/O queue length of a disk	≥ 0	Data warehouse node	1 minute
dws_024_ dn_diskio _util	DN I/O usage	Average disk I/O usage of DNs in a cluster	0% to 100%	Data warehouse instance	1 minute

## Dimensions

Кеу	Value
datastore_id	Data warehouse cluster ID
dws_instance_id	Data warehouse node ID

## **Cluster and Node Monitoring Information**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console and choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**.
- **Step 2 View the cluster information**. In the cluster list, click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column where a specific cluster resides. The Cloud Eye management console is displayed. By default, the cluster monitoring information on the Cloud Eye management console is displayed.

Additionally, you can specify a specific monitoring metric and the time range to view the performance curve.

**Step 3** View the node information. Click to return to the Cloud Eye management console. On the **Data Warehouse Nodes** tab page in the right pane, you can view metrics of each node in the cluster.

Additionally, you can specify a specific monitoring metric and the time range to view the performance curve.

Cloud Eye also supports the ability to compare the monitoring metrics of multiple nodes. For details, see **Comparing the Monitoring Metrics of Multiple Nodes**.

----End

#### **Comparing the Monitoring Metrics of Multiple Nodes**

- Step 1 In the navigation pane of the Cloud Eye management console, choose Dashboards > My Dashboards. Click the name of the dashboard for which you want to add a graph. On the My Dashboards page that is displayed, click Add Graph.
- **Step 2** On the **Add Graph** page, you can select **Line Chart** or **Bar Chart** to display the graph. After confirming that the information is correct, click **OK**.

For example, select **Line Chart** and **One View for Multiple Metrics** to compare the CPU usage of three GaussDB(DWS) nodes. The following table describes the parameters.

Ny Dashboards / dashboard-und / Add Graph 🕥 Sane	Select Resource and Metric				×
If you have insufficient permissions, contact the administrator to obtain the required roles or p					
Montoing ten confersion Montoing ten confersion Monto Dayly One graph to assign entry One graph to make entry Montong Scope Send Tensors and Manc	Effer a senter senter of dor. [ ] ] Olget Strage Service (0   0) ] Straje Nataski (0 - ] Order Ellevery Neter (0   0) ] Dorase Neter (0   0) ] Straje Nator (0   0) ] Markar (Langaap Processing (	All instances         The later           Image: Second systems by colored         Second systems by colored systems           Image: Second systems by colored systems         Second systems           Image: Second systems         Second systems	Description of Francess Description of Francess Description of Francess description descript	C Disprise Project adust adust adust adust adust adust adust	Select Metric Metric your an Ultimeted. 59 Enter shares Add Get Fraguest Of Entragents Of Theorem Of States Add Of
Advanced Statings = You can centigure the name, threshold, and legand manne at a graph in A					

 Table 9-7 Configuration example

Parameter	Example Value
Resource Type	GaussDB(DWS)
Dimension	Data Warehouse Node
Monitored Object	dws-demo-dws-cn-cn-2-1 dws-demo-dws-cn-cn-1-1 dws-demo-dws-dn-1-1
Metric	CPU Usage

#### Step 3 Click OK.

On the selected **My Dashboards** page, you can view the metric trend on the newly added monitoring graph. You can click the zoom in button to zoom in and view detailed metric comparison data.

----End

## **Creating Alarm Rules**

GaussDB(DWS) enables you to customize alarm rules for monitoring specific objects and notification policies, ensuring you stay informed about its running status in a timely manner.

A GaussDB(DWS) alarm rule includes the alarm rule name, monitored object, metric, threshold, monitoring interval, and whether to send a notification. This section describes how to set GaussDB(DWS) alarm rules.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Locate the row containing the target cluster, click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column to enter the Cloud Eye management console and view the GaussDB(DWS) monitoring information.

The status of the target cluster must be **Available**. Otherwise, you cannot create alarm rules.

- **Step 4** In the left navigation pane of the Cloud Eye management console, choose **Alarm Management > Alarm Rules**.
- Step 5 On the Alarm Rules page, click Create Alarm Rule in the upper right corner.
- **Step 6** On the **Create Alarm Rule** page, set parameters as prompted.
  - 1. Configure the rule name and description.
  - 2. Configure the alarm parameters as prompted.

#### **Table 9-8** Configuring alarm parameters

Paramete r	Description	Example Value
Resource Type	Name of the cloud service resource for which the alarm rule is configured.	Data Warehouse Service
Dimensio n	Metric dimension of the alarm rule. You can select <b>Data Warehouse</b> <b>Nodes</b> or <b>Data Warehouses</b> .	Data Warehouse Node
Monitorin g Scope	Resource scope to which an alarm rule applies. Select <b>Specific</b> <b>resources</b> and select one or more monitoring objects. For GaussDB(DWS), select the cluster ID or node ID in the dialog box that is displayed.	Specific resources

Paramete r	Description	Example Value
Trigger Rule	You can select an associated template, use an existing template or create a custom template as required.	Create manually
Template	This parameter is valid only when Use template is selected. Select the template to be imported. If no alarm template is available, click Create Custom Template to create one that meets your requirements.	-
Alarm Policy	This parameter is valid only when <b>Create manually</b> is selected. Set the policy that triggers an alarm. For example, trigger an alarm if the CPU usage equals to or is greater than 80% for 3 consecutive periods. <b>Table 9-6</b> lists the GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metrics.	-
Alarm Severity	Severity of an alarm. Valid values are Critical, Major, Minor, and Informational.	Major

3. Configure the alarm notification parameters as prompted.

Table 9-9 Con	figuring	alarm	notifications
---------------	----------	-------	---------------

Paramet er	Description	Example Value
Alarm Notificati on	Whether to notify users when alarms are triggered. Notifications can be sent as emails or text messages, or HTTP/HTTPS requests sent to the servers.	Enable
	You can enable (recommended) or disable <b>Alarm Notification</b> .	
Validity Period	Cloud Eye sends notifications only within the validity period specified in the alarm rule.	-
	For example, if <b>Validity Period</b> is set to <b>00:00-8:00</b> , Cloud Eye sends notifications only within 00:00-8:00.	

Paramet er	Description	Example Value
Notificati on	Name of the topic to which the alarm notification is sent.	-
Object	If you enable <b>Alarm Notification</b> , you need to select a topic. If no desired topics are available, create one first, whereupon the SMN service is invoked. For details about how to create a topic, see the <i>Simple Message Notification User Guide</i> .	
	For how to create a topic, see the <b>Simple</b> <b>Message Notification User Guide</b> .	
Trigger Conditio n	Condition for triggering the alarm. You can select <b>Generated alarm, Cleared alarm</b> , or both.	-

4. After the configuration is complete, click **Next**.

After the alarm rule is created, if the metric data reaches the specified threshold, Cloud Eye will immediately inform you that an exception has occurred.

----End

## **Transferring Data to OBS**

Raw data of metrics is kept for two days on Cloud Eye. You can enable OBS and save the raw data to OBS so that it can be saved for a longer time.

For how to configure OBS storage transfer, see "Viewing Alarm History" > "Configuring OBS Data Storage" in the *Cloud Eye User Guide*.

# 9.3 Monitoring and Diagnosing a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

## Context

GaussDB(DWS) offers a multi-dimensional optimization and diagnosis function to enhance self-O&M capability for tenants. It helps identify slow and abnormal SQL statements to ensure the smooth and efficient operation of user services. This allows you to perform historical query diagnosis analysis, real-time query analysis, real-time session analysis, and table diagnosis analysis on clusters.

• Historical Query Analysis: offers the ability to diagnose exceptions by monitoring the top SQL statements in the historical data. It presents SQL trend statistics and analysis curves that showcase the historical execution trend of SQL statements. It identifies top SQL exceptions, detects slow SQL statements that consume significant resources and have long execution times, and displays the count of abnormal SQL statements for each type. It also filters out these abnormal SQL statements. Additionally, it provides a one-click diagnosis for individual SQL statements, including checking the statement,

diagnosing the execution plan, and visualizing the results. This assists users in analyzing the execution plans and performance impact of their SQL statements.

- Real-Time Query Analysis: provides analysis of real-time resource consumption and query plans, including information on concurrency and user distribution, lock waiting jobs, slow SQL statements, SQL queues, service concurrency trend chart, real-time queries, and real-time data aggregation.
- **Real-Time Session Analysis**: provides analysis of real-time session query details, including the number of all sessions, user distribution, idle sessions, active sessions, the number of jobs in the CCN queue, session quantity trend chart, real-time sessions, and real-time data aggregation.

#### D NOTE

- This feature is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3 or later.
- The real-time query monitoring function is disabled by default. To enable it, choose Settings > Monitoring, click Monitoring Collection, and enable Real-Time Query Monitoring. For details, see Monitoring Collection. Exercise caution when enabling this as it may generate a large amount of data.
- The historical query monitoring function is disabled by default. To enable it, choose Settings > Monitoring, click Monitoring Collection, and enable Historical Query Monitoring. For details, see Monitoring Collection. Exercise caution when enabling this as it may generate a large amount of data.

## Accessing the Optimization Diagnosis Page

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Monitoring > Optimization Diagnosis** on the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Select the cluster to be optimized from the drop-down list in the upper left corner of the page. Click **Historical query analysis**, **Real-time query analysis**, and **Real-time session analysis** as needed.
  - Toggle on **Hide System Query** in the upper right corner to hide the system user queries.
  - To automatically refresh data, toggle on **Auto Refresh** in the upper right corner. You can also set the desired refresh interval by specifying **Refresh Interval (s)** for the data to update at regular intervals.

#### Figure 9-10 Optimization Diagnosis page

ows a	Optimization Diagnosis descared endelete		Hide System Guery 🚺 Auto Ref	rest 🔳 Refrest Interval (s) 38 🗸 Q
lashboard	Historical query analysis Real-lane query analysis	Real-time session analysis		
tata tata integration 🔍 🗸	Real-time concurrency	Lock waiting jobs	Slow SQL statements (exceeds 60s)	SQL queues
Sectioning Iptimization Diagnosis Jacos	12179 Concurrency	9278 Nahy 2595 2801 diadmin	0	0
edicated Clusters	Service concurrency User Node Resource 64eam 124eam 24Hours Start Data – En	te Pools		
langerert v		www.www.hu	and a share a s	Manapple
	P 12/23 09:90:42 2004/12/23 10:03:42 2004/12/23 10 Real-time query Real-time data appropation Terminals Charry	3542 2894/12/23 11:07:42 2894/12/23 11:01:42 2894	2223 1229442 20241223 132042 20241223 1349442 202417	223 1425442 2024/12/23 145942
	<ul> <li>Q. Search by inst_name by default</li> <li>□ inst_name ⊕   application ⊕   client_addr</li> </ul>	θ uner_name θ   sb_name θ   query_id θ   pi	θ waiting θ query θ start_time θ que	Q ⊕ ry_status ⊕ duration ⊕ Operation

----End

## **Historical Query Analysis**

This **Historical query analysis** page contains three tab pages: **General trend of historical queries**, **SQL quality trends**, and **SQL runtime trends**. On this page, you can find an overview of SQL quality, detailed information about the top historical SQL queries, perform one-click diagnosis of the execution plan and SQL statements for the top historical SQL statements, and get a summary of historical data.

#### Figure 9-11 Historical query analysis



- **General trend of historical queries**: displays aggregated statistics by different dimensions (cluster, user, instance, application name, and resource pool). You can also check the number of SQL statements executed per minute within a specified period on this tab page.
- **SQL quality trends**: collects statistics on the number of SQL statements of each exception type within a specified time range.
- **SQL runtime trends**: collects statistics on the historical SQL execution duration (minimum, average, and maximum durations) of a cluster.
- SQL statement performance overview: displays the number of abnormal SQL statements of each type. You can click different cards to filter the exception types.

Exception types include execution plan pushdown failures, CPU usage exceeding 100,000 seconds, the presence of **NOT IN** subqueries, query duration exceeding 1 hour, memory usage exceeding 10 GB, disk space usage exceeding 50 GB, and the number of streaming tasks exceeding 50.

#### **NOTE**

For how to customize exception thresholds for different cluster, contact technical support. Exception diagnosis rules can be flexibly configured based on the historical top SQL fields in a GaussDB(DWS) cluster.

- **Historical query details**: displays the details of all historical queries. You can search by criteria or sort all fields to quickly find desired information. Click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to display or hide columns.
  - View Details: Click View Details in the Operation column of the row that contains the target top SQL statement to view its details, including the basic information, real-time resource consumption during execution, complete SQL statement, and query plan.

- One-click diagnosis: Click One-click diagnosis in the Operation column of the row that contains the target top SQL statement to view its static check and execution plan diagnosis result and visualize the result.
  - **Planned diagnostics**: parses the execution plan character string based on the execution plan format and diagnoses the execution plan in the historical top SQL tables. A visualized tree chart is used to display information about each node, such as the execution duration, type, and number of scanned rows.

The exception types that can be identified include redistribution exceptions, estimation exceptions, computing skews, partition scanning exceptions, and cross-logical cluster queries.

```
NOTE
```

To check the execution duration of each step in the execution plan, set **resource\_track\_level** to **perf**.

Figure 9-12 Plan visualization



type: ecost: 0.00..0.26 erows:1

	5	5	
P	Named diagnostics SQL Diagnosis		
	Execution Plan		
	l   heedst (astell,00,0,28 renef with54) Generic plus is in use		
	Plan visualization Diagnosis results		
	Diagnostic items	Diagnostic information	Diagnosis results
	redistribution anomaly	No absormally found	v
	Estimate anomalies	No abnormality found	v
	Calculate III	No abnormality found	v
	Partition scan exception	No abnormality found	v
	Query across legical clusters	No absormally found	v

Figure 9-13 Plan diagnosis

 SQL Diagnosis: performs a static check on user-written SQL statements based on SQL development specifications. It analyzes non-compliant SQL statements and provides rectification suggestions.

#### **NOTE**

The SQL development specifications are created based on the usage of GaussDB(DWS) and are only meant for reference. The provided specifications may need to be revised according to actual usage. For details, see GaussDB(DWS) Development Design Specifications.





 Data summary: aggregates historical top SQL data by various dimensions (database, user, resource pool, application name, instance, and unique SQL ID) and displays the number of SQL statements and their resource consumption.

Click **View Details** to view the resource consumption details of a particular object.

## **Real-Time Query Analysis**

This page provides information on real-time concurrency and user distribution, lock waiting jobs, slow SQL statements, SQL queues, service concurrency trend chart, real-time queries, and real-time data aggregation.

#### Figure 9-15 Real-time query analysis

Real-time concurrency	Lo	ck waiting jobs	Slow SQL statements (exceeds	60s) SQL queues
12179 Concurrency	• 9278 Fuby • 2901 chadmin	2595	0	0
envice concurrency User Node Reso	ance Poots 2			
6Hours 12Hours 24Hours Start Date -	End Data			
multim	unamp	untur	mulum	M. M. Marthalland
9 9 9 1/23 08:30:42 2034/12/23 10:34:42 2034/12/23	10.3742 2024/12/23 11:1042	2024/12/23 11:55:42 2024/12/	23 12 34 42 20 24/12/23 13 28 42 20 24/12/	is 12.56.42 2024/12/23 14.26.42 2024/12/23 15
9 3 2) 2)23 0600642 2004/12/23 1006642 2004/12/23 Beal-Time quary Real-Time data appropriation	1023748 2024/12/23 11:1042 3	2024/12/23 11:53:42 2024/12/	23 12 94 42 2024/12/23 13 26 42 2024/12/	is 11.56.42 2034/12/23 14.36.42 2034/12/23 15
2 2/23 08/30/42 2004/12/23 10/04-02 2004/12/23 2004/100/04 2004/12/23 10/04-02 2009/10/04/2004/12/23 10/04-02 2009/12/23 10/04-02 2009/12/23 10/04-02	10:37%2 2024/12/23 11:10:42 3	3824/12/23 11:53:42 2024/12/	23 12:54:42 2024/12/23 13:38:42 2024/12/	23 12 56 42 2004/12/23 14 36 42 2004/12/23 15
2 2/22 08/30-82 2054/12/23 10:0-6-82 2054/12/23 salf-time query Real-time data aggregation Terminalin Courry C. Search to incl_name by default	1 1033742 2024/12/23 11:1042 3	2024/12/23 11:05:42 2024/12/	23 123442 2034/12/23 132842 2034/12/	21135642 2034/12/231436442 2034/12/2315
22 58 55-042 2054(12)23 53:06442 2054(12)23 345 there query Read-Strive data apprepation	1003742 2004/12/23 11:10:42	2024/12/23 11:05:42 2024/12/ ⊕ qxxxy_30 ⊕ pel ⊕	23 123442 2024/12/23 132842 2024/12/ 23 123442 2024/12/23 132842 2024/12/ wattag @ covy @ sta	23 135642 2034/12/23 143842 2034/12/23 13 2034/12/23 143842 2034/12/23 13

- **Real-time Concurrency**: displays the number of SQL statements currently running in the cluster and the concurrency distribution for each user.
- Lock waiting jobs: indicates the number of SQL statements waiting for locks in the cluster.
- **Slow SQL statements**: displays the number of SQL statements whose duration exceeds 60s.
- **SQL queues**: displays the total number of all queuing SQL statements in the clusters, resource pools, and CCNs.
- Service concurrency: refers to the number of services running concurrently in a cluster during a specific time period. This information is displayed in a line chart, making it easier to collect and compare statistics. You can click User, Node, or Resource Pools to view this information in different dimensions.
- **Real-time query**: allows you to view all the details of running queries in the cluster. You can sort and filter displayed items to help you quickly locate the information you need. Click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to display or hide columns.
  - Click **termination** in the **Operation** column to terminate a real-time top SQL query.
  - Select multiple real-time top SQL queries and click Terminate Query above the list to terminate them.
  - Click Execute Plan in the Operation column to view a visualized tree chart of real-time top SQL execution plans, including the execution duration, type, and number of scanned rows of each node.

#### **NOTE**

The fine-grained permission control function is added. Only users with the operate permission are able to terminate queries. For users with the read-only permission, the **Terminate Query** button is grayed out.

• **Real-time data aggregation**: summarizes the top SQL query data in realtime, categorizing it by different dimensions such as node, query ID, user, and resource pool. It provides information on the number of running SQL statements, queuing SQL statements, slow SQL statements, complex statements, lock waiting jobs, and simple statements.

## **Real-Time Session Analysis**

This page displays the number of real-time sessions and their distribution among users, the number of idle and active sessions, the number of jobs in the CCN queue, session quantity trend chart, real-time session list, and real-time data aggregation.



essions	Total Idle Sessions	Total Active Sessions	CCN queued jobs 1
O Sessions			0
ssions User Node Resource Pools 2			
6Hours 12Hours 24Hours Start Date - End Date	8		
	No data available		
ssions Real-time data aggregation 3			
Terminate Session			
_ Search by inst_name by default			Q
inst name Q and/cat Q user na Q db name Q client a	🖯 query_id 🖯 pid 🖯 waiting 🖯	query ⊖ state ⊖ lock_type ⊖ lock_m.	Operation

- **Sessions**: displays the total number of real-time sessions in the cluster and their distribution among users.
- Total Idle Sessions: refers to the total number of idle sessions in the cluster.
- **Total Active Sessions**: refers to the total number of active sessions in the cluster.
- CCN queued jobs: displays the total number of jobs in the CCN queue.
- **Sessions**: refers to the number of sessions in a cluster during a specific time period. This information is displayed in a line chart, making it easier to collect and compare statistics. You can click **User**, **Node**, or **Resource Pools** to view this information in different dimensions.
- **Sessions**: allows you to view the real-time information about all running sessions. You can sort and filter displayed items to help you quickly locate the information you need. Click the setting button in the upper right corner of the list to display or hide columns.
  - Click termination in the Operation column to terminate a real-time session.
  - Select multiple sessions and click **Terminate Session** above the list to terminate them.

#### **NOTE**

The fine-grained permission control function is added. Only users with the operate permission are able to terminate sessions. For users with the read-only permission, the **Terminate a Session** button is grayed out.

• **Real-time data aggregation**: summarizes session data by various dimensions (node, user, and resource pool) and displays metrics such as the number of active sessions, the number of idle sessions, CPU usage time (s), average memory usage (MB), estimated memory usage (MB), and spilled data volume (MB).

# 9.4 Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Alarms

## 9.4.1 Alarm Management

## Overview

Alarm management includes viewing and configuring alarm rules and subscribing to alarm information. Alarm rules display alarm statistics and details of the past week for users to view tenant alarms. In addition to providing a set of default GaussDB(DWS) alarm rules, this feature allows you to modify alarm thresholds based on your own services. GaussDB(DWS) alarm notifications are sent using the SMN service.

#### **NOTE**

- This feature is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1.200 and later.
- Currently, alarms cannot be categorized and managed by enterprise project.

## Visiting the Alarms Page

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm**.
- **Step 3** On the page that is displayed:

#### • Existing Alarm Statistics

Statistics of the existing alarms in the past seven days are displayed by alarm severity in a bar chart. In this way, you can see clearly the number and category of the alarms generated in the past week.

• Today's Alarms

Statistics of the existing alarms on the current day are displayed by alarm severity in a list. In this way, you can see clearly the number and category of the unhandled alarms generated on the day.

• Alarm details

Details about all alarms, handled and unhandled, in the past seven days are displayed in a table for you to quickly locate faults, including the alarm name, alarm severity, alarm source, cluster name, location, description, generation date, and status.

#### D NOTE

The alarm data displayed (a maximum of 30 days) is supported by the Event Service microservice.

#### ----End

# Alarm Types and Alarms

## **NOTE**

The alarm policy is triggered based on the current configuration.

Table 9-10	0 Threshold	alarms of	DMS	alarm	sources
		uturnis or		atarrit	Jources

Тур e	Name	Severity	Description
Def ault	Node CPU Usage Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the threshold of CPU usage (system + user) of any node in the cluster is exceeded within the specified period and the constraint is not met. The alarm will be cleared when the CPU usage (system + user) is lower than the threshold and the constraint is not met.
Def ault	Node Data Disk Usage Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent: > 85%; Important: > 80%	This alarm is generated if the threshold of data disk ( <b>/var/chroot/DWS/</b> <b>data</b> [ <i>n</i> ]) usage of any node in the cluster is exceeded within the specified period and the constraint is not met. The alarm will be cleared when the data disk ( <b>/var/chroot/DWS/data</b> [ <i>n</i> ]) usage is lower than the threshold and the constraint is not met.
Def ault	Node Data Disk I/O Usage Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the threshold of data disk ( <b>/var/chroot/DWS/</b> <b>data</b> [ <i>n</i> ]) I/O usage ( <b>util</b> ) of any node in the cluster is exceeded within the specified period and the constraint is not met. The alarm will be cleared when the data disk ( <b>/var/chroot/DWS/</b> <b>data</b> [ <i>n</i> ]) I/O usage ( <b>util</b> ) is lower than the threshold and the constraint is not met.
Def ault	Node Data Disk Latency Exceeds the Threshold	Important	This alarm is generated if the threshold of data disk (/var/chroot/DWS/ data[n]) I/O latency (await) of any node in the cluster is exceeded within the specified period and the constraint is not met. The alarm will be cleared when the data disk (/var/chroot/DWS/ data[n]) I/O latency (await) is lower than the threshold and the constraint is not met.

Тур е	Name	Severity	Description
Def ault	Data Spilled to Disks of the Query Statement Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the threshold of data flushed to disks of the SQL statement in the cluster is exceeded within the specified period and the constraint is not met. The alarm can be cleared only after you handle the SQL statement.
Def ault	Number of Queuing Query Statements Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the threshold of the number of queuing SQL statements is exceeded within the specified period. The alarm will be cleared when the number of queuing SQL statements is less than the threshold.
Def ault	Queue Congestion in the Default Cluster Resource Pool	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the queue in the default resource pool of a cluster is congested and no alarm suppression conditions are met. This alarm will be cleared if the queue is not congested.
Def ault	Long SQL Probe Execution Duration in a Cluster	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the DMS alarm module detects a SQL probe execution duration on a server and no alarm suppression conditions are met. If no execution duration exceeds the threshold, the alarm will be automatically cleared. <b>NOTE</b> The alarm is supported only in 8.1.1.300 and later cluster versions. For earlier versions, contact technical support.
Def ault	A Vacuum Full Operation That Holds a Table Lock for A Long Time Exists in the Cluster	Important	In a specified period, the DMS alarm module detects that VACUUM FULL has been running for a long time in the cluster and blocks other operations. This alarm is generated if there are other SQL statements in the lock wait state and no suppression conditions are met. This alarm will be cleared if VACUUM FULL in the cluster did not cause lock wait. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.

Тур е	Name	Severity	Description
Def ault	Instance Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the DMS alarm module detects the instance memory usage on a node in a cluster exceeds the threshold and no alarm suppression conditions are met. If the usage decreases, the alarm will be automatically cleared. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Def ault	Dynamic Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	This alarm is generated if the DMS alarm module detects the dynamic memory usage on a node in a cluster exceeds the threshold and no alarm suppression conditions are met. If the usage decreases, the alarm will be automatically cleared. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Def ault	Disk Usage of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Resource Pool Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	The DMS alarm module generates an alarm if the disk usage of the cluster resource pool exceeds the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm is cleared when the DMS alarm module detects that the disk usage of the cluster resource pool is below the threshold. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Def ault	Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	The DMS alarm module generates an alarm if the session usage in the cluster exceeds the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm is cleared when the DMS alarm module detects that the session usage in the cluster is below the threshold. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.

Тур е	Name	Severity	Description
Def ault	Active Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	The DMS alarm module generates an alarm if the active session usage in the cluster exceeds the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm is cleared when the DMS alarm module detects that the active session usage in the cluster is below the threshold. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Def ault	Number of Database Deadlocks in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	If the number of deadlocks in the cluster database exceeds the threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met, the DMS alarm module will generate an alarm. The alarm will be cleared once the DMS alarm module detects that the number of deadlocks in the cluster database is below the threshold. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Def ault	Database Session Usage of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold	Urgent	The DMS alarm module will generate an alarm if the session usage of the cluster database goes over the threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm will be resolved by the DMS alarm module once it detects that the session usage of the cluster database is below the threshold. <b>NOTE</b> If this alarm is generated, contact technical support engineers.
Cus tom	<i>Name of the user-defined threshold alarm</i>	User- defined alarm severity	Alarm description

# 9.4.2 Alarm Rules

Overview

• Concepts related to threshold alarms

- Alarm rule: consists of the alarm rule name, rule description, clusters associated with the rule, alarm policy triggering relationship, and alarm policy. An alarm rule can apply to one or all clusters, and can consist of one or more policies. The relationship between alarm policies can be selected in **Triggered Policies**. Each alarm policy consists of the triggers and constraint of each alarm rule.
- Alarm policy: consists of the triggers, constraint, and alarm severity for an alarm metric.
- Alarm metric: indicates a database cluster metric, which is generally time series data, for example, node CPU usage and amount of data flushed to disks.
- Alarm rule types
  - Default rule: best practices of GaussDB(DWS) threshold alarms.
  - User-defined rule: personalized alarm rules by configuring or combining monitoring metrics. (The current version supports only user-defined alarm rules of schema usage.)
- Alarm rule operations
  - Modify: modifies an alarm rule. All alarm rules apply (all items of userdefined alarm rules but only some items of the default alarm rules).
  - Enable/Disable: enables or disables an alarm rule. All alarm rules apply.
     When an alarm rule is enabled, it is added to the check list of the alarm engine and can be triggered normally. Disabled rules are not in the check list.
  - Delete: deletes an alarm rule. You can delete only user-defined rules. Default alarm rules cannot be deleted.

### Precautions

After a cluster is migrated, to monitor alarms of the new cluster, change the cluster bound to the alarm rule to the new cluster. You can also create an alarm rule for the new cluster.

### Viewing Alarm Rules

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm**.
- **Step 3** Click **View Alarm Rule** in the upper left corner. On the page that is displayed, you can see the threshold alarm rules of database cluster monitoring metrics, as shown in the following figure.

----End

### Modifying an Alarm Rule

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm**.

#### **Step 3** Click **View Alarm Rule** in the upper left corner.

**Step 4** On the **Alarm Rules** page that is displayed, click **Modify** in the **Operation** column of the target alarm rule.

#### **NOTE**

- Read-only users (with the DWS ReadOnlyAccess permission) cannot modify alarm rules.
- Default rules have limited options that you can modify, such as cluster binding, alarm policy trigger threshold, data capture interval, and alarm suppression conditions. However, custom rules offer more flexibility, allowing you to modify all options.

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Alarm Rule	The rule name contains 6 to 64 characters and must start with a non-digit character.	-
Description	User-defined description, which contains a maximum of 490 characters.	-
Associated Cluster	You can select a cluster of the current tenant from the drop-down list box as the monitoring cluster of the alarm module.	All
Triggered Policies	<ul> <li>Policy triggering relationships are as follows:</li> <li>Independent: Alarm policies are triggered independently of each other.</li> </ul>	Independent
	• <b>Priority</b> : Alarm policies are triggered by priority. Policies of a lower priority will be automatically triggered after those of a higher priority.	

#### Table 9-11 Alarm rule parameters

Parameter	Description	Example Value
Alarm Policy	<ul> <li>The alarm policies are as follows:</li> <li>Metric: GaussDB(DWS) monitoring metric, which is the data source used by the alarm engine for threshold determination.</li> </ul>	-
	• Alarm Object: databases in the selected cluster and schemas in the selected databases.	
	• <b>Trigger</b> : calculation rule for threshold determination of a monitoring metric. Select the average value within a period of time of a metric to reduce the probability of alarm oscillation.	
	• <b>Constraint</b> : suppresses the repeated triggering and clearance of alarms of the same type within the specified period.	
	<ul> <li>Alarm Severity: includes Urgent, Important, Minor, and Prompt.</li> </ul>	

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

### Creating an Alarm Rule

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm**.
- Step 3 Click View Alarm Rule in the upper left corner.
- **Step 4** Click **Create Alarm Rule** in the upper right corner. You can configure items, such as the alarm rule name, rule description, associated cluster, and alarm policy. For details, see **Table 9-11**.

#### **NOTE**

Currently, only alarm rules of schema usage metrics can be created on GaussDB(DWS).

----End

# 9.4.3 Alarm Subscriptions

You can subscribe to GaussDB(DWS) alarm notifications to receive notifications by SMS message, email, or application when an alarm of a specified severity is generated.

## **Creating a Subscription**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Management** > **Alarm** and click **Subscriptions**.
- Step 3 Click Create Subscription in the upper left corner of the page.
- **Step 4** In the **Subscription Settings** area, configure the basic information and alarm severity of the subscription.

### Subscription Settings

Edit subscription information and select alarm severities

* Status	• •	
* Subscription Name	Enter a subscription name.	0
Alarm Severity	Select an alarm severity.	

#### Table 9-12 Subscription parameters

Paramete r	Description
Status	Whether to enable the alarm subscription. When you disable a subscription, you will not receive the corresponding alarm notifications, but the subscription will not be deleted.
Subscripti on Name	<ul> <li>Name of the alarm subscription:</li> <li>Contains only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_), and must start with a letter or digit.</li> <li>Contains 1 to 256 characters.</li> </ul>
Cluster	Select the cluster to subscribe to. Note that only one cluster can be subscribed to multiple alarms.

**Step 5** The **Subscribed Alarms** area displays the subscribed alarms by subscription settings. Select an SMN topic from the drop-down list.

To create a topic, click **Create Topic**. The SMN console is displayed.

#### **NOTE**

The selected topic must have granted GaussDB(DWS) the permission for publishing messages to the topic. To grant permissions, configure topic policies on the SMN management console. When configuring the topic policy, select **DWS** for services that can publish messages to this topic.
**Step 6** Confirm the information and click **OK**.

----End

## Modifying a Subscription

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Management** > **Alarm** and click **Subscriptions**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target subscription, click **Edit**.
- **Step 4** On the **Edit Subscription** page displayed, modify the parameters. For details, see **Step 4** to **5**.
- Step 5 Click OK.

----End

### **Deleting a Subscription**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Management** > **Alarm** and click **Subscriptions**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the target subscription, click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
- Step 4 Click Yes to delete the subscription.

----End

## 9.4.4 Alarm Handling

## 9.4.4.1 DWS\_200000001 Node CPU Usage Exceeds the Threshold

## Description

GaussDB(DWS) collects the CPU usage of each node in a cluster every 30 seconds. If the average CPU usage of a node in the last 10 minutes (configurable) exceeds 90% (configurable), an alarm is reported indicating that the node CPU usage exceeds the threshold. If the average usage is lower than 85% (that is, the reporting threshold minus 5%), the alarm is cleared.

#### **NOTE**

If the average CPU usage of a node is always greater than the alarm threshold, the alarm is generated again 24 hours (configurable).

## Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000001	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 90%	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## Parameters

Category	Name	Description		
Location	Name	Node CPU Usage Exceeds the Threshold		
information	Туре	Operation alarm		
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated		
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>		

### Impact on the System

If the CPU usage is high for a long time, service processes may respond slowly or become unavailable.

## **Possible Causes**

- Complex services occupy a large number of CPU resources.
- The CPU configuration of the cluster is too low to meet service requirements.

## Handling Procedure

#### Step 1 Check the CPU usage of each node.

- 1. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- 2. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm**, select the cluster for which the alarm is generated in the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner, view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days, and locate the name of the node for which the alarm is generated based on the location information.
- 3. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- 4. Choose **Monitoring > Node Monitoring > Overview** to view the CPU usage

of each node in the current cluster. Click  $\stackrel{[a]}{=}$  on the right to view the CPU performance metrics in the last 1, 3, 12, or 24 hours and see whether there is a sharp increase in the CPU usage.

Node Monitoring 💿	Last 1 hours Last 12 hours Last 12 hours	Last 7 days Last 15 days
Data         Tethod:           National         CPV tables (N i 0)           213         217           225         23           138         2157		8         5           10
		Mamory Usage         0           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10           10         10

- If the CPU usage frequently increases and then returns to normal in a short period of time, it indicates that the CPU usage temporarily spikes during service execution. In this case, you can adjust the alarm threshold through Step 2 to reduce the number of reported alarms.
- If the CPU usage remains high for a long time, it indicates that the cluster is overloaded. In this case, check cluster services by referring to Step 3 or enhance the cluster flavor. For details, see Changing the Node Flavor.

#### Step 2 Check whether the CPU usage alarm configuration is proper.

- 1. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** and click **View Alarm Rule**.
- 2. Locate the row that contains the **Node CPU Usage Exceeds the Threshold**, and click **Modify** in the **Operation** column. The **Modifying an Alarm Rule page** is displayed.
- 3. Adjust the alarm threshold and detection period. A higher alarm threshold and a longer detection period indicate a lower alarm sensitivity. For details about the GUI configuration, see **Alarm Rules**.

#### Step 3 Check whether the CPU usage of the current cluster service is too high.

- 1. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- 2. On the monitoring page, choose **Monitoring** > **Real-Time Queries**, click <sup>(2)</sup>, and select **CPU Time (ms)** to view the query with the longest CPU time.

Cluster Overview Monitoring ^	Real-Time Queries 💿						
Nade Monitoring Pediomance Monitoring Database Monitoring	799 *****		248.37s	796		167.52s	Os Average Daviso Visit
Real-Time Queries 1 Historical Queries Instance Montorep	Sessions Real-Time Gaeries	2	Auto Hobech	Peters interval (3) 80	- Hali Susan Duny 🂽	see v	3 5967. V [200-3100007. Q] Q @
Resource Paols	Overy 10 (i)	Usemane	Database Name	Submitted 0	eccelor Time (ms) () Sta	demont Pasi	FStow Lane C. Enter a keyword
Wolfoed Analysis	C 22980250997440429	doedmin	clentconnevertoed		200	ed " frem stream_test_011	Eventer Time (m)
Montaring Settings	229602508997441926	doedmin	clientconnoverload		201	ed I fram stream Jack (211). Non	Min. OPU Time (m)
Tanko	229802200997440679	doedmin	clientconneverload		201	ed count(*) from stream_te . Non	Max. CPU Time (m)
	22000200007440307	dadnis	clantconevertoad	- 0	100	ed " from stream Just (21 K	CPU Time Shew (%)
	220602500074-0189	dadmin	clentramovefoed	- 4	201	ed " fram stream Jack_01 K	EN SOFINO
	22960200997442216	doedmin	clientconnoverload		200	ed " fram stream Jack_21 K	e adire

3. After confirming with the service side, select the query ID to be stopped and click **Stop Query**.

#### Figure 9-18 Terminating a query

eessuu	is real fine valences								
300	nds Query		Auto Methodi	Refer Marval (s)	<	Died.	v Selet v Ehlerably	orent 0 0 8	
0	Quey ID 8	Usersame	Outubase Nome	Submitted ()	Execution Time (195) (8	Statement	FastSlowLate	Query Status	
•	229683580997443577	diadmin	clentconrovertaad		•	select " flow stream_test_01 k	Note	active	
۰	229643540997443752	diadmin	clientconnovertuad		0	select " from stream_best_Of K	None	active	
	229583580997442958	chedmin	clientconnoverland		•	select " from stream_best_01 k .	None	active	

**Step 4** See advanced tuning operations in "**Troubleshooting**" > "**Cluster Performance**".

----End

#### Alarm Clearance

After the CPU usage decreases, the alarm is automatically cleared.

## 9.4.4.2 DWS\_200000006 Node Data Disk Usage Exceeds the Threshold

#### Description

GaussDB(DWS) collects the usage of all disks on each node in a cluster every 30 seconds.

- If the maximum disk usage in the last 10 minutes (configurable) exceeds 80% (configurable), a major alarm is reported. If the average disk usage is lower than 75% (that is, the alarm threshold minus 5%), this major alarm is cleared.
- If the maximum disk usage in the last 10 minutes (configurable) exceeds 85% (configurable), a critical alarm is reported. If the average disk usage is lower than 80% (alarm threshold minus 5%), this critical alarm is cleared.

#### **NOTE**

If the maximum disk usage is always greater than the alarm threshold, the system generates an alarm again 24 hours later (configurable).

## Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000006	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 85%; important: > 80%	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

#### Parameters

Category	Name	Description	
Location	Name	Node Data Disk Usage Exceeds the Threshold	
information	Туре	Operation alarm	
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated	
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>	

## Impact on the System

If the cluster data volume or temporary data spill size increases and the usage of any single disk exceeds 90%, the cluster becomes read-only, affecting customer services.

#### **Possible Causes**

- The service data volume increases rapidly, and the cluster disk capacity configuration cannot meet service requirements.
- Dirty data is not cleared in a timely manner.
- There are skew tables.

#### Handling Procedure

#### Step 1 Check the disk usage of each node.

- 1. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- 2. On the **Alarms** page, select the current cluster from the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner and view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days. Locate the name of the node for which the alarm is generated and the disk information based on the location information.
- Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click Monitoring Panel in the Operation column.
- 4. Choose **Monitoring** > **Node Monitoring** > **Disks** to view the usage of each disk on the current cluster node. If you want to view the historical monitoring

information about a disk on a node, click  $\[ex]{}$  on the right to view the disk performance metrics in the last 1, 3, 12, or 24 hours.

le Monitoring 💿		Last 1 hour Last 3 hours Last 12 hours Last 24 h	ours Last 7 days Last 15 days
Overview Disks Network		Total Disk Space	Disk Usage
		68 50	%
Node Name Disk Name	Disk Type	Disk 40	80
vda	System disk	30	60
. vdb	Data disk	20	40
vdc	Data disk	10	20
vdd	Log disk	·	0, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
vda	System disk	08:53:52 09:02:22 09:10:52 09:19:22 09:28:52 09:37:52 09:46 -O- vda	522 08:53:52 09:02:22 09:10:52 09:19:22 09:28:52 09:37:52 09:46:22 
vtb	Data disk		
vdc	Data disk	Disk Read Rate KB/s	Disk Write Rate KB/s
vdd	Log disk	1	5000
, vda	System disk		4000
vb	Data disk		3000
tal Records: 12 10 🗸 (1) - 2			2000
			1000
		0.0000000000000000000000000000000000000	22 08/53/52 09/02/22 09/10/52 09/19/22 09/28/22 09/86/52 09/45/22
		-O- vda	-O- vda

- If the data disk usage frequently increases and then returns to normal in a short period of time, it indicates that the disk usage temporarily spikes due to service execution. In this case, you can adjust the alarm threshold through Step 2 to reduce the number of reported alarms.
- If the usage of a data disk exceeds 90%, read-only is triggered and error cannot execute INSERT in a read-only transaction is reported for writerelated services. In this case, you can refer to Step 3 to delete unnecessary data.

- If the usage of more than half of the data disks in the cluster exceeds 70%, the data volume in the cluster is large. In this case, refer to Step 4 to clear data or perform Disk Capacity Expansion.
- If the difference between the highest and lowest data disk usage in the cluster exceeds 10%, refer to Step 5 to handle data skew.

#### Step 2 Check whether the alarm configuration is proper.

- Return to the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose Monitoring > Alarm and click View Alarm Rule.
- 2. Locate the row that contains **Node Data Disk Usage Exceeds the Threshold** and click **Modify** in the **Operation** column. On the **Modifying an Alarm Rule** page, view the configuration parameters of the current alarm.
- 3. Adjust the alarm threshold and detection period. A higher alarm threshold and a longer detection period indicate a lower alarm sensitivity. For details about the GUI configuration, see **Alarm Rules**.
- 4. If the data disk specification is high, you are advised to increase the threshold based on historical disk monitoring metrics. Otherwise, perform other steps. If the problem persists, you are advised to perform **Disk Capacity Expansion**.

#### Step 3 Check whether the cluster is in the read-only state.

- 1. When a cluster is in read-only state, stop the write tasks to prevent data loss caused by disk space exhaustion.
- Return to the GaussDB(DWS) console and choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. In the row of the abnormal cluster whose cluster status is Readonly, click Cancel Read-only.
- 3. In the displayed dialog box, confirm the information and click **OK** to cancel the read-only state for the cluster. For details, see **Removing the Read-only Status**.
- 4. After the read-only mode is disabled, use the client to connect to the database and run the **DROP/TRUNCATE** command to delete unnecessary data.

#### **NOTE**

You are advised to lower the disk usage to below 70%. Check whether there are other tables that need to be rectified by referring to **Step 4** and **Step 5**.

## Step 4 Check whether the usage of more than half of the data disks in the cluster exceeds 70%.

 Run the VACUUM FULL command to clear data. For details, see Solution to High Disk Usage and Cluster Read-Only. Connect to the database, run the following SQL statement to query tables whose dirty page rate exceeds 30%, and sort the tables by size in descending order: SELECT schemaname AS schema, relname AS table\_name, n\_live\_tup AS analyze\_count, pg\_size\_pretty(pg\_table\_size(relid)) as table\_size, dirty\_page\_rate FROM PGXC\_GET\_STAT\_ALL\_TABLES WHERE schemaName NOT IN ('pg\_toast', 'pg\_catalog', 'information\_schema', 'cstore', 'pmk') AND dirty\_page\_rate > 30 ORDER BY table\_size DESC, dirty\_page\_rate DESC; The following is an example of the possible execution result of the SQL

statement (the dirty page rate of a table is high):

schema | table\_name | analyze\_count | table\_size | dirty\_page\_rate

public | test\_table | 4333 | 656 KB | 71.11 (1 row)

 If any result is displayed in the command output, clear the tables with a high dirty page rate in serial mode.
 VACUUM FULL ANALYZE schema.table name

#### NOTICE

The **VACUUM FULL** operation occupies extra defragmentation space, which is Table size x (1 – Dirty page rate). As a result, the disk usage temporarily increases and then decreases. Ensure that the remaining space of the cluster is sufficient and will not trigger read-only when the **VACUUM FULL** operation is performed. You are advised to start from small tables. In addition, the **VACUUM FULL** operation holds an exclusive lock, during which access to the operated table is blocked. You need to properly arrange the execution time to avoid affecting services.

- 3. If no command output is displayed, no table with a high dirty page rate exists. You can expand the node or disk capacity of the cluster based on the following data warehouse types to prevent service interruption caused by read-only triggered by further disk usage increase.
  - a. To scale out a storage-compute coupled data warehouse with cloud SSDs, see **Disk Capacity Expansion of an EVS Cluster**.
  - b. To scale out a storage-compute coupled data warehouse with local SSDs or a standalone system, see **Scaling Out a Cluster**.

## Step 5 Check whether the difference between the highest and lowest data disk usages in the cluster exceeds 10%.

 If the data disk usage differs greatly, connect to the database and run the following SQL statement to check there are skew tables in the cluster: SELECT schemaname, tablename, pg\_size\_pretty(totalsize), skewratio FROM pgxc\_get\_table\_skewness WHERE skewratio > 0.05 ORDER BY totalsize desc;

The following is an example of the possible execution result of the SQL statement:

schemaname	tablename	pg_size_p	retty   skewratio
scheduler   w public   tes public   tbl scheduler   so (4 rows)	orkload_collecti t_table   6 _col   10 :heduler_storage	on   428 MB 572 KB   04 KB   e   32 KB	.429 .154   .250

2. If the SQL statement output is displayed, select another distribution column for the table with severe skew based on the table size and skew rate. For 8.1.0 and later versions, use the ALTER TABLE syntax to adjust the distribution column. For other versions, see How Do I Adjust Distribution Columns?

```
----End
```

#### Alarm Clearance

After the disk usage decreases, the alarm is automatically cleared.

## 9.4.4.3 DWS\_200000009 Node Data Disk I/O Usage Exceeds the Threshold

## Description

GaussDB(DWS) collects the data disk I/O usage of each cluster node every 30 seconds. This alarm is generated when the average usage of a data disk on a node exceeds 90% (configurable) in the last 10 minutes (configurable), and is automatically cleared when the average usage drops below 85% (alarm threshold minus 5%).

#### **NOTE**

- If the data disk I/O usage of a node is always greater than the alarm threshold, the alarm is generated again 24 hours later (configurable).
- When using an SSD storage-based cluster, disk I/O can surpass 100% as the service volume grows. But, this does not always mean there is a performance bottleneck. To confirm the alarm's validity, you should evaluate the service's actual running status.

## Alarm Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000009	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 90%	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## Alarm Parameters

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Node Data Disk I/O Usage Exceeds the Threshold
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

## Impact on the System

- High disk I/O usage affects data read and write performance, thereby affecting cluster performance.
- A large number of disk writes occupy the disk capacity. If the disk capacity exceeds 90%, the cluster becomes read-only.

## Possible Causes

• A large number of read or write operations are performed during peak hours.

- A large amount of data spills to disks due to the execution of complex statements.
- Data is scanned by the Scan operator.

## **Handling Procedure**

- **Step 1** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Monitoring** in the **Operation** column.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Monitoring > Node Monitoring. On the Node Monitoring page, click the Disks tab to view the data disk I/O usage and disk I/O rate.

If the disk I/O rate is high and the data disk usage keeps increasing, it indicates that services are writing data to disks. This may be caused by complex queries.

Step 3 Click Queries in the navigation pane to view the real-time queries.

If the execution time of a statement exceeds the expected time, stop the query and check the disk I/O usage again. For details, see 2.

Figure 9-19 Terminating a query



----End

#### Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the data disk I/O usage drops to a certain value.

## 9.4.4.4 DWS\_2000000012 Node Data Disk Latency Exceeds the Threshold

#### Description

GaussDB(DWS) collects the data disk latency of each node in the cluster every 30 seconds. This alarm is generated when the average latency of a data disk on a node exceeds 400 ms (configurable) in the last 10 minutes (configurable), and is automatically cleared when the average latency drops below 400 ms.

#### **NOTE**

If the data disk latency of a node is always greater than the alarm threshold, this alarm is generated again after 24 hours (configurable).

## **Alarm Attributes**

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000012	Manageme nt plane alarm	Important: > 400 ms	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Parameters**

Category	Name	Description		
Location	Name	Node Data Disk Latency Exceeds the Threshold		
information	Туре	Operation alarm		
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated		
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>		

## Impact on the System

High disk latency will slow down the data read/write speed, causing the cluster performance to deteriorate.

#### **Possible Causes**

The database is in peak hours and there are a large number of read and write requests.

## Handling Procedure

- **Step 1** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Monitoring** in the **Operation** column.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Node Monitoring**. On the **Node Monitoring** page, view the CPU usage, disk usage, and memory usage.

If the CPU usage and disk I/O rate are high, the cluster is in peak hours. You can adjust the latency threshold based on service requirements. For details, see **3**.

- Step 3 Return to the console home page. In the navigation pane on the left, choose Management > Alarms. On the displayed page, click View Alarm Rule in the upper left corner.
- **Step 4** Locate the row that contains **Node Data Disk Latency Exceeds the Threshold**, and click **Modify** in the **Operation** column. On the displayed page, change the threshold.

----End

## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the data disk latency drops to a certain value.

## 9.4.4.5 DWS\_2000000016 Data Spilled to Disks of the Query Statement Exceeds the Threshold

#### Description

During the execution of service queries, the database may choose to store the temporary result to the disk, which is called **operator spilling**.

GaussDB(DWS) checks the load management records of jobs being executed on CNs through the **GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_STATISTICS** view every 60 seconds and calculates the maximum amount of data spilled to DNs.

If the number of SQL statements spilled to disks exceeds 5 GB (configurable) within 10 minutes (configurable), an alarm is reported indicating that a query statement triggers the data spill threshold. This alarm is automatically cleared when the data spill drop below the alarm conditions. For details about how to modify alarm configurations, see Modifying Alarm Rules.

#### **NOTE**

If blocked SQL statements that can trigger the alarm persists, the alarm is generated again after 24 hours (configurable).

#### Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000016	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 5 GB	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

#### Parameters

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Data Spilled to Disks of the Query Statement Exceeds the Threshold
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

#### D NOTE

You can connect to the database and run the **SELECT \* FROM GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_STATISTICS** command to view the **max\_spill\_size** column in the view.

#### Impact on the System

If a large amount of data spills to disks, a large number of system I/O resources are occupied. As a result, the data disk space may be insufficient or exhausted, triggering the database to become read-only and interrupting services.

#### **Possible Causes**

- The amount of service data spilled to disks exceeds the alarm threshold.
- The performance of the SQL query plan is poor, causing a large amount of data to be imported to the memory and spilled to disks.
- Expired data is not cleared in a timely manner. As a result, too much invalid data is scanned and spilled to disks.

### Handling Procedure

#### Step 1 Check whether the execution plan is poor in performance.

- 1. Obtain the SQL statement from the additional information of the alarm, run the **ANALYZE** statement on the involved tables. Run the SQL statement again and check whether the amount of data spilled to disks decreases.
- If there is no obvious effect, run the EXPLAIN PERFORMANCE command to view the actual execution information of the alarm SQL statement. For details, see SQL Execution Plan. If the estimated (operator memory) and peak memory usage (Peak Memory) are high, exceeding 20% of max\_process\_memory, optimization of the query is necessary based on execution information. For details, see SQL Tuning Process.

#### Step 2 Check whether the alarm configuration is proper.

- Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console, choose Monitoring > Alarm and click View Alarm Rule.
- 2. Click **Modify** in the **Operation** column of the row that contains **Data Flushed to Disks of the Query Statement Exceeds the Threshold**. The **Modifying an Alarm Rule** page is displayed.
- 3. If the cluster disk capacity is high, you can increase the alarm reporting threshold. It is recommended that the alarm reporting threshold be less than or equal to 5% of the capacity of a single data disk.

#### 

If the threshold is too large, data spilled to a disk may cause disk usage alarms or even the cluster to be read-only. If the data disk usage is close to or exceeds 80%, you are advised to clear unnecessary data when adjusting the threshold. For details about the GUI configuration, see Alarm Rules.

#### Step 3 Kill the SQL statements that cause large data spills.

- 1. Return to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click Monitoring Panel in the Operation column.
- 3. Choose **Monitoring** > **Queries**. Click <sup>(2)</sup> to see the data spill in the **Max. DN Data Spill (MB)** column.
- 4. After confirming with the service side, select the query ID of the query to be stopped and click **Stop Query**.
- Adjust the database parameters for controlling the disk space of service statements. For details about the parameters, see Statement Disk Space Control. For details about the procedure, see Modifying Database Parameters.

For example, the default value of **sql\_use\_spacelimit** is 10% of the total storage space of the DB instance. If the storage space is sufficient, you can increase the value. If the disk write volume of a single DN exceeds the value, GaussDB(DWS) stops the query and displays a message indicating that the disk write volume of a single DN exceeds the threshold.

Cluster Topology	Parameters Change History	r						
Resource Management	Save Cancel @ s	inchineized (?)					Parameter + sgl use spacelin	x o c
Intelligent O&M	Departur A	Value for CN	Malao for DN	Heit	Malas Passos Da	that Charter & Description		
Snapshots	Palameter ç	Value for CN	value for DN	UNIC	value ronge i ron	Harr Cluster C Description		
Parameter Modifications	sql_use_spacelimit	200512600	200612600	KB	-1 - 2,147,483,647 No	Specifies the	space size for files to be flushed to disks when a s	ingle SQL stateme
Security Settings				-				
Data Source 💌								
Tag								
Node Management								
Upgrade Management								
Logs								
User Management								
Parameters Change His	story							
Export Save	Cancel 😔 Synchronized (	Ð						
All Configuration	Q Parameter: sql_use_spa	celimit × Add filter						×Q
Parameter \varTheta	Value for CN	Value for DN	Unit	Value Range	Restart Cluster	Description		
sq_use_spacelimit	12582912	4	КВ	-1 - 2,147,483,64	17 No	Specifies the space size fo	r files to be flushed to disks when a single S	DL state



## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when data spill drops down to a low level.

## 9.4.4.6 DWS\_2000000017 Number of Queuing Query Statements Exceeds the Threshold

#### Description

When real-time query monitoring is enabled, GaussDB(DWS) checks the queuing status of jobs on CNs through the **GS\_WLM\_SESSION\_STATISTICS** view every 60 seconds by default.

This alarm is generated when the number of queuing SQL statements in the cluster exceeds 10 (configurable) within 10 minutes (configurable), and is automatically cleared when the number of queuing SQL statements drops below 10.

#### D NOTE

If there continues to be queuing query statements more than the alarm threshold, the alarm is generated again 24 hours later (configurable).

## Alarm Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000017	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: >10	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

#### **Alarm Parameters**

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Number of Queuing Query Statements Exceeds the Threshold
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceld</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

#### Impact on the System

SQL queries are blocked. As a result, the execution time is too long.

#### Possible Causes

The number of queuing query statements during service execution exceeds the alarm threshold.

## Handling Procedure

#### Check whether the current queuing jobs in the cluster are normal.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** in the navigation pane on the left, select the current cluster from the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner and view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days. Locate the name of the cluster that triggers the alarm based on the location information.
- Step 3 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click Monitoring Panel in the Operation column.

**Step 4** Choose **Monitoring** > **Queries** to view the real-time sessions and queries of the current cluster. Select the **Queries** tab to view the status of jobs being executed in

the current cluster. Click and select **Blocking Time (ms)** and **Waiting** status.

Click  $\checkmark$  to sort the values of **Blocking Time (ms)**. You can view the information about the waiting SQL statements with the longest blocking time. If a query job is in the waiting state and the blocking time is abnormal, you can terminate the query.

Current queuing status of the statements, including:

- **Global**: global queuing.
- **Respool**: resource pool queuing.
- **CentralQueue**: queuing on the CCN
- Transaction: being in a transaction block
- **StoredProc**: being in a stored procedure
- None: not in a queue
- **Forced None**: being forcibly executed (transaction block statement or stored procedure statement are) because the statement waiting time exceeds the specified value

----End

#### Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the number of queuing statements drops below the threshold.

## 9.4.4.7 DWS\_200000018 Queue Congestion in the Default Cluster Resource Pool

## Description

GaussDB(DWS) uses resource pools to control memory, I/O, and CPU resources, manages and allocates resources based on task priorities, and manages user services loads. For details about resource pools, see **Resource Pool**. When resources are insufficient, some SQL statements have to queue up to wait for other statements to be executed. For details, see **CCN Queuing Under Dynamic Load Management**.

GaussDB(DWS) checks the queue in the default resource pool **default\_pool** every 5 minutes. This alarm is generated when there are SQL statements that are queued up for a long time (20 minutes by default and configurable). This alarm is automatically cleared when the alarm threshold is no longer met.

#### **NOTE**

If blocked SQL statements that can trigger the alarm persists, the alarm is generated again after 24 hours (configurable).

## Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000018	Manageme nt plane alarm	Critical	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## Parameters

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Queue Congestion in the Default Cluster Resource Pool
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceId</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

## Impact on the System

When the default resource pool is blocked, all complex queries (estimated memory greater than or equal to 32 MB) associated with the default resource pool in the cluster may also be blocked. The queries in the queue are woken up only when the running queries are complete.

## **Possible Causes**

- The estimated query memory usage is too large. As a result, the accumulated estimated memory usage exceeds the upper limit of the dynamic available memory, causing CCN queuing.
- Competition for public resources such as CPU and I/O deteriorates the performance of running queries.

## Handling Procedure

Step 1 Check whether the queue is caused by too large estimated memory.

Rectify the fault by referring to **CCN Queuing Under Dynamic Load Management**.

#### Step 2 Check whether the available memory of the cluster is normal.

- 1. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- 2. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** in the navigation pane on the left, select the current cluster from the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner and view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days.

Locate the name of the cluster that triggers the alarm based on the location information.

- 3. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- 4. Choose **Monitoring** > **Node Monitoring** > **Overview** to view the memory usage of each node in the current cluster. If you want to view the historical

monitoring information about the memory usage of a node, click end on the right to view the memory usage in the last 1, 3, 12, or 24 hours.

If the cluster memory usage is low (for example, lower than 50%), the alarm may be generated because the estimated memory usage of queries is too large. In this case, perform the **Analyze** operation on related tables.

#### Step 3 Check the competition of other resources.

- 1. Check the CPU, I/O, and network usage of the cluster by referring to section **Step 2**.
- 2. If the database is fully loaded, query **Real-Time Top SQL** and kill the statements that occupy a large number of resources.

#### Step 4 Check whether too many queries are submitted in a short period of time.

1. Run the following SQL statement to query the task execution status:

s.resource\_pool AS rpname, s.node\_group,

count(1) AS session\_cnt,

SUM(CASE WHEN a.enqueue = 'waiting in global queue' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) AS global\_wait,

SUM(CASE WHEN s.lane= 'fast' AND a.state = 'active' AND (a.enqueue IS NULL OR a.enqueue = 'no waiting queue') THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) AS fast\_run,

SUM(CASE WHEN s.lane= 'fast' AND a.enqueue = 'waiting in respool queue' THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) AS fast\_wait,

SUM(CASE WHEN s.lane= 'slow' AND a.state = 'active' AND (a.enqueue IS NULL OR a.enqueue = 'no waiting queue') THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) AS slow\_run,

SUM(CASE WHEN s.lane= 'slow' AND (a.enqueue = 'waiting in ccn queue' OR a.enqueue = 'waiting in respool queue') THEN 1 ELSE 0 END) AS slow\_wait,

SUM(CASE WHEN (a.enqueue IS NULL OR a.enqueue = 'no waiting queue') AND a.state = 'active' THEN statement\_mem ELSE 0 END) AS est\_mem

FROM pgxc\_session\_wlmstat s,pgxc\_stat\_activity a

WHERE s.threadid=a.pid(+) AND s.attribute != 'Internal' GROUP BY 1.2;

The following is an example of the possible execution result of the SQL statement:

rpname | node\_group | session\_cnt | global\_wait | fast\_run | fast\_wait | slow\_run | slow\_wait | est\_mem

	++-	+		+	+	+		+	-+
default_poo	l   installation	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	
root   i	installation	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	
(2 rows)									

In the query result, if the value of slow\_wait corresponding to default\_pool is not 0, the cluster is fully loaded due to too many jobs. As a result, an alarm is generated. In this case, you can locate the row that contains the specified cluster on the console, choose Monitoring Panel in the Operation column. On the displayed page, choose Monitoring > Real-Time Queries to query the task with the longest execution time, and kill the task.

• If the alarm is frequently generated, you are advised to schedule services in off-peak hours or create new resource pools to manage system resources in a more refined manner. For details, see **Creating a Resource Pool**.

----End

## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the resource pool blocking is relieved.

**NOTE** 

To view historical blocked SQL statements, locate the row that contains the target cluster on the console, choose **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column. On the displayed page, choose **Monitoring** > **History** to query the execution time of historical SQL statements.

## 9.4.4.8 DWS\_2000000020 Long SQL Probe Execution Duration in a Cluster

### **Alarm Description**

GaussDB(DWS) collects the execution status of the SQL probe on each node in the cluster every 30 seconds. If the execution duration of an SQL probe on a server in a cluster exceeds twice the threshold (or another user-defined value), a critical alarm is generated. If the execution duration of all SQL probes falls below the threshold, the critical alarm is cleared.

#### **NOTE**

If the SQL probe duration remains higher than the alarm reporting threshold, the alarm is generated again in 24 hours (or another user-defined value).

## Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000020	Manageme nt plane alarm	Important	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## Alarm Parameters

Category	Name	Description		
Location	Name	Long SQL Probe Execution Duration in a Cluster		
information	Туре	Operation alarm		
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated		
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceld</b> and <b>domain_id</b>		

### Impact on the System

The cluster performance deteriorates or the cluster is faulty.

#### **Possible Causes**

The service load of the cluster is high or the cluster is faulty. As a result, the execution of the SQL probe becomes slow.

### Handling Procedure

- **Step 1** In the navigation pane of the monitoring panel, choose **Utilities** > **SQL Probes**. Check SQL probe execution.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring** > **Performance Monitoring**. Check the monitoring metrics such as the CPU usage, disk usage, and memory usage to determine whether the workloads are high or any metric is abnormal.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring** > **Real-Time Queries**. Check whether there are queries or sessions that have been running for a long time and affect cluster running. You can terminate abnormal sessions or queries.

----End

### Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the time consumed by an SQL probe on all servers in all clusters falls below the threshold.

## 9.4.4.9 DWS\_2000000023 A Vacuum Full Operation That Holds a Lock for A Long Time Exists in the Cluster

#### **Alarm Description**

VACUUM FULL holds a level-8 lock on a table. If it holds the lock on a table for longer than 20 minutes (or another user-defined value), a major alarm is reported, indicating that the VACUUM FULL operation holds a lock for too long in the cluster. This major alarm is cleared when VACUUM FULL is complete.

#### Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000023	Manageme nt plane alarm	Important	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Parameters**

Category	Name	Description			
Location information	Name	A Vacuum Full Operation That Holds a Table Lock for A Long Time Exists in the Cluster			
	Туре	/pe Operation alarm			
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated			
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceld</b> and <b>domain_id</b>			

## Impact on the System

Other operations cannot the table. As a result, workloads cannot be executed.

#### Possible Causes

There is a VACUUM FULL operation that holds a table lock for a long time in the cluster.

## Handling Procedure

Step 1 In the navigation pane of the monitoring panel, choose Monitoring > Real-Time Queries > Sessions. In the session list, set the search criteria to LIKE and search for the keyword vacuum full.

essions Real-Time Queries											
Teminaka Session 💽 Query SOL 🔹 Near V Neouri M X Q C 🕲											
Session ID	Username	Session Duration (ms) $\ensuremath{\div}$	Application Name	Client IP Address	Connected CN	Session Status	51	art Time 🗧	÷	Lock Holding Status	

**Step 2** Check whether there is a table lock waiting for VACUUM FULL to complete by querying the locked object.

-												
	Terminate Session				Hidden Sys	tem Sessions 🚺	Locked Objects	•	Select v	test_table	X Q	C 🛛
	Session ID	Usemame	Session Duration (ms) $\ensuremath{\div}$	Application Name	Client IP Address	Connected CN	Session Status		Start Time	÷	Lock Holding St	latus

- **Step 3** Check whether the VACUUM FULL operation needs to be handled.
  - 1. Check whether VACUUM FULL is a system behavior and whether it affects system functions. If VACUUM FULL does not affect other service queries, wait until it is complete. The alarm will be automatically cleared.
  - 2. If VACUUM FULL affects normal service execution, you can find and kill related sessions on the **Real-Time Queries** tab and re-execute VACUUM FULL later.

----End

## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared when the VACUUM FULL operation is complete.

## 9.4.4.10 DWS\_2000000027 Memory Usage of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold

## **Alarm Description**

GaussDB(DWS) collects the instance memory usage of each node in a cluster every 60 seconds. If a node's instance memory usage exceeds 90% (adjustable), an alarm is reported indicating that the threshold has been surpassed. The alarm will be cleared if the average memory usage falls below 85% (5% below the reporting threshold).

#### **NOTE**

If a node's instance average memory usage consistently exceeds the alarm threshold, the alarm will be triggered again after 24 hours (adjustable).

### Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000027	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 90%	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

### **Alarm Parameters**

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Instance Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceld</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

## Impact on the System

If instance memory usage remains high for an extended period, service processes may slow down or become unavailable.

## **Possible Causes**

- Complex services occupy a large number of instance memory resources.
- The instance memory of the cluster is too low to meet service requirements.

## Handling Procedure

**Step 1** Check the memory usage of each node instance.

- 1. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- 2. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** in the navigation pane on the left, select the cluster for which the alarm is generated in the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner, view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days, and locate the name of the node for which the alarm is generated based on the location information.
- 3. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- 4. Choose **Monitoring** > **Performance** > **Monitoring View**. On the displayed page, choose an instance to see its memory usage rate. Verify the information and click **OK**.

Figure 9-20 Adding a monitoring view for instance memory usage

Add Graph							×
Monitoring Item	Dimension		Monitoring Metric		Monitored Object		
	Cluster	~	CPU Usage	~	58268453-c411-4a51-9cdd-fe0 🔍 × 🛛 🗸		
Add Monitoring	Item You can still add 11 r	nonitoring items.					
						Cancel OK	

5. You can view the memory usage of each instance in the current cluster at the page's bottom. In the upper left corner, you can check the memory usage of each instance in the last 1, 3, 12, 24 hours, or 7 days. This helps you detect any sudden increase in memory usage of any instance.

Monitoring Panel DEFAULT PANEL V (Modify) (Delete) (Share	e Auto Refresh	+ Add Graph C Export Monitoring Data
Last 1 hour Last 3 hours Last 12 hours Last 24 hours	Last 7 days	202407/22 09:02:12 - 202407/22 19:02:12
Period Original Value ~		
Cluster CPU Usage	Cluster Memory Usage	Cluster Disk Usage
%	5	5
100	100	100
80	80	80
60	60	60
<sup>40</sup> 1/ 101 1 1 1	40	40
	50	20
	0 mm 1/4	0
-O- CPU Usage -O- CPU Skew Rate	-O- Memory Usage -O- Memory Skew Rate	Disk Usage -O- Disk Skew Rate

Figure 9-21 Instance memory usage monitoring view

 If the memory usage of an instance frequently increases and then returns to normal in a short period of time, it indicates that the CPU usage temporarily spikes during service execution. In this case, you can adjust the alarm threshold to reduce the number of reported alarms.  If the instance memory usage remains high for a long time, the cluster is overloaded. In this case, check cluster services or improve cluster specifications. For details, see Changing the Node Flavor.

## Step 2 Check whether the memory usage alarm configuration of the instance is proper.

- 1. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** and click **View Alarm Rule**.
- 2. Locate the row that contains rule **Instance Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold**, and click **Modify** in the **Operation** column. The **Modifying an Alarm Rule page** is displayed.
- 3. Adjust the alarm threshold and detection period. A higher alarm threshold and a longer detection period indicate a lower alarm sensitivity. For details about the GUI configuration, see **Alarm Rules**.

**Step 3** Check whether the memory usage of the current cluster service is too high.

- 1. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- On the monitoring page, choose Monitoring > Real-Time Queries, click <sup>(a)</sup>, and select Max. Peak DN Memory (MB) to view the query that uses the most memory.

Figure 9-22 Viewing memory information

Cluster Oveniew A	Real-Time Queries ③							
Node Montoring Performance Mentoring Database Monitoring	6 Destions	5	134.99s rage Session Duration	Adve S	2 essians	Os Average Guery Duration		O <sub>S</sub> Average Guery Wat
Real Time Queries Historical Queries Instance Monitoring Descurse Proto	Sessions Real-Time Que	185	Auto Rat	beah 💽 Rebeah Interval (c)	60 V Hide System Query	Select	v Seid v I	inter a largement Q
Taola v	C 0xey10 0	Username Ruby	Database Name postgres	Submitted O	Execution Time (ms) (i)	Statement .	FastSlowLase	C: Enter a leyword. Estimated Time Remaining (ms)
Monitoring Settings Tasks	0	Raby	polignes					Corsup Mite. Peak DN Memory (MS) Mite: Peak DN Memory (MS) Aneropa Nemory Usage (MS) DN Memory Usage (MS) Estimated Memory Usage (MS)

- 3. After confirming with the service side, select the query ID of the query to be stopped and click **Stop Query**.
- **Step 4** For further optimization, see **Reducing Memory Usage**.

----End

#### **Clearing an Alarm**

This alarm is automatically cleared when the memory usage of the instance decreases.

## 9.4.4.11 DWS\_200000028 Dynamic Memory Usage of GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Nodes Exceeds the Threshold

#### **Alarm Description**

GaussDB(DWS) collects the dynamic memory usage of each node in a cluster every 60 seconds. If a node's dynamic memory usage exceeds 90% (adjustable), an alarm is reported indicating that the threshold has been surpassed. The alarm

will be cleared if the average memory usage falls below 85% (5% below the reporting threshold).

#### **NOTE**

If the average dynamic memory usage of a node is always greater than the alarm threshold, the alarm is generated again 24 hours (configurable).

### Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000028	Manageme nt plane alarm	Urgent: > 90%	Operation alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

### Alarm Parameters

Category	Name	Description
Location information	Name	Dynamic Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold
	Туре	Operation alarm
	Generation time	Time when the alarm is generated
Other information	Cluster ID	Cluster details such as <b>resourceld</b> and <b>domain_id</b>

#### Impact on the System

If the usage of dynamic memory remains high for an extended period, it can cause service processes to slow down or become inaccessible.

#### Possible Causes

- Complex services occupy a large number of dynamic memory resources.
- The dynamic memory of the cluster is too low to meet service requirements.

#### **Handling Procedure**

**Step 1** Check the dynamic memory usage of instances on each node.

- 1. Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- 2. Choose **Monitoring** > **Alarm** in the navigation pane on the left, select the cluster for which the alarm is generated in the cluster selection drop-down list in the upper right corner, view the alarm information of the cluster in the last seven days, and locate the name of the node for which the alarm is generated based on the location information.

- Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters, locate the row that contains the cluster for which the alarm is generated, and click Monitoring Panel in the Operation column.
- 4. Choose **Monitoring** > **Performance** > **Monitoring View**. On the displayed page, choose an instance to see its dynamic memory usage rate. Verify the information and click **OK**.

Figure 9-23 Adding a monitoring view for dynamic memory usage

Add Graph					×
Monitoring Item	Dimension	Monitoring Metric	Monitored Object		
	Instance v	Instance Memory Usage V	dn_6006 $\times$ dn_6005 $\times$	~	
			dn_6004 $\times$		
Add Monitoring	ltem You can still add 11 monitoring items.				Cancel OK

5. You can view the dynamic memory usage of each instance in the current cluster at the page's bottom. In the upper left corner, you can check the dynamic memory usage of each instance in the last 1, 3, 12, 24 hours, or 7 days. This helps you detect any sudden increase in dynamic memory usage of any instance.

#### Figure 9-24 Monitoring view for dynamic memory usage

Monitoring Panel DEFAULT PANEL v Modify Delete Share	Auto Refresh	+ Add Graph Q Export Monitoring Data
Last 1 hour Last 3 hours Last 12 hours Last 24 hours	Last 7 days	2024/07/22 09:02:12 - 2024/07/22 10:02:12
Period Original Value v		
Cluster CPU Usage	Cluster Memory Usage	Cluster Disk Usage
%	%	6
100	100	100
80	80	80
60	60	60
	40	40
	20	20
0 090213 091113 092013 092913 093813 094713 095613	0 mmm M Mmmm Mmmmm M Mmmmmmm 09:02:13 09:11:43 09:21:13 09:40:43 09:40:13 09:49:43 09:59:13	0
-O- CPU Usage -O- CPU Skew Rate	-O- Memory Usage -O- Memory Skew Rate	-O- Disk Usage -O- Disk Skew Rate

- If the dynamic memory usage frequently increases and then returns to normal in a short period of time, it indicates that the CPU usage temporarily spikes during service execution. In this case, you can adjust the alarm threshold to reduce the number of reported alarms.
- If the dynamic memory usage remains high for a long time, the cluster is overloaded. In this case, check cluster services or improve cluster specifications. For details, see Changing the Node Flavor.

**Step 2** Check whether the configuration of the dynamic memory usage alarm is proper.

- 1. Choose **Monitoring > Alarm** and click **View Alarm Rule**.
- 2. Locate the row that contains rule **Dynamic Memory Usage of a Cluster Node Exceeds the Threshold**, and click **Modify** in the **Operation** column. The **Modifying an Alarm Rule page** is displayed.

- 3. Adjust the alarm threshold and detection period. A higher alarm threshold and a longer detection period indicate a lower alarm sensitivity. For details about the GUI configuration, see **Alarm Rules**.
- **Step 3** Check whether the memory usage of the current cluster service is too high.
  - 1. Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**, locate the row that contains the target cluster, and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
  - On the monitoring page, choose Monitoring > Real-Time Queries, click <sup>(2)</sup>, and select Max. Peak DN Memory (MB) to view the query that uses the most memory.

Figure 9-25 Viewing memory information

Cluste Monit	r Oveniev Xillg A	Rea	al-Time Queries 🛞							
N Pi M	ode Monitoring informance antioning alabase Monitoring		6 Sessions	5	5134.99s renge Section Duration	2 Active Sensi	ans	Os Average Query Duration		Os Average Guery Wat
H H	eal-Time Queries storical Queries storice Monitoring		Sessions Real-Time Quarks		Auto Rath	est 💽 Rebech Interval (s) 🛙	10 🗸 Hide System Guery 🧲	Select	• [feld • ]	Enter a lapyword. Q
n Teste	isource Peols		Ο Quey D θ	Usersame	Database Name	Submitted ()	Execution Time (ms) (i)	Statement	FastStowLone	C, Enter a keyword.
Warki	ond Applying V	<		Raby	postgres					Estimated Time Remaining (ms)
Monit Tasks	aring Settings		•	Ruby	polignes					Copinal Inter. Preak DN Memory (MB) Max. Preak DN Memory (MB) Max. Preak DN Memory (MB) On Memory Usage (MB) DN Memory Usage (MB) Extimated Memory Usage (MB)

- 3. After confirming with the service side, select the query ID of the query to be stopped and click **Stop Query**.
- **Step 4** For further optimization, see **Reducing Memory Usage**.

----End

#### **Clearing an Alarm**

This alarm is automatically cleared when the memory usage of the instance decreases.

## 9.4.4.12 DWS\_2000000029 Usage of a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Resource Pool Exceeds the Threshold

#### **Alarm Description**

This alarm is generated by the DMS alarm module if the disk usage of the cluster resource pool goes beyond the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm will be cleared once the disk usage of the cluster resource pool drops below the threshold.

#### **Alarm Attributes**

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000029	Manageme nt plane alarm	> 90 (Critical); > 80 (Major)	Service alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Changes**

Change Type	Change Version	Description	Reason for Change	
New	8.2.1.230	New alarm	New alarm	

## **Alarm Parameters**

Туре	Parameter	Description		
Fault	Cluster name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
Location	Tenant name	Name of the tenant to which the cluster belongs.		
	Alarm level	Severity of the alarm.		
Additional Information	Resource ID	ID of the cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
	Resource name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
	Resource pool name	Name of the resource pool for which the alarm is generated.		
	First_alarm_t ime	First occurrence event of an alarm, including the alarm threshold and current value.		

## Impact on the System

The disk space of the resource pool is insufficient, affecting service execution.

## Possible Causes

The disk usage limit of the resource pool is too small.

## Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** On the **Alarm** page, view the alarms generated in the last seven days.
- **Step 3** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster based on the cluster information in the alarm details.
- **Step 4** Click the cluster name. On the cluster details page that is displayed, click **Resource Management** and the **Resource Pool** page is displayed. Modify the disk configuration of the resource pool.

Cluster Information		Modify Workload Queue			
Cluster Tepelogy	Mesource Management Configuration:      Max. Concurrences:      228 .d	Name	and .		
Rasource Management		OPU Init:	10		
Grupokots	Resource Pool Workload Plans Schema Space Management. Exception Rule	CPU Inimi	(n )		
Parameter Modifications	Reserve Peer (Nat )	Memory Personne (N)	n		AN WINNER CHINA DUNNA COMMA
Benarity Entireps	Eltert Query Configuration	Barage Researce (AB) (3)			
799	Intel Duely Accession	Complex Statement Concurrency.		E Merkoy: 22 %	Disk Literated
Name Management	Burgee Blatement Concurrency @ Latemented	hatvark bandwidth weight.		Network candwatts weight Unimited	
Logi					
User Management	Associated Exception Rules (b)		COMON CON		
	Associated Exception Rules Constructions (hules				
	Bale:	Operation Upon Exce	pitrie		Operation
			No exception rate is associated.		
	User Association				
	(therAssociation) (Doctorchitcher				
	Desveate Meno	iy Diage	De	eed Xhorage Xaado	Operation
	- M4D 0 MB			0a	Deastaciate Loar

----End

## **Alarm Clearance**

This alarm is automatically cleared after the fault is rectified.

## **Related Information**

None

# 9.4.4.13 DWS\_200000030 Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold

## **Alarm Description**

This alarm is generated by the DMS alarm module if the session usage in the cluster goes beyond the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm will be cleared once the session usage in the cluster drops below the threshold.

## **Alarm Attributes**

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000030	Manageme nt plane alarm	> 90 (Critical); > 80 (Major)	Service alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Changes**

Change Type	Change Version	Description	Reason for Change	
New	8.2.1.230	New alarm	New alarm	

## **Alarm Parameters**

Туре	Parameter	Description	
Fault	Cluster name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.	
Location	Tenant name	Name of the tenant to which the cluster belongs.	
	Alarm level	Severity of the alarm.	
Additional Information	Resource ID	ID of the cluster for which the alarm is generated.	
	Resource name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.	
	First_alarm_t ime	First occurrence event of an alarm, including the alarm threshold and current value.	

## Impact on the System

The number of available sessions is insufficient, affecting service execution.

### **Possible Causes**

The value of **max\_connections** is too small.

## Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 On the Alarm page, view the alarms generated in the last seven days.
- **Step 3** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster based on the cluster information in the alarm details.
- **Step 4** Click the cluster name to go to the cluster details page. On the cluster details page, click **Parameter Modifications**, search for **max\_connections** in the search box on the right of the parameter list, and change its value.

#### Figure 9-26 Modifying parameters

Cluster Information							
Cluster Topology	Parameters Change Histo	ary					
Resource Management Logical Clusters	Export Save C	ancel					Perameter V max_connection X Q Q
Intelligent O&M	Parameter \varTheta	Value for CN	Value for DN	Unit	Value Range	Restart Cluster \varTheta	Description
Snapshots	max_connections	800	5000	~	100 ~ 262,143	Yes	Specifies the maximum number of allowed parallel connections to the database
Parameter Modifications							
Security Settings							
Data Source 🗸							
Tag							
Node Management <							
Upgrade Management							
Inspection Management							
Logs							
User Management							
End							

## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared after the fault is rectified.

### **Related Information**

None

# 9.4.4.14 DWS\_200000031 Active Session Usage in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold

## **Alarm Description**

The DMS alarm module generates an alarm if the active session usage in the cluster exceeds the set threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm is cleared when the DMS alarm module detects that the active session usage in the cluster is below the threshold.

### Alarm Attributes

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000031	Manageme nt plane alarm	> 90 (Critical); > 80 (Major)	Service alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

#### **Alarm Changes**

Change Type	Change Version	Description	Reason for Change	
New	8.2.1.230	New alarm	New alarm	

## **Alarm Parameters**

Туре	Parameter	Description
Fault	Cluster name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.
Location	Tenant name	Name of the tenant to which the cluster belongs.
	Alarm level	Severity of the alarm.
Additional Information	Resource ID	ID of the cluster for which the alarm is generated.
	Resource name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.

Туре	Parameter	Description
	First_alarm_t ime	First occurrence event of an alarm, including the alarm threshold and current value.

#### Impact on the System

The number of available sessions is insufficient, affecting service execution.

#### **Possible Causes**

The value of **max\_active\_statements** is too small.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console and choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane on the left.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, locate the desired cluster and click the cluster name. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane on the left, choose Parameter Modifications. On the Parameters tab page, search for and modify the following parameters, and click Save.
  - 1. In the **Common Configuration** area, enter **resource\_track\_duration** in the search box to find the parameter and set both **Value for CN** and **Value for DN** to **1**.

Figure 9-27 Modifying the resource\_track\_duration parameter



2. In the **Common Configuration** area, enter **topsql\_retention\_time** in the search box to find the parameter and set both **Value for CN** and **Value for DN** to **14**. Alternatively, you can set them as needed.

Figure 9-28 Modifying the topsql\_retention\_time parameter

Cluster Information							
Cluster Topology	Parameters Change History						
Resource Management							
Logical Clusters	Export Save Caros	Synchronized 🕲					
Intelligent O&M	Common Configuration v Q	Parameter: topsql_retention_time × Atd fitter					× Q
Snapshots	Parameter $\Theta$	Value for CN	Value for DN	Unit	Value Range	Restart Cluster \varTheta	Description
Parameter Modifications	topsql_relenion_time	14	14	Day	0 - 3,650	No	Specifies the retention period of historical TopSQL data in the gs_u/m_session_info and gs
Security Settings Data Source 🗸				J			
Tag							
Node Management							
Upgrade Management							
Logs							
User Management							

#### Step 4 Find the SQL statement that causes the deadlock.

- Method 1
- 1. Return to the **Dedicated Clusters** page. Locate your desired cluster and click **Monitoring Panel** in the **Operation** column.
- In the navigation pane on the left, choose Monitoring > Historical Queries. In the upper right corner of the history query page, select Reason and the keyword deadlock detected.
- 3. Find the SQL statements that cause the deadlock. Sort them chronologically to pinpoint the most recent statement causing the deadlock.

Figure 9-29 SQL statement 1 causing the deadlock

Monitoring ^	Historical Qu	veries 🕤											
Node Monitoring	Jan 22, 203	25 15 32 03 - Jan 23, 2025 15 32 03	8									_	
Performance Monitoring							Hide System Query 🚺	Reason	×	ike v	deadlock delected X	<u> 0</u>	۲
Database Monitoring	Reason like	deadlock detect ×											
	Query ID 4	Username	Database Name	Submitted O	Execution Time (ms) O	CPU Time (ms) $\Theta$	Average Spill to Disk (	Θ Statement		Query Status	Completed	0	
Real-Time Queries													
Historical Queries						-							
Instance Monitoring					-	~~							
Resource Pools					<u></u>								
					No data a	wailable.							
Tools ~													
Workload Analysis 🔍 🗸													
Monitoring Settings	<												
Tasks													

#### • Method 2

- 1. Return to the console. In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Monitoring** > **Optimization Diagnosis**.
- 2. On the displayed **General trend of historical queries** sub-tab of **Historical query analysis**, select **Reason** and the keyword **deadlock detected**.
- 3. Find the SQL statements that cause the deadlock. Sort them chronologically to pinpoint the most recent statement causing the deadlock.

Figure 9-30 SQL statement 2 causing the deadlock

Ormani trend of historical queries SOL quality trends SOL restinct trends				
Coder v Staan Staan 20man 10ps 2m2 2012 103 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 11 2m2 2012 103 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 113 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 113 11 1 2m2 2012 103 11 1 2m2 2012 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 1				
termania No data avaliabito.				
ler 22, 2005 15 M XII - Ler 23, 2005 15 M XII - [[1]				
Total BCL & not plan topping up nove Run 10000 annuals not a hadpuny Australian nove Run 1 band menory new Run 10000 upil size new Run 10000 Bits annuals and nove Run 1000				
Televical guary debab. Cola summary				
(] Ream desired defined				
Gany D û Uverrame û Dobbase Kann û Sabetbel û Execution Time (mij û Sabetbel û Gany Sotte û Gany Sotte û Gany Sotte û				

**Step 5** Solution to the deadlock issue: Deadlocks will be automatically detected in Huawei Cloud Stack 8.2.1 or later clusters. The detection will be delayed for 1 second. The lock will be automatically released when a deadlock is detected.

----End

#### Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared after the fault is rectified.

## **Related Information**

None

# 9.4.4.15 DWS\_200000032 Number of Database Deadlocks in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Exceeds the Threshold

## **Alarm Description**

If the number of deadlocks in the cluster database exceeds the threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met, the DMS alarm module will generate an alarm. The alarm will be cleared once the DMS alarm module detects that the number of deadlocks in the cluster database is below the threshold.

## **Alarm Attributes**

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000032	Manageme nt plane alarm	> 10 (Critical); > 1 (Major)	Service alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Changes**

Change Type	Change Version	Description	Reason for Change
New	8.2.1.230	New alarm	New alarm

## **Alarm Parameters**

Туре	Parameter	Description
Fault	Cluster name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.
Location	Tenant name	Name of the tenant to which the cluster belongs.
	Alarm level	Severity of the alarm.
Additional Information	Resource ID	ID of the cluster for which the alarm is generated.
	Resource name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.
	Database name	Name of the database for which the alarm is generated.

Туре	Parameter	Description
	First_alarm_t ime	First occurrence event of an alarm, including the alarm threshold and current value.

#### Impact on the System

The connection pool is unable to allocate more connections to service requests because a large number of lock requests are causing connections to be unresponsive.

#### **Possible Causes**

Resource contention and lock actions are mutually exclusive.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** On the **Alarm** page, view the alarms generated in the last seven days.
- Step 3 Use gsql to connect to the cluster based on the alarm information. For details, see Using the CLI to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- **Step 4** Connect to the cluster and run the SQL statement to query the current lock conflict statement.

select \* from pgxc\_lock\_conflicts;



Step 5 Decide whether to terminate the lock based on the statement content. To terminate the lock, run the following statement. pid and nodename are obtained from the previous step.

execute direct on (*nodename*) 'SELECT PG\_TERMINATE\_BACKEND(*pid*)';





#### Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared after the fault is rectified.

#### **Related Information**

None

# 9.4.4.16 DWS\_2000000033 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Database Session Usage Exceeds the Threshold

## **Alarm Description**

The DMS alarm module will generate an alarm if the session usage of the cluster database goes over the threshold within a specific time frame and the suppression conditions are not met. The alarm will be resolved by the DMS alarm module once it detects that the session usage of the cluster database is below the threshold.

## **Alarm Attributes**

Alarm ID	Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	Service	Auto
	Category	Severity	Type	Type	Cleared
DWS_2000 000033	Manageme nt plane alarm	> 90 (Critical); > 80 (Major)	Service alarm	GaussDB(D WS)	Yes

## **Alarm Changes**

Change Type	Change Version	Description	Reason for Change
New	8.2.1.230	New alarm	New alarm

## **Alarm Parameters**

Туре	Parameter	Description		
Fault Location	Cluster name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
	Tenant name	Name of the tenant to which the cluster belongs.		
	Alarm level	Severity of the alarm.		
Additional Information	Resource ID	ID of the cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
	Resource name	Cluster for which the alarm is generated.		
	Database name	Name of the database for which the alarm is generated.		
	First_alarm_t ime	First occurrence event of an alarm, including the alarm threshold and current value.		

### Impact on the System

The number of available database connections is insufficient, affecting service execution.

#### **Possible Causes**

The maximum number of database connections is too small.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 On the Alarm page, view the alarms generated in the last seven days.
- Step 3 Use gsql to connect to the cluster based on the alarm information. For details, see Using the CLI to Connect to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- **Step 4** Specify the maximum number of connections a user can have by using syntax **CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit** in the **CREATE ROLE** statement. If you need to modify this limit later, you can use the same syntax in the **ALTER ROLE** statement.
  - 1. Use **PG\_ROLES** to check the maximum number of connections of a specified user.

- (1 row)
- 2. Change the maximum number of connections a user can have. ALTER ROLE *role1* connection limit *20*;

----End

## Alarm Clearance

This alarm is automatically cleared after the fault is rectified.

#### **Related Information**

None

## 9.5 Viewing and Subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Events

## 9.5.1 Event Notifications Overview

#### Overview

GaussDB(DWS) uses the Simple Message Notification (SMN) service to send notifications of GaussDB(DWS) events. The SMN function is only available by subscription. In a subscription, you need to specify one or more event filtering conditions. When an event that matches all filtering conditions occurs,
GaussDB(DWS) sends a notification based on the subscription. The filter conditions include the **Event Type** (for example, **Management**, **Monitoring**, or **Security**), **Event Severity** (for example, **Normal** or **Warning**), and **Event Source Category** (for example, **Cluster** or **Snapshot**).

# Supported Event Types and Events

Events are records of changes in the user's cluster status. Events can be triggered by user operations (such as audit events), or may be caused by cluster service status changes (for example, cluster repaired successfully or failed to repair the cluster). The following tables list the events and event types supported by GaussDB(DWS).

• The following table lists the events whose **Event Source Category** is **Cluster**.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Managemen t	createClusterFail	Warning	Cluster creation failed.
Managemen t	createClusterSuccess	Normal	The cluster is created.
Managemen t	createCluster	Normal	Cluster creation started.
Managemen t	extendCluster	Normal	Cluster scale-out started.
Managemen t	extendClusterSuccess	Normal	A cluster is scaled out.
Managemen t	extendClusterFail	Warning	Cluster scale-out failed.
Managemen t	deleteClusterFail	Warning	Failed to delete the cluster.
Managemen t	deleteClusterSuccess	Normal	The cluster is deleted.
Managemen t	deleteCluster	Normal	Cluster deletion started.
Managemen t	restoreClusterFail	Warning	Cluster restoration failed.
Managemen t	restoreClusterSuccess	Normal	The cluster is restored.
Managemen t	restoreCluster	Normal	Cluster restoration started.

 Table 9-13 Events whose Event Source Category is Cluster

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Managemen t	restartClusterFail	Warning	Cluster restart failed.
Managemen t	restartClusterSuccess	Normal	The cluster is restarted.
Managemen t	restartCluster	Normal	Cluster restarted.
Managemen t	configureMRSExtDa- taSources	Normal	Configuration of MRS external data source for the cluster started.
Managemen t	configureMRSExtDa- taSourcesFail	Warning	The cluster's MRS external data source configurations failed.
Managemen t	configureMRSExtDa- taSourcesSuccess	Normal	The MRS external data source of the cluster is configured.
Managemen t	deleteMRSExtData- Sources	Normal	Deletion of MRS external data source for the cluster started.
Managemen t	deleteMRSExtData- SourcesFail	Warning	The deletion of the MRS external data source for the cluster failed.
Managemen t	deletedMRSExtData- SourcesSuccess	Normal	MRS external data source is deleted.
Managemen t	bindEipToCluster	Normal	An EIP is bound to the cluster.
Managemen t	bindEipToClusterFail	Warning	Cluster EIP binding failed.
Managemen t	unbindEipToCluster	Normal	The EIP is unbound from the cluster.
Managemen t	unbindEipToCluster- Fail	Warning	Cluster EIP unbinding failed
Managemen t	refreshEipToCluster	Normal	The cluster's EIP is refreshed.
Managemen t	refreshEipToCluster- Fail	Warning	Cluster EIP refreshing failed.
Managemen t	dmsClusterMonitor- ingEnabledSuccess- fully	Normal	DMS cluster monitoring is enabled.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Managemen t	failedToEnableDm- sClusterMonitoring	Normal	Enabling DMS cluster monitoring has failed.
Managemen t	dmsClusterMonitor- ingDisabledSuccess- fully	Normal	DMS cluster monitoring is disabled.
Managemen t	failedToDisableDm- sClusterMonitoring	Normal	Disabling DMS cluster monitoring has failed.
Managemen t	dmsMetricCollectio- nEnabledSuccessfully	Normal	DMS collection is enabled.
Managemen t	failedToEnableDms- MetricCollection	Normal	Enabling DMS collection has failed.
Managemen t	dmsMetricCollection- DisabledSuccessfully	Normal	DMS collection is disabled.
Managemen t	failedToDisableDms- MetricCollection	Normal	Disabling DMS collection has failed.
Managemen t	dmsMetricCollection- ResetSuccessfully	Normal	DMS collection is reset.
Managemen t	failedToResetDms- MetricCollection	Normal	Failed to reset DMS collection.
Managemen t	dmsMetricCollectio- nUpdatedSuccessful- ly	Normal	DMS collection updated successfully.
Managemen t	failedToUpdateDms- MetricCollection	Normal	Updating DMS collection has failed.
Managemen t	dmsMetricDataRe- tentionPeriodUpda- tedSuccessfully	Normal	DMS collection storage time is updated.
Managemen t	failedToUpdateTheD msMetricDataReten- tionPeriod	Normal	Updating DMS collection storage time has failed.
Managemen t	dmsSessionsTermina- tedSuccessfully	Normal	DMS terminated a session.
Managemen t	failedToTermina- teDmsSessions	Normal	DMS was unable to terminate a session.
Managemen t	dmsQueriesTermina- tedSuccessfully	Normal	DMS queries terminated.
Managemen t	failedToTermina- teDmsQueries	Normal	DMS was unable to terminate a query.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Managemen t	dmsCreateWDRSuc- cessfully	Normal	The DMS load report generation task was completed.
Managemen t	failedToCreateWDR	Warning	The DMS was unable to complete the load report generation task.
Managemen t	dmsDeleteWDRSuc- cessfully	Normal	DMS deleted the load report.
Managemen t	failedToDeleteWDR	Warning	DMS was unable to delete a workload report.
Managemen t	dmsUpdateWDRCon- figSuccessfully	Normal	DMS updated the workload report parameters.
Managemen t	failedToUpdateWDR- Config	Warning	DMS was unable to update workload report parameters.
Managemen t	dmsCreateWorkloadS napshotSuccessfully	Normal	DMS successfully added a workload snapshot.
Managemen t	failedToCreateWor- kloadSnapshot	Warning	DMS was unable to add a workload snapshot.
Security	resetPasswordFail	Warning	The password reset attempt was unsuccessful.
Security	resetPasswordSuccess	Normal	The cluster password has been reset.
Security	updateConfiguration	Normal	Start to update cluster security parameters.
Security	updateConfiguration- Fail	Warning	Cluster security parameter update failed.
Security	updateConfiguration- Success	Normal	Cluster security parameters were updated.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Monitoring	repairCluster	Normal	The node is faulty and the cluster starts to be repaired.
Monitoring	repairClusterFail	Warning	Cluster repairing failed.
Monitoring	repairClusterSuccess	Normal	The cluster is repaired.

# • The following table lists the events whose **Event Source Category** is **Snapshot**.

Table 9-14	Events whose	<b>Event Source</b>	Category	is Snar	oshot
					,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severi ty	Event
Mana geme nt	deleteBackup	Norm al	The snapshot is deleted.
Mana geme nt	deleteBackupFail	Warni ng	Snapshot deletion failed.
Mana geme nt	createBackup	Norm al	The snapshot is being created.
Mana geme nt	createBackupSuccess	Norm al	The snapshot is created.
Mana geme nt	createBackupFail	Warni ng	Snapshot creation failed.

• The following table lists the events whose **Event Source Category** is **DR**.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Mana gemen t	beginCreateDisasterRecov- ery	Normal	The DR task is being created.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Mana gemen t	createDisasterRecoverySuc- cess	Normal	The DR task is created.
Mana gemen t	createDisasterRecoveryFail	Warning	DR task creation failed.
Mana gemen t	beginStartDisasterRecovery	Normal	The DR task starts.
Mana gemen t	startDisasterRecoverySuc- cess	Normal	The DR task started successfully.
Mana gemen t	startDisasterRecoveryFail	Warning	The DR task was unable to start.
Mana gemen t	beginStopDisasterRecovery	Normal	The DR task is being stopped.
Mana gemen t	stopDisasterRecoverySuc- cess	Normal	DR stopped successfully.
Mana gemen t	stopDisasterRecoveryFail	Warning	The DR task could not be stopped.
Mana gemen t	beginSwitchoverDisasterRe- covery	Normal	The DR switchover starts.
Mana gemen t	switchoverDisasterRecover- ySuccess	Normal	The DR switchover is successful.
Mana gemen t	switchoverDisasterRecover- yFail	Warning	The DR switchover failed.
Mana gemen t	beginDeleteDisasterRecov- ery	Normal	The DR task is being deleted.
Mana gemen t	deleteDisasterRecoverySuc- cess	Normal	The DR task is deleted.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severity	Event
Mana gemen t	deleteDisasterRecoveryFail	Warning	The DR task deletion failed.
Mana gemen t	disasterRecoveryAbnormal	Warning	The DR task runs abnormally.
Mana gemen t	beginFailoverDisasterRe- covery	Normal	The abnormal switchover starts.
Mana gemen t	failoverDisasterRecovery- Success	Normal	The abnormal switchover is successful.
Mana gemen t	failoverDisasterRecoveryFail	Warning	The abnormal switchover fails.
Mana gemen t	beginRecoveryDisaster	Normal	The disaster recovery starts.
Mana gemen t	recoveryDisasterSuccess	Normal	The disaster recovery is successful.
Mana gemen t	recoveryDisasterFail	Warning	The disaster recovery fails.
Mana gemen t	emptyDisasterRecovery	Warning	No DR table exists in the current DR object.
Mana gemen t	switchoverContinueAsFailo- verDisasterRecovery	Warning	The DR switchover is degraded to an abnormal switchover.

• The following table lists the events whose event source type is data migration.

Event	Event Name	Event	Event
туре		ty	
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationApplication- DetectedAbnormal	Warni ng	The job task status is abnormal.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationApplication- ReturnNormal	Norm al	The job task is restored.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateAppli- cation	Norm al	Create a job task.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateClus- ter	Norm al	Start to create a data migration instance.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateClus- terFailed	Warni ng	Failed to create the data migration instance.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateClus- terSuccess	Norm al	The data migration instance is created.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateCon- nection	Norm al	Create a connection.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationCreateMap- ping	Norm al	Create a table mapping configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteAppli- cation	Norm al	Start to delete the job task.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteAppli- cationFailed	Warni ng	Failed to delete the job.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteAppli- cationSuccess	Norm al	The job is deleted.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- ter	Norm al	Start to delete the data migration instance.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- terApplication	Norm al	Start to delete the job task.

 Table 9-16 Events whose event source type is data migration

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severi ty	Event
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- terApplicationFailed	Warni ng	Failed to delete the job.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- terApplicationSuccess	Norm al	The job is deleted.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- terFailed	Warni ng	Failed to delete the data migration instance.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteClus- terSuccess	Norm al	The data migration instance is deleted.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteCon- nection	Norm al	Delete the connection configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDeleteMap- ping	Norm al	Delete the table mapping configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationDialsConnec- tion	Norm al	Test the connection configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationModifyCon- nection	Norm al	Modify the connection configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationModifyMap- ping	Norm al	Modify the table mapping configuration.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStartApplica- tion	Norm al	Start the job task.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStartApplica- tionFailed	Warni ng	Failed to start the job.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStartApplica- tionSuccess	Norm al	The job task is started.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStopApplica- tion	Norm al	Start to stop the job.

Event Type	Event Name	Event Severi ty	Event
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStopApplica- tionFailed	Warni ng	Failed to stop the job.
Data migrat ion	dataMigrationStopApplica- tionSuccess	Norm al	The job task is stopped.

# 9.5.2 Subscribing to Event Notifications

After subscribing to GaussDB(DWS) event notification, you will receive notifications by text message, email, or application when management, monitoring, or security events occur in a specific cluster or snapshot.

# Creating a Subscription

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Management** > **Events**.
- **Step 3** On the **Event Management** page, choose **Subscription** > **Create Subscription**.
- **Step 4** In the **Subscription Settings** area, set basic subscription information and event filtering.

The **Subscribed Event List** area displays the events filtered by the system based on the subscription settings.

Paramete r	Description
Notificatio n	Enable or disable event subscription. After notification is disabled, the system stops sending notifications of subscribed events but does not delete the subscription.
Subscripti on Name	<ul> <li>Enter the name of a subscription.</li> <li>The name can contain letters (upper or lower case), digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_) and must start with a letter or digit.</li> <li>The name must be between 1 and 256 characters in length.</li> </ul>
Event Type	Select the type of the event to be subscribed. Possible values are <b>Management</b> , <b>Monitoring</b> , and <b>Security</b> .
Event Severity	Select the alarm severity of the event. Possible values are <b>Normal</b> and <b>Warning</b> .

 Table 9-17
 Subscription parameters

Paramete r	Description
Event Source Category	Select the event source category: cluster, snapshot,.

- **Step 5** Select a message notification topic from the **Message Notification Topic** drop-down list.
  - The selected topic must have granted GaussDB(DWS) the permission to publish messages to the topic.

If GaussDB(DWS) has not been authorized to publish messages to the selected topic, go to the topic management page of the SMN console to configure topic authorization. For details, see **Topic Management** > **Configuring Topic Policies** in the *Simple Message Notification User Guide*. When configuring the topic policy, select **GaussDB(DWS)** for **Services that can publish messages to this topic**.

- To create a topic, click **Create Topic**. The SMN console is displayed. For details, see **Topic Management > Creating a Topic** in the *Simple Message Notification User Guide*.
- **Step 6** Click **OK** to complete the subscription.

----End

# Modifying the Subscription

- **Step 1** Choose **Management** > **Events** and click **Subscriptions**.
- **Step 2** In the **Operation** column of the row containing the specified subscription, click **Edit** to enter the **Edit Subscription** page.
- Step 3 On the Edit Subscription page, set the parameters to be modified. For details, see Step 4 to Step 6 in section "Creating a Subscription".

----End

# **Deleting the Subscription**

- **Step 1** Choose **Management** > **Events** and click **Subscriptions**.
- **Step 2** In the **Operation** column of the row containing the specified subscription, click **Delete**. The **Delete Subscription** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 3 Click Yes to delete the subscription.

----End

# 9.5.3 Viewing Events

This section describes how to search for events that occur in a cluster or snapshot.

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** In the navigation tree on the left, choose **Management** > **Events**.

On the **Events** tab page, all events that occur in the clusters or snapshots are displayed by default.

You can sort the events in descending or ascending order by clicking 🖄 next to **Time**.

You can search for events by time, event, event level, event source, event source type, or event type using the search box at the top of the event list.

----End

# 9.6 Common O&M Commands of GaussDB(DWS)

This section lists only common O&M commands. The system objects to be queried can be changed based on the site requirements. For details about the returned fields, see the description of system catalogs, system views, and system functions in the product manuals *Developer Guide*.

# Viewing O&M Status

Prerequisites: The GaussDB(DWS) cluster has been connected.

- View the overall running status of the current service. select coorname, usename, client\_addr, sysdate-query\_start as duration, state, enqueue,waiting, pid, query\_id, substr(query,1,60) from pgxc\_stat\_activity where usename != 'Ruby' and usename != 'omm' and state = 'active' order by duration desc;
- View the overall concurrency of the current service. select usename,coorname,enqueue,state,count(\*) from pgxc\_stat\_activity where usename <> 'omm' and usename <> 'Ruby' group by 1,2,3,4 order by 4,5 desc limit 30;
- Check the overall waiting status in the current cluster. select wait\_status,wait\_event,count(\*) as cnt from pgxc\_thread\_wait\_status where wait\_status <> 'wait cmd' and wait\_status <> 'synchronize quit' and wait\_status <> 'none' and wait\_status <> 'wait stream task' group by 1,2 order by 3 desc limit 50;
- View the service running information of the resource pool in the current cluster (resource management and control scenario).
  select s.resource\_pool as rpname, count(1) as session\_cnt,sum(case when a.state = 'active' then 1 else 0 end) as active\_cnt,sum(case when s.enqueue ='global' then 1 else 0 end) as global\_wait,sum(case when s.lane = 'fast' and s.status = 'running' then 1 else 0 end) as fast\_run,sum(case when s.lane = 'fast' and s.status = 'slow' and s.status = 'running' then 1 else 0 end) as slow\_run,sum(case when s.lane = 'slow' and s.status = 'pending' and s.enqueue not in ('global','none') then 1 else 0 end) as slow\_run,sum(case when s.lane = 'slow' and s.status = 'pending' and s.enqueue not in ('global','none') then 1 else 0 end) as slow\_run,sum(case when s.lane = 'slow' and s.status = 'running' then s.statement\_mem else 0 end) as est\_mem from pg\_catalog.pgxc\_session\_wlmstat s,pg\_catalog.pgxc\_stat\_activity a where s.threadid=a.pid(+) and s.attribute != 'internal' and s.resource\_pool != 'root' group by 1;
- Check the dynamic memory watermark of the current cluster. select a.nodename,a.memorymbytes as dynamic\_used\_memory,b.memorymbytes as max\_dynamic\_memory, dynamic\_used\_memory/max\_dynamic\_memory\*100 as used\_rate from pgxc\_total\_memory\_detail a join pgxc\_total\_memory\_detail b on a.nodename=b.nodename where a.memorytype = 'dynamic\_used\_memory' and b.memorytype = 'max\_dynamic\_memory' order by a.memorymbytes desc;
- Check the memory usage of each thread. (Check the dynamic memory watermark of the current cluster. Connect to the CN/DN node with high dynamic memory usage that we found to retrieve the information.) select b.state, sum(totalsize) as totalsize, sum(freesize) as freesize, sum(usedsize) as usedsize from pv\_session\_memory\_detail a , pg\_stat\_activity b where split\_part(a.sessid,'.',2) = b.pid group by b.state order by totalsize desc limit 20;

 Check the memory used by each session in the current instance. (Check the dynamic memory watermark of the current cluster. Connect to the CN/DN node with high dynamic memory usage that we found to retrieve the information.)

select split\_part(pv\_session\_memory\_detail.sessid,'.',2) pid,pg\_size\_pretty(sum(totalsize))
total\_size,count(\*) context\_count from pv\_session\_memory\_detail group by pid order by
sum(totalsize) desc;

 Check the memory used by each SQL statement in the current instance. (Check the dynamic memory watermark of the current cluster. Connect to the CN/DN node with high dynamic memory usage that we found to retrieve the information.)

select sessid, contextname, level,parent, pg\_size\_pretty(totalsize) as total ,pg\_size\_pretty(freesize) as freesize, pg\_size\_pretty(usedsize) as usedsize, datname,query\_id, query from pv\_session\_memory\_detail a , pg\_stat\_activity b where split\_part(a.sessid,'.',2) = b.pid order by totalsize desc limit 100;

### **Emergency Recovery**

### 

Always confirm emergency operations that may impact services with the customer before proceeding. Never attempt to perform these operations independently.

Prerequisites: The GaussDB(DWS) cluster has been connected.

- View the overall running status of the current service. Obtain the PID of the statement to be scanned.
   execute direct on(*cn\_name*) 'select pg\_cancel\_backend(*PID of the scanned statement*)';
   execute direct on(*cn\_name*) 'select pg\_terminate\_backend(*PID of the scanned statement*)';
- Group scan statements together in batches, without executing the scan command.

select 'execute direct on(' || coorname || ') "select pg\_terminate\_backend(' || pid || ')";',sysdatequery\_start as dur, substr(query,1,60) from pgxc\_stat\_activity where usename != 'omm' and usename ! = 'Ruby' and state = 'active' order by dur desc limit 30;

- Clear idle connections.
   clean connection to all for database xxx; --Clear idle connections.
   select \* from pgxc\_clean\_free\_conn(); --Clear pooler cache connections.
- Fix the CCN count by connecting to the CCN. select \* from pg\_stat\_get\_workload\_struct\_info(); --Retain the CCN information. select gs\_wlm\_node\_recover(true); --Repair CCNs.
- Lock abnormal users. alter user usename account lock; --Lock a user. alter user usename account unlock; --Unlock a user.
- Add a service to the blacklist.
   select \* from gs\_append\_blocklist(*unique\_sql\_id*); --Add a service to the blacklist.
   select \* from gs\_blocklist\_query; --Query the existing blacklist.
   select gs\_remove\_blocklist(*unique\_sql\_id*); --Remove the blacklist.

#### **Service Analysis**

Prerequisites: The GaussDB(DWS) cluster has been connected.

 View the waiting status of the currently executing SQL statement. Run the statement user for viewing the overall running status of the current service and obtain the value of the query\_id field, which can be used as the Actual query ID in the following statement. select \* from pgxc\_thread\_wait\_status where query\_id = Actual query ID order by node\_name,wait\_status,wait\_event;

- View the running process information of the running SQL statement. Run the statement user for viewing the overall running status of the current service and obtain the value of the query\_id field, which can be used as the Actual query ID in the following statement.
   select \* from pgxc\_wlm\_session\_statistics where queryid = Actual query ID;
- View the running information of historical SQL statements. Run the statement used for viewing the overall running status of the current service and obtain the value of the query\_id field, which can be used as the Actual query ID in the following statement.

select \* from pgxc\_wlm\_session\_info where queryid = Actual query ID,

- View the skew information of a single table.
   select \* from table\_distribution('schema\_name','table\_name');
- View the dirty page rate of a single table.
   select c.oid AS relid, n.nspname AS schemaname, c.relname, pg\_stat\_get\_tuples\_inserted(c.oid) AS n\_tup\_ins, pg\_stat\_get\_tuples\_updated(c.oid) AS n\_tup\_upd, pg\_stat\_get\_tuples\_deleted(c.oid) AS n\_tup\_del, pg\_stat\_get\_live\_tuples(c.oid) AS n\_live\_tup, pg\_stat\_get\_dead\_tuples(c.oid) AS n\_dead\_tup, cast( (n\_dead\_tup / (n\_live\_tup + n\_dead\_tup + 0.0001) \* 100) AS numeric(5,2)) AS dirty\_page\_rate from pg\_class c LEFT JOIN pg\_namespace n ON n.oid = c.relnamespace where c.oid = 'schema\_name.table\_name'::regclass::oid;
- View the table definition and index information. select pg\_get\_tabledef('schema\_name.table\_name');
- Check the table size. select pg\_size\_pretty(pg\_table\_size('*schema\_name.table\_name*'));
- View the creation time, modification time, and last analysis time of the table. select \* from pg\_object where object\_oid='*schema\_name.table\_name*'::regclass;
  - View details about dirty data. start transaction read only; set enable\_show\_any\_tuples = true; set enable\_indexscan = off; set enable\_bitmapscan = off; select ctid,xmin,xmax,pgxc\_is\_committed(xmin),pgxc\_is\_committed(xmax),oid,\* from *schema\_name.table\_name*; select xmin,xmax,ctid, \* from pgxc\_node; rollback;

# 9.7 Backing Up and Restoring a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# 9.7.1 Overview

A snapshot is a full or incremental backup of a GaussDB(DWS) cluster at a specific point in time. It records the current database data and cluster information, including the number of nodes, node specifications, and database administrator name. Snapshots can be created manually or automatically. For details, see Manual Snapshots and Automated Snapshots.

If you restore a snapshot to a new cluster, GaussDB(DWS) creates a new cluster based on the cluster information recorded in the snapshot, and then restores data from the snapshot. For more information, see **Restoring a Snapshot to a New Cluster**.

If you restore a snapshot to the original cluster, GaussDB(DWS) clears the existing data in the cluster, and then restores the database information from the snapshot

to the cluster. For more information, see **Restoring a Snapshot to the Current Cluster**.

The snapshot backup and restoration rates are listed below. The rates are obtained from the test environment with local SSDs as the backup media. The rates are for reference only. The actual rate depends on your disk, network, and bandwidth resources.

- Backup rate: 200 MB/s/DN
- Restoration rate: 125 MB/s/DN

# **Constraints and Limitations**

- Backing up the cluster is essential for maintaining data reliability, especially when the service provider cannot restore data through upstream re-import. This helps prevent data loss caused by human or other factors.
- The cluster versions that support schema-level snapshots are listed below. If the current console interface does not support this feature, contact technical support.
  - 9.1.0.100 or later
  - 8.3.0.110 or later 8.3.0.*xxx* cluster versions
  - 8.2.1.230 or later 8.2.1.2xx versions
- OBS snapshot storage space and billing description
  - The cluster storage is provided by GaussDB(DWS) free of charge. Cluster storage = Storage space per node x Number of nodes
  - GaussDB(DWS) provides some free-of-charge storage space for you to store snapshot data generated in cluster backup. However, if you use more space than the free-of-charge storage space, the exceeded part is charged as per OBS billing rules. For details, see the OBS pricing details.
- The dependency of the snapshot service is as follows:
  - The snapshot management function depends on OBS or NFS.
  - If the backup device is an NFS backup media, the NFS backup media must be mounted to the high-performance SFS Turbo. For details, see 11.1.3.2 Automatic Snapshot Policy.
  - Only the snapshots stored in OBS can be used to restore data to a new cluster.
- The new GaussDB(DWS) cluster created based on the snapshot must have the same configurations as the original cluster. That is, the number and specifications of nodes, memory, and disks in the new cluster must be the same as those in the original cluster.
- If you create a new cluster based on a snapshot without modifying parameters, the parameters of the new cluster will be the same as those of the snapshot.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support snapshots.
- Only storage-compute decoupled clusters of 9.0.2 and later versions support snapshots. However, those with elastic logical clusters do not support backup and restoration. If an elastic logical cluster exists in the cluster, the backup

and restoration will fail. You are advised to reclaim the elastic logical cluster before performing the backup and restoration.

- During snapshot creation, do not perform the VACUUM FULL operation, or the cluster may become read-only.
- Snapshot creation affects disk I/O performance. You are advised to create snapshots during off-peak hours.
- During the snapshot creation, some intermediate files are retained, which occupy extra disk space. Therefore, create snapshots in off-peak hours and ensure that the disk capacity usage is less than 70%.

# 9.7.2 Manual Snapshots

# 9.7.2.1 Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Cluster

# Prerequisites

A cluster snapshot is a complete backup that records point-in-time configuration data and service data of a GaussDB(DWS) cluster. This section describes how to create a snapshot on the **Snapshots** page to back up cluster data.

A manual snapshot can be created at any time. It will be retained until it is deleted from the GaussDB(DWS) console. Manual snapshots are full backup data, which takes a long time to create.

#### **NOTE**

- Manual cluster snapshots can be backed up to OBS or NFS.
- To create a manual snapshot of a cluster, the cluster state must be **Available**, **To be restarted**, or **Unbalanced**. In cluster versions earlier than 8.1.3.101, you can also create a snapshot of a cluster in the **Read-only** state.

# Impact on the System

If a snapshot is being created for a cluster, the cluster cannot be restarted, scaled, its password cannot be reset, and its configurations cannot be modified.

#### **NOTE**

To ensure the integrity of snapshot data, do not write data during snapshot creation.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots.
- Step 3 Click Create Snapshot in the upper right corner. Alternatively, choose More > Create Snapshot in the Operation column.
- **Step 4** Configure the following snapshot information:

- **Cluster Name**: Select a GaussDB(DWS) cluster from the drop-down list. The drop-down list only displays clusters that are in the **Available** state.
- **Snapshot Name**: Enter a snapshot name. The snapshot name must be 4 to 64 characters in length and start with a letter. It is case-insensitive and contains only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).
- Snapshot Level: Select cluster.
- **Snapshot Description**: Enter the snapshot information. This parameter is optional. Snapshot information contains 0 to 256 characters and does not support the following special characters: !<>'=&''

#### Step 5 Click Create.

Task status of the cluster for which you are creating a snapshot is **Creating snapshot**. The status of the snapshot that is being created is **Creating**. After the snapshot is created, its status changes to **Available**.

#### **NOTE**

If the snapshot size is much greater than that of the data stored in the cluster, the data is possibly labeled with a deletion tag, but is not cleared and reclaimed. In this case, clear the data and recreate a snapshot. For details, see **How Can I Clear and Reclaim the Storage Space?** 

----End

# 9.7.2.2 Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Schema

#### Overview

A schema snapshot is a backup of specific schemas in a GaussDB(DWS) cluster at a specific point in time. This section describes how to create a schema snapshot on the **Snapshots** page.

A manual fine-grained snapshot can be created at any time. It will be retained until it is deleted from the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### **NOTE**

- If the current console does not support this feature, contact technical support.
- Manual schema snapshots can be backed up to OBS or NFS.
- Schema snapshots can be created only for clusters in Available or Unbalanced state.

#### Prerequisites

Manually enable the fine-grained snapshot.

- Step 1 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots.
- Step 2 Click Create Snapshot in the upper right corner. Alternatively, choose More > Create Snapshot in the Operation column.
- **Step 3** Click ⑦ next to **Snapshot Level** and click **Set**.

Create Snapshot		
k Cluster Name		• () C
Snapshot Name		0
* Snapshot Level	cluster	Fine-grained snapshots can be created for the current cluster Set
Snapshot Description		0
		0/256



: enabled	
: disabled	

Sna	pshot List Policy List							
Fine g	ained snapshot:							Create Snapshot C
	Snapshot Name	Status	Backup Mode	Туре	Storage Medium	Snapshot Level	Created #	Operation
~		😋 Available	Automated	Incremental	ces	cluster	Sep 22, 2022 07:29:56 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~	10 C	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 23:29:56 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		O Available	Automated	Incremental	CES	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 15:29:27 OMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		🥑 Available	Automated	incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		Available	Automated	Incremental	CES	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 23:29:27 OMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		🥑 Available	Automated	incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		Available	Automated	Incremental	CES	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~	-	🥑 Available	Automated	incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 23:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		🥹 Availabie	Manual	Full	ces	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 20:22:58 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~		Available	Automated	Eut	088	chuster	Sen 19 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore Restore Table More -

#### **NOTE**

• If the fine-grained snapshot is enabled, you can restore specific tables from automatic or manual snapshots.

----End

# Impact on the System

If a snapshot is being created for a cluster, the cluster cannot be restarted, scaled, its password cannot be reset, and its configurations cannot be modified.

#### **NOTE**

To ensure the integrity of snapshot data, do not write data during snapshot creation.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots.
- Step 3 Click Create Snapshot in the upper right corner. Alternatively, choose More > Create Snapshot in the Operation column.
- **Step 4** Configure the following snapshot information:

- **Cluster Name**: Select a GaussDB(DWS) cluster from the drop-down list. The drop-down list only displays clusters that are in the **Available** state.
- **Snapshot Name**: Enter a snapshot name. The snapshot name must be 4 to 64 characters in length and start with a letter. It is case-insensitive and contains only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).
- Snapshot Level: Select schema.
- Snapshot Description: Enter the snapshot information. This parameter is optional. Snapshot information contains 0 to 256 characters and does not support the following special characters: !<>'=&''

**Step 5** Specify the snapshots to be backed up.

- Select a database from the **Database** drop-down list.
- In the schema list, select the schemas to be backed up. To search for a schema, enter its name in the search box in the upper right corner of the list, and click Q. Fuzzy search is supported.

* Cluster Name	yyxxx_110	Ŧ	0 C				
* Snapshot Name			0				
* Snapshot Level	schema	٣					
Snapshot Description			0				
		0/256					
* Database	gaussdb	*					
	gaussdb						
A schema snapshot can	t postgres						
Available				Selected			
Reset		Enter a schema name	Q C	Remove		Enter a schema name.	Q
schema				schema			
public							
scheduler							
					No data available.		

#### **NOTE**

- Schemas in different databases cannot be backed up at a time.
- By default, a maximum of 50 schemas can be backed up at a time.

#### Step 6 Click Create.

The task status of the cluster for which you are creating a snapshot is **Creating snapshot**. The status of the snapshot that is being created is **Creating**. After the snapshot is created, its status becomes **Available**.

#### **NOTE**

If a snapshot is larger than the available storage space in the cluster, check whether there is data that has been marked as deleted but actually still exists in the cluster. In this case, delete such data and create a snapshot again. For details, see **How Can I Clear and Reclaim the Storage Space**?

#### ----End

# 9.7.2.3 Deleting a Manual Snapshot

On the **Snapshot Management** page of the GaussDB(DWS) console, you can delete an unwanted snapshot in the **Unavailable** state or delete an available snapshot to release the storage space.

# 

Deleted snapshots cannot be recovered. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots. All snapshots are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the snapshot that you want to delete, choose More > Delete.

**NOTE** 

You can only delete snapshots that were manually created.

**Step 4** If the information is correct, enter **DELETE** and click **OK** to delete the snapshot.

----End

# 9.7.3 Automated Snapshots

# 9.7.3.1 Automated Snapshot Overview

Automated snapshots adopt differential incremental backups. The automated snapshot created for the first time is a full backup (base version), and then the system creates full backups at a specified interval. Incremental backups are generated between two full backups. The incremental backup records change based on the previous backup.

During snapshot restoration, GaussDB(DWS) uses all backups between the latest full backup and the current incremental backup to restore the cluster. Therefore, no data loss occurs.

If the retention period of an incremental snapshot exceeds the maximum retention period, GaussDB(DWS) does not delete the snapshot immediately. Instead, GaussDB(DWS) retains it until the next full backup is completed, when the deletion of the snapshot will not hinder incremental data backup and restoration.



#### Figure 9-31 Snapshot backup process

Automated snapshots are enabled by default when you create a cluster. If automated snapshots are enabled for a cluster, GaussDB(DWS) periodically takes snapshots of that cluster based on the time and interval you set, usually every eight hours. You can configure one or more automated snapshot policies for the cluster as required. If no full backup policy is configured, a full backup is performed every 15 incremental backups. For details, see **Configuring an Automated Snapshot Policy**.

The retention period of an automated snapshot can be set to 1 to 31 days. The default retention period is 7 days. The system deletes the snapshot at the end of the retention period. The retention period sets the duration for which users can access snapshots. If an incremental snapshot does not expire, both the incremental and full snapshots will be kept available instead of being deleted right away. Expired snapshots are hidden and can no longer be viewed by users. After all incremental snapshots expire, the hidden snapshots are physically deleted. If you want to keep an automated snapshot for a longer period, you can create a copy of it as a manual snapshot. The automated snapshot is retained until the end of the retention period, whereas the corresponding manual snapshot is retained until you manually delete it. For details about how to copy an automated snapshot, see **Copying Automated Snapshots**.

# 9.7.3.2 Configuring an Automated Snapshot Policy

You can choose the type of snapshot you need and configure either one or three automated snapshot policies at the cluster level, as well as one or twenty snapshot policies at the schema level for a cluster.

After an automated snapshot policy is enabled, the system automatically creates snapshots based on the time, period, and snapshot type you configured.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** Click **Snapshots** and click **Policy List**. All policies of the current cluster are displayed on the **Policy List** page. Toggle on **Snapshot Policy**.
- Step 5 (Optional) Click Automated Snapshot to enable the snapshot policy.

- indicates that the policy is enabled (default). The default retention period is seven days.
- indicates that the policy is disabled. Once disabled, snapshots will not be automatically created.
- **Step 6** Set the retention mode and the backup device used by the current cluster for automated snapshots. For more information, see **Table 9-18**.

Parameter	Description
Retention Days	Retention days of the snapshots that are automatically created. The value ranges from 1 to 31 days.
	<b>NOTE</b> Snapshots that are automatically created cannot be deleted manually. The system automatically deletes these snapshots when their retention duration exceeds the threshold.
Backup Device	Select <b>OBS</b> or <b>NFS</b> from the drop-down list.
NFS Backup File System Address (NFS)	NFS shared IP address. Enter the IP address of the SFS shared path. After the mounting is successful, a mount directory is created in the <b>/var/chroot/nfsbackup</b> directory of the cluster instance by default.

Table 9-18 Automated snapshot parameters

- **Step 7** After automated snapshot is enabled, you can configure its parameters. For more information, see **Table 9-19**.
  - If you choose a cluster-level or schema-level full snapshot, you can either create a one-time snapshot or set up periodic snapshots. For schema-level full snapshots, you need to select the database associated with the schema. You can back up one or up to 20 schemas at a time.
    - To schedule periodic full snapshots, you can specify a day of the week or a specific date, and choose a specific time for the snapshot to be triggered.

Snapshot Policy		~
DWS provides certain free-opart is charged in pay-per-u	of-charge space for you to store automated snapshots. If you use more space than the free-of-charge storage se mode. Learn more	e space the excessive
Snapshot Policy Name 💿		
Snapshot Level	Cluster      Schema	
Snapshot Type	Full     Incremental	
Snapshot Policy 💮	Periodic     One-off	
Periodic Snapshot Settir	Q8	
Days 💿	Specified day in week     Specified date	
	Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Select at least one of the preceding days.	Saturday
Time (7)	Specified time	
	Start time: 00:00	

#### Figure 9-32 Setting a cluster-level periodic full snapshot policy

#### Figure 9-33 Setting a schema-level periodic full snapshot policy

anshot Policy Name				
apshot Level	Cluster 💽 Schema			
apshot Type	Full     Incremental			
apshot Policy ③	Periodic One-off			
Periodic Snapshot Setting	15			
N2 ③	Specified day in week     Si     Sunday     Monday     Select at least one of the preceding d	pecified date Tuesday 🗌 Wednesda lays.	7 🗌 Thursday 🗌 Frida	iy 🗌 Saturday
ne 🕤	Specified time     Start time: 00:00			
tabase:	gaussdb	× )		
hema	-Select-	v	na án amntu echama doas not si	inderers boon

# 

- Exercise caution when selecting the 29th, 30th, or 31st as end dates for a month, as this may result in missing data. The specific policy and execution are subject to the actual month and date.
- The snapshot policy time is the local time.
- Set a cluster-level or schema-level one-time full snapshot policy. Specify the desired date and time for the snapshot to be triggered.

#### Figure 9-34 Setting a cluster-level one-time full snapshot policy

Snapshot Policy				×
DWS provides certain free-of- part is charged in pay-per-use	harge space for you to store automa mode. Learn more	ited snapshots. If yo	use more space than the	free-of-charge storage space the excessive
Snapshot Policy Name 🛞				
Snapshot Level	Cluster      Schema			
Snapshot Type	Full     Incremental			
Snapshot Policy 💮	OPeriodic One-off			
One-time Snapshot Settin	s:			
Time	Start time: Jan 17, 2025 17:14			
				Cancel OK

#### Figure 9-35 Setting a schema-level one-time full snapshot policy

part is charged in pay-per-use	mode. Learn more	en anganois, in you use more apase man are nee-or-energe	ratinge space are excess
Snapshot Policy Name 💿			
Snapshot Level	Cluster 💿 Schema		
Snapshot Type	Full     Incremental		
Snapshot Policy (?)	One-off		
One-time Snapshot Setting	gs		
Time	Start time: Jan 17, 2025 17:14		
Database:	gaussdb	~	
Schema	-Select-	~	
Schema	-Select- A schema snapshot can back up a r creation.	maximum of 50 schemas at a time. An empty schema does r	not support snaps

• Incremental cluster-level or schema-level snapshots can be set only to **Periodic**.

You can configure an incremental periodic snapshot policy at the cluster or schema level. Specify a target week or date, along with the trigger time, start time, and interval for the snapshot.

Figure 9-36 Setting a cluster-level periodic incremental snapshot policy

Snapshot Policy	
DWS provides certain free-of-cl part is charged in pay-per-use r	harge space for you to store automated snapshots. If you use more space than the free-of-charge storage space the excessive mode. Learn more
Snapshot Policy Name 🕥	
Snapshot Level	Cluster     Schema
Snapshot Type	Full     Incremental
Snapshot Policy ③	Periodic
Periodic Snapshot Settings	
Days (?)	Specified day in week     Specified date     Unday     Monday     Tuesday     Videnesday     Thursday     Friday     Saturday     Sector at least one of the preceding days.
Time ③	Specified time     Specified interval  Start time:     00:00     O
	Cancel

Figure 9-37 Setting a schema-level periodic incremental snapshot policy

Snapshot Policy	×
DWS provides certain free-of- part is charged in pay-per-use	charge space for you to store automated snapshots. If you use more space than the free-of-charge storage space the excessive mode. Learn more
Snapshot Policy Name 🕥	
Snapshot Level	Cluster   Schema
Snapshot Type	Full   Incremental
Snapshot Policy (?)	Periodic
Periodic Snapshot Setting	1
Days (?)	Specified day in week     Specified date     Sunday     Monday     Toesday     Wednesday     Thursday     Friday     Select al least one of the preceding days.
Time 💮	Specified time     Specified interval     Start time:     0000
Database:	gaussdb v
Schema	-Select- v
	n autocom ampenen ven reen syn a mesonen ve of averanse et all titt. All tittigt subtent over na support subjation crastion.

### Table 9-19 Snapshot policy parameters

Parameter	Description	
Snapshot Policy Name	The policy name must be unique, consist of 4 to 92 characters, and start with a letter. It is case-insensitive and can contain only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).	
Snapshot Level	The available options are <b>Cluster</b> and <b>Schema</b> .	
Snapshot Type	<ul> <li>You can choose either full or incremental snapshots.</li> <li>NOTE <ul> <li>A full snapshot is created after every fifteen incremental snapshots are created.</li> <li>Incremental snapshot restoration is based on full snapshots. Incremental snapshots are used to restore all data to the time point when they were created.</li> <li>An incremental snapshot records the changes made after the previous snapshot was created. A full snapshot backs up the data of an entire cluster. It takes a short time to create an incremental snapshot, and a long time to create a full snapshot. When restoring a snapshot to a new cluster, GaussDB(DWS) uses all snapshots between the latest full backup and the current</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>snapshot.</li> <li>The following versions support automated incremental policies at the schema level: <ul> <li>9.1.0.100 or later</li> <li>8.3.0.110 or later 8.3.0.xxx cluster versions</li> <li>8.2.1.230 or later 8.2.1.2xx versions</li> </ul> </li> <li>Schema-level policies, the policy level, database, and schema attributes cannot be modified after configuration.</li> </ul>	
Policy	You can choose either periodic or one-time snapshots. NOTE One-time can be selected only for full snapshots.	

Parameter	Description
One-time	You can create a full snapshot at a specified time in the future. The local time is used.
Periodic Policy Configurations	You can create automated snapshots on a daily, weekly, or monthly basis:
	• <b>Days</b> : Specify days for every week or every month. <b>Weekly</b> and <b>Monthly</b> cannot be selected at the same time. For <b>Monthly</b> , the specified days are applicable only to months that contain the dates. For example, if you select <b>29</b> , no automated snapshot will be created on February, 2022.
	• <b>Time</b> : Specify the exact time on the selected days. For incremental snapshots, you can specify the start time and interval. The interval for cluster-level snapshots ranges from 4 to 24 hours, while for schema-level snapshots, it ranges from 1 to 24 hours. This setting determines the frequency at which snapshots will be taken.
	<b>NOTICE</b> Incremental snapshots can be set only to <b>Periodic</b> , as shown in the first figure below.

- Step 8 Click OK.
- **Step 9** (Optional) To modify an automated snapshot policy, click **Modify** in the **Operation** column.
- Step 10 (Optional) To preview a policy, click Preview Policy. The next seven snapshots of the cluster will be displayed. If no full snapshot policy is configured for the cluster, the default policy is used, that is, a full snapshot is taken after every 15 incremental snapshots.

#### NOTICE

Implementation of the same policy varies according to operations in the cluster. For example:

- If the automated snapshot function is disabled, the configured snapshot policy will not appear on the snapshot preview page.
- If the fine-grained snapshot function is disabled in the snapshot list, the schema-level automatic policy will not be shown on the preview page.
- The policy preview time is for your reference only. The cluster triggers a snapshot within one hour before and after the preset time.
- The next automated snapshots after cluster scale-out, upgrade, resize, and media modification are full snapshots by default.
- If a periodic policy is used for a cluster, no automatic backup is allowed within 4 hours after the last automated snapshot is complete.
- In the event of conflicting triggering times between multiple policies, the following priority order applies: cluster-level > schema-level, one-time > periodic, and full > incremental.
- You can use any backup, full or incremental, to restore the full data of a resource.
- When both the schema-level automatic incremental policy and the cluster-level full or incremental policies are in use, incremental schema snapshots will automatically be converted to full snapshots when certain conditions are met.

----End

# 9.7.3.3 Copying Automated Snapshots

This section describes how to copy snapshots that are automatically created for long-term retention.

# **Copying an Automated Snapshot**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > Snapshot.

All snapshots are displayed by default. You can copy the snapshots that were automatically created.

- Step 3 In the Operation column of the snapshot that you want to copy, choose More > Copy.
  - New Snapshot Name: Enter a new snapshot name.

The snapshot name must be 4 to 64 characters in length and start with a letter. It is case-insensitive and contains only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).

• Snapshot Description: Enter the snapshot information.

This parameter is optional. Snapshot information contains 0 to 256 characters and does not support the following special characters: !<>'=&"

**Step 4** Click **OK**. The system starts to copy the snapshot for the cluster.

The system displays a message indicating that the snapshot is successfully copied and delivered. After the snapshot is copied, the status of the copied snapshot is **Available**.

**NOTE** 

If the snapshot size is much greater than that of the data stored in the cluster, the data is possibly labeled with a deletion tag, but is not cleared and reclaimed. In this case, clear the data and recreate a snapshot. For details, see **How Can I Clear and Reclaim the Storage Space?** 

----End

# 9.7.3.4 Deleting an Automated Snapshot

Only GaussDB(DWS) can delete automated snapshots; you cannot delete them manually.

GaussDB(DWS) deletes an automated snapshot if:

- The retention period of the snapshot ends.
- The cluster is deleted.

#### 

To help users restore a cluster deleted by mistake, GaussDB(DWS) provides the following policies (supported only in 8.2.0 and later) for cluster snapshots:

- If the latest snapshot is an automated snapshot, it will be retained for one day.
- If the latest snapshot is a manual snapshot, the automated snapshot of the cluster will be deleted.

# 9.7.4 Viewing Snapshot Information

This section describes how to view snapshot information on the **Snapshots** page.

### **Viewing Snapshot Information**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Management** > **Snapshot**.

In the snapshot list, all snapshots are displayed by default.

Step 3 You can view the Snapshot Name, Snapshot Status, Cluster Name, Backup Mode, Snapshot Type, Storage Media, Snapshot Level, and creation time of snapshots.

You can also enter a snapshot name or cluster name in the upper right corner of the snapshot list and click  $\bigcirc$  to search for the specified snapshot. GaussDB(DWS) supports fuzzy search.

 Table 9-20 describes snapshot status.

Status	Description
Available	Indicates that the existing snapshot works properly.
Creating	Indicates that a snapshot is being created.
Unavailable	Indicates that the existing snapshot cannot provide services.

 Table 9-21 lists the backup modes.

Table	9-21	Backup	modes
iubic		Duckup	moucs

Туре	Description
Manual	Indicates the snapshot that you manually create through the GaussDB(DWS) management console or using APIs. You can delete the snapshots that are manually created.
Automated	Indicates the snapshot that is automatically created after the automated snapshot backup policy is enabled. You cannot delete the snapshots that are automatically created. The system automatically deletes the snapshots whose retention duration expires.

The following table describes the snapshot types.

Table 9-22 Type	Ś
-----------------	---

Туре	Description
Full	The snapshot is a full backup.
Incremental	The snapshot is an incremental backup.

The following table describes the snapshot media.

# Table 9-23 Storage media

Storage Medium	Description
OBS	The created snapshot is an OBS snapshot and the backup data is stored on the OBS server.
NFS	The created snapshot is an NFS snapshot and the backup data is stored on the NFS server.

The following table describes the snapshot levels.

Table 9-24 Sr	napshot	levels
---------------	---------	--------

Snapshot Level	Description
cluster	A backup of all the configurations and service data of a cluster at a specific point in time.
schema	A backup of all the service data of a schema at a specific point in time.

----End

# **Querying Snapshot Information by Table Name**

#### Prerequisites

Only the snapshots that are created after the fine-grained snapshot function is enabled support fine-grained search.

#### **NOTE**

Only cluster versions 8.2.1.230 and later support snapshot query by table name.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **Snapshots**. Click the **Snapshots** tab and enable the fine-grained snapshot function. Click the advanced search button on the right.

You can set a triplet consisting of a database, a schema, and a table in a finegrained query on the snapshot information in a specified database schema table. For details about the snapshot information, see **Step 3**.

Stepshols Policies Parameter Configuration								
Fine-grained Stopphot.							Ora	de Snapshol C
çexistê v public	• Tabe							Q
Suspolut Name	Snapshot Status	Backup Mode	Snapshot Type	Storage Wedla	Snapshot Level	Snapshot Created 🖕	Operation	
			No data available.					

#### Table 9-25 Triplet description

Tuple Name	Description
database	Database name.

Tuple Name	Description
schema	Schema name.
table	Table name.

----End

# 9.7.5 Restoration Using a Snapshot

# 9.7.5.1 Constraints on Restoring a Snapshot

# **Cluster-Level Snapshot Restoration**

Cluster-level restoration consists of two steps:

- 1. Data restoration: Restores data in the backup set to the data directory of each primary DN/CN instance in parallel.
- 2. Rebuilding the standby DN: After the primary DN is restored, standby DNs are rebuilt with full data in parallel.

# **NOTE**

- The restoration process takes 1.5 to 2 times longer than the backup process.
- After a cluster-level restoration, the parameters will be identical to those during the backup. The new cluster must have the same specifications as the original cluster. If any changes were made to the specifications of the original cluster, the new cluster must still match the specifications prior to the changes. If the specifications of the new cluster are smaller, the restoration may fail.

# 9.7.5.2 Restoring a Snapshot to a New Cluster

# Scenario

This section describes how to restore a snapshot to a new cluster when you want to check point-in-time snapshot data of the cluster.

When a snapshot is restored to a new cluster, the restoration time is determined by the amount of data backed up by the snapshot. If a snapshot contains a large amount of data, the restoration will be slow. A small snapshot can be quickly restored.

Automatic snapshots are incremental backups. When restoring a snapshot to a new cluster, GaussDB(DWS) uses all snapshots between the latest full backup and the current snapshot. You can set the backup frequency. If snapshots are backed up only once a week, the backup will be slow if the incremental data volume is large. You are advised to increase the backup frequency.

#### NOTICE

- Currently, you can only use the snapshots stored in OBS to restore data to a new cluster.
- By default, the new cluster created during restoration has the same specifications and node quantity as the original cluster.
- Restoring data to a new cluster does not affect the services running in the original cluster.
- Fine-grained restoration does not support tables in absolute or relative tablespace.
- Logical clusters and resource pools cannot be restored to a new cluster.

# Prerequisites

- The resources required for restoring data to a new cluster do not exceed your available resource quota.
- The snapshot is in the **Available** state.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots. All snapshots are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a snapshot, click **Restore**.
- **Step 4** On the **Restore Snapshot** page, configure the parameters of the new cluster, as shown in the following figure. **Extreme SSD** and **Extreme SSD V2** can only be selected for clusters that use ECS for computing and EVS for storage.
  - Restore to a single-AZ cluster.
  - Restore to a multi-AZ cluster.

#### D NOTE

- Only clusters later than 8.2.0.100 can be restored to a multi-AZ cluster.
- This feature is only available for storage-compute coupled clusters.
- The number of AZs in the current region is greater than or equal to 3.
- The number of nodes and CNs must be a multiple of 3.
- DNs in the multi-AZ cluster must be less than or equal to 2.

You can modify cluster parameters. For details, see **Table 9-26**. By default, other parameters are the same as those in the snapshot. For details, see **Table 9-19**.

Category	Operation
Basic settings	Configure the AZ, node flavor, cluster name, database port, VPC, subnet, security group, public access, and enterprise project.
Advanced settings	<ul> <li>If Custom is selected, configure the following parameters:</li> <li>Backup devices: Select OBS or NFS from the drop-down list.</li> <li>Label: a key-value pair used to identify a cluster. For details about labels, see Overview.</li> </ul>

 Table 9-26 Parameters for the new cluster

**Step 5** Click **Restore** to go to the confirmation page.

Step 6 Click Submit to restore the snapshot to the new cluster.

When the status of the new cluster changes to Available, the snapshot is restored.

After the snapshot is restored, the private network address and EIP (if **EIP** is set to **Buy now**) are automatically assigned.

#### **NOTE**

If the number of requested nodes, vCPU (cores), or memory (GB) exceed the user's remaining quota, a warning dialog box is displayed, indicating that the quota is insufficient and displaying the detailed remaining quota and the current quota application. You can click **Increase quota** in the warning dialog box to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota. Once approved, we will update your resource quota accordingly and send you a notification.

----End

# **Viewing Restoration Details**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. By default, all clusters of the user are displayed.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, if the cluster status is **Restoring**, click **View Details**.
- **Step 4** You can view the snapshot restoration progress of the cluster on the task details page.

**NOTE** 

- The estimated duration in the task details is for reference only. The actual duration depends on the current data volume.
- In the restore phase, click **View** to view the kernel restoration process. Note that there may be a time gap between the task time displayed in the task details area and the actual kernel execution time due to task scheduling and restart.

----End

# 9.7.5.3 Restoring a Snapshot to the Current Cluster

# Scenario

You can use a snapshot to restore data to the original cluster. This function is used when a cluster is faulty or data needs to be rolled back to a specified snapshot version.

#### NOTICE

- This function is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.3.200 or later.
- Snapshots whose backup device is OBS can be backed up.
- Only a snapshot in the Available state can be used for restoration.
- Logical clusters and resource pools cannot be restored to the current cluster.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots. All snapshots are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a snapshot, click **Restore**.
- **Step 4** Restore the snapshot to the current cluster.

Snapshot Name	THE REPORT OF A DECK
Snapshot Level	cluster
Cluster Name	
Cluster Version	8.1.3.322
Restore To	New cluster Cluster
If you restore data depends on the da	to the original cluster, all instance data in the cluster will be cleared, and the backup file will be downloaded from the OBS storage to the cluster for restoration. The restoration duration ta volume.

#### **NOTE**

If you use a snapshot to restore data to the original cluster, the cluster will be unavailable during the restoration.

```
----End
```

# 9.7.5.4 Restoring a Table to the Original Cluster

# Scenario

You can create a table from a cluster or schema snapshot to the original cluster if the table was modified or deleted by mistake.

#### NOTICE

- If the current console does not support this feature, contact technical support.
- Only the tables stored in OBS can be used to restore data to the original cluster.
- Currently, only cluster- and schema-level snapshots can be used for such restoration.
- Restoration can be performed only if the snapshot and the cluster are both in the **Available** state.
- A table in a read-only cluster cannot be restored.
- Fine-grained restoration does not support tables in an absolute or relative tablespace.

# Prerequisites

Manually enable the fine-grained snapshot.

- Step 1 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots.
- Step 2 Click Create Snapshot in the upper right corner. Alternatively, choose More > Create Snapshot in the Operation column.

# **Step 3** Click ⑦ next to **Snapshot Level** and click **Set**.

<	Create Snapshot			
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
	* Cluster Name		• ⑦ C	
	* Snapshot Name		0	_
	* Snapshot Level	cluster	Fine-grained snapshots can be created for the current cluster Set	
	Snapshot Description		0	
			0/256	



: enabled										
: disabled										
Fine-grained snapshot:							Create Snapshot C			
Snapshot Name	Status	Backup Mode	Type	Storage Medium	Snapshot Level	Created #	Operation			
~ -	😋 Available	Automated	Incremental	CES	cluster	Sep 22, 2022 07:29:56 GMT+0	Restore Restore Table More +			
~ -	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OES	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 23:29:56 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	ces	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
× (	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~ -	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	ces	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 23:29:27 OMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~ -	🕑 Available	Automated	incremental	OES	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
× .	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	oes	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~ -	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 23:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~ 1	🕑 Available	Manual	Full	ces	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 20:22:58 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			
~	🕑 Available	Automated	Full	OBS	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +			

#### D NOTE

• If the fine-grained snapshot is enabled, you can restore specific tables from automatic or manual snapshots.

----End

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > Snapshot.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of a snapshot, click Restore.
- **Step 4** On the **Restore Table** page, configure the following parameters:
  - Database: To restore a cluster snapshot, select a database. To restore a schema snapshot, select the database specified during backup. For details, see Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Cluster and Creating a Manual Snapshot of a Schema.
  - Source Schema: Specify the schema of the table to be restored.
  - **Source Table**: Specify the name of the table to be restored.
  - **Destination Schema**: Specify the schema where the table is to be restored to.
  - **Destination Table**: Specify the name of the new table.

#### Figure 9-38 Table-level restoration

Snapshot Name		n						
Snapshot Laval	cluster							
Cluster Name								
Cluster Version	9.1.0210							
Restore To	Current Ouslier							
+ Database Name	- polgres	*						
<ul> <li>Up to 50 tables can replace any existing</li> </ul>	be selected. They will be restored to a new so tables that use the same name as them.	chema named OriginalSchemaName_dws_	beckap in th	e original database. The name of a restored table consists of th	e original table name and the backupkley(Vau can select	the original schema and table name to overwrite	the data.). Restored tables will	
husting a			Falsadad					
Rest Q		C; Add search oriteria.	Famo	•			C, Add search otheria.	
scheme	Searce Table			Target Schema	Searce Table	Target Table		
🖸 prak	pris_configuration			prit_des_balop ~	prik_configuration	pnic_configuration_20241225_133341		×
🗋 prik	prik_meta_data							
_ pnk	prik_snapshat							
							-	store Now

# 

- A table name must meet the following GaussDB(DWS) database naming constraints: The table name is case sensitive can contain up to 63 characters. It must start with a letter or underscore (\_). Letters, digits underscores (\_) are allowed.
- The source table to be restored must be a table in the backup set, or the restoration will fail.
- If the target table already exists in the database, this table will be overwritten during restoration. Check the table name before starting restoration.

**Step 5** Confirm the information and click **Restore**.

----End
# 9.7.5.5 Restoring a Table or Multiple Tables to a New Cluster

# Scenario

You can create a table from a cluster or schema snapshot to the original cluster. In case of accidental deletion or operation on data in a table during service operations, you can use this function to find the latest snapshot that contains the table data and restore it to a new cluster. Compare the data between the old and new clusters without affecting the original table data, and then restore the data as needed.

#### NOTICE

- This function is supported only by clusters of version 9.1.0 or later. The system supports OBS.
- You can restore fine-grained snapshots of clusters from an earlier version to a new cluster of version 9.1.0, even if the versions are different.
- You can restore the fine-grained snapshot of the 9.1.0 cluster to a new heterogeneous cluster of version 9.1.0, even if the number of nodes and specifications of the old and new clusters are different.
- Only fine-grained single-table or multi-table snapshots can be restored to a new cluster.

# Prerequisites

Manually enable the fine-grained snapshot.

- Step 1 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots.
- Step 2 Click Create Snapshot in the upper right corner. Alternatively, choose More > Create Snapshot in the Operation column.
- **Step 3** Click ⑦ next to **Snapshot Level** and click **Set**.

<ul> <li>Cluster Name</li> </ul>		• ⑦ C	
Consolut Name			
× Snapsnot Name			
* Snapshot Level	cluster	Fine-grained snapshots can l     current cluster Set	be created for the
Snapshot Description			

**Step 4** On the **Snapshot List** page, toggle the fine-grained snapshot switch.



Snapshot List Policy List							
Fine-grained snapshot							Create Snapshot C
Snapshot Name	Status	Backup Mode	Type	Storage Medium	Snapshot Level	Created gr	Operation
~ -	😋 Available	Automated	Incremental	ces	cluster	Sep 22, 2022 07:29:56 OMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
~	🥝 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 23:29:56 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
× .	😋 Available	Automated	Incremental	oes	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 15:29:27 OMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
• · · · · · ·	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 21, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
× ·	🤣 Available	Automated	Incremental	oes	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 23:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
• ·	🕑 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
× -	🥑 Available	Automated	incremental	CES	cluster	Sep 20, 2022 07:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
• ·	😋 Available	Automated	Incremental	OBS	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 23:29:27 GMT+0	Restore Restore Table More +
× 1	Available	Manual	Full	ces	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 20:22:58 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +
× .	🕑 Available	Automated	Full	CES	cluster	Sep 19, 2022 15:29:27 GMT+0	Restore   Restore Table   More +

#### **NOTE**

• If the fine-grained snapshot is enabled, you can restore specific tables from automatic or manual snapshots.

----End

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots. All snapshots are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of a snapshot, click Restore.
- **Step 4** Set the recovery level to the table level.

#### Figure 9-39 Table-level restoration



# **Step 5** Select the basic information about the new cluster to be restored. For details, see **Creating a GaussDB(DWS) Storage-Compute Coupled Cluster**.

#### **NOTE**

- If fine-grained heterogeneous recovery is available, you can select different node specifications and quantities for the new cluster, regardless of whether they match those of the original cluster.
- You need a cluster version of 9.1.0 or later to restore one or more tables to a new cluster.

**Step 6** Select a single table or multiple tables. Select a database name from the dropdown list. If you select custom database configuration, you can adjust the following configuration parameters. If you select the default configuration, the parameters will use their default values. Once you've finished configuring, choose one or more tables in the table list to restore.

#### **NOTE**

When you restore data to a new cluster, a new database is created. If the configuration of the new database is not the same as the snapshot database, the restoration process may fail. Before restoring, make sure to review the configuration of the original database. If it differs from the default configuration, adjust it accordingly.

				- •
数据库名称	gaussdb			~
数据库配置	默认	配置	自定义	
模板名	template0			~
字符编码	SQL_ASCI	81		~
字符集	С			
字符分类	С			
类型	ORA			~
恢复表列表	•	schema		
		public		
		public		
		public		

#### Figure 9-40 Custom database configuration

Parameter	Description	Value Range	Defaul t Value
Template Name	Name of the template from which the database is created. GaussDB(DWS) creates a database by copying a database template. GaussDB(DWS) has two initial template databases <b>template0</b> and <b>template1</b> and a default user database <b>gaussdb</b> .	Names of existing databases, <b>template0</b> , and <b>template1</b>	templa te0

Parameter	Description	Value Range	Defaul t Value
Character Encoding	<ul> <li>Encoding format used by the new database. The value can be a string (for example, SQL_ASCII) or an integer.</li> <li>By default, the encoding format of the template database is used. The encoding formats of the template databases template0 and template1 vary based on OS environments by default.</li> <li>The template1 database does not allow encoding customization. To specify encoding for a database when creating it, use template0.</li> <li>To specify encoding, set template to template0.</li> </ul>	Value range: GBK, UTF8, Latin1, and SQL_ASCII	SQL_A SCII
Character Set Support	Character set used by the new database. For example, this parameter can be set using <b>lc_collate =</b> <b>'zh_CN.gbk'</b> . The use of this parameter affects the sort order applied to strings, for example, in queries with <b>ORDER</b> <b>BY</b> , as well as the order used in indexes on text columns. The default is to use the collation order of the template database.	Valid collation order	С
Character Classificati on	Character classification to use in the new database. For example, this parameter can be set using <b>lc_ctype =</b> <b>'zh_CN.gbk'</b> . The use of this parameter affects the categorization of characters, for example, lower, upper and digit. The default is to use the character classification of the template database.	Valid character classification	С
Туре	Compatible database type.	ORA, TD, and MySQL	ORA

# Step 7 Click Next: Confirm.

**Step 8** Confirm the information and click **Restore**.

----End

# 9.7.6 Configuring a Snapshot

You can configure the parameters for creating and restoring a snapshot.

#### D NOTE

- This feature applies only to clusters of 8.2.0 or later. (For clusters of versions earlier than 8.2.0, only some parameters can be configured.)
- The parameters take effect on all the snapshot creation and restoration tasks.
- The thread-count configuration is available in cluster 9.1.0.210 and later versions. When Roach initiates a multi-threaded backup of cold and hot tables, and V3 tables, the default number of concurrent threads is set to twice the number of CPU cores.

# Procedure

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster. The **Cluster Information** page is displayed.
- **Step 4** Click the **Snapshots** tab page and click **Configure Parameters**. All the configurable parameters of the current cluster will be displayed.
- **Step 5** Configure parameters as required. For details, see **Table 9-28**.
- Step 6 Click Save.

----End

#### **Snapshot parameters**

Table 9-28 Snapshot information

Parameter	Туре	Description	Default Value
parallel- process	Backup parameter	Number of concurrent processes on each node during Roach backup. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter can be configured for clusters earlier than 8.2.0.	The value is the number of DNs on the current node.
compression- type	Backup parameter	Compression algorithm. <ul> <li>zlib</li> <li>LZ4</li> </ul> NOTE <ul> <li>This parameter can be configured for clusters earlier than 8.2.0.</li> </ul>	LZ4

Parameter	Туре	Description	Default Value
compression- level	Backup parameter	<ul> <li>Compression level. The value range is 0 to 9.</li> <li>0: fast backup and no compression</li> <li>9: slow backup and maximum compression</li> <li>NOTE This parameter can be configured for clusters earlier than 8.2.0.</li> </ul>	6
buffer-size	Backup parameter	Buffer size of the Roach upload media. The value range is 256 to 16,384, in MB.	256
buffer-block- size	Backup parameter	Data block size of the data file to be read by Roach. The value range is 5,242,880 to 268,435,456, in bytes.	67108864
cpu-cores	Backup parameter	Number of CPU cores that can be used when Roach starts multiple threads concurrently	1/2 of the total number of logical CPU cores on the node
master- timeout	Backup parameter	Timeout period for the communication between the Roach master and agent nodes. The value range is 600 to 3600, in seconds.	3600
max-backup- io-speed	Backup parameter	I/O flow control during Roach backup. The value range is 0 to 2048, in MB/s. The value must be greater than the value of <b>buffer-block-size</b> . The value <b>0</b> indicates no limit.	0
backup-mode	Backup parameter	<ul> <li>Full backup mode.</li> <li>0: phase-1 backup</li> <li>1: phase-2 backup</li> </ul>	0

Parameter	Туре	Description	Default Value
cbm-parse- mode	Backup parameter	Incremental backup mode.	0
		<ul> <li>0: one-time CBM scan (high memory usage and high performance)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>1: multiple CBM scans (stable memory usage and low performance)</li> </ul>	
thread-count	Backup parameter	Number of concurrent threads used when Roach starts multi-thread backup of cold and hot tables and V3 tables. The maximum value is 16 times the number of CPU cores. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by clusters of version 9.1.0.210 or later.	The default value is twice the number of CPU cores.
dump-options	Backup parameter	Backup options supported during fine-grained backup. GaussDB(DWS) support permission and comment backup.	Do not back up permissions and comments.
		<ul> <li>Permission: enable_handle_acl</li> </ul>	
		Comment: enable_handle_comm ent NOTE This parameter is supported	
		only by clusters of version 9.1.0 or later.	
parallel- process	Restoration parameter	Number of concurrent processes on each node during Roach backup. By default, the value is the number of primary DNs on the current node plus 1.	1
cpu-cores	Restoration parameter	Number of CPU cores that can be used when Roach starts multiple threads concurrently	The default value is 1/2 of the number of CPU cores.

Parameter	Туре	Description	Default Value
logging-level	Restoration parameter	<ul> <li>Log levels:</li> <li>FATAL: Unrecoverable faults that cause the system suspension. This is the most severe level.</li> <li>ERROR: Major errors.</li> <li>WARNING: Exceptions. In this case, the system may continue to process tasks.</li> <li>INFO: Notes.</li> <li>DEBUG: Debugging details.</li> <li>DEBUG2: Detailed debugging information, which is generally not displayed. This is the least severe level.</li> </ul>	INFO
thread-count	Restoration parameter	Number of concurrent threads used when Roach starts multi-thread restoration of cold and hot tables and V3 tables. The maximum value is 16 times the number of CPU cores. <b>NOTE</b> This parameter is supported only by clusters of version 9.1.0.210 or later.	The default value is twice the number of CPU cores.

# 9.7.7 Stopping Snapshot Creation

You can stop snapshot creation on the **Snapshots** page.

# 

- This feature is supported only in version 8.1.3.200 and later.
- If the snapshot is ready to complete, the command for stopping the snapshot will not take effect and the snapshot will end normally.

# Precautions

Only the snapshots in the **Creating** state can be stopped. A snapshot creation task that just started or is about to complete cannot be stopped.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Management > Snapshots. Alternatively, in the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster to switch to the Cluster Information page. Then, click Snapshots. All snapshots are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of a snapshot that is being created, and click **Cancel Creation**.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Yes** to stop the snapshot. The snapshot state will change to **Unavailable**.

							All clusters 🔹 💌	Enter a snapshot name. Q C
Snapshot Name	Status	Cluster Name 👌	Backup Mode ↓∃	Type ↓Ξ	Storage Medium	Snapshot Level	Created 🐙	Operation
v	🔇 Unavailable		Automated	Full	OBS	cluster	Sep 13, 2022 10:44:26 GMT	Restore   Restore Table   More •
v	<table-cell> Available</table-cell>		Manual	Full	OBS	cluster	Sep 13, 2022 10:19:21 GNT	Restore Restore Table More +

----End

# 9.8 Scaling GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Nodes

# 9.8.1 Viewing Inspection Results

# Context

GaussDB(DWS) allows you to inspect the cluster before making any changes like scaling, changing specifications, or upgrading. Simply click **Inspect** on the relevant page, and the system will check if the cluster's health status and metrics meet the requirements for the change. Once the inspection is passed, you can proceed with the change. If the inspection fails, you can view the inspection details page to see which items did not pass the inspection. From there, you can handle the inspection items based on the details provided. For details about the inspection standards, see **Table 9-29**.

#### 

- This feature is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1 or later.
- If you cannot handle the failed inspection items, contact technical support engineers.

# Precautions

- The inspection plug-in 8.3.1.100 or later has been installed in the cluster.
- The inspection result is valid for 24 hours, during which you can make the change operation. Once the 24-hour validity period expires, you will need to perform the inspection again.
- If the cluster has not been inspected within 24 hours before the change, inspect it before making any changes like scaling, changing specifications, or upgrading. Ensure that the inspection is passed before proceeding with the change.

# **Viewing Inspection Details**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** On the cluster details page, click **Inspection Management**.
- **Step 4** Click the drop-down button next to its name to check the inspection status, execution progress, inspection result, and pass rate. For more details about these inspection items, click **View Details** in the task's row.

Figure 9-41 Viewing inspection details

Ciucler Topology			Cluster Insper	tion Item Details			Al	
Recource Management	Task Kome	Start Time	inspection item Name	CheckRysBuhenaTable	Inspection Result	Pussing Kale	Operation	
Intelligent O&M Snapshots	A Impediate Before Scale Out	Jun 12, 2024 -	Process Information	The item run an 1 rundes: mp. 1. The mphotol 172-16-57-200; value: There are some lable which exceeded to some other online change. Owner to database transfer	O Not Pass	87%		
Parameter Modifications	Inspectice item Name			Anclor(done, on dire, pet, segence, into Guery in Galabase (postgrac) Ancloredings, on dire out, segence, into Guery in Galabase (postgrac)			Ortailing	
Security Settings	CheckSystichemaTable			Sector/dens_on.dls_ps_secore_ints	not passed. Otherwise, the c	teck is passed.	Vev Details	
Oata Source 🗸 🗸	ChellProad		Inspection St	andard	m pg_proc system table. If it a	nosis, the check fails, otherwise L.	Vev Delais	
riode Management	CheckBaranceState		If a user-create	d table exists in the system schema, the check is not passed. Otherwise, the	spec the check, if the result is	nit tee, a naming is reported. If	Vev Details	
Uograde Management	CheckUserStatementTimeout		check is passed.		of set or is set to R. the check is passed. Otherwise, the check.		Vev Details	
Consection Consection	CheckMetaDataConsidency		Impact Witho	ut Rectification	1 and d1. If they are consistent	t, the check is passed, otherwise.	View Extrains	
Loge	CheckEnvPrafile				RY_PVZH, and SPATHL of the	node and environment variables	View Details	
User Management	Checklopicatoriculd		OM operations	are affected.	ses the check. Otherwise, the	dell falls the check.	Vev Details	
	Check10Date		Handling Sug	pestons	containing the data type is d	necked, the item fails check.	View Details	
	CheckCvWundedtane				as that in the GR_ST Query -C	command output, the check is .	Vev Details	
	<ul> <li>Impediat Below State-Out</li> </ul>	Juli 12, 2024	1. Determine 1 2. Communicat user-built scher SCHEMA tree	e user objects created in the system schema based on the inspection result, a with the customer and advise the customer to migrate these objects to the ma. The SQL statement format is as follows: ALTER TABLE table_name SET schema.	O Aut. Faus	87%		

#### **NOTE**

After creating an inspection task on the configuration change page, you can keep track of its progress and view details. You can even stop the inspection from that same page.

----End

# **Stopping an Inspection Task**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster.
- Step 3 On the cluster details page, click Inspection Management.
- **Step 4** Locate the row that contains the inspection task and click **Stop** in the **Operation** column to stop the inspection task.

----End

# **Inspection Criteria**

Tab	le	9-29	Inspection	criteria
-----	----	------	------------	----------

Change Operation	Item	Check Criteria	
Scaling operations and typical	CheckTimeZone	The inspection passes if all nodes in the cluster use the same time zone, and fails if they do not.	
modifications	CheckSpaceUsag e	When usage goes beyond the warning threshold (set at 70% by default), a warning is issued. If it goes beyond the NG threshold (set at 90% by default), the inspection fails. The inspection fails if the available space in the GAUSSHOME/ PGHOST/GPHOME/GAUSSLOG/tmp/ data directory is less than the threshold.	
	CheckClusterStat e	It verifies the CM process, fenced UDF, and cluster status. If the CM process is missing, the inspection fails. A warning is issued if the fenced UDF status is <b>down</b> . The inspection passes for a normal cluster status, but fails otherwise.	
	CheckEnvProfile	It checks the environment variables ( <b>\$GAUSSHOME</b> , <b>\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH</b> , and <b>\$PATH</b> ) of a node. If these variables exist and are properly configured, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.	
	CheckReadonly Mode	It checks the value of <b>default_transaction_read_only</b> on all nodes that contain CNs in the cluster. If the value is <b>off</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.	
	CheckCatchup	It checks whether the <b>CatchupMain</b> function can be found in the <b>gaussdb</b> process stack. If it cannot be found, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.	
	CheckCollector	It checks whether the information collection is successful. If it is, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.	
	CheckTrust	If any node is not trusted, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.	

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckBalanceSta te	It checks the <b>Balanced</b> attribute of the cluster. If it is <b>Yes</b> , the inspection passes. A warning is displayed if it is not. If the query fails, the inspection also fails.
	CheckCnNumber Same	It checks if the number of CNs queried by running the <b>/opt/dws/xml/cluster.xml</b> command is different from that queried by running the <b>cm_ctl query -Cv</b> command. If they are different, the inspection passes. If not, the inspection fails.
	CheckCMParam	It checks if the value of enable_transaction_read_only is on and if the value of coordinator_heartbeat_timeout is consistent on each node. If both are true, the inspection passes.
	CheckUtilslib	It checks for the existence of the <b>\$GAUSSHOME/utilslib</b> directory. If it exists, the inspection fails. If it does not exist, the inspection passes.
	CheckPgxcgroup	It checks the number of records in the <b>pgxc_group</b> table where <b>in_redistribution</b> is <b>Y</b> . If the number is <b>0</b> , the inspection passes. If the number is greater than 0, the inspection fails.
	CheckLockState	It checks whether the cluster is locked. If the cluster is not locked, the inspection passes. If it is locked, the inspection fails.
	CheckDBConnec tion	It checks whether the database can be connected. If it can, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckGUCConsis tent	It checks whether the GUC parameters of CNs and DNs are consistent. If they are consistent, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckTDDate	The inspection fails if the ORC table in the TD database exists and has columns of the date type.
	CheckPgxcRedist b	If any temporary table remains in the database after data redistribution, the inspection fails.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckMetaData	If metadata in the system table is consistent, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckGUCSettin g	If the GUC parameters in <b>postgresql.conf</b> are consistent with those in <b>pg_settings</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckProacl	The inspection fails if <b>proacl</b> in the <b>pg_proc</b> system table has usernames with only digits. Otherwise, it passes.
	CheckMetaData Consistency	If the data in the system table between CN and DN is consistent, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckReturnTyp e	If the return value is invalid, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckUltraWide Table	If a table with more than 996 columns exists, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckDataRedis Schema	If a <b>data_redis</b> schema exists in the database and the owner name is not <b>redisuser</b> , the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckDiskSpace Limited	If the disk space of the user is limited, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckTableColla te	The inspection fails if the database has a PCK table or a column-store partitioned table with a <b>collate</b> field. Otherwise, it passes.
	CheckDefaultOri entation	It checks the GUC parameter. If both the database and <b>default_orientation</b> are set to row storage, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckReplicatio- nUuid	The inspection passes if there is no replicated table that uses the default UUID. Otherwise, it fails.
	CheckUserState mentTimeout	If <b>statement_timeout</b> is not set or is set to <b>0</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckJsonb	Run the select attrelid::regclass from pg_attribute a join pg_type t on a.atttypid = t.oid and t.typname = 'jsonb' group by 1 SQL statement. If the jsonb type is used, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckLengthOfl ndex	Run the SELECT length(pg_get_indexdef(indexrelid)) FROM pg_index order by 1 desc limit 1 SQL statement. If the result is greater than 192 x 1024, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckLengthOfT able	Run the select c.oid from pg_class c,pg_namespace n where c.relnamespace=n.oid and relkind='r' and n.nspname not in ('cstore') and length(n.nspname  '.'  c.relname)>=64; SQL statement. If the result is not empty, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckUseWorklo adManager	Run the <b>show use_workload_manager</b> SQL statement. If the result is <b>on</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails. This inspection item is not included in version 8.1.3.320 and beyond. Meaning, it has been verified and passed in later versions.
	CheckNecessary Schema	It checks whether the necessary schema(public) exists. If schema(public) does not exist, the check fails.
	CheckCMParam Consistency	To pass this check, ensure that the parameter settings in the <b>cm.conf</b> file obtained from both the active and standby CM nodes are consistent. The check will pass if they are consistent and fail if they are not.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckSQLCompa tibility	In MySQL compatibility mode, redistribution of temporary tables with indexes is slow. If the <b>SHOW</b> <b>sql_compatibility</b> value is set to <b>mysql</b> in the service database and the <b>disable_including_all_mysql</b> enumerated value is not present in the <b>behavior_compat_options</b> , this item will not pass the check. However, if the enumerated value is included, the item will pass the check.
	CheckBinaryUpg rade	Check whether the corresponding backup file exists in the <b>/DWS/manager/</b> <b>upgrade_backup/</b> directory. If the backup file exists, the check fails. Otherwise, the check is passed.
	CheckColdTableS pace	Checks whether cold and hot tables exist in all databases. If yes, this item fails the check. If no, this item passes the check.
	CheckXFS	View the <b>/etc/os-release</b> file to obtain the version information. If EulerOS is used and the version is 4.19.87 or earlier, XFS bugs are involved and the check is not passed. Otherwise, the check is passed.
	CheckGTMConfi gConsistency	It obtains the parameters in the configuration files of the active and standby GTMs. If the parameter settings are consistent, this item passes the check.
	CheckColversion	If there are column-store tables that are not marked as 1.0 and the current default column-store table is 2.0, this item fails the check. Otherwise, this item passes the check.
	CheckTopSqlSize	It checks the size of the <b>topsql</b> table. If the size exceeds 50 GB, the check fails.
	CheckDeltaTable	It checks the existence of the <b>delta</b> table. If the table exists, this item fails the check.
	CheckMaxDatan ode	It checks the value of <b>comm_max_datanode</b> . If the value is not equal to the actual number of primary DataNodes, this item fails the check.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria		
	CheckSSHIP	To pass this check, ensure that the parameter settings in the <b>cm.conf</b> file obtained from both the active and standby CM nodes are consistent. The check will pass if they are consistent and fail if they are not.		
	CheckTimeZone Link	Run the <b>ll /etc/localtime</b> command in the sandbox. If the file path to which the link points contains <b>/var/chroot</b> , the check is not passed.		
	CheckSpecialFile	Checks whether files in the program directory <b>(GAUSSHOME)</b> contain special characters and files of non-Ruby users. If no, this item passes the check.		
	CheckSysSchem aTable	If a user-created table exists in the system schema, the check fails. Otherwise, the check is successful.		
Pre-upgrade health check	CheckClusterPar- ams	The cluster configuration parameters (IP address, port, and path parameters) specified in <b>postgresql.conf</b> or <b>pgxc_node</b> should match those in the static configuration file. Otherwise, the inspection fails.		
	CheckCNNum	It checks the number of CNs in the cluster. If the number is greater than 2 and no more 10, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.		
	CheckDDL	Start a transaction to delete schemas and tables. If the transaction can be committed, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.		
	CheckTimeZone	The inspection passes if all nodes in the cluster use the same time zone, and fails if they do not.		
	CheckXidEpoch	It checks the XID consumption. If the value is greater than or equal to 2 to the power of 32, the inspection fails.		

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckCnNumber Same	It checks if the number of CNs queried by running the <b>/opt/dws/xml/cluster.xml</b> command is different from that queried by running the <b>cm_ctl query -Cv</b> command. If they are different, the inspection passes. If not, the inspection fails.
	CheckGaussVer	The inspection passes if the binary files in the <b>\$GAUSSHOME/bin</b> directory on each node have identical versions.
	CheckPsort	The inspection fails if the <b>psort</b> index exists.
	CheckCatchup	It checks whether the <b>CatchupMain</b> function can be found in the <b>gaussdb</b> process stack. If it cannot be found, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckClusterStat e	It verifies the CM process, fenced UDF, and cluster status. If the CM process is missing, the inspection fails. A warning is issued if the fenced UDF status is <b>down</b> . The inspection passes for a normal cluster status, but fails otherwise.
	CheckMetaData Consistency	If the data in the system table between CN and DN is consistent, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckDependSys temObj	If self-created objects depend on system objects, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckPgKeyWor ds	If names of tables, columns, functions, or data types are new reserved keywords, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckReadonly Mode	It checks the value of <b>default_transaction_read_only</b> on all nodes that contain CNs in the cluster. If the value is <b>off</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckMetaData	If metadata in the system table is consistent, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckGUCSettin g	If the GUC parameters in <b>postgresql.conf</b> are consistent with those in <b>pg_settings</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckPgxcgroup	It checks the number of records in the <b>pgxc_group</b> table where <b>in_redistribution</b> is <b>Y</b> . If the number is <b>0</b> , the inspection passes. If the number is greater than 0, the inspection fails.
	CheckCmserverS tandby	If the value of <b>cm_server</b> in the cluster is <b>standby</b> , the inspection passes. Otherwise, a warning is displayed.
	CheckSpaceUsag e	When usage goes beyond the warning threshold (set at 70% by default), a warning is issued. If it goes beyond the NG threshold (set at 90% by default), the inspection fails. The inspection fails if the available space in the GAUSSHOME/ PGHOST/GPHOME/GAUSSLOG/tmp/ data directory is less than the threshold.
	CheckEnvProfile	It checks the environment variables ( <b>\$GAUSSHOME</b> , <b>\$LD_LIBRARY_PATH</b> , and <b>\$PATH</b> ) of a node. If these variables exist and are properly configured, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckBalanceSta te	It checks the <b>Balanced</b> attribute of the cluster. If it is <b>Yes</b> , the inspection passes. A warning is displayed if it is not. If the query fails, the inspection also fails.
	CheckTDDate	The inspection fails if the ORC table in the TD database exists and has columns of the date type.
	CheckCatalog	If there is a custom database object in <b>pg_catalog</b> , the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckPgauthid	If the most significant bit of <b>oid</b> in <b>pg_authid</b> is <b>1</b> , the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckSysdate	If the <b>sysdate</b> view is used in tables, views, and stored procedures, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.

Change Operation	ltem	Check Criteria
	CheckFilesNumb er	If the number of <b>tmp</b> files in the <b>GAUSSHOME/PGHOST/GPHOME</b> directory is greater than 10,000, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckKeyFilesExi st	If the <b>upgrade_version</b> , <b>conf</b> , <b>control</b> , and <b>data</b> files exist in key directories, the inspection passes. Otherwise, the inspection fails.
	CheckReturnTyp e	If the return value is invalid, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckTrust	If any node is not trusted, the inspection fails. Otherwise, the inspection passes.
	CheckEnumGUC Value	It checks whether some parameters in <b>pg_postgres.conf</b> contain quotation marks. If single quotation marks are missing, this item fails the check.
	CheckSpecialFile	It checks whether files in the program directory <b>(GAUSSHOME)</b> contain special characters and files of non-Ruby users. If no, this item passes the check.
	CheckNecessary Schema	It checks the existence of the necessary <b>schemas (public)</b> .
	CheckUserDefin edDataType	It connects to all databases. Run the select count(*) from pg_type t,pg_namespace n,PG_ATTRIBUTE a where t.typnamespace=n.oid and t.oid=a.atttypid and t.typname ='time_stamp' and n.nspname='information_schema' and a.atttypid> 16384; SQL statement . If the result is empty, the check is passed.
	CheckCMParam Consistency	To pass this check, ensure that the parameter settings in the <b>cm.conf</b> file obtained from both the active and standby CM nodes are consistent. The check will pass if they are consistent and fail if they are not.

Change Operation	Item	Check Criteria
	CheckLightProxy	It checks the <b>enable_light_proxy</b> parameter. If the value is <b>off</b> and <b>behavior_compat_options</b> does not contain the enumerated value <b>enable_force_add_batch</b> , the item fails the check.
	CheckSSHIP	To pass this check, ensure that the parameter settings in the <b>cm.conf</b> file obtained from both the active and standby CM nodes are consistent. The check will pass if they are consistent and fail if they are not.
	CheckSysSchem aTable	If a user-created table exists in the system schema, the check fails. Otherwise, the check is successful.
	CheckTimeZone Link	Run the <b>ll /etc/localtime</b> command in the sandbox. If the file path to which the link points contains <b>/var/chroot</b> , the check is not passed.

# 9.8.2 Managing Nodes

# **Overview**

On the **Nodes** tab page, you can view the node list of the current cluster, add new nodes to or remove nodes from it, and view the node usage, status, flavor, and AZ.

In addition, you can click the  $\checkmark$  icon next to the text in the **Node Alias Name** column of a specified node to modify the alias of the node. If the node does not have an alias, you can add an alias for the node.

#### Figure 9-42 Managing Nodes

Add	Remove				Resource Status	* All
	Node Name ↓Ξ	Node Alias Name	AZ	Resource Status	Node Status	Node Flavor
		- 🖉	A23	©in Use	OAvailable	dirsc xlarge.4
		- 🖉	AZ3	Ofn Use	O-Available	dwscolarge.4
	- 10 C	- 🖉	AZ3	Øin Use	Available	duscolarge.4

# **NOTE**

- This feature is supported only in 8.1.1.200 or later cluster versions.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support node management.

# Adding Nodes

This function is more suited for large-scale scale-out. Nodes can be added in batches in advance without interrupting services. To add 180 nodes, add them in three batches of 60 nodes each. If any nodes fail to be added, retry adding them. Once all 180 nodes are added, use them for scaling out.

#### Precautions

- Nodes can be added only when no other task is running on the management side.
- The storage size of a new node must be the same as that of each of the existing nodes in the cluster.
- An added node, typically for scaling out, is referred to as an idle node. It starts incurring charges once added. You are advised to only add nodes when needed and promptly use them for scaling out.
- The anti-affinity rule dictates that the number of nodes to be added at a time must be an integer multiple of the cluster ring size. For example, if the cluster ring size is 3, the number of nodes to be added must be an integer multiple of 3.
- In the anti-affinity deployment mode, when a node is idle and fails due to power-off or other causes, it makes other nodes in its server group unavailable. In this case, you should remove and re-add the failed node.
- The anti-affinity rule dictates that, if a node fails to be added and is rolled back, other nodes that are being added in the same server group will also be rolled back.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target cluster. On the **Cluster Information** page that is displayed, choose **Nodes**.
- Step 4 Click Add Node, enter the number of idle nodes to be added, and click Next:
   Confirm. If you create a BMS cluster, contact technical support to add the cluster to the whitelist for cross-flavor scale-out. After the cluster is whitelisted, Resource Flavor will be displayed on the Add Node page. If there are not enough IP addresses in the original subnet, you can add idle nodes from other subnets.
- **Step 5** After confirming that the information is correct, click **Submit**. The **Nodes** page is displayed. On this page, you can start adding nodes. Nodes that fail to be added are automatically rolled back and recorded in the failure list.
  - ----End

# **Removing Nodes**

#### Precautions

• Nodes can be removed only when no other task is running on the management side.

- Only nodes whose resource status is **Idle** can be removed. Nodes that are in use cannot be removed.
- In anti-affinity deployment, nodes are removed by cluster ring. For example, when you remove a node, other nodes in the same ring will be automatically selected and displayed.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target cluster. On the **Cluster Information** page that is displayed, choose **Nodes**.
- **Step 4** On the **Nodes** page, select the node to be deleted and click **Delete**.
- **Step 5** Confirm the information and click **OK**. After the deletion is successful, the node is no longer displayed on the **Nodes** page.

----End

# 9.8.3 Scaling Nodes

# 9.8.3.1 Scaling Out a Cluster

When you need more compute and storage resources, add more nodes for cluster scale-out on the management console.

#### **NOTE**

- When you scale out a storage-compute coupled data warehouse cluster, use the same storage specifications as the cluster.
- Nodes cannot be added to a storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone).
- If you create a BMS cluster, contact technical support to add you to the whitelist for cross-flavor scale-out. After you are whitelisted, **Resource Flavor** will be displayed on the **Add Node** page.
- If the number of subnet IP addresses is insufficient, cross-subnet scale-out is allowed.

After the data in a data warehouse is deleted, the occupied disk space may not be released, resulting in dirty data and disk waste. Therefore, if you need to scale out your cluster due to insufficient storage capacity, run the **VACUUM** command to reclaim the storage space first. If the used storage capacity is still high after you run the **VACUUM** command, you can scale out your cluster. For details about the VACUUM syntax, see **VACUUM** in the *SQL Syntax Reference*.

# Impact on the System

- Before the scale-out, disable the client connections that have created temporary tables because temporary tables created before or during the scale-out will become invalid and operations performed on these temporary tables will fail. Temporary tables created after the scale-out will not be affected.
- After you start a scale-out task, the cluster automatically takes a snapshot before the task begins.

- Certain cluster functions, including restarting, stopping, and starting, modifying specifications, adding or removing CNs, creating snapshots, and resetting the database administrator's password, cannot be performed while scaling out the cluster.
- During an offline scale-out, the cluster automatically restarts. Therefore, the cluster changes to **Unavailable** for a period of time. After the cluster is restarted, the status becomes **Available**. At the end of the scale-out, if you select automatic redistribution, the system dynamically redistributes user data in the cluster to all nodes. Otherwise, you need to start data redistribution.
- During offline scale-out, stop all services or run only a few query statements. During table redistribution, a shared lock is added to tables. All insert, update, and delete operations as well as DDL operations on the tables are blocked for a long time, which may cause a lock wait timeout. After a table is redistributed, you can access the table. Do not perform queries that take more than 20 minutes during the redistribution (the default time for applying for the write lock during redistribution is 20 minutes). Otherwise, data redistribution may fail due to lock wait timeout.
- In an online scale-out, during node addition, the cluster is locked Database objects are checked when the cluster is locked. To ensure that the cluster is successfully locked, avoid executing statements that create or delete databases and tablespaces while adding nodes to the cluster.
- During online scale-out, you can perform insert, update, and delete operations on tables, but data updates are still be blocked for a short period of time. Redistribution consumes lots of CPU and I/O resources, which will greatly impact job performance. Therefore, perform redistribution when services are stopped or during periods of light load. Phase-based scale-out is also recommended: Perform high-concurrency redistribution during periods of light load, and stop redistribution or perform low-concurrency redistribution during periods of heavy load.
- If a new snapshot is created for the cluster after the scale-out, the new snapshot contains data on the newly added nodes.
- If the cluster scale-out fails, the database automatically performs the rollback operation in the background so that the number of nodes in the cluster can be restored to that before the scale-out.
  - If the rollback is successful and the cluster can be normally used, you can perform Scale Out again. If the scale-out still fails, contact the technical support.
  - If the rollback fails due to some exceptions, the cluster may become Unavailable. In this case, you cannot perform Scale Out or restart the cluster. Contact the technical support.
- If the number of buckets assigned to each DN in the storage-compute decoupled cluster's scale-out scenario is not within the range of 3 to 20, automatic scaling will be activated. You can view the number of buckets using the GUC parameter **table\_buckets**.
  - Currently, buckets can only be scaled offline. The procedure is the same as that of the existing scaling procedure. The system automatically determines and executes the bucket scaling process.
  - During scaling, the cluster will be restarted and all connections will be closed. The restart takes several minutes.

- After the restart is complete, the database can be read but cannot be written until data redistribution is complete.

For example, if the number of buckets on the current node is 32 and the number of DNs in the logical cluster is 9, and the number of DNs needs to be increased to 15, as 32/15=2 (rounded down) does not fall within the range [3,20], bucket scale-out will be triggered.

# **Prerequisites**

- The cluster to be scaled out is in the **Available**, **Read-only**, or **Unbalanced** state.
- The number of nodes to be added must be less than or equal to the available nodes. Otherwise, system scale-out is not allowed.
- To scale out a cluster as an IAM user, ensure that the IAM user has permissions for VPC, EVC, and BMS.

# Scaling Out a Cluster

#### **NOTE**

- A cluster becomes read-only during scale-out. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- The cluster will be intermittently disconnected during scale-out. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- To ensure data security, you are advised to create a snapshot before the scale-out. For details about how to create a snapshot, see Manual Snapshots.
- After you start a scale-out, the system first checks for scale-out prerequisites. If your cluster fails the check, modify configurations as prompted and try again. For details, see What Do I Do If the Scale-out Check Fails?
- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.

All clusters are displayed by default.

Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Scale Out. The scale-out page is displayed.

Before scaling out the cluster, it is crucial to verify if it meets the inspection conditions. Click **Immediate Inspection** to complete the inspection and proceed to the next step only if it passes. For more information, see **Viewing Inspection Results**.

- If you create a BMS cluster, contact technical support to add you to the whitelist for cross-flavor scale-out. After you are whitelisted, **Resource Flavor** will be displayed on the **Add Node** page.
- If the IP addresses of the original subnet are insufficient, you can expand the capacity across subnets.

**Step 4** Specify the number of nodes to be added.

- DNs are added during scale-out. For details about how to add CNs, see Adding or Deleting a CN in a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- The number of nodes after scale-out must be at least three nodes more than the original number. The maximum number of nodes that can be added

depends on the available quota. In addition, the number of nodes after the scale-out cannot exceed 256.

If the node quota is insufficient, click **Increase quota** to submit a service ticket and apply for higher node quota.

- Flavor of the new nodes must be the same as that of existing nodes in the cluster.
- The VPC and security group of the cluster with new nodes added are the same as those of the original cluster.
- The number of nodes to be added to a multi-AZ cluster must be a multiple of 3.

**Step 5** Configure advanced parameters.

- If you choose **Default**, **Auto Redistribution** will be enabled, **Scale Online** will be disabled, and **Redistribution Mode** will be **Offline** by default.
- If you choose **Custom**, you can configure the following advanced configuration parameters for scale-out:
  - Scale Online: Online scale-out can be enabled. During online scale-out, data can be added, deleted, modified, and queried in the database; and some DDL syntaxes are supported. Errors will be reported for unsupported syntaxes.
  - **Terminate Blocked Job**: If you enable online scale-out, you can configure automatic job termination.
  - **Time Before Blocked Job Termination (s)**: If job termination is enabled and congestion occurs during online scale-out, the system waits for the duration you specified and then terminates congested jobs. The value can be an integer in the range 30 to 1200.

Clusters of version 8.2.1.100 and later support job termination.

- Auto Redistribution: Automatic redistribution can be enabled. If
  automatic redistribution is enabled, data will be redistributed
  immediately after the scale-out is complete. If this function is disabled,
  only the scale-out is performed. In this case, to redistribute data, select a
  cluster and choose More > Scale Node > Redistribute.
- Redistribution Concurrency: If automatic redistribution is enabled, you can set the number of concurrent redistribution tasks. The value range is 1 to 200. The default value is 4.
- Auto Redistribution: Select Online or Offline as needed.
- **Step 6** Confirm the settings, select the confirmation check box, and click **Next: Confirm**.
- Step 7 Click Submit.
  - After you submit the scale-out application, task information of the cluster changes to **Scaling out** and the process will take several minutes.
  - During the scale-out, the cluster automatically restarts. Therefore, the cluster status will stay **Unavailable** for a while. After the cluster is restarted, the status will change to **Available**.
  - After the scale-out is complete, the system dynamically redistributes user data in the cluster, during which the cluster is in the **Read-only** state.

- A cluster is successfully scaled out only when the cluster is in the **Available** state and task information **Scaling out** is not displayed. Then you can use the cluster.
- If Scale-out failed is displayed, the cluster fails to be scaled out.

----End

# Scaling Out with Idle Nodes

To ensure reliability, prepare ECS first by referring to **Adding Nodes** for a largescale cluster, and scale out the cluster using idle nodes.

#### 

- Disable automatic redistribution when you scale out a large-scale cluster to facilitate retries upon failures for improved reliability.
- After the scale-out is complete, manually perform **redistribution** to ensure that multiple retries can be performed in this phase.

#### Precautions

- A number of available nodes must be added to the cluster in advance so that idle nodes can be created and added for scale-out.
- The anti-affinity rule dictates that the number of idle nodes to be added must be an integer multiple of the cluster ring size.
- Make sure to configure the scale-out task before submitting it. This involves completing the scale-out preparation. Once done, wait for a moment.
- After you start a scale-out, the system first checks for scale-out prerequisites. If your cluster fails the check, modify configurations as prompted and try again. For details, see What Do I Do If the Scale-out Check Fails?

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Scale Out.

Before scaling out the cluster, it is crucial to verify if it meets the inspection conditions. Click **Immediate Inspection** to complete the inspection and proceed to the next step only if it passes. For more information, see **Viewing Inspection Results**.

If there are idle nodes in the cluster, the system displays a message asking you whether to add nodes.

- **Step 4** Click the corresponding button to make scale-out preparations and wait until the preparation is complete.
- **Step 5** Configure the parameters as required. For details, see **Scaling Out a Cluster**.

After setting the scale-out and redistribution parameters, select the confirmation check box, and click **Next: Confirm**.

**Step 6** Confirm the information and click **Submit**.

----End

# **Viewing Scaling Details**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. By default, all clusters of the user are displayed.
- Step 3 In the Task Information column of a cluster, click View Details.
- **Step 4** Check the scale-out status of the cluster on the scaling details page.

#### Figure 9-43 Viewing scale-out details

Tasks						>
Cluster Name: test	test_1206 Task Name: Scaling ou		ut Running Status: 🔾 R		Running	
	Task Information		Estimate	Scale-Out Started	Completed	Status
Create Node	Prepare Create No	de [0/3]	1min	2022-12-28 11:53:02	-	Running
	Create VM [0/3] Deliver Configurations [0/3]		5min			() Waiting
			2min	-		() Waiting
	Install Software [0/	3]	2min	-	-	( Waiting
	Post Create Node	[0/3]	1min	-		() Waiting
Build Node	Waiting for Instance Created Build Node			2022-12-28 11:53:02		<ul> <li>Running</li> </ul>
			13min	-	-	( Waiting
	Post Build Node		1min			() Waiting

----End

# 9.8.3.2 Cluster Redistribution

# 9.8.3.2.1 Redistributing Data

Data redistribution, where data in existing nodes is evenly allocated to the new nodes after you scale out a cluster, is a time-consuming yet crucial task that accelerates service response.

By default, redistribution is automatically started after cluster scale-out. For enhanced reliability, disable the automatic redistribution function and manually start a redistribution task after the scale-out is successful. In this way, both scaleout and redistribution can be retried upon failures.

GaussDB(DWS) supports **offline redistribution** and **online redistribution**. The default mode is offline redistribution.

Before redistribution starts or when redistribution is paused, you can set redistribution priorities for the tables that have not been redistributed by schema or table.

#### NOTICE

- The cluster redistribution function is supported in 8.1.1.200 or later cluster versions.
- This function can be manually enabled only when the cluster task information displays **To be redistributed** after scale-out.
- You can also select the redistribution mode when you configure cluster scaleout (see **Configure advanced parameters**).
- Redistribution queues are sorted based on the relpage size of tables. To ensure that the relpage size is correct, you are advised to perform the **ANALYZE** operation on the tables to be redistributed.

# **Offline Redistribution**

#### Precautions

- In offline redistribution mode, the database does not support DDL and DCL operations. Tables that are being redistributed support only simple DQL operations.
- During table redistribution, a shared lock is added to tables. All insert, update, and delete operations as well as DDL operations on the tables are blocked for a long time, which may cause a lock wait timeout. Do not perform queries that take more than 20 minutes during the redistribution (the default time for applying for the write lock during redistribution is 20 minutes). Otherwise, data redistribution may fail due to lock wait timeout.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Redistribute, as shown in the following figure.

The **Redistribution** page is displayed.

**Step 4** On the **Redistribute** page that is displayed, keep the default **offline** redistribution mode and click **Next: Confirm** to submit the task.

----End

# **Online Redistribution**

#### Precautions

In online redistribution mode, the database supports partial DDL and DCL operations.

- Local tables that are being redistributed support insert, delete and update operations and some DDL operations:
  - INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, MERGE INTO, OVERWRITE, UPSERT
  - Join queries across node groups

- Local table renaming, schema modification, DROP, TRUNCATE, TRUNCATE-PARTITION
- The following operations cannot be performed on tables that are being redistributed:
  - Run ALTER TABLE statements (except for TRUNCATE PARTITION), including adding or deleting columns or partitions.
  - Create, modify, or delete indexes.
  - Perform VACUUM FULL and CLUSTER operations on tables.
  - Modify the sequence objects on which a column depends, including creating and modifying them. Typical statements are CREATE and ALTER SEQUENCE ... OWNED BY.
  - During the redistribution of a table with more than 996 columns, UPDATE and DELETE statements cannot be executed. SELECT and INSERT statements are allowed.
  - Database and tablespace objects cannot be created, deleted, or modified during redistribution.
  - A partition swap can be performed only if the redistribution is complete for both of the tables to be swapped. The two tables belong to different node groups and do not allow partition swap if either of them is being redistributed.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Redistribute, as shown in the following figure.
- **Step 4** On the **Redistribute** page that is displayed, set **Advanced** to **Custom**, set the redistribution mode to **Online mode**, and click **Next: Confirm** to submit the task.

----End

#### 9.8.3.2.2 Viewing Redistribution Details

On the **View Redistribution Details** page, you can check the monitoring information, including the redistribution mode, redistribution progress, and table redistribution details of the current cluster. You can pause and resume redistribution, set the redistribution priority, and change the number of concurrent redistribution tasks.

#### **NOTE**

The function of viewing redistribution details is supported by 8.1.1.200 and later cluster versions. Details about the data table redistribution progress are supported only by 8.2.1 and later cluster versions.

#### Precautions

You can check redistribution details only if the cluster is being redistributed, failed to be redistributed, or is suspended. There may be a delay in the statistics update.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the **Task Information** column of a cluster, click **View Details**.
- **Step 4** Check the redistribution status, configuration, progress, and redistribution details of all the tables in a specified database. Specify a database that and can be searched by table redistribution status and table name. If all the tables in a database have completed redistribution, no data will be displayed for the database.
- **Step 5** When redistribution is paused, you can set the redistribution priority (in schema or table dimension), and redistribution will be performed based on the configured redistribution sequence. You can also set the redistribution priority before the redistribution starts.

distribution S	tatus		Redistribution Configuration	n	
distribution Status	Change Priority			×	
ogress	Database gaussdb Purpose Change sch	erna priority Change t	able priority		
Processed D	Change Priority		New Priorities	Reset	
2 G			٩	Q	5
	Schema Name	Priority ⑦	Schema Name Priority ⑦	Operation	
Change Priority	scheduler	1024	scheduler 1	Remove	
Database : postgres	10 🔻 Total Records: 1 <	1 >	10 🔻 Total Records: 1 < 1 >		×
)				OK Cancel	Priority (?)
			1		

**Step 6** The number of concurrent redistribution tasks can be adjusted during redistribution.

#### **NOTE**

Cluster 8.1.0 and earlier versions do not support dynamic adjustment. To change redistribution concurrency, suspend redistribution first.

DWS Cluster	С				
Redistribution Status Redistribution Configuration					
Redistribution Status Redistributing 04	% C Pause Resume	Mode	Offline	Concurrency - 1 + Save Cancel	
Progress					
Processed Data Volume 0 KB	Remaining Data Volume <mark>0 KB</mark>	Processed Tables	Remaining Table <mark>0</mark>	es Rate 0 KB/s	
Change Priority Pause redistribu	tion before changing priorities.				
Database : postgres 💿 Redistribution Status: Redistributing 💿 🖓 Add filter 🗙 🔍					
ID Table	Schema	Name Logical Cluster Name	Used Storage Space	Redistribution Status Priority (?)	
	No di	ata is available or redistribution bas	sended		

**Step 7** Check the redistribution progress. After the redistribution is complete, the amount of completed data, amount of remaining data, number of completed tables, number of remaining tables, and average rate during redistribution are displayed.

		R	edistribution Back to Clus	succeeded.			
rogress							
Processed Data Volume 2 GB		Remaining Data Volume 0 KB	Processed Tab 20	oles Remaining T O	ables	Average Rate 57.9 MB/s	
Change Priority Pa	ause redistribution	before changing priorities.			_		
Database : postgres 🛛 🚳	Redistribution	Status: Redistributing 💿 🖓 Ad	d filter			×	
D	Table	Schem	a Name Logical Clu	uster Name Used Storage Spa	Redistributio	on Status Priority (?)	

----End

# 9.8.3.3 Scaling In a Cluster

You can scale in your clusters on the console to release unnecessary compute and storage resources provided by GaussDB(DWS).

#### D NOTE

- Scale-in is supported only by pay-per-use clusters of version 8.1.1.300 and later. For clusters billed in yearly/monthly mode, the function is supported only in version 8.2.1 and later.
- By default, scaled in nodes are charged by quantity.
- When you scale in a storage-compute coupled data warehouse cluster, you can only modify the same storage specifications as used by the cluster.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (cluster mode) cannot be scaled in to a standalone cluster.

# Impact on the System

- Before the scale-in, close the client connections that have created temporary tables, because temporary tables created before or during the scale-in will become invalid and operations performed on these temporary tables will fail. Temporary tables created after the scale-in will not be affected.
- If you start a scale-in, an automated snapshot will be created for the cluster before scale-in. If you do not need the snapshot, you can disable the automated backup function on the scale-in page.
- Ensure that the skew rate is below 10% before scale-in and there is no specific guideline for the dirty page rate. However, it is advisable to maintain a skew rate of 20–30% for large tables exceeding 50 GB in size.
- When scaling in a cluster, several functions are disabled, including cluster restart, cluster scale-out, snapshot creation, node management, intelligent O&M, resource management, parameter modification, security configurations, log service, database administrator password resetting, and cluster deletion.

- During offline scale-in, stop all services or run only a few query statements. During table redistribution, a shared lock is added to tables. All insert, update, and delete operations as well as DDL operations on the tables are blocked for a long time, which may cause a lock wait timeout. After a table is redistributed, you can access the table. Do not perform queries that take more than 20 minutes during the redistribution (the default time for applying for the write lock during redistribution is 20 minutes). Otherwise, data redistribution may fail due to lock wait timeout.
- During online scale-in, you can perform insert, update, and delete operations on tables, but data updates may still be blocked for a short period of time. Redistribution consumes lots of CPU and I/O resources, which will greatly impact job performance. Therefore, perform redistribution when services are stopped or during periods of light load.
- If a node is deleted while DDL statements are being executed (to create a schema or function) during online scale-in, errors may occur because the DN cannot be found. To resolve this issue, you can simply retry the statements.
- If a cluster scale-in fails, the database does not automatically roll back the scale-in operation, and no O&M operations can be performed. In this case, you need to click the **Scale In** on the console to try again.
- In the cloud native 9.0.2 scale-out scenario, if the number of buckets allocated to each DN is not between [3, 20], the system adjusts the number of buckets. You can view the number of buckets using the GUC parameter **table\_buckets**.
  - Currently, the bucket scaling supports only the offline mode. The procedure is the same as that of the existing scaling procedure. The system automatically determines and executes the bucket scaling process.
  - During scaling, the cluster will be restarted and all connections will be closed. The restart takes several minutes.
  - After the restart is complete, the database can be read but cannot be written until data redistribution is complete.

# Prerequisites

- The cluster is in **Available** state, is not read-only, and there is no data being redistributed in the cluster.
- A cluster configuration file has been generated, and configuration information is consistent with the current cluster configuration.
- Before the scale-in operation starts, the value of **default\_storage\_nodegroup** is **installation**.
- The cluster is configured in the ring mode. A ring is the smallest unit for scale-in. Four or five hosts form a ring. The primary, standby, and secondary DNs are deployed in this ring. If the current cluster has only one cluster ring, scale-in is not supported and the scale-in button is unavailable.
- The scale-in host does not contain the GTM, ETCD, or CM Server component.
- There are no CNs on the nodes to be scaled in.
- Scale-in does not support rollback but supports retry. A data redistribution failure after a scale-in does not affect services. You can complete scale-in at other appropriate time. Otherwise, unbalanced data distribution will persist for a long time.
- Before redistribution, ensure that the **data\_redis** schema in the corresponding database is reserved for redistribution and that no user operation on it or its

tables is allowed. During redistribution, **data\_redis** is used. After the operation is complete, the schema will be deleted. User tables (if any) in the schema will also be deleted.

- **gs\_cgroup** cannot be used during scale-in.
- Before the scale-in, check the remaining capacity of the cluster. The nodes remaining in a scale-in must have sufficient space to store the data of the entire cluster. Otherwise, the scale-in cannot be properly performed.
  - The used physical disk space on each node is less than 80%.
  - All the users and roles use less than 80% of resource quota in total.
  - The estimated space usage after scale-in must be less than 80%.
  - The available space is 1.5 times larger than the maximum size of a single table.
- Automatic removal of faulty CNs is disabled during the scale-in and is enabled after the scale-in is complete.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. By default, all clusters of the user are displayed.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Scale Node > Scale In.
- Step 4 You can select the number of nodes to be scaled in. Automated Backup and Online Scale-in are disabled by default. The storage-compute decoupled cluster does not have the Automated Backup switch..

DWS Cluster	
Existing Nodes	6
* Nodes to Be Deleted	3 ~
Capacity After Scale-in	600 GB
Node Flavor	dws2.km1.xlarge
Current Specifications	Coupled storage and compute   4 vCPUs   32 GB Memory   200 GB Common I/O
Automated Backup	
Online Scale-in 🕥	
Note:	1. During scale-in, clusters are read-only. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

# **NOTE**

Before scaling in the cluster, it is crucial to verify if it meets the inspection conditions. Click **Immediate Inspection** to complete the inspection and proceed to the next step only if it passes. For more information, see **Viewing Inspection Results**.

**Step 5** Click **Next: Confirm**. The system will check the cluster status before scale-in. If your cluster fails the check, an error message will be displayed.

Scale In				
DWS Cluster	-	A Warning		×
Existing Nodes	6	Check Item	Status	
* Removed Nodes	3	The cluster parameter settings should meet scale-in requirem	Failed	
Capacity After Scale-in	480 GB	There should be no conflicting schemas.	Passed	
Node Flavor	dwsx.xlarge.4	There should be enough space after a scale-in for the databas	Passed	
Current Specifications	Standard   4 v			
Automated Backup		Comirm		

**Step 6** After the check is passed, click **Confirm** to return to the cluster list. The cluster status is **Scaling in**. Wait for a while.

#### ----End

**NOTE** 

- If the cluster parameters fail the check, the scale-in will fail. To avoid this problem, ensure your parameter settings are correct.
- If schemas fail the check, the scale-in will fail. To avoid this problem, check whether any schema that conflicts with the scale-in exists.
- If the disk space fails the check, the scale-in may fail or the cluster may become readonly after the scale-in. To avoid this problem, increase your cluster disk capacity.

# 9.9 Changing GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Specifications

# 9.9.1 Using the Elastic Specification Change

# **Overview**

Heavy service traffic requires additional resources (such as CPU, memory, and disk resources) to support it. If the current cluster resources are insufficient, creating a new cluster with more resources may be necessary. However, this can be costly and time-consuming. Moreover, creating a cluster with many resources but low service volume can result in resource redundancy and high costs.

The elastic flavor change function is introduced to tackle this problem. It is ideal for scenarios where computing capabilities (CPU and memory) need to be adjusted during peak hours or when only computing capabilities need to be changed. By using elastic flavor change before peak hours, the cluster's computing capability can be quickly increased. After peak hours, the cluster configuration can be reduced to minimize costs. For more information, see **Supported node flavors**.

You can modify the CPU and memory configurations of the VM nodes in the target cluster by utilizing the underlying ECS capabilities. The following figure illustrates this process.

- To prevent service disruptions, it is crucial to schedule the elastic flavor change time window properly since the cluster must be stopped during the entire process.
- Changing all nodes concurrently ensures that the process will not take longer due to the number of nodes. Typically, the entire process takes around 5 to 10 minutes.

#### Figure 9-44 Principle of elastic flavor change



#### D NOTE

- Only cluster versions 8.1.1.300 and later support elastic flavor change. For an earlier version, contact technical support to upgrade it first.
- Elastic specification change is only supported by storage-compute coupled and decoupled clusters that use ECSs and EVS disks. Clusters with local ECSs do not have this capability.

# Precautions

- Choosing a lower target flavor when decreasing a cluster's flavor can impact its performance, so it is crucial to assess the potential impact on services before proceeding with the operation.
- Make sure to check if there are enough ECS resources and tenant CPU quotas in the current region before modifying the flavors.
- You can change the flavors again if needed. In case the flavors of some nodes fail to change, you can resubmit the change task to execute the process.

# **Constraints and Limitations**

- You can upgrade or downgrade ECS flavors of the same type. For instance, you can change from dwsx2.2xlarge.m7 to dwsx2.4xlarge.m7, but not to dwsx2.4xlarge.m6.
- Stop the VM before changing the flavor. The flavor change can only be done offline and it takes 5 to 10 minutes.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the row of a cluster, choose **More** > **Change Flavor** in the **Operation** column and click **Change Node Flavor**.

**Step 4** Configure the flavor. Enable automatic backup as needed.

- (Default) You can switch the flavor to another flavor of the same type. For details about the supported flavors, see **Table 9-30**.
- If you want to choose a different flavor, select one from the available options displayed on the page. In case you encounter any issues while changing the flavor, contact technical support for assistance.

#### Figure 9-45 Changing flavors

Cluster Information		
Chuster Name	Charles ID	47744475 4764 4017 4874 070404070
Giustel Manife	Charles to	822186339020049178620929094970
Node Flavor	dwsx2.2xlarge   Coupled storage and compute   8 vCPUs   64 GB Memory Billing Mode	Yearly/Monthly
Region	AZ	AZ3
Automated Backup		
Change Specifications	Flavor Name	vCPUs   Memory
	des:2.fidarge (Sold Cut)	32 vCPUs   258GB
	dws:/2.lbdarge m7 (Sold Out)	32 vCPUs   25608
	💿 dwsx2.8xdarge.m?n (Sold Out)	32 vCPUs   256GB
	dwsx2.xlarge	4 vCPUs   32GB
	dwsx2 xlarge m7	4 vCPUs   32GB
	dwsi2.xturge m7n (Sold Out)	4 vCPUs   3268

- **Step 5** Confirm the settings, select the confirmation check box, and click **Next: Confirm**.
- Step 6 Click Submit.
- **Step 7** Return to the cluster list. The cluster status will change to **Changing node flavor**. Wait for about 5 to 10 minutes.

----End

# **Supported Flavors**

 Table 9-30 Supported node flavors

Current Flavor Name	Target Flavor Name		
dwsk2.xlarge	dwsk2.2xlarge, dwsk2.4xlarge, dwsk2.12xlarge, dwsk2.8xlarge		
dwsk2.2xlarge	dwsk2.12xlarge, dwsk2.8xlarge, dwsk2.4xlarge		
dwsk2.4xlarge	dwsk2.2xlarge, dwsk2.8xlarge, dwsk2.12xlarge		
dwsk2.8xlarge	dwsk2.2xlarge, dwsk2.4xlarge, dwsk2.12xlarge		
dwsk2.12xlarge	dwsk2.2xlarge, dwsk2.4xlarge, dwsk2.8xlarge		
dwsk2.h.12xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h.xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.8xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.12xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.4xlarge.4.kc1		
Current Flavor Name	Target Flavor Name		
-----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------		
dwsk2.h.4xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.12xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h.8xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h.xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.12xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h.xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h.2xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h.12xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h1.12xlarge.4.kc 1	dwsk2.h1.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.2xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h1.2xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h1.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.12xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h1.4xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h1.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.12xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.2xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h1.8xlarge.4.kc1	dwsk2.h1.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.12xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.2xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsk2.h1.xlarge.2.kc1	dwsk2.h1.2xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.4xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.8xlarge.4.kc1, dwsk2.h1.12xlarge.4.kc1		
dwsx2.xlarge	dwsx2.2xlarge, dwsx2.4xlarge, dwsx2.8xlarge, dwsx2.16xlarge		
dwsx2.2xlarge	dwsx2.4xlarge, dwsx2.8xlarge, dwsx2.16xlarge		
dwsx2.4xlarge	dwsx2.2xlarge, dwsx2.8xlarge, dwsx2.16xlarge		
dwsx2.8xlarge	dwsx2.2xlarge, dwsx2.4xlarge, dwsx2.16xlarge		
dwsx2.16xlarge	dwsx2.2xlarge, dwsx2.4xlarge, dwsx2.8xlarge		
dwsx2.xlarge.m7	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7		
dwsx2.2xlarge.m7	dwsx2.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7		
dwsx2.4xlarge.m7	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7		
dwsx2.8xlarge.m7	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7		
dwsx2.16xlarge.m7	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7		
dwsx2.xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7n		
dwsx2.2xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.8xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7n		
dwsx2.8xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.16xlarge.m7n		

Current Flavor Name	Target Flavor Name
dwsx2.16xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.8xlarge.m7n
dwsx2.h.xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h.xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h.xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h.16xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h.2xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h1.xlarge.2.c6	dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c6

Current Flavor Name	Target Flavor Name
dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c6	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c6, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c6
dwsx2.h1.xlarge.2.c7	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7
dwsx2.h1.xlarge.2.c7n	dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7n	dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.h1.16xlarge.4.c7 n	dwsx2.h1.2xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.4xlarge.4.c7n, dwsx2.h1.8xlarge.4.c7n
dwsx2.rt.xlarge.m7	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7
dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7	dwsx2.rt.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7
dwsx2.rt.4xlarge.m7	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7
dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7
dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.4xlarge.m7, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7
dwsk2.rt.xlarge.km1	dwsk2.rt.2xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.4xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.8xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.12xlarge.km1
dwsk2.rt.2xlarge.km1	dwsk2.rt.4xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.8xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.12xlarge.km1

Current Flavor Name	Target Flavor Name
dwsk2.rt.4xlarge.km1	dwsk2.rt.2xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.8xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.12xlarge.km1
dwsk2.rt.8xlarge.km1	dwsk2.rt.2xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.4xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.12xlarge.km1
dwsk2.rt.12xlarge.km1	dwsk2.rt.2xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.4xlarge.km1, dwsk2.rt.8xlarge.km1
dwsx2.rt.xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7n
dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7n
dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7n
dwsx2.rt.16xlarge.m7n	dwsx2.rt.2xlarge.m7n, dwsx2.rt.8xlarge.m7n
4U32G.4DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 16U128G.16DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
8U64G.8DPU	16U128G.16DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
16U128G.16DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
32U256G.32DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 16U128G.16DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
64U512G.64DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 16U128G.16DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
96U768G.96DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 16U128G.16DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU
128U1024G.128DPU	8U64G.8DPU, 16U128G.16DPU, 32U256G.32DPU, 64U512G.64DPU, 96U768G.96DPU, and 128U1024G.128DPU

# 9.9.2 Changing All Specifications

If you want to change your cluster topology or capacity but the **Change node flavor** option is grayed out, you can select **Change all specifications** to increase or decrease the nodes and their capacities on the GaussDB(DWS) console. First, you need to configure the new specifications you want, and a cluster with these specifications will be created. Then, data will be migrated from the old cluster to the new one. In case you need to restore data, a full snapshot will be taken for the old cluster, and the old cluster will be retained for a period of time.

### D NOTE

- To use this feature, contact technical support engineers to upgrade your version first.
- A storage-compute coupled cluster (standalone) does not support changing all specifications.
- Currently, storage-compute decoupled clusters do not support changing all specifications.
- The new cluster does not incur charges before the change completes. The old cluster enters the retention period and will not incur charges after the resizing completes.
- A cluster can have up to 240 nodes. The old and new clusters can have up to 480 nodes in total.
- The Change all specifications option do not support logical clusters.

# **Impact of Changing All Specifications**

- Before the change, you need to exit the client connections that have created temporary tables, because temporary tables created before or during the change will become invalid and operations performed on these temporary tables will fail. The temporary tables created after the change are not affected.
- When all specifications are changed, the cluster status changes to **Read-only** during data redistribution. During the change, services may be blocked for a long time. You are advised to perform the change with the assistance of engineers to prevent services from being affected.
- After the specifications are changed, the private IP address changes, which should be updated for connection.
- After the specifications are changed, the domain name remains unchanged, and the IP address bound to the domain name is switched. During the switchover, the connection is interrupted for a short period of time. Therefore, avoid writing service statements in the switchover. If the service side uses a domain name for connection, you need to update the cache information corresponding to the domain name to prevent connection failure after the change.
- If an ELB is bound to the cluster, the connection address on the service side remains unchanged after the specifications are changed, while the internal server address of the ELB is changed to the new connection address.
- In case you need to restore data, a full snapshot will be taken for the old cluster (on condition that your cluster support snapshot creation). You can check it in the snapshot list and manually delete it if it is no longer necessary.
- During the change, the cluster is read-only, affecting intelligent O&M tasks. You are advised to start these tasks after the change or pause them before the change.

# Prerequisites

- The cluster to be changed is in the **Available**, **Read-only**, or **Unbalanced** state.
- The number of nodes after resizing must be smaller than or equals the available node quotas, or the resizing fill fail.
- The total capacity of the new cluster after the change must be at least 1.2 times greater than the used capacity of the old cluster.

• To perform the change in a cluster as an IAM user, ensure that the IAM user has permissions for VPC, EVC, and BMS.

# **Changing All Specifications**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** In the row of a cluster, choose **More** > **Change Specifications** in the **Operation** column and click **Change all specifications**.

#### **NOTE**

Before the change, it is crucial to verify if it meets the inspection conditions. Click **Inspect** to complete the inspection and proceed to the next step only if it passes. For more information, see **Viewing Inspection Results**.

- For the **Node Flavor** parameter, select a flavor. The VPC, subnet, and security group of the new cluster are the same as those of the original cluster.
- For the **Set to** parameter, set the number of nodes you want for the new cluster.
- **Step 4** (Optional) If the cluster storage can be modified, you can set the storage type and the available storage for each node.

#### D NOTE

**Extreme SSD** and **Extreme SSD V2** can only be selected for clusters that use ECS for computing and EVS for storage.

- Step 5 Read the nodes and select Confirmed. Click Resize Cluster Now.
- Step 6 Click Submit.
  - After the change request is submitted, **Task Status** of the cluster changes to **Changing all specifications**. The process will take several minutes.
  - During the change, the cluster automatically restarts, and **Cluster Status** is **Unavailable** for a period of time. After the restart is complete, **Cluster Status** changes to **Available**. Data is redistributed during resizing. During the redistribution, **Cluster Status** is **Read-only**.
  - The resizing succeeds only when **Cluster Status** is **Available** and the **Change all specifications** task in **Task Information** is complete. Then the cluster begins providing services.
  - If **Change all specifications failed** is displayed, the cluster failed to be changed.
  - If change fails, and a message requiring retry is displayed when you click **Resize**, the failure is probably caused by abnormal cluster status or network problems. In this case, contact technical support to troubleshoot the problem and try again.

----End

# 9.9.3 Disk Capacity Expansion of an EVS Cluster

# Context

As customer services evolve, disk space often becomes the initial bottleneck. In scenarios where other resources are ample, the conventional scale-out process is not only time-consuming but also resource-inefficient. Disk capacity expansion can quickly increase storage without service interruption. You can expand the disk capacity when no other services are running. If the disk space is insufficient after the expansion, you can continue to expand the disk capacity. If the expansion fails, you can expand the disk capacity again.

#### **NOTE**

- Disk capacity expansion can be performed only for storage-compute coupled data warehouses with cloud SSDs. Only version 8.1.1.203 and later are supported.
- Disk capacity can be expanded only if the cluster is in **Available**, **To be restarted**, **Readonly**, or **Node fault**, **Unbalanced** state.

# Precautions

- Hot storage disks cannot be scaled down.
- Scale up hot data storage during off-peak hours.
- If the cluster is in the read-only state, a message will be displayed after you click **Expand Disk Capacity**. After you start expansion, wait until it is completed and the cluster changes to the available state.

# Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- Step 3 In the Operation column of the target cluster, choose More > Change Specifications and click Change disk capacity. The Expand Disk Capacity page is displayed.
- Step 4 Select the appropriate storage space based on the storage step of the corresponding flavor on the Change disk capacity page. The step refers to the interval for increasing or decreasing storage space. For details about the step of each flavor, see Data Warehouse Flavors. Click Resize Cluster Now.

<	Change disk capac	ity
	Cluster Name	
	Hot Storage	2000 GB per node
	* Added Capacity	- 100 + GB per node
	Total Storage	2100 GB per node
	Existing Nodes	3
	Total	24 vCPUs   192 GB Memory   6300 GB hot storage
	Billing Mode	Pay-per-use
	Note:	1. Hot storage cannot be scaled down.     2. Scale up hot data storage during off-peak hours. The cluster will be in read-only status until scaling is complete.     I agree

### D NOTE

Hot Storage is changed to Hot Storage (with Cache) for storage-compute decoupled clusters.

- **Step 5** Confirm the settings and click **Submit**.
- **Step 6** Return to the cluster list and check the disk capacity expansion progress.

----End

# 9.10 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster DR Management

# 9.10.1 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster DR Scenarios

## Overview

A homogeneous GaussDB(DWS) disaster recovery (DR) cluster is deployed in the same region. If the production cluster fails to provide read and write services due to natural disasters in the specified region or cluster internal faults, the DR cluster becomes the production cluster to ensure service continuity. The following figure shows the architecture.



#### D NOTE

- Intra-region DR is supported only in cluster version 8.1.1 and later.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support DR.
- GaussDB(DWS) storage-compute decoupled clusters and multi-AZ clusters do not support the DR function.
- If you use a yearly/monthly package for a DR cluster, the cluster will be automatically frozen for a period of time after the package expires, and will be deleted if its subscription is not renewed in time. Be sure to renew it in a timely manner to prevent DR exceptions caused by deletion of the DR cluster.

# **DR Features**

- Multi-form DR
  - Intra-region DR
  - Multiple data synchronization modes: synchronization layer based on mutual trust
- Low TCO
  - Heterogeneous deployment (logical homogeneity)
  - Cluster-level DR
- Visual console

Automatic and one-click DR drills

# **Constraints and Limitations**

- During data synchronization, a non-fine-grained DR cluster cannot provide read or write services.
- When the DR task is stopped or abnormal but the DR cluster is normal, the DR cluster can provide the read service. After the DR switchover is successful, the DR cluster can provide the read and write services.
- When the DR task is created, the snapshot function of the production cluster is normal, but that of the DR cluster is disabled. Besides, snapshot restoration of both clusters is disabled.
- Logical clusters are not supported.
- The synchronization resource pool supports cluster-level DR only in cluster version 8.3.0 or later.
- If cold and hot tables are used, cold data is synchronized using OBS.
- DR does not synchronize data from external sources.
- DR management refers to dual-cluster DR under the same tenant.
- The DR cluster and the production cluster must be logically homogeneous and in the same type and version.
- The production cluster and DR cluster used for intra-region DR must be in the same VPC.
- In intra-region DR, after services are switched over from the production cluster to the DR cluster, the bound ELB is automatically switched to the new production cluster. During the switchover, the connection is interrupted for a short period of time. Do not run service statements to write data during the switchover.
- During intra-region DR, the EIP, intranet domain name, and connection IP address of the original production cluster are not automatically switched with the cluster switchover. The EIP, domain name, or IP address used for connection in the service system need to be switched to the new cluster.

# 9.10.2 Creating and Starting DR for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# Creating an Intra-Region Cluster-Level DR Task

# Prerequisites

You can create a DR task only when the cluster is in the **Available** or **Unbalanced** state.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Management** > **DR Tasks**.
- **Step 3** On the displayed page, click **Create**.
- **Step 4** Select the type and enter the name of the DR task to be created.
  - Type: Intra-region DR
  - **Name**: Enter 4 to 64 case-insensitive characters, starting with a letter. Only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (\_) are allowed.
- **Step 5** Configure the production cluster.
  - Select a created production cluster from the drop-down list.
  - After a production cluster is selected, the system automatically displays its AZ.
- **Step 6** Configure the DR cluster.
  - Select the AZ associated with the region where the DR cluster resides.

**NOTE** 

The AZ of the DR cluster can be the same as that of the production cluster. In a 3-AZ cluster, any of the three AZs can be selected for DR.

- **Cluster Name**: Upon selecting an AZ for the DR cluster, the system will autofilter DR clusters that fulfill the logical homogeneity criteria. Should there be no qualifying DR clusters, you can click **Create DR Cluster** to create a DR cluster with the same configuration as the production cluster.
- **Step 7** Configure advanced parameters. Select **Default** to keep the default values of the advanced parameters. You can also select **Custom** to modify the values.
  - The DR synchronization period indicates the interval for synchronizing incremental data from the production cluster to the DR cluster. Set this parameter based on the actual service data volume.
    - D NOTE

The default DR synchronization period is 30 minutes.

Step 8 Click OK.

The DR status will then change to **Creating**. Wait until the creation is complete, and the DR status will change to **Not Started**.

----End

# Starting a DR Task

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Management** > **DR Tasks**.

**Step 3** Click **Start** in the **Operation** column of the target DR task.

Step 4 In the dialog box that is displayed, click OK.

The DR status will change to **Starting**. The process will take some time. After the task is started, the DR status will change to **Running**.

**NOTE** 

- You can start a DR task that is in the Not started/Startup failed/Stopped state.
- After you start the DR task, you cannot perform operations such as restoration, scaleout, upgrade, restart, node replacement, and password update, on the production cluster or DR cluster, and backup is also not allowed on the DR cluster. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- After the DR task is started, if the DR cluster is running properly and DR recovery is in progress, the cluster will be billed.

----End

# **Viewing DR Information**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- **Step 3** In the DR list, click the name of a DR task.

On the page that is displayed, view the following information:

- **DR Information**: You can view the DR ID, DR name, DR type, DR creation time, DR start time, and DR status.
- **Production Cluster Information**: You can view the production cluster ID, cluster name, AZ, used storage capacity, cluster DR status, and the time of the latest successful DR task.
- **DR Cluster Information**: You can view the DR cluster ID, cluster name, AZ, used storage capacity, cluster DR status, and the time of the latest successful DR task.
- **DR Configuration**: You can view and modify the DR synchronization period.

----End

#### **Updating DR Configurations**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- **Step 3** In the DR list, click the name of a DR task.
- **Step 4** In the **DR Configurations** area, click **Modify**.

**NOTE** 

- Only DR tasks in the **Not started** or **Stopped** state can be modified.
- The new configuration takes effect after DR is restarted.

----End

# Case 1: How Do I Scale out a Cluster in the DR State?

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters in the navigation pane.
- Step 3 In the cluster list, if Task Information of the cluster you want to scale out is DR not started, perform Step 5 and Step 7.
- **Step 4** (Optional) If the **Task Information** is other than **DR not started**, delete the DR task. For details, see **Deleting a DR Task**.
- Step 5 In the Operation column of the production and DR clusters, choose More > Scale Out.
- Step 6 Create a DR task. For details, see Creating and Starting DR for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- **Step 7** Start the DR task. For details, see **Starting a DR Task**.

D NOTE

After scale-out, the number of DNs in the production cluster must be the same as that in the DR cluster.

----End

# 9.10.3 Performing a DR Switchover for the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

## Switching to the DR Cluster

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- Step 3 Click Switch to DR Cluster in the Operation column of the target DR task.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **OK**.

The DR status will change to **DR switching**.

After the switchover is successful, the DR status will change to the original status.

#### **NOTE**

- To perform a switchover when the DR cluster is running properly, click **Switch to DR Cluster**.
- You can perform a DR switchover when the DR task is in the **Running** state.
- During a switchover, the original production cluster is not available.
- The Recovery Point Object (RPO, time point to which the system and data must be recovered after a disaster occurs) in different DR switchover scenarios is described as follows:
  - Production cluster in the Available state: RPO = 0
  - Production cluster in the Unavailable state: A zero RPO may not be achieved, but data can at least be restored to that of the latest successful DR synchronization (Last DR Succeeded). For details, see Viewing DR Information.

----End

# **Exception Switchover**

#### Scenario

The production cluster is unavailable, the DR cluster is normal, and the DR status is **Abnormal**.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Management** > **DR Tasks**.
- Step 3 Choose More > Exception Switchover in the Operation column of the target DR task.
- Step 4 In the dialog box that is displayed, click OK.

The Status will change to Switchover in progress.

After the switchover is successful, the DR status will change to the original status. In this procedure, the DR status will change back to **Abnormal**.

#### **NOTE**

- To perform a switchover when the DR cluster is abnormal or the production cluster is faulty, click **Exception Switchover**.
- DR exception switchover is supported only by clusters of version 8.1.2 or later.
- Before a switchover, check the latest synchronization time in the DR cluster. The DR cluster will serve as a production cluster after an abnormal switchover, but the data that failed to be synchronized from the original production cluster to the DR cluster will not exist in the DR cluster.

----End

# Performing a DR Switchback

#### Scenario

After abnormal switchover, if you have confirmed that the original production cluster was recovered, you can perform a switchback.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- Step 3 Click DR Recovery in the Operation column of a DR task.
- Step 4 In the displayed dialog box, set Synchronization Mode to Incremental or Full.

#### D NOTE

You are advised to set **Synchronization Mode** to **Incremental** when updating a DR creation task.

Step 5 Click OK.

The **Status** will change to **Recovering**.

After the DR recovery is successful, the Status will change to Running.

### D NOTE

- DR is supported only by clusters of 8.1.2 or later.
- During DR recovery, data in the DR cluster will be deleted, and the DR relationship will be re-established with the new production cluster.

----End

# 9.10.4 Stopping and Deleting DR for a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

# Stopping the DR Task

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- **Step 3** Click **Stop** in the **Operation** column of the target DR task.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **OK**.

The DR status will change to **Stopping**. The process will take some time. After the DR task is stopped, the status will change to **Stopped**.

**NOTE** 

- Only DR tasks in the **Running** or **Stop failed** state can be stopped.
- Data cannot be synchronized after a DR task is stopped.

----End

# Deleting a DR Task

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose Management > DR Tasks.
- Step 3 Click Delete in the Operation column of the target DR task.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **OK**.

The DR status will change to **Deleting**.

**NOTE** 

- You can delete a DR task when DR Status is Creation failed, Not started, Startup failed, Stopped, Stop failed, or Abnormal.
- Data cannot be synchronized after a DR task is deleted and the deleted task cannot be restored.

----End

# 9.11 Upgrading a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

GaussDB(DWS) allows users to upgrade clusters on the console. For details, see **Upgrading a Cluster**.

During cluster O&M operations, GaussDB(DWS) will send SMS notifications to keep you informed. It is important to be careful when performing any operations on the cluster during this time.

If a node needs to be replaced due to a hardware fault, the repairCluster event will be triggered. You can check the event progress by **Subscribing to Event Notifications**.

During the upgrade, the cluster will be restarted and cannot provide services for a short period of time.

#### **NOTE**

- After a cluster is upgraded to 8.1.3 or later, it enters the observation period. During this period, you can check service status and roll back to the earlier version if necessary.
- Upgrading the cluster from 9.0.3 to 9.1.0 changes the **disk\_cache\_base\_paths** value for the cache path, which brings the performance back to normal.
- Upgrading the cluster does not affect the original cluster data or specifications.

# **Upgrade Version Description**

The following figure shows the cluster version.

#### Figure 9-46 Version description



- **Service patch upgrade**: The last digit of cluster version *X.X.X* is changed. For example, the cluster is upgraded from 1.1.0 to 1.1.1.
  - Duration: The whole process will take less than 10 minutes.
  - Impact on services: During this period, if the source version is upgraded to 8.1.3 or later, online patching is supported. During the patch upgrade, you do not have to stop services, but the services will be intermittently interrupted for seconds. If the target version is earlier than 8.1.3, services will be interrupted for 1 to 3 minutes. Therefore, you are advised to perform the upgrade during off-peak hours.
- **Service upgrade**: The first two digits of cluster version *X.X.X* are changed. For example, the cluster is upgraded from 1.1.0 to 1.2.0.
  - Duration: The whole process will take less than 30 minutes.
  - Impact on services: Online upgrade is supported for update to 8.1.1 or later. During the upgrade, you are not required to stop services, but services are intermittently interrupted for seconds. You are advised to perform the upgrade during off-peak hours.

- Hot patch upgrade: A hot patch upgrade involves adding a one-digit version number (in the format of **0001-9999**) to the current cluster version.
  - Duration: The upgrade of a single hot patch takes less than 10 minutes.
  - Impact on services: The hot patch upgrade will not affect services, but there is a chance that the issues resolved by the current hot patch may come back after it is uninstalled.

# Upgrading a Cluster

#### Prerequisites

Cluster 8.1.1 and later versions allow users to deliver cluster upgrade operations on the console.

#### Procedure

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster.
- Step 3 In the navigation pane, choose Upgrade Management.
- **Step 4** Choose either **Upgrade** or **Hot patch** from the **Type** drop-down list depending on the type of upgrade you want to perform.
- **Step 5** On the **Upgrade Management** page, select a version from the **Target Version** drop-down list.

**NOTE** 

- Before the upgrade, it is crucial to verify if it meets the inspection conditions. Click **Immediate Inspection** to complete the inspection and proceed to the next step only if it passes. For more information, see **Viewing Inspection Results**.
- DR cannot be established after a hot patch is installed in a cluster.
- Step 6 Click Upgrade. Click OK in the displayed dialog box.
- **Step 7** Check whether the cluster is successfully upgraded.
  - If the cluster version is 8.1.3 or later, the cluster enters the service observation period after the upgrade is complete. If you have verified your services, click Submit on the Upgrade Management page to complete the cluster upgrade. If you find your cluster performance affected by the upgrade, you can click Rollback to roll back the upgrade.

**NOTE** 

- If you are using a version of 8.1.3 or earlier, you will not be able to roll back or submit upgrade tasks until the cluster upgrade is finished.
- After an upgrade task is successfully delivered, if the upgrade task is not submitted, the **wlm** thread occupies the system storage space and affects the system performance.
- If the cluster upgrade fails, click **Rollback** to roll back to the original cluster version, or click **Retry** to deliver the upgrade again.

----End

# 9.12 GaussDB(DWS) Cluster Log Management

# 9.12.1 Log Types Supported by GaussDB(DWS) Clusters

GaussDB(DWS) provides database audit logs, management console audit logs, and other logs for users to query service logs, analyze problems, and learn product security and performance.

# **Database Audit Logs**

If the **Security** function is enabled, GaussDB(DWS) records any DML and DDL operations performed by the database. You can locate and analyze faults based on the database audit logs, and perform behavior analysis and security auditing on historical database operations to improve GaussDB(DWS) security.

For how to enable and view database audit logs, see Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Database Audit Logs.

# Management Console Audit Logs

GaussDB(DWS) uses Cloud Trace Service (CTS) to record mission-critical operations performed on the GaussDB(DWS) console, such as cluster creation, snapshot creation, cluster scale-out, and cluster restart. The logs can be used in purposes such as security analysis, compliance audit, resource tracing, and fault locating.

For how to enable and view management console audit logs, see Viewing Operation Logs on the GaussDB(DWS) Console.

# Other Logs

GaussDB(DWS) interconnects with Log Tank Service (LTS). You can view collected cluster logs or dump logs on the LTS console.

The following log types are supported: CN logs, DN logs, OS messages logs, audit logs, cms logs, gtm logs, Roach client logs, Roach server logs, upgrade logs, and scale-out logs.

# 9.12.2 Dumping GaussDB(DWS) Database Audit Logs

GaussDB(DWS) records information (audit logs) about connections and user activities in your database. The audit logs help you monitor the database to ensure security, rectify faults, and locate historical operation records. GaussDB(DWS) saves audit logs in the database, but they can be viewed outside of it by dumping them to OBS. It is worth mentioning that the audit log dump and kernel audit log dump functions can be enabled or disabled independently. With the kernel audit log dump feature, audit logs stored in the database can be dumped directly to OBS.

## 

- This function cannot be used if OBS is not available.
- Only 9.1.0.100 and later versions support kernel log dump.
- Data may during cluster specifications change, CN addition, or CN deletion. You are advised to disable audit log dump during these operations.
- If a CN node is faulty, data on the CN node may be lost.
- After audit log dumping is enabled, audit logs will be dumped if the size of saved audit logs exceeds 1 GB. This may cause abnormal query results. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Version support for the audit log dump directory partition is as follows:
  - For version 8.1.3.*x* clusters, it is only supported by version 8.1.3.322 or later clusters.
  - For version 8.2.0.*x* clusters, it is only supported by version 8.2.0.106 or later clusters.
  - It is supported by version 8.2.1 or later clusters.
  - To use this feature in earlier versions, contact technical support to upgrade your cluster first. Manually enable this feature after the upgrade.

# Prerequisites

After a GaussDB(DWS) cluster is created, you can enable log dump for it to dump audit logs to OBS. **Before enabling audit log dump, ensure the following conditions are met:** 

You have created an OBS bucket for storing the audit logs. For details, see "Managing Buckets" > "Creating a Bucket" in the *Object Storage Service Console Operation Guide*.

# **Enabling Audit Log Dumps**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the cluster for which you want to enable audit log dump. In the navigation pane, choose **Security Settings**.
- **Step 4** In the **Audit Settings** area, enable **Audit Log Dump**.

When you enable audit log dump for a project in a region for the first time, the system prompts you to create an agency named **DWSAccessOBS**. After the agency is created, GaussDB(DWS) can dump audit logs to OBS.

By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. IAM users under an account do not have the permission to query or create agencies by default. Contact a user with that permission and complete the authorization on the current page. For details, see **Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources**.

- **OBS Foreign Table**: Audit logs can be read using OBS foreign tables during dumping. Audit logs are stored in CSV format and compressed in GZ format.
- **OBS Bucket**: Name of the OBS bucket used to store the audit data. If no OBS bucket is available, click **View OBS Bucket** to access the OBS console and

create one. For details, see "Managing Buckets" > "Creating a Bucket" in the *Object Storage Service Console Operation Guide*.

- **OBS Path**: User-defined directory on OBS for storing audit files. Different directory levels are separated by forward slashes (/). The value is a string containing 1 to 50 characters, which cannot start with a forward slash (/). If the entered OBS path does not exist, the system creates one and dumps data to it.
- **Dump Interval (Minute)**: Interval based on which GaussDB(DWS) periodically dumps data to OBS. The value range is 5 to 43200. The unit is minute.

#### Step 5 Click Apply.

If **Configuration Status** is **Applying**, the system is saving the settings.

When the status changes to **Synchronized**, the configurations are saved and take effect.

----End

# Enabling Kernel Audit Log Dump

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the cluster for which you want to enable kernel log dump. Choose **Security**.
- **Step 4** In the **Audit Settings** area, enable **Kernel Audit Log Dump**.

When you enable the kernel audit log dump feature for a project in a region for the first time, the system prompts you to create an agency named **DWSAccessOBS**. After the agency is created, GaussDB(DWS) can dump audit logs to OBS.

By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. IAM users under an account do not have the permission to query or create agencies by default. Contact a user with that permission and complete the authorization on the current page. For details, see **Allowing GaussDB(DWS) to Manage Resources**.

- OBS Bucket: name of the OBS bucket for storing kernel audit data. If no OBS bucket is available, click View OBS Bucket to access the OBS console and create one. For details, see "Managing Buckets" > "Creating a Bucket" in the Object Storage Service Console Operation Guide.
- Kernel OBS Path: user-defined directory for storing kernel logs on OBS. Different directory levels are separated by forward slashes (/). The value is a string containing 1 to 50 characters, which cannot start with a forward slash (/). If the entered OBS path does not exist, the system creates one and dumps data to it.

#### Step 5 Click Apply.

If **Configuration Status** is **Applying**, the system is saving the settings.

When the status changes to **Synchronized**, the configurations are saved and take effect.

Step 6 After the kernel audit log dump function is enabled, you can use the pg\_query\_audit function to view the dumped logs. For details, see Using Functions to View Database Audit Logs.

Alternatively, select the OBS bucket and folder where logs are stored to view the log files. For details, see **Step 6**.

----End

# Modifying Audit Log Dump Configurations

After audit log dump is enabled, you can modify the dump configuration. For example, you can modify the OBS bucket and path for storing logs and the dump period.

The procedure is as follows:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the cluster for which you want to modify the audit log dump configurations. In the navigation pane, choose **Security**.
- **Step 4** In the **Audit Settings** area, modify the **Audit Log Dump** configurations.
- Step 5 Click Apply.

If **Configuration Status** is **Applying**, the system is saving the settings.

When the status changes to **Synchronized**, the configurations are saved and take effect.

----End

#### Viewing Dumped Audit Logs

After audit log dump is enabled, you can view the dumped audit logs on OBS.

To view dumped audit logs, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the cluster list, click the name of the target cluster for which you want to view the log dump history. In the navigation pane, choose **Security**.
- Step 4 In the Audit Settings area, click View Dump Record.
- **Step 5** In the **Audit Log Dump Records** dialog box, click **View OBS Bucket**. The OBS console page is displayed.
- **Step 6** Select the OBS bucket and folder where the logs are stored to view the log files.

You can download and decompress the files to view. The fields of audit log files are described as follows:

Table 9-31 Loc	g file fields
----------------	---------------

Field	Туре	Description
begintime	timestamp with time zone	Operation start time.
endtime	timestamp with time zone	Operation end time.
operation_type	text	Operation type. For details, see Table 9-32.
audit_type	text	Audit type. For details, see Table 9-33.
result	text	Operation result.
username	text	Name of the user who performs the operation.
database	text	Database name.
client_conninfo	text	Client connection information, that is, gsql, JDBC, or ODBC.
object_name	text	Object name.
object_details	text	Operation object details.
command_text	text	Command used to perform the operation.
detail_info	text	Operation details.
transaction_xid	text	Transaction ID.
query_id	text	Query ID.
node_name	text	Node name.
thread_id	text	Thread ID.
local_port	text	Local port.
remote_port	text	Remote port.
result_rows	text	Number of rows in the operation result.
error_code	text	Error code.

Table 9-32	operation	_type:	operation	types
------------	-----------	--------	-----------	-------

Operation Type	Description
audit_switch	Indicates that the operations of enabling and disabling the audit log function are audited.

Operation Type	Description	
login_logout	Indicates that user login and log-out operations are audited.	
system	Indicates that the system startup, shutdown, and instance switchover operations are audited.	
sql_parse	Indicates that SQL statement parsing operations are audited.	
user_lock	Indicates that user locking and unlocking operations are audited.	
grant_revoke	Indicates that user permission granting and revoking operations are audited.	
violation	Indicates that user's access violation operations are audited.	
ddl	Indicates that DDL operations are audited. DDL operations are controlled at a fine granularity based on operation objects. Therefore, <b>audit_system_object</b> is used to control the objects whose DDL operations are to be audited. (The audit function takes effect as long as <b>audit_system_object</b> is configured, no matter whether <b>ddl</b> is set.)	
dml	Indicates that the DML operations are audited.	
select	Indicates that the <b>SELECT</b> operations are audited.	
internal_event	Indicates that internal incident operations are audited.	
user_func	Indicates that operations related to user-defined functions, stored procedures, and anonymous blocks are audited.	
special_func	Indicates that special function invoking operations are audited. Special functions include <b>pg_terminate_backend</b> and <b>pg_cancel_backend</b> .	
сору	Indicates that the <b>COPY</b> operations are audited.	
set	Indicates that the <b>SET</b> operations are audited.	
transaction	Indicates that transaction operations are audited.	
vacuum	Indicates that the VACUUM operations are audited.	
analyze	Indicates that the ANALYZE operations are audited.	
cursor	Indicates that cursor operations are audited.	
anonymous_block	Indicates that the anonymous block operations are audited.	
explain	Indicates that the <b>EXPLAIN</b> operations are audited.	

Operation Type	Description
show	Indicates that the <b>SHOW</b> operations are audited.
lock_table	Indicates that table lock operations are audited.
comment	Indicates that the <b>COMMENT</b> operations are audited.
preparestmt	Indicates that the <b>PREPARE, EXECUTE</b> , and <b>DEALLOCATE</b> operations are audited.
cluster	Indicates that the <b>CLUSTER</b> operations are audited.
constraints	Indicates that the <b>CONSTRAINTS</b> operations are audited.
checkpoint	Indicates that the <b>CHECKPOINT</b> operations are audited.
barrier	Indicates that the <b>BARRIER</b> operations are audited.
cleanconn	Indicates that the <b>CLEAN CONNECTION</b> operations are audited.
seclabel	Indicates that security label operations are audited.
notify	Indicates that the notification operations are audited.
load	Indicates that the loading operations are audited.

Table 9-33 audit\_type parameters

Parameter	Description
audit_open/audit_close	Indicates that the audit type is operations enabling or disabling audit logs.
user_login/user_logout	Indicates that the audit type is operations and users with successful login/logout.
system_start/system_stop/ system_recover/system_switch	Indicates that the audit type is system startup, shutdown, and instance switchover.
sql_wait/sql_parse	Indicates that the audit type is SQL statement parsing.
lock_user/unlock_user	Indicates that the audit type is successful user locking and unlocking.
grant_role/revokerole	Indicates that the audit type is user permission granting and revoking.
user_violation	Indicates that the audit type is unauthorized user access operations.

Parameter	Description
ddl_ <i>database_object</i>	Indicates that successful DDL operations are audited. DDL operations are controlled at a fine granularity based on operation objects. So, <b>audit_system_object</b> is used to control the objects whose DDL operations are to be audited. (The audit function takes effect as long as <b>audit_system_object</b> is configured, no matter whether <b>ddl</b> is set.)
	For example, <b>ddl_sequence</b> indicates that the audit type is sequence-related operations.
dml_action_insert/ dml_action_delete/ dml_action_update/ dml_action_merge/ dml_action_select	Indicates that the audit type is DML operations such as <b>INSERT</b> , <b>DELETE</b> , <b>UPDATE</b> , and <b>MERGE</b> .
internal_event	Indicates that the audit type is internal events.
user_func	Indicates that the audit type is user-defined functions, stored procedures, or anonymous block operations.
special_func	Indicates that the audit type is special function invocation. Special functions include <b>pg_terminate_backend</b> and <b>pg_cancel_backend</b> .
copy_to/copy_from	Indicates that the audit type is <b>COPY</b> operations.
set_parameter	Indicates that the audit type is <b>SET</b> operations.
trans_begin/trans_commit/ trans_prepare/ trans_rollback_to/ trans_release/trans_savepoint/ trans_commit_prepare/ trans_rollback_prepare/ trans_rollback	Indicates that the audit type is transaction- related operations.
vacuum/vacuum_full/ vacuum_merge	Indicates that the audit type is <b>VACUUM</b> operations.
analyze/analyze_verify	Indicates that the audit type is <b>ANALYZE</b> operations.
cursor_declare/cursor_move/ cursor_fetch/cursor_close	Indicates that the audit type is cursor-related operations.
codeblock_execute	Indicates that the audit type is anonymous blocks.

Parameter	Description
explain	Indicates that the audit type is <b>EXPLAIN</b> operations.
show	Indicates that the audit type is <b>SHOW</b> operations.
lock_table	Indicates that the audit type is table locking operations.
comment	Indicates that the audit type is <b>COMMENT</b> operations.
prepare/execute/deallocate	Indicates that the audit type is <b>PREPARE</b> , <b>EXECUTE</b> , or <b>DEALLOCATE</b> operations.
cluster	Indicates that the audit type is <b>CLUSTER</b> operations.
constraints	Indicates that the audit type is <b>CONSTRAINTS</b> operations.
checkpoint	Indicates that the audit type is <b>CHECKPOINT</b> operations.
barrier	Indicates that the audit type is <b>BARRIER</b> operations.
cleanconn	Indicates that the audit type is <b>CLEAN</b> <b>CONNECTION</b> operations.
seclabel	Indicates that the audit type is security label operations.
notify	Indicates that the audit type is notification operations.
load	Indicates that the audit type is loading operations.

----End

# Disabling Audit Log Dump/Kernel Audit Log Dump

After the audit log dump or kernel audit log dump is enabled, you can disable it if you no longer need to dump audit logs or kernel audit logs to OBS.

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** in the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the cluster for which you want to disable **Audit Log Dump** or **Kernel Audit Log Dump**. In the navigation pane, choose **Security Settings**.
- **Step 4** In the audit configuration area, toggle the audit log dump/kernel audit log dump function off.

#### Step 5 Click Apply.

If Configuration Status is Applying, the system is saving the settings.

When the status changes to **Synchronized**, the configurations are saved and take effect.

----End

# 9.12.3 Viewing GaussDB(DWS) Database Audit Logs

Database audit logs can be set on the **Security Settings** page of the cluster. Security configurations can be modified only for clusters in the **Available** or **Unbalanced** state. Furthermore, the target cluster should not be undergoing any node additions, specification changes, configurations, upgrades, redistribution operations, or restarts.

# Prerequisites

- The audit function has been enabled by setting audit\_enabled. The default value of audit\_enabled is ON. To disable audit, set it to OFF by referring to Modifying GUC Parameters of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster.
- The audit items have been configured. For how to enable audit items, see **Configuring the Database Audit Logs**.
- The database is running properly and a series of addition, modification, deletion, and query operations have been executed in the database. Otherwise, no audit result is generated.
- The audit logs of each database node are recorded separately.
- Only users with the AUDITADMIN permission can view audit records.

# **Configuring the Database Audit Logs**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.
- Step 3 In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster. Choose Security.

By default, **Configuration Status** is **Synchronized**, which indicates that the latest database result is displayed.

**Step 4** In the **Audit Settings** area, set the audit items:

The default audit log retention policy is space-first, which means audit logs will be automatically deleted when the size of audit logs on a single node exceeds 1 GB. This function prevents node faults or low performance caused by high disk space occupied by audit logs.

Table 9-34 describes the detailed information about the audit items.

Table 9-34 Audit items
------------------------

Audit Item	Description	
Unauthorized access	Whether to record unauthorized operations. This parameter is disabled by default.	
DQL operations	SELECT operations can be selected. NOTE Clusters of 8.1.1.100 and later versions support the DQL operations audit item.	
DML operations	Whether to record <b>INSERT</b> , <b>UPDATE</b> , and <b>DELETE</b> operations on tables. This parameter is disabled by default. <b>NOTE</b> 8.1.1.100 and later versions support fine-grained splitting of audit items, and the <b>COPY</b> and <b>MERGE</b> options are added.	
DDL operations	<ul> <li>Whether to record the CREATE, DROP, and ALTER operations of specified database objects. DATABASE, SCHEMA, and USER are selected by default.</li> <li>NOTE         <ul> <li>8.1.1.100 and later versions support TABLE, DATA SOURCE, and NODE GROUP operations. These operations are enabled by default.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
Other operations	<ul> <li>Whether to record other operations. Only the TRANSACTION and CURSOR operations are selected by default.</li> <li>NOTE         <ul> <li>8.1.1.100 and later versions support the Other operations audit item.</li> <li>You are advised to select TRANSACTION. Otherwise, statements in a transaction will not be audited.</li> <li>You are advised to select CURSOR. Otherwise, SELECT statements in a cursor will not be audited. The Data Studio client automatically encapsulates SELECT statements using CURSOR.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Except the audit items listed in **Table 9-34**, key audit items in **Table 9-35** are enabled by default on GaussDB(DWS).

Table 9-35	Key audit	items
------------	-----------	-------

Parameter	Description	
Key audit items	Records successful and failed logins and logout.	
	Records database startup, stop, recovery, and switchover.	
	Records user locking and unlocking.	

Parameter	Description	
	Records the grants and reclaims of user permissions.	
	Records the audit function of the <b>SET</b> operation.	

**Step 5** Enable or disable audit log dumps.

For more information, see Enabling Audit Log Dumps.

#### Step 6 Click Apply.

If Configuration Status is Applying, the system is saving the settings.

When the status changes to **Synchronized**, the configurations are saved and take effect.

You can click  ${f C}$  to refresh the configuration information.

----End

# Viewing Database Audit Logs

Method 1: Audit logs will occupy disk space. To prevent excessive disk usage, GaussDB(DWS) supports audit log dumping. You can enable the **Log Dump** function to dump audit logs to OBS (you need to create an OBS bucket for storing audit logs first). For details about how to view the dumped logs, see **Enabling Audit Log Dumps**.

Method 2: Use the **Log** function of LTS to view or download the collected database audit logs. For details, see **Checking Cluster Logs**.

Method 3: Database audit logs are stored in the database by default. After connecting to the cluster, you can use the **pg\_query\_audit** function to view the logs. For details, see **Using Functions to View Database Audit Logs**.

# **Using Functions to View Database Audit Logs**

- **Step 1** Use the SQL client tool to connect to the database cluster. For details, see **Connecting to a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster**.
- **Step 2** Use the **pg\_query\_audit** function to query the audit logs of the current CN. The syntax is as follows:

pg\_query\_audit(timestamptz starttime,timestamptz endtime,audit\_log)

**starttime** and **endtime** indicate the start time and end time of the audit record, respectively. **audit\_log** indicates the physical file path of the queried audit logs. If **audit\_log** is not specified, the audit log information of the current instance is queried.

For example, view the audit records of the current CN node in a specified period. **SELECT \* FROM pg\_query\_audit(**'2021-02-23 21:49:00','2021-02-23 21:50:00');

The query result is as follows:

 begintime
 endtime
 operation\_type | audit\_type | result | username | database |

 client\_conninfo | object\_name | command\_text |
 detail\_info
 |

transaction_xid   query_id	node_name	session_id	local_port	remote_port
++		++	+-	+

This record indicates that user **dbadmin** logged in to the **gaussdb** database at 2021-02-23 21:49:57.82 (GMT+08:00). After the host specified by **log\_hostname** is started and a client is connected to its IP address, the host name found by reverse DNS resolution is displayed following the at sign (@) in the value of **client\_conninfo**.

**Step 3** Use the **pgxc\_query\_audit** function to query audit logs of all CNs. The syntax is as follows:

pgxc\_query\_audit(timestamptz starttime,timestamptz endtime)

For example, view the audit records of all CN nodes in a specified period. **SELECT \* FROM pgxc\_query\_audit(**'2021-02-23 22:05:00','2021-02-23 22:07:00') where audit\_type = 'user\_login' and username = 'user1';

#### The query result is as follows:

begintime   client_conninfo   object	endtime     •   name   command_text	operation_type   audit_type detail_info	result   username   ti	database   ransaction_xid
query_id   node_name	session_id	local_port   re	emote_port	
	+	+++	-++	.+
+++	+++			-
2021-02-23 22:06:22.21	9+08   2021-02-23 22:0	6:22.271+08   login_logout	user_login   ok	user1
gaussdb  gsql@[local]	gaussdb   login db	login db(gaussdb) suce	cessfully, the currer	it user is:
user1   0   0	coordinator2   1406	89577342720.66740438227	1356.coordinator	27782
2021-02-23 22:05:51.69	7+08   2021-02-23 22:0	5:51.749+08   login_logout	user_login   ok	user1
gaussdb   gsql@[local]	gaussdb   login db	b   login db(gaussdb) suce	cessfully, the currer	nt user is:
user1   0   0	coordinator1   1405	25048424192.66740435174	9143.coordinator1	27777

The query result shows the successful login records of **user1** in to CN1 and CN2.

#### **Step 4** Query the audit records of multiple objects.

SET audit\_object\_name\_format TO 'all'; SELECT object\_name,result,operation\_type,command\_text FROM pgxc\_query\_audit('2022-08-26 8:00:00','2022-08-26 22:55:00') where command\_text like '%student%';

The query result is as follows:

+++++	
student         ok         ddl         CREATE TABLE student(stuNo int, stuName TEXT);         studentscore         ok         ddl         CREATE TABLE studentscore(stuNint, stuscore int);         ["public.student_view01","public.studentscore","public.student"]         ok         ddl         CREATE TABLE studentscore(stuNint, stuscore int);         ["public.student_view01","public.studentscore","public.student"]         ok         ddl         CREATE OR REPL         VIEW student_view01 AS SELECT * FROM student t1 where t1.stuNo in (select stuNo from studentscore where t1.stuNo = t2.stuNo);       ["public.student_view01","public.student","public.studentscore"]         ok         dml         SELECT * FROM student","public.studentscore"]         student_view01;       [] ok         dml         SELECT * FROM student","public.studentscore"]	No _ACE e t2

In the **object\_name** column, the table, view, and base table associated with the view are displayed.

----End

# 9.12.4 Viewing Operation Logs on the GaussDB(DWS) Console

# **Enabling CTS**

A tracker will be automatically created after CTS is enabled. All traces recorded by CTS are associated with a tracker. Currently, only one tracker can be created for each account.

- Step 1 Log in to the management console, choose Service List > Management & Governance > Cloud Trace Service. The CTS management console is displayed.
- Step 2 In the navigation tree on the left, click Trackers.
- Step 3 Enable CTS.

If you are new to CTS and do not have any trackers in the tracker list, enable CTS first. For details, see "Getting Started > Enabling CTS" in the *Cloud Trace Service User Guide*.

If you have enabled CTS, the system has automatically created a management tracker. Only one management tracker can be created and it cannot be deleted. You can also manually create a data tracker. For details, see "Tracker Management" > "Creating a Tracker" in the *Cloud Trace Service User Guide*.

----End

# **Disabling the Audit Log Function**

If you want to disable the audit log function, disable the tracker in CTS.

- Step 1 Log in to the management console, choose Service List > Management & Governance > Cloud Trace Service. The CTS management console is displayed.
- **Step 2** Disable the audit log function by disabling the tracker. To enable the audit log function again, you only need to enable the tracker.

For how to enable or disable a tracker, see **Disabling or Enabling a Tracker** in the *Cloud Trace Service User Guide*.

----End

# **Key Operations**

With CTS, you can record operations associated with GaussDB(DWS) for future query, audit, and backtracking.

#### **NOTE**

- The creation and deletion of automated snapshots are not performed by users, therefore not recorded in audit logs.
- There are many GaussDB(DWS) cluster operation events, but the table below only includes some frequently audited operations.

<b>Table 3-30</b> Gausson (DWS) operations that can be recorded by CTS
------------------------------------------------------------------------

Operation	Resource	Event Name
Creating a cluster	cluster	createCluster
Deleting a cluster	cluster	deleteCluster
Performing a cluster inspection	cluster	createInspection
Stopping an inspection	cluster	AbortInspection
Scaling out a cluster	cluster	growCluster
Increasing the capacity of idle nodes	cluster	resizeWithFreeNodes
Performing cluster redistribution	cluster	redistributeCluster
Querying redistribution details	cluster	queryRedisInfo
Adding disk capacity	cluster	executeDiskExpand
Changing cluster flavors	cluster	flavorResize
Restarting a cluster	cluster	rebootCluster
Performing a cluster switchover	cluster	activeStandySwitchover
Resetting passwords	cluster	resetPassword
Restoring a cluster	cluster	repairCluster
Creating a cluster connection	cluster	createClusterConnection
Modifying a cluster connection	cluster	modifyClusterConnection
Deleting a cluster connection	cluster	deleteClusterConnection
Resizing a cluster	cluster	resizeCluster
Binding or unbinding an EIP	cluster	bindOrUnbindEIP

Operation	Resource	Event Name	
Creating or binding an ELB	cluster	createOrBindElb	
Unbinding an ELB	cluster	unbindElb	
Adding a CN	cluster	addCN	
Deleting a CN	cluster	deleteCN	
Upgrading a cluster	cluster	clusterUpdateMgr	
Scaling in a cluster	cluster	shrinkCluster	
Creating a resource management plan	cluster	addWorkloadPlan	
Deleting a Resource Pool	cluster	deleteWorkloadQueueInfo	
Creating a resource pool	cluster	addWorkloadQueueInfo	
Modifying cluster GUC parameters	cluster	updateClusterConfigurations	
Removing the read-only status	cluster	cancelReadonly	
Modifying a maintenance window	cluster	modifyMaintenanceWindow	
Adding CN nodes in batches	cluster	batchCreateCn	
Deleting CN nodes in batches	cluster	batchDeleteCn	
Adding tags in batches	cluster	batchCreateResourceTag	
Deleting tags in batches	cluster	batchDeleteResourceTag	
Creating a logical cluster	cluster	createLogicalCluster	
Deleting logical clusters	cluster	deleteLogicalCluster	
Editing a logical cluster	cluster	editLogicalCluster	

Operation	Resource	Event Name	
Restarting logical clusters	cluster	restartLogicalCluster	
Converting to a logical cluster	cluster	switchLogicalCluster	
Starting a cluster	cluster	startCluster	
Stopping a cluster	cluster	stopCluster	
Modifying the security group of a cluster	cluster	changeSecurityGroup	
Changing the cluster time zone	cluster	modifyClusterTimezone	
Creating a snapshot	backup	createBackup	
Deleting a snapshot	backup	deleteBackup	
Restoring a cluster	backup	restoreCluster	
Copying snapshots	backup	copySnapshot	
Deleting a snapshot policy	backup	deleteBackupPolicy	
Updating a snapshot policy	backup	updateClustersBackupPolicy	
Creating a DR task	disasterRecovery	createDisasterRecovery	
Deleting a DR task	disasterRecovery	deleteDisasterRecovery	
Starting a DR task	disasterRecovery	startDisasterRecoveryAction	
Stopping a DR task	disasterRecovery	ery stopDisasterRecoveryAction	
Switching to the DR cluster	disasterRecovery	switchoverDisasterRecoveryAc- tion	
Performing an exception switchover	disasterRecovery	failoverDisasterRecoveryAction	
Performing DR	disasterRecovery	recoveryDisaster	
Updating DR configurations	disasterRecovery	updateRecoveryDisaster	
Querying DR details	disasterRecovery	disasterRecoveryOperate	

Operation	Resource	Event Name
Setting security parameters	configurations	updateConfigurations
Creating an extended data source	dataSource	createExtDataSource
Deleting an extended data source	dataSource	deleteExtDataSource
Updating an extended data source	dataSource	updateExtDataSource
Creating an MRS data source	dataSource	createExtDataSource
Deleting an MRS data source	dataSource	deleteExtDataSource
Updating an MRS data source	dataSource	updateExtDataSource

# Viewing Traces

- Step 1 Log in to the management console, choose Service List > Management & Governance > Cloud Trace Service. The CTS management console is displayed.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Trace List**.
- **Step 3** Click the search box above the trace list and set the search criteria.

The following filters are available:

- **Trace Name**: If you select this option, you also need to select a specific trace name.
- Cloud Service: Select GaussDB(DWS).
- **Resource Type**: Select **All resource types** or specify a resource type.
- **Resource Name**: If you select this option, you also need to select or enter a specific resource name.
- **Resource ID**: If you select this option, you also need to select or enter a specific resource ID.
- **Operator**: Select a specific operator (at user level rather than tenant level).
- **Event ID**: If you select this option, you also need to select or enter an event ID.
- **Trace Status**: Available options include **All trace statuses**, **normal**, **warning**, and **incident**. You can only select one of them.
- Enterprise Project ID: If you select this option, you also need to select or enter a specific enterprise project ID.

• Access Key ID: If you select this option, you also need to select or enter a specific access key ID.

#### Step 4 Click Query.

**Step 5** Click the name of the trace to be viewed. A window is displayed, showing the trace details.

For details about key fields of a CTS trace, see "Trace References" > "Trace Structure" and "Trace References" > "Example Traces" in *Cloud Trace Service User Guide*.

----End

# 9.12.5 Viewing Other Logs of the GaussDB(DWS) Cluster

## Overview

Cluster logs are collected and sent to Log Tank Service (LTS). You can check or dump the collected cluster logs on LTS.

The following log types are supported: CN logs, DN logs, OS messages logs, audit logs, cms logs, gtm logs, Roach client logs, Roach server logs, upgrade logs, and scale-out logs.

#### **NOTE**

- Only 8.1.1.300 and later versions support cluster log management.
- Only 8.3.0 and later versions support CMS logs, GTM logs, Roach client logs, Roach server logs, scaling logs, and upgrade logs.

# **Enabling LTS**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters**. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target cluster. Choose **Logs**.

Enable LTS (1)		
Log Type	Description	Operation
messages	operating system messages log	View Log
expand	den-expand log	View Log
reach controller	des-rooch controller log	View Log
audit	and Log	View Log
ştm	den gim log	View Log
reach-agent	dus-roach agent log	View Log
cms	dws-ens log	View Log
CN	den-CR node log	View Log
upgrade	dirs-upgrade log	View Log
DN	den-CN node log	View Log

**Step 4** On the **Logs** tab, enable LTS. If LTS is enabled for the first time, the following dialog box will be displayed. Confirm the information and click **Yes**.

#### D NOTE

- If LTS has been enabled and authorized to create an agency, no authorization is required when LTS is enabled again.
- By default, only Huawei Cloud accounts or users with **Security Administrator** permissions can query and create agencies. IAM users under an account do not have the permission to query or create agencies by default. Contact a user with that permission and complete the authorization on the current page.
- When interconnecting with LTS, you need to grant LTS-related permission policies (LTS Admin, LTS Administrator, LTS FullAccess, and LTS ReadOnlyAccess) to users.

----End

# **Checking Cluster Logs**

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- Step 3 Click the name of the target cluster. Choose Logs.
- **Step 4** On the **Logs** tab, click **View Log** in the **Operation** column of a log type to go to the Log Tank Service (LTS) page and view logs.

Enable LTS 🛞 🌑		
Log Type	Description	Operation
messages	oprofiling system messages log	View Log
expand	dra-expand log	View Log
roach-controller	dws-reach-controller log	View Log
audit	audit Log	View Log
gtm	dws-gtm log	View Log
roach-agent	dws-roach-agent log	View Log
cms	dun-erra log	View Log
CN	dirs-CN node log	View Log
upgrade	dm-spgrade log	View Log
DN	dws-EN node log	View Log

----End

# **Disabling LTS**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters. All clusters are displayed by default.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target cluster. Choose **Logs**.
- **Step 4** Toggle off the LTS switch.
- Step 5 Click OK in the dialog box.
  - ----End

# 9.13 Handling Abnormal GaussDB(DWS) Clusters

# Removing the Read-only Status

A cluster in read-only status does not allow write operations. You can remove this status on the management console. A cluster becomes read-only probably because
of high disk usage. For how to solve this problem, see **Solution to High Disk Usage and Cluster Read-Only**.

### **NOTE**

- Clusters of version 1.7.2 or later support removal of the read-only state.
- In 8.2.0 and later versions, you can free up disk space by using **DROP/TRUNCATE TABLE** in a read-only cluster.

#### Impacts on the System

- You can cancel the read-only status only when a cluster is read-only.
- When a cluster is in read-only status, stop the write tasks to prevent data loss caused by used up disk space.
- After the read-only status is canceled, clear the data as soon as possible to prevent the cluster from entering the read-only status again after a period of time.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

#### Step 2 Choose Dedicated Clusters > Clusters.

All clusters are displayed by default.

- Step 3 In the row containing the cluster whose cluster status is **Read-only**, click **Cancel Read-only**.
- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, click **OK** to confirm and remove the read-only status for the cluster.

----End

# Performing a Primary/Standby Switchback

In the **Unbalanced** state, the number of primary instances on some nodes increases. As a result, the load pressure is high. In this case, the cluster is normal, but the overall performance is not as good as that in a balanced state. Restore the primary-standby relationship to recover the cluster to the available state.

#### **NOTE**

- Only 8.1.1.202 and later versions support primary/standby cluster restoration.
- Cluster restoration interrupts services for a short period of time. The interruption duration depends on the service volume. You are advised to perform this operation during off-peak hours.
- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Choose **Dedicated Clusters** > **Clusters** and locate the cluster whose load is unbalanced.
- **Step 3** In the **Cluster Status** column of the cluster, click **Fix** under **Unbalanced**.

	Cluster Name	Cluster Status	- After a primary/standby switchover of Data Nodes (DNs), the cluster state changes to Unbalanced.	Recent Events	Operation
~	08c1276c-005b-4d4d-980d-43e9cef34131	O Unbalanced @ Fix	<ul> <li>If the cluster is unbalanced, all functions are still available, but the performance may be affected by resource contention.</li> <li>Click Fix to restore cluster balance. The process switchover may temporarily</li> </ul>	2	Monitoring Panel   View Metric   More -
~	caa17f63-be5a-4aca-9a2e-1bde114b5620	Available	dwsx:darge.4	2	Monitoring Panel   View Metric   More 👻

- **Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, confirm that the service is in off-peak hours, and click **Yes**. A message will be displayed in the upper right corner, indicating that the switchback request is being processed.
- **Step 5** Check the cluster status. During the switchback, the cluster status is **Switching back**. After the switchback, the cluster status will change to **Available**.

----End

# 9.14 Reclaiming GaussDB(DWS) Space Using Vacuum

# 9.14.1 Overview

GaussDB(DWS) provides the intelligent O&M feature to help users quickly and efficiently execute O&M tasks. Intelligent O&M selects a proper time window and concurrency to complete specified tasks based on the cluster load. During O&M tasks, intelligent O&M monitors user service changes and promptly adapts task execution policies to minimize the impact on user services. Periodic tasks and one-off tasks are supported, and you can configure the time window as required.

Intelligent O&M ensures high availability. When the cluster is abnormal, failed O&M tasks will be retried. If some steps of an O&M task cannot be completed due to an abnormal cluster, the failed steps will be skipped for cost saving.

The intelligent O&M page consists of the following parts:

- Setting the common configurations of O&M tasks
  - Maximum number of concurrent O&M tasks in the VacuumFull user table: applies to VacuumFull O&M tasks for each user table. You are advised to set this parameter based on the available disk space and I/O load within a specific time window. The value ranges from 1 to 24. The recommended value is 5.
  - Small CU threshold: helps identify small CU tables. A table is classified as small if its CU value is lower than the threshold. When the CU value is at or below the threshold, it triggers Vacuum. A higher threshold value increases the trigger sensitivity. The recommended default value for this parameter is **1000**.
  - Small CU ratio: indicates the ratio of small CU tables to all CU tables.
     When the ratio is at or above the parameter value, Vacuum is triggered.
     A lower value increases the trigger sensitivity. The recommended default value for this parameter is 50%.
- Information about ongoing O&M tasks. (Currently, only VACUUM tasks are displayed. If disk space is insufficient because of table bloating, you can vacuum tables.).
  - Frequent table creation and deletion can lead to table bloating. To free up space, you can run the **VACUUM** command on system catalogs.
  - Frequently update and delete operations can lead to table bloating. To free up space, you can run the VACUUM or VACUUM FULL command on system catalogs.

 O&M details: O&M Plan and O&M Status. O&M Plan displays the basic information about all O&M tasks, and O&M Status displays the running status.

#### D NOTE

- This feature is supported only in 8.1.3 or later. The small CU threshold and small CU ratio are displayed only for version 9.1.0.200 or later clusters.
- A storage-compute coupled data warehouse (standalone) does not support the intelligent O&M function.
- After completing the VACUUM FULL O&M task, the system automatically performs the ANALYZE operation.
- Only cluster 8.1.3 and later versions support the common configuration module for O&M tasks. For earlier versions, contact technical support to upgrade them.

# 9.14.2 Managing O&M Plans

# Setting the Common Configurations of O&M Tasks

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Intelligent O&M**.
- Step 4 In the Common O&M Task Configuration area, configure Maximum number of concurrent O&M tasks in the VacuumFull user table.

#### **NOTE**

- This configuration takes effect for the VACUUM FULL O&M tasks of all user tables.
- The concurrency value range is 1 to 24. Configure it based on the remaining disk space and I/O load. You are advised to set it to 5.
- ----End

### Adding an O&M Plan

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Intelligent O&M**.
- Step 4 In the O&M Plan area, click Add O&M Task.
- **Step 5** In the displayed **Add O&M Task** dialog box, configure basic information about the O&M task.

Configurat ion Item	Description	Example
O&M Task	Vacuum (Currently, only Vacuum O&M tasks are supported.)	Vacuum

#### Table 9-37 Basic configuration items of an O&M task

Configurat ion Item	Description	Example
Description	Brief description of the intelligent O&M task.	This intelligent O&M task helps users periodically invoke Vacuum commands to reclaim space.
Remarks	Supplementary information.	-
Scheduling Mode	<ul> <li>The supports the following scheduling modes:</li> <li>Auto: Intelligent O&amp;M scans the database in a specified time window, and automatically delivers table-level vacuum tasks by service load and reclaimable space of user tables.</li> <li>Specify: You need to specify a vacuum target. Intelligent O&amp;M will automatically deliver a table-level vacuum task in a specified time window.</li> <li>Priority: You can specify the preferential vacuum targets. During the remaining time window (if any), Intelligent O&amp;M will automatically scan other tables that can be vacuum tasks.</li> <li>NOTE You are advised to select Specify for VACUUM and VACUUM FULL operations. Do not perform VACUUM FULL on wide column-store tables. Otherwise, memory</li> </ul>	Specify

Configurat ion Item	Description	Example
Autovacuu m	<ul> <li>Supported: system catalog Vacuum or user table VacuumFull.</li> <li>A system catalog VACUUM transaction holds a level-4 lock (share update exclusive lock), which does not affect user services. Only the transactions on the DDL process of the system catalog are blocked.</li> <li>A user table VACUUM FULL transaction holds a level-8 lock (access exclusive lock). All the other transactions on the table are blocked until VACUUM FULL is complete. To avoid affecting</li> </ul>	User table (VACUUM FULL)
	complete. To avoid affecting services, you are advised to perform VACUUM FULL during off-peak hours. CAUTION During VACUUM FULL, the space usage will first increase and then decrease, because this operation requires the same space as the table to be vacuumed. The actual table size is calculated as the total table size multiplied by (1 - dirty page rate). Ensure you have sufficient space before doing VACUUM FULL.	
Vacuum First	You can configure the preferred Vacuum target. Each row corresponds to a table. Each table is represented by the database name, schema name, and table name, which are separated by spaces.	-

Configurat ion Item	Description	Example
Advanced settings	If you select <b>Custom</b> , you can configure the autovacuum triggers, including the table bloat and table reclaimable space. If you select <b>Default</b> , the default configuration is used. <b>NOTE</b>	Default configuration (table bloat rate 80% or reclaimable space 100 GB.)
	VACUUM bloat rate: After frequent UPDATE and DELETE operations are performed in a database, the deleted or updated rows are logically deleted from the database, but actually still exist in tables. Before VACUUM is complete, such data is still stored in disks, causing table bloat. If the bloat rate reaches the percentage threshold set in an O&M task, VACUUM will be automatically triggered.	

## **Step 6** Click **Next > Schedule** to configure scheduling for O&M tasks.

Select an O&M type.

- **One-off**: Set the start time and end time of the task.
- **Periodic**: Select a time window type, which includes **Daily**, **Weekly**, and **Monthly**, and select a time segment. Intelligent O&M will automatically analyze the time window and deliver O&M tasks accordingly.

# 

- Do not choose peak hours when configuring the time window for autovacuum O&M tasks. Otherwise, automatic Vacuum may cause a deadlock on user services.
- The number of concurrent O&M tasks (vacuum/vacuum full) ranges from 0 to 24 for user tables, and from 0 to 1 for system catalogs. The concurrency value cannot be customized, but can be automatically adjusted based on system io\_util.
  - Two intervals for 0% to 60%
    - 0% to 30%: The concurrency value increases by 2 each time the value of **io\_util** decreases by 15%.
    - 30% to 60%: The concurrency value is incremented by 1 each time the value of **io\_util** decreases by 15%.
  - 60% to 70%: The concurrency value remains unchanged.
  - Above 70%: The concurrency value decreases by 1 until it reaches 0.
- The scheduler scans the expansion of column-store compression units (CUs) within the time window. If the average number of CU records in a column-store table is less than 1000, the scheduler scans the table first. The scanning of column-store CUs is not limited by table bloat or table reclaimable space.
- A maximum of 100 tables can be added to the priority list.
- The scheduler autovacuum function depends on the statistics. If the statistics are inaccurate, the execution sequence and results may be affected.
- The scheduler does not support names containing spaces or single quotation marks, including database names, schema names, and table names. Otherwise, the tables will be skipped. Priority tables whose name contains spaces or single quotation marks will also be skipped automatically.
- **Step 7** Click **Next: Finish**. After you confirm the information, click **Finish** to submit the request.

----End

# Modifying an O&M Plan

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Intelligent O&M**.
- Step 4 In the O&M Plan area, click Modify in the Operation column of the target task.

O&M Plan O&M Status					
All 👻					Add O&M Task
Delete Pause Resume					C
Task	Description	Time Window(UTC)	IS PAUSE	Task Type	Operation
Vacuum		12:45:00 - 13:15:00 UTC every day	No	Periodic	Modify Details
Vacuum		2021-09-22 12:47:41 to 2021-09-23 12:47:41	No	One-off	Modify   Details
Vacuum		11:00:00 - 13:00:00 UTC every day	Yes	Periodic	Modify   Details
Vacuum		07:00:00 - 14:00:00 UTC every day	Yes	Periodic	Modify   Details

- **Step 5** The **Modify O&M Task** panel is displayed. The configurations are similar to adding an O&M task (see **Adding an O&M Plan**).
- **Step 6** Confirm the modification and click **OK**.

----End

# Viewing O&M Task Details

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Intelligent O&M**.
- **Step 4** In the **O&M Plan** area, click **Details** in the **Operation** column of the target task.

O&M Plan O&M Status					
All 👻					Add O&M Task
Delete Pause Resume					C
Task	Description	Time Window(UTC)	IS PAUSE	Task Type	Operation
Vacuum		12:45:00 - 13:15:00 UTC every day	No	Periodic	Modify Details
Vacuum		2021-09-22 12:47:41 to 2021-09-23 12:47:41	No	One-off	Modify   Details
Vacuum		11:00:00 - 13:00:00 UTC every day	Yes	Periodic	Modify   Details
Vacuum		07:00:00 - 14:00:00 UTC every day	Yes	Periodic	Modify   Details

Step 5 The O&M Task Details panel is displayed for you to check the information.

----End

# 9.14.3 Viewing O&M Tasks

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- Step 2 Click the name of the target cluster.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Intelligent O&M**.
- **Step 4** Switch to the **O&M Status** area.



**Step 5** Click the arrow next to the specified O&M task name to view the task details.

- O&M Task: Vacuum
- Status: Waiting, Running, Completed, or Failed.
- Progress
- Remaining Time Window
- Time Window (Local Time)
- Tables being vacuumed
- Tables to be vacuumed
- Vacuumed tables
- Number of tables failed to be vacuumed
- Total number of vacuumed tables

- Amount of space freed up during the vacuum process
- Vacuum details list

### **NOTE**

- You can view up to 100 tables that are currently being vacuumed, have completed the vacuuming process, or have failed to be vacuumed.
- If the cluster is read-only, the INSERT statement cannot be executed for intelligent O&M tasks. There may be tasks remaining in the **Running** status. The **Running** status in this case is a historical status, and it indicates that the task is not completed within the specified time. If you manually pause the task and the task is not scheduled, the task may remain in the **Waiting** status. In this case, cancel the cluster read-only state and contact technical support to update the task status.

----End

# 9.15 Authorizing a GaussDB(DWS) Cluster O&M Account

# Context

If you need technical support when using a cluster, you can authorize them to use an O&M account on the GaussDB(DWS) console to access the cluster for fault locating.

### **NOTE**

Only cluster 8.1.3.110 and later versions support O&M accounts. For earlier versions, contact technical support.

## Overview

You can perform the following operations:

- Enable or disable the O&M account.
- Check the O&M account status.
- View the validity period of an O&M account and extend it as needed. (If the validity period is not extended, the account will expire automatically.)

#### Figure 9-47 O&M Account

O&M Account ⑦						
Account Status	😒 Normal	Expires	Jun 13, 2023 23:18:12 GMT+08:00 Extend by 8h			
O&M Account						

# **Enabling the O&M Account**

**Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.

**Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster.

**Step 3** On the cluster details page, and enable **O&M Account** in the **O&M Account** area.

Figure 9-48 Enabling O&M Account

Curre 12 d Durie D 86/036444/97/05/056656e Pouls House Dana Errer ()   resource on ()	ladily
Classe Once Designed Classes \$12.92	
Control Contro	
Parameter Configuration Status 🥥 Synchronocod () Task Internation - Public Network Comain Task ( Co	
Indes Total 3   Used 3   Ide 8 Estepsise Poject default Public Network (Public	
Noise Pilour deal test dage Correct Specifications (1) belief Administrator dealeries	
Logici Cluster Decorption - 2 Part 6000	
Time Zone (i) UTC-68 00 (Beijing Choopping Honey Kong Wares) d. Default Default Default Default Default Default	
ELS-Address - Associate ELB	
Next	
Storage Cit Under-Literation 20 A2 A23 StorageBaldup Capacity	
VPC vpc letty-codete Submit submit Submit submit 2000 (102.162.8.020	
Search Graup c Month Month 122%	
htm.	
Billing Information Pres (1) and an	Peid 6 GB
Not Not Decrement Online Decrement As	
and a set of the set o	
CALL Lowest (i)	
konst Stas	

- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.
- Step 5 Check the created O&M account. Its name format is om\_user\_First\_eight\_numbers\_in\_cluster\_ID.

Assign the **gs\_role\_analyze\_any**, **gs\_role\_vacuum\_any**, **gs\_role\_read\_all\_stats**, and **gs\_role\_signal\_backend** roles to the account. For details, see **Preset Roles**.

**NOTE** 

You can toggle off the switch and delete the O&M account if it is no longer needed.

----End

## **Extending the Validity Period**

- **Step 1** Log in to the GaussDB(DWS) console.
- **Step 2** In the cluster list, click the name of a cluster.
- **Step 3** On the cluster details page, click **Extend by 8h** in the **O&M Account** area.
- **Step 4** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.
  - For a normal account, its validity period is extended to 8 hours later than its expiration time.
  - For an expired account, its validity period is extended to 8 hours later than the current time.

----End